Copy Deposited No. 8728.



CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR.

(From a Bust in the Paris Louvre.)

The W. J. Gage Co.'s High School Classics.

CÆSAR,
DE BELLO GALLICO

BOOKS II., III. AND IV.

WITH

INTRODUCTION, NOTES, MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS, APPENDICES WITH HINTS AND EXERCISES ON TRANSLATION AT SIGHT AND ON RE-TRANSLATION INTO LATIN, AND A COMPLETE VOCABULARY TO CÆSAR.

BY

J. C. ROBERTSON, B.A.,

Lecturer in Greek, Victoria University, Toronto.

TORONTO:

THE W. J. GAGE CO'Y (LTD.)

1896.

PREFACE.

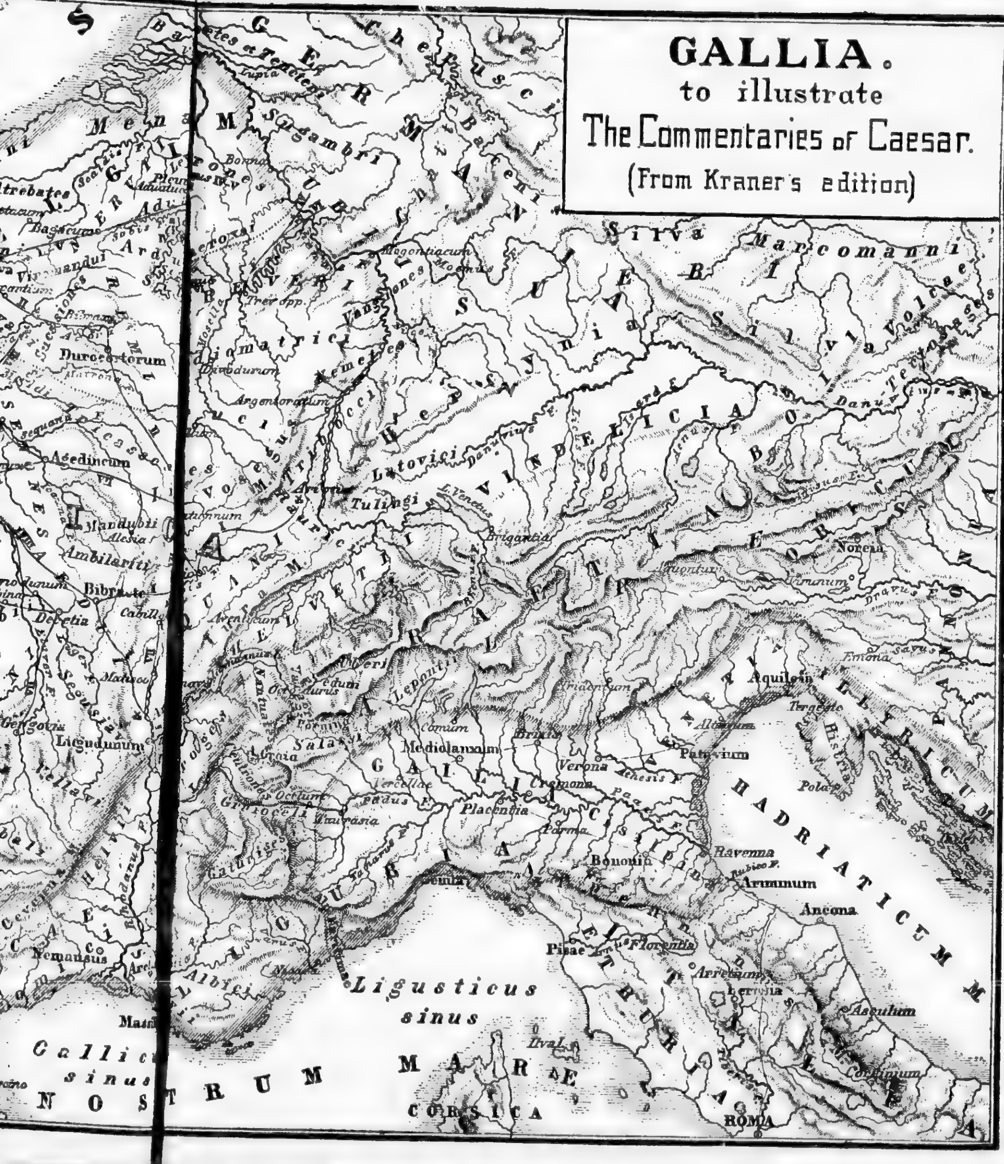
THIS book is a companion volume to the edition of Books V. and VI., published in 1894. The notes on Book II. are entirely new matter; those on the other books, while based upon the edition of Books III. and IV. published in 1892, have been altered in the resetting, wherever there seemed possibility of improvement.

The purpose and point of view maintained through these various editions may be given in the words of the preface to the first of the series. "In the editor's opinion, the first aim of a teacher of Latin is to enable the student to *read* Latin with accuracy, appreciation and speed as the only means of reaching the higher ideals of classical study. In this edition therefore the constant aim has been to further the intelligent translation of the text into idiomatic English, and to build up a sound knowledge of Latin as a language to be read." While fortunately it is not so necessary now to emphasize this view as it was four years ago, it is still worth while for classical teachers to remember always that whatever peculiar benefits come from the study of Latin come *through* the power to read and understand the language.

In the notes the editor has tried to keep the *via media* between the two common faults of giving help where the student is better without it, and withholding it where there are (at least to him) real difficulties; and in the exercises has collected material for class-work that may for some teachers serve as a standard of the work to be done in that direction, and for all may lighten the labor of preparing such material for their own classes.

TORONTO, March 28, 1896.


B R I T A N N I A
Trinobantes
Belgae
Cantium
O C E A N U S
Morini
Atrebates
Nemetacum
Samarobriva
Caleti
Bellovaci
Bratuspantium
Lexovii
Eburovices
Esubii
Coriosolites
Veneti
Redones
Diablintes
Aul Cenomani
Andes
Namnetes
Liger F.
Lutetia
Agedincum
Cenabum
Durocortorum
Noviodunum
Avaricum
Gorgobina
Bibracte
Decetia
Alesia
Mandubii
Ambiliarti
Pictones
Lemonum
Santones
Lemovices
Bituriges Vibisci
Burdigala
Petrocorii
Uxellodunum
Nitiobroges
Duranius F.
Vocates
Sottiates
Cocosates
Elusates
Gates
Tarusates
Ausci
Tolosa
Tectosages
Narbo
Nemausus
Gergovia
Lugudunum
Gabali
Cantabri
Vascones
H I S P A N I A
Gallicus sinus
Caesars Feldzüge
J. Roms v. Chr.
I 696 58
II 697 57
III 698 56
IV 699 55
V 700 54
VI 701 53
VII 702 52
VIII 703 51


GALLIA.
to illustrate
The Commentaries of Caesar.
(From Kraner's edition)
Silva
Marcomanni
Boi
Hercynia
Silva
Volcae
Tectosages
Vindelicia
Noricum
Noreia
Brigantia
Latovici
Tulingi
Helvetii
Aventicum
Durocortorum
Agedincum
Alesia
Ambilariti
Bibracte
Mandubii
Gergovia
Lugudunum
Nemausus
Sigambri
Cherusci
Mogontiacum
Vangiones
Nemetes
Mediomatrici
Divodurum
Argentoratum
Treveri
Mediolanum
Comum
Brixia
Verona
Cremona
Placentia
Parma
Patavium
Aquileia
Tergeste
Emona
Histria
Illyricum
Pola
Ravenna
Bononia
Ariminum
Ancona
Pisae
Florentia
Arretium
Asculum
Corfinium
Genua
Ligusticus sinus
Gallicus sinus
Mare Nostrum
Corsica
Roma
Hadriaticum Mare
Etruria
Gallia Cisalpina
Liguria
Raetia

AT t
all the
wars o
comme
civil w
and the
cally a
Caius



INTRODUCTION.

§ I. Life of Cæsar.
§ II. Gaul and the Gauls.
§ III. Cæsar's Campaigns in Gaul.
§ IV. The Commentaries of Cæsar.
§ V. The Army and Methods of Warfare.

I.—LIFE OF CÆSAR.

At the time of Cæsar's birth Rome had become mistress of all the lands bordering on the Mediterranean, so that foreign wars of conquest had virtually ceased, and during his boyhood commenced that struggle for supremacy in the State called the civil wars. This was at first a contest between the aristocratic and the popular party, but, as time went on, it became practically a struggle between individuals for personal supremacy.

Caius Julius Cæsar was born in 100 B.C. (or, as the historian

Mommsen holds, in 102 B.C.), of one of the oldest of the patrician or aristocratic families of Rome. The family was, however, closely connected by marriage with the great popular leader Marius, and Cæsar himself in 83 married the daughter of Cinna, Marius' leading supporter. His sympathies were thus from the first with the popular party, and on the defeat of that party by Sulla in 82, he barely escaped with his life.

For several years after this Cæsar served in the Roman army in Asia Minor, returning to Rome after Sulla's death in 78. At first he devoted himself to public oratory in the law courts, and in 76 went to Rhodes to study rhetoric under the famous teacher Molo. For several years after his return to Rome in 74 he busied himself in strengthening his position with his party, and soon came to be looked on as one of its leaders. The senatorial party was at this time supreme, and Cæsar had to win his way to power gradually. He went through the various grades of office by which Roman citizens rose to the rank of Consul, being in succession Quaestor, Curule Aedile, and Praetor. In 63 he was elected Pontifex Maximus, becoming technically the head of the Roman religion. This success over the aristocratic party showed clearly that its power was waning, and that Cæsar was now one of the leaders of the Roman state.

In 61, immediately after his Praetorship, he went to Spain as Propraetor or Military Governor. Here, in his first command, he at once showed his ability as a general, in quelling the rebellious native tribes. His manner of living at Rome (for he was not only one of the ablest but one of the most dissolute of men during the earlier period of his manhood), and the means by which he had obtained office and ingratiated himself with the people, had plunged him heavily into debt. But the Governor of a Roman province had plenty of opportunities for enriching himself at the expense of the provincials, and one year in Spain freed him from all his debts, as well as making him known as a brilliant commander.

In 60 he returned to the city and was elected Consul for 59, with a colleague of the aristocratic party, who was, however, too weak and insignificant to be able to thwart his measures.

The three leading men of Rome at this time were Pompey, representing the nobles; Cæsar, the leader of the popular party; and Crassus, whose influence was largely due to his immense wealth. Cæsar persuaded the other two to form a coalition with him, and thus get the practical supremacy of the state in their own hands. In the end this bargain proved to be entirely to Cæsar's advantage, as it prevented any active opposition to him during the next few years while he was absent from Rome securing for himself experience, prestige, and a veteran army to assist him when the final struggle for supremacy came. For one of the results of the coalition was that Cæsar was appointed for five years (58 to 54) governor of Illyricum and the two Gauls, Cisalpine and Transalpine, (the former being the northern part of Italy above the peninsula proper, and the latter the southern part of France). In 55 his command was extended for another period of five years, by an agreement with Pompey and Crassus, who were consuls that year.

For eight years (58 to 51) he was engaged in the conquest of Gaul. At the end of that time the whole of Gaul, from the Rhine to the Pyrenees, had been subjugated and made part of the Roman empire, and Cæsar had an army of experienced and devoted veterans, such as the Roman state had never before witnessed. Crassus had fallen in battle in the far East, and Cæsar and Pompey remained to compete for absolute supremacy in Rome, Pompey having the somewhat lukewarm support of the Senate and the aristocratical party.

Civil war soon arose from the jealousy between these two rivals, and in 49 Cæsar advanced with his legions into Italy. Pompey was not ready to oppose him, and crossed to Greece where the Senatorial party gathered its forces. Meanwhile Cæsar hastened to Spain, where Pompey had strong supporters.

and quickly reduced them to submission. Returning to Rome he was made Consul for 48 and then crossed over to Greece. After a short summer campaign Pompey was decisively defeated at Pharsalia, and fleeing to Egypt was assassinated there.

After short campaigns in Syria and Asia Minor (47) and Africa (46), in which all remaining opposition was crushed, Cæsar returned to Rome and occupied himself in securing his power and settling affairs of state, surprising many by the clemency he showed to those who had lately opposed him.

Pompey's sons meanwhile had raised a revolt in Spain, but this was speedily crushed in the spring of 45.

Cæsar was now practically (though not nominally) supreme ruler of the Roman world, and it seemed as though under the absolute rule of so brilliant an administrator there would now be lasting peace and prosperity. But a conspiracy to assassinate him was formed by a number of eminent Romans, actuated some by jealousy, others by an honest but short-sighted desire to bring back republican freedom, and in 44 B.C., on the 15th (the Ides) of March, he fell, pierced with the daggers of his murderers, at the base of Pompey's statue.

The result was that the struggle for supremacy was soon renewed, and terminated only when, fourteen years later, Cæsar's nephew (Octavianus, or Augustus) became sole ruler of the Roman world and established the empire of the Cæsars.

"In person, Cæsar was tall and slenderly built, his face rather long and thin, his eyes black, vivacious, and keen, his nose prominent, of the Roman type, his head somewhat bald in later life."—*Allen and Greenough.*

"His powers and genius were simply astonishing, a brilliant leader, a skilful engineer, a profound jurist, a scientific astronomer, an eloquent orator and accomplished poet—there was no region, practical or theoretical, in which he did not travel with the greatest success."—*Walpole.*

II.—GAUL AND THE GAULS.

LONG before Cæsar's time the Gauls had come into collision with the Romans. Before Rome's power extended over more than the immediate neighborhood of the city, large numbers of Gauls had crossed the Alps and occupied the whole of the northern portion of Italy. By the beginning of the fourth century B.C. they had made their way down into Central Italy, and in 390 laid Rome in ashes. For more than a century Rome was almost constantly engaged in wars with the neighboring tribes and states of Italy, and in many of these wars the Gauls of Central and Northern Italy, either alone or in alliance with the Etruscans and Samnites, were opposed to Rome. In 283 a crushing defeat was inflicted on the Gauls, and until 225 there was no more trouble with them. By that time Rome had gained secure possession of the whole peninsula. By the end of 224 she had conquered the country of the Gauls south of the river Po, and in two years more had extended her power to the Alps. The district extending from the Alps to the peninsula was formed into a province called Gallia Citerior, or Cisalpina, being politically quite distinct from the peninsula, Italy proper.

The first steps towards the conquest of Transalpine Gaul were taken in 154, when a Roman army crossed the Alps to repel an attack by the Gauls on two coast-settlements subject to Massilia (Marseilles), a city which had been founded near the mouth of the Rhone by Greek traders, and which had formed an alliance with Rome. In 125 these attacks were again renewed, and again the Romans interfered, and after several years fighting, in which the Romans defeated the leading tribes of the southern part of Gaul, they became masters of the whole territory extending from the eastern end of the Pyrenees to the Alps, with the exception of Massilia, which still remained independent but in alliance with the Romans. Colonies were planted and the district organized into a pro-

vince,—the 'Provincia' of Cæsar—called Gallia Transalpina, or at a later period Gallia Narbonensis.

Until Cæsar's time no further extension of territory was made by the Romans. The rest of Gaul was inhabited by a large number of independent tribes of similar origin and language, with the exception of the south-western part inhabited by the Aquitani, who were of a different race and akin to the Spaniards, and the north-eastern portion belonging to the Belgae, who were largely of German extraction.

In 113 an invading host of Cimbri entered Gaul from the east. These fierce warriors swept everything before them in Gaul, and in 109 came in collision with the Romans, completely defeating their forces under the Consul Silanus. A portion of the Helvetians, called the Tigurini, pressed southward to join the invasion, and in 107 defeated the Consul Lucius Cassius, and in 105 a third defeat was sustained by the Consul Mallius. There was great alarm in Rome, for the barbarian hordes were threatening Italy, and another host, of Teutoni, had also appeared on the scene. These latter were, however, defeated in 102 by Marius in the province, and the next year the Cimbri, who had crossed the Alps into Cisalpine Gaul, were completely routed by Catulus.

This invasion of Gaul by the Cimbri and Teutoni seems to have paved the way for Cæsar's conquest, by weakening the tribes and breaking up the strong confederacies that had existed.

For some years the only disturbance that arose in Gaul was the revolt, quickly suppressed, of the Allobroges, a tribe in the north of the province. This was in 61, and about that time there came other disquieting news.

The independent tribes of Gauls, lying to the north of the province, were divided into two leagues, headed, the one by the Ædui, the other by the Arverni and Sequani. The former were in alliance with Rome, and to offset this the Arverni and Sequani had a few years before invoked the aid of some of the German tribes living just across the Rhine. These were only too ready

to get a footing in Gaul, and soon the Sequani found that their new allies were fast becoming their masters. Further, in 60 the Helvetii, living in what is now known as Switzerland, began to prepare for a wholesale emigration into the more pleasant country of south-western Gaul.

The Romans' experience of the Gauls in Italy, and the more recent terror caused by the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutoni made them feel alarm at these extensive and threatening movements of population. The Helvetians' route would lie close to the province, and it was hazardous to allow the Germans to become firmly established in Gaul. The Romans did not at once, however, respond to the Æduі's request for aid, but seem to have preferred to keep on good terms with Ariovistus, the German leader, till the moment for action came.

Matters were in this position when Cæsar in 58 assumed the governorship of the three Roman provinces, Gallia Cisalpina, Gallia Transalpina (or Provincia as he generally calls it), and Illyricum.

Of these he depended mainly on the first for troops and supplies. It was practically part of Italy, as populous and nearly as wealthy and prosperous as the peninsula to the south. Gallia Transalpina had not yet been so thoroughly assimilated, and, with the exception of the neighborhood of the colonies and trading cities on the coasts, doubtless differed little from "Free Gaul" to the north and west.

"The Gauls were an intellectual and prosperous people, far more civilized than either Germans or Britons. The country, though extensively covered with forests, especially towards the north, was well provided with roads and bridges. The entire population has been reckoned at about seven millions. The people of the Gallic race were tall, fair-complexioned, of restless sanguine temperament, and addicted to fighting, but skilled in many arts...... They had numerous flourishing cities, which, however, had no political or corporate character like those of

Greece and Italy, but were merely places of residence and trade.

"The Gauls were not a nation, but a group of nations or tribes, about sixty in number,... the smaller ones often maintaining only a nominal independence under the protection of some larger one. They were for the most part ruled by a turbulent and oppressive aristocracy, sometimes with an elected chief magistrate, while sometimes an ambitious leader succeeded in establishing for a time a kingly power.

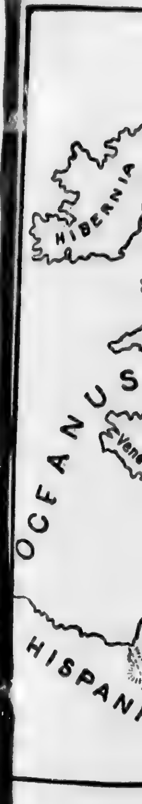
"The Britons were, like the Gauls, of Celtic race, and resembling them in every respect, except that living further from the civilized world, they were ruder, freer, and more warlike.

"The Germans, less advanced in civilization than the Gauls, were still far from being savages. They appear to have been just emerging from what is known as the barbarous state,—beginning to acquire fixed habitations, and to cultivate the ground; they had no cities."—*Allen and Greenough.*

III.—CÆSAR'S CAMPAIGNS IN GAUL.*

I.—B.C. 58. Cæsar, hearing in Rome that the Helvetii are on the eve of setting out on their projected emigration (see page ix), hastens to Transalpine Gaul and there takes measures to prevent them from going through the province. They at first ask his permission to take this route, but failing to get it, try to force their way over the Rhone into the province. Cæsar repels them and they decide to take a more northerly and more difficult route. Cæsar at once obtains five legions from Cisalpine Gaul (there was but one in the Province), and follows them up on the ground that they were likely in their new home to prove dangerous neighbors to the province. He surprised and overcame one of their four divisions at the river

* On the large map of Gaul, the route taken in each campaign is indicated by a line marked with the numbers I, II, etc.




CAESAR
GALLIC WAR.
HIBERNIA
Mona
BRITANNIA
OCEANUS
Veneti
Venelli
Morini
BELGAE
Nervii
Remi
Treveri
Usipetes
Tencteri
Ubii
Sugambri
GERMANI
Suebi
GALLI
Aedui
Arverni
Sequani
Helvetii
Aquitania
Provincia
Gallia Citerior
HISPANIA
ITALIA
Illyricum
ROMA

Arar, and soon after near Bibracte inflicts a crushing defeat on the remainder, and orders the survivors to return to the homes they had abandoned.

The presence of so large a body of troops and so successful a commander causes the leading men of several of the Gallic tribes to ask his assistance against Ariovistus and his German followers (see page viii.) Cæsar undertakes the task, and at first tries argument and diplomacy, but in vain. The Roman soldiers are afraid to venture into unknown lands against so formidable an enemy as the Germans were reported to be, but Cæsar calms their fears, and as soon as he can come to a decisive engagement with Ariovistus, completely routs the Germans and drives them back across the Rhine.

By this campaign the Roman influence was extended over the territory to the north of the province as far as the Treveri.

II.—B.C. 57. Cæsar advances into the territory of the Belgae, who, with the exception of the Remi (who form an alliance with the Romans), combine to resist any attack on their country.

The combined forces meeting a repulse disband and Cæsar advances farther into the country. Here he is surprised by the Nervii with some other tribes, and after a most desperate engagement, in which Cæsar's inspiriting example alone rallies the troops, the Nervii are driven back with immense loss.

After the siege of an important town in this neighborhood, which capitulates when the enemy perceive the efficiency of the Romans' siege artillery, several other tribes submit, and as a result of this second campaign Cæsar's power extended from the Province northward to the English Channel and along the whole northern coast of Gaul as far as the Veneti.

III.—B.C. 56. During the winter Cæsar sends one of his lieutenants to open up a new route between Italy and Gaul over the Alps, near the northern part of the Province, but the hill tribes offer such a resistance that the Romans are forced to retire. The tribes on the north-west coast of Gaul, headed

by the Veneti, combine to recover their liberty. The campaign is carried on along the coast, both by land and sea, and the Romans at last conquer the Veneti in a sea fight by a combination of ingenuity and good fortune.

Meanwhile Sabinus, a lieutenant of Cæsar, succeeded in quelling the revolt among the Venelli, and about the same time another lieutenant, Crassus, advanced southward into Aquitania, and after a hard fight against overwhelming odds came off victorious, and the different tribes of the Aquitani submitted to the Romans.

This campaign secured the results of the second year's work in the north-west of Gaul, while by the conquest of Aquitania the entire south from the Atlantic to the Alps acknowledged the Roman sway.

IV.—B.C. 55. For some time the growing power of the Suebi, a German tribe, had been oppressing the neighboring tribes, and at last the Usipetes and Tencteri resolve to cross the Rhine into Gaul. Cæsar advances to the Rhine, and after several conferences fights two battles with the invading Germans and repulses them. To prevent any further inroad, Cæsar builds a bridge across the Rhine, lays waste the lands of the Germans, and thus at once punishes and intimidates them.

He then resolves on making an expedition to Britain, which had close relations with the Belgae, and for this purpose collects a fleet and sets sail in the early autumn. In the face of a stubborn resistance he effects a landing, and receives the submission of a few states. Heavy losses to the Roman fleet, caused by a storm and high tides, encourage these states to revolt again. A Roman legion is surprised, but the attack is repelled and soon after, owing to the lateness of the season, Cæsar returns to Gaul without having ventured inland. On his return he puts down a rising of the Morini.

No new territory was added by this campaign, but the north-east of Gaul was rendered secure from German invasion and the sphere of Roman influence was extended to Britain.

V.—B.C. 54. With a larger fleet and stronger army than before, Cæsar again invades Britain and advances into the interior a little beyond the Thames. The native tribes combine against him, but are defeated and compelled to promise tribute. In the autumn Cæsar returns to Gaul, having made a display of his power and enterprise, but without adding any new territory.

On account of a drought and consequent scarcity of supplies in Gaul, the forces are divided for the winter into several portions and quartered among various tribes. The Gauls, who had been beaten but not subdued, take advantage of this to attack three of the camps. The garrison (a legion and a half) of one is lured from the camp, falls into an ambush and is annihilated. Another camp is besieged by the Nervii, but when reduced to the last extremity relieved by Cæsar. A third is attacked by the Treveri, who are however beaten back with severe loss. Affairs are in so desperate a condition that for the first time Cæsar spends the winter in Gaul instead of Italy.

VI.—B.C. 53. Cæsar, with three additional legions, sets about crushing out all resistance in Northern and North-eastern Gaul. A brief expedition is made across the Rhine into Germany to stop all interference with Gaul. The extreme north-east, where the legion and a half had been cut off the year before, is completely devastated and an invasion by the Sugambri (a German tribe) is repelled. This portion, at least, of Gaul has been now pretty effectually subdued.

VII.—B.C. 52. A general uprising of the central tribes of Gaul, joined even by the hitherto faithful Ædui, is headed by Vercingetorix, who on several occasions gains some advantage over Cæsar but is in the end overcome. The greater part of the fighting (including three noteworthy sieges) takes place in the country of the Arverni and the Ædui and the districts to the north. After the defeat and capture of Vercingetorix the different tribes are speedily reduced to submission.

VIII.—B.C. 51. (The story of this campaign is told by Aulus Hirtius). A few risings in various parts of Gaul are quelled, and Cæsar, having by the middle of 50 completed the conquest of Gaul, proceeds soon after to Italy and becomes engaged in civil war with Pompey.

IV.—THE COMMENTARIES OF CÆSAR.

Commentarii means sketches, jottings, memoirs, and 'Cæsar's Commentaries are memoirs written by himself, descriptive of his different campaigns, in which he treats of himself in the third person, and tells his story as it might have been told by some accompanying scribe or secretary.' That Cæsar himself was the author, is amply proved by the fact that his contemporaries ascribed it to him. It is uncertain whether it was written as the war went on and issued book by book, or whether it was composed towards the end of the war.

Each book contains the history of a single year's campaign. There are seven books in all, the history of the eighth year's operations having been composed after Cæsar's death by Aulus Hirtius, Cæsar being doubtless too busy preparing for the coming war with Pompey to find time for literary work.

As for the literary style of the Commentaries, the best judges among Cæsar's contemporaries praised it for its purity of diction and its business-like directness of expression. Cicero, the best literary critic of his day, writes of Cæsar's Commentaries, "I pronounce them to be, in fact, entirely commendable: for they are simple, straightforward, of a charming elegance, stripped of all rhetorical adornments;" and while speaking of them as intended not for a history but as materials for a history, says that their purity, brilliance and conciseness are such as to deter any man in his senses from attempting a history based on these materials.

Hirtius also bears witness to the ease and speed with which Cæsar wrote these books.

It should be borne in mind that Cæsar was one of the most

eloquent and polished orators of his day, and that he also gave attention to the rhetorical study of language, having written a work on the Latin language, from which Gellius quotes the advice, 'to shun an uncommon or out of the way word as a ship would a rock.'

An eminent modern writer says, "To us who love to make our language clear by the number of words used, and who in writing rarely give ourselves time for condensation, the closely-packed style of Cæsar is at first somewhat difficult of comprehension. It cannot be read otherwise than slowly till the reader's mind is trained by practice to Cæsarean expressions, and then not with rapidity....Skipping is out of the question."

The only other work of Cæsar which has survived to us is a history of the war between him and Pompey, *Commentarii de Bello Civili*, in three books.

V.—THE ARMY AND METHODS OF WARFARE.

(a) **The Roman Forces.** Cæsar's army consisted of (*a*) several legions of Roman soldiers, mostly enlisted in Gallia Cisalpina, (*b*) light-armed troops (slingers and archers), levied in some of the Roman provinces (Numidia, Crete and the Balearic islands are mentioned), and (*c*) auxiliary cavalry furnished by or levied from the native tribes in alliance with the Romans.

The legion *(legio)* consisted nominally of 5,000 or 6,000 men, in reality of about 3,000 or 4,000. Losses incurred in a campaign were not made up by adding recruits to the legion, thus impairing its efficiency, but when necessary, new legions were levied. Each legion was made up of ten cohorts *(cohors)*, each cohort of three maniples or companies (*manipulus*), each maniple of two centuries (*centuria* or *ordo*), but the division into cohorts is the important one in Cæsar's time, the cohort being thus the unit of his army. The cavalry were divided

into squadrons (*turma*) and *decuriae*, each of uncertain size, the latter being the smaller.

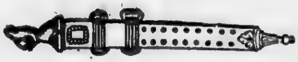


(*b*) **Arms and Equipments.** The heavy armed soldier of the legion (*miles legionarius*), was equipped as follows:

Defensive armor. 1. The helmet (*galea*), of leather, to which were attached crests (*insignia*) to distinguish the soldiers of the different legions. 2. The cuirass (*lorica*), of leather with a small iron breast-plate. 3. The shield (*scutum*), oblong, 4 feet by 2½, and half cylindrical, of wood covered with leather, with metal rims at the top and bottom. [N.B.—The round shield (*clipeus*) shown in the preceding cut had long before Cæsar's time been discarded for the oblong *scutum* shown in the accompanying cut.]*



* At an earlier time greaves (*ocreae*) had been worn, but they seem not to have been used in Cæsar's time.



Offensive armor. 1. The sword (*gladius*), about two feet long, straight and two-edged, for thrusting not for cutting down. It hung in a sheath (*vagina*) by a belt (*balteus*) on the right side, that the shield might not interfere with its being drawn. 2. The javelin (*pilum*), always used as a missile, not for thrusting, about six feet long with a wooden shaft and iron head.

The clothing of the soldier was a cloak (*sagum* or *sagulum*) reaching to the knee, under which was a tunic or shirt (*tunica*). A girdle or belt, and boots reaching half way to the knee completed the dress.

The light-armed soldiers (*miles levis armaturae*) had for their weapons of offense the bow and arrow (archers, *sagittarii*) or the sling (slingers, *funditores*). As a defense they seem to have used a small round shield.

(*c*) **Officers of the Army.** 1. The Commander-in-chief (*imperator*), who was at the same time governor of the province which formed the army's headquarters. 2. The staff officers, adjutants or lieutenants (*legatus*), appointed by the Roman senate, but practically chosen by the commander. Cæsar had ten *legati*, who were often assigned to the temporary command of troops either in an engagement, in winter-quarters, or on expeditions sent out by him. 3. The pay-master-general (*quaestor*), who managed the finances of the province, and in war the payment of the soldiers and the sale of booty and prisoners of war. There was but one quaestor with the commander-in-chief, and he was now and then entrusted with a command. 4. The tribunes of the soldiers (*tribunus militum*), of whom there were six belonging to each legion. They were chosen probably by Cæsar himself (though at an earlier period elected by the people) from young men of good birth (they belonged to the equestrian order), but generally of little military ability or experience. As a consequence they do not occupy a prominent position in the cam-

paign, being entrusted with the occasional command of small detachments or with some administrative duties. 5. The prefects or commanders (*praefectus*) were also of equestrian rank and were placed in command of the allied troops, for as a general thing the cavalry contributed by the native tribes was officered by Romans. 6. The centurions (*centurio*) were chosen from among the regular troops, there being 60 to each legion and six to each cohort. The centurions of a legion were not all of the same rank. There was a regular grade of promotion by which a centurion was advanced until he became the senior centurion of the legion (called *primipilus* or *primi pili centurio.*)* The centurions were the ordinary officers of the legion upon whom depended mainly the efficiency of the troops. 7. The decurion or sub-commander of cavalry (*decurio*), occupying a position inferior to the *praefectus* and commanding a small detachment of cavalry.

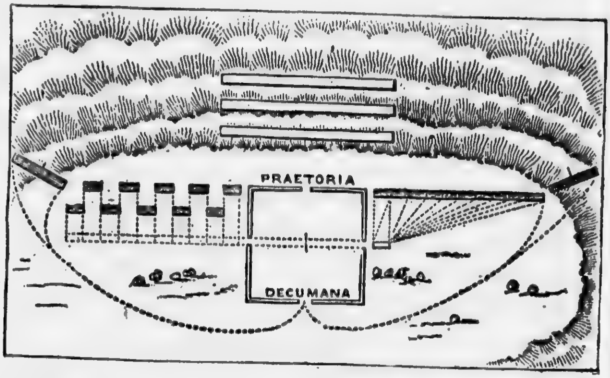
(*d*) **The Camp.** "A Roman army never halted for the night without entrenching itself. Towards the end of the day's march a detachment was sent out in front to select a spot for encampment. A favorite site was the slope of a hill, especially if wood, water and grass were abundant in i s neighborhood." The camp was square, the defenses consisting of a wall or rampart (*vallum*), and outside of this a trench or moat (*fossa*), from which much of the material for the wall was obtained. The tents (*tentoria*) of the soldiers were of skins (*pelles*). The camp had four gates (*porta*), those at the side being a little forward of the centre, and those in front (*i.e.* facing the enemy) and rear in the centre.† Before each gate

---

* The name was given at an earlier period when the army was divided into maniples rather than cohorts, and into three ranks (*hastati*, *principes* and *triarii*, the last being the veterans.) Each maniple had two centurions (senior and junior, *prior* and *posterior*) and the chief centurion was the senior centurion of the first maniple of the triarii. The name *pilus* was given to a maniple of the triarii.

† This last mentioned gate, on the side most remote from the enemy, was called the *porta decumana*.

a picket or outpost (*statio*) was placed to guard against surprise.‡



(*e*) **Baggage and Standards.** The heavy baggage (*impedimenta*), including the tents, hand mills for grinding corn and engines of war, were carried in wagons or on beasts of burden. Besides this each soldier had his pack (*sarcinae*) to carry. Besides his heavy armor (of which the helmet for convenience was hung round his neck) he carried provisions for two or three weeks, a vessel for cooking his grain when ground into meal, and some of the implements used in throwing up entrenchments—such as stakes, saws, spades, hatchets, and baskets. This pack he would carry upon one of the stakes over his left shoulder, the left arm bearing the shield and the right grasping his javelin. The weight of the pack would be as much as 45



‡ Other names given to these guards by Cæsar are *excubitores* (night guards), and *custodiae*, or *custodes* (watches).

pounds. Hence the soldier in this heavy marching order is called *impeditus*, when freed from his pack and in light marching order, *expeditus*.

The standards of the army included (1) the eagle (*aquila*), one to each legion, borne by the standard bearer of the legion (*aquilifer*) who was under the immediate command of the first



centurion of the legion; (2) the standard or ensign (*signum*), of which each *manipulus* had one, borne by a *signifer*, of different devices, to enable the soldier to distinguish his own place; and (3) the banner (*vexillum*), a square piece of colored cloth attached by a crosspiece to a pole, and serving as the standard for the cavalry and perhaps also for the auxiliaries, being also used for detachments of legionary soldiers sent out for special duties. A red *vexillum* was displayed from the general's quarters as a signal for battle. For this same purpose, as well as for other signals, a straight trumpet (*tuba*) was also used.

(*f*) **The Army on the March and in Action.** The army on the march (*agmen*) advanced in a single column, with the baggage of each legion immediately behind it. When near the enemy, the baggage of all the legions was thrown together along with the packs of the soldiers, who thus marched in fighting order. The vanguard is called *primum agmen*, the rear *novissimum agmen*.

When drawn up in line of battle (*acies*), each legion was generally arranged in three lines (*triplex acies*), four cohorts (the pick of the legion) in the first line, and three in each of the others. These were stationed something like the following order, so that the second line could come into action without



interfering with the first. The men stood 10 deep in the

cohort. Occasionally other arrangements are mentioned—the single line, the double line (*acies duplex*) the wedge-shaped (*cuneus*), and the square (*orbis*).

The right wing is called *dextrum cornu*, the left *sinistrum cornu*, the centre *media acies*. The cavalry and light-armed troops were stationed generally on the wings.

The place for drawing up the line of battle was by preference sloping ground, that the soldiers might have the advantage in making the charge and might throw their weapons down, not up.

In attacking a town three methods were employed. If weakly fortified, it might be taken by a sudden rush, the trench being filled up, the gates broken in, the walls undermined or torn down, and scaling ladders (*scalae*) brought up to the walls. At other times it was completely surrounded and the garrison starved out. The third method is the regular siege, carried on by means of certain siege works and engines (the artillery of the Romans). Of these siege works the chief one is the mound (*agger*), raised near the town and gradually growing higher and nearer the wall until it was on a level with it. The side remote from the town formed an inclined slope up which towers (*turres*) could be rolled, from the shelter of which missiles were hurled at the defenders until men working beneath could undermine or batter down the walls, or others could place bridges from the mound to the wall and rush across.

To protect those who were building the mound or battering down the wall various devices were used—the screen (*pluteus*), the shed or mantlet (*testudo* § lit. tortoise shell, *vinea* lit. vine-arbor.)

The battering ram (*aries*) was a huge beam tipped with iron, suspended from above, and set in motion from behind by pulling

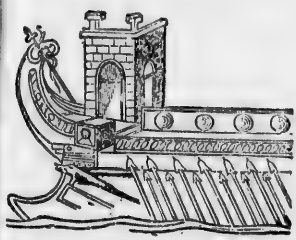
---

§ The term *testudo* was also used to describe a peculiar shelter formed by a body of soldiers holding their shields over their heads, thus forming a continuous cover, sloping towards the rear, so as to shed all missiles hurled down at the soldiers beneath.

it back, and then letting it swing forward with all the impetus it could be given.

Engines (*tormenta*) for hurling huge stones or darts were also employed.

(*g*) **Roman Vessels.** Those used in war were of two kinds, the ship of war or galley (*navis longa*) and the transport (*navis oneraria*). The former were long and narrow, rigged with sails, but at the same time equipped with rowers. A special feature was the beak (*rostrum*), a sharp projection at the bow covered with metal for running down an enemy's ship. We also read of towers being built on the decks from which missiles could be hurled on the enemy.





DE

1. Cum
uti supra
bantur, lit
quam tert
lum Roma
randi has
pacata Ga
quod ab
Germanos
Romani e
moleste fe
novis imp
Gallia a
homines f
qui minu
poterant.

2. His
in citerio

C. JULII CÆSARIS

COMMENTARII

DE BELLO GALLICO.

LIBER SECUNDUS.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia in hibernis, ita 1
uti supra demonstravimus, crebri ad eum rumores afferebantur, litterisque item Labieni certior fiebat, omnes Belgas, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus, contra populum Romanum conjurare, obsidesque inter se dare. Conju- 2
randi has esse causas: primum, quod vererentur, ne, omni pacata Gallia, ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur; deinde, 3
quod ab nonnullis Gallis sollicitarentur, partim qui, ut Germanos diutius in Gallia versari noluerant, ita populi Romani exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere in Gallia moleste ferebant; partim qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis imperiis studebant; ab nonnullis etiam, quod in 4
Gallia a potentioribus atque iis, qui ad conducendos homines facultates habebant, vulgo regna occupabantur, qui minus facile eam rem imperio nostro consequi poterant.

2. His nuntiis litterisque commotus, Caesar duas legiones 1
in citeriore Gallia novas conscripsit, et inita aestate, in

interiorem Galliam qui deduceret, Quintum Pedium lega-
2 tum misit. Ipse, cum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet,
3 ad exercitum venit. Dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque
Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea, quae apud eos
gerantur, cognoscant, seque de his rebus certiorem faciant.
4 Hi constanter omnes nuntiaverunt, manus cogi, exercitum
5 in unum locum conduci. Tum vero dubitandum non
6 existimavit, quin ad eos proficisceretur. Re frumentaria
comparata castra movet, diebusque circiter quindecim ad
fines Belgarum pervenit.

1 **3.** Eo cum de improviso celeriusque omni opinione
2 venisset, Remi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum
legatos, Iccium et Andecumborium, primos civitatis, mise-
runt qui dicerent, se suaque omnia in fidem atque in potes-
tatem populi Romani permittere: neque se cum Belgis
reliquis consensisse, neque contra populum Romanum
3 omnino conjurasse: paratosque esse et obsides dare, et
imperata facere, et oppidis recipere, et frumento ceterisque
4 rebus juvare: reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse,
Germanosque qui cis Rhenum incolant sese cum his con-
5 junxisse; tantumque esse eorum omnium furorem, ut ne
Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui
eodem jure et eisdem legibus utantur, unum imperium
unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant, deterrere po-
tuerint quin cum his consentirent.

1 **4.** Cum ab his quaereret, quae civitates quantaeque in
armis essent, et quid in bello possent, sic reperiebat:
plerosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis, Rhenumque
antiquitus traductos, propter loci fertilitatem ibi con-
2 sedisse, Gallosque, qui ea loca incolerent, expulisse, solos-
que esse, qui, patrum nostrorum memoria, omni Gallia

xata, Teutonos Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingredi pro-
buerint; qua ex re fieri, uti earum rerum memoria 3
agnam sibi auctoritatem, magnosque spiritus in re mili-
ri sumerent. De numero eorum omnia se habere explo- 4
ta Remi dicebant, propterea quod propinquitatibus
finitatibusque conjuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem
communi Belgarum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus
t, cognoverint. Plurimum inter eos Bellovacos et vir- 5
te, et auctoritate, et hominum numero, valere: hos
sse conficere armata millia centum; pollicitos ex eo
mero electa millia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium
bi postulare. Suessiones suos esse finitimos; latissimos 6
racissimosque agros possidere. Apud eos fuisse regem 7
stra etiam memoria Divitiacum, totius Galliae poten-
ssimum, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum, tum
iam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit: nunc esse regem
albam: ad hunc propter justitiam prudentiamque
tius belli summam omnium voluntate deferri: oppida
bere numero duodecim, polliceri millia armata quinqua-
nta; totidem Nervios, qui maxime feri inter ipsos 8
beantur longissimeque absint: quindecim millia Atre- 9
tes, Ambianos decem millia, Morinos viginti quinque
llia, Menapios novem millia, Caletos decem millia,
locasses et Viromanduos totidem, Aduatucos viginta
vem millia; Condrusos, Eburones, Caeroesos, Paemanos, 10
i uno nomine Germani appellantur, arbitrari ad quad-
ginta millia.

5. Caesar Remos cohortatus liberaliterque oratione 1
osecutus, omnem senatum ad se convenire, princi-
mque liberos obsides ad se adduci jussit. Quae omnia
his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Divitiacum 2

Aeduum magno opere cohortatus, docet quanto opere re
publicae communisque salutis intersit manus hostiu
distineri, ne cum tanta multitudine uno tempore conf
3 gendum sit. Id fieri posse, si suas copias Aedui in fin
Bellovacorum introduxerint, et eorum agros populari co
4 perint. His mandatis, eum ab se dimittit. Postqua
omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum coactas ad s
venire vidit, neque jam longe abesse ab iis, quos misera
exploratoribus et ab Remis cognovit, flumen Axonan
quod est in extremis Remorum finibus, exercitum tr
5 ducere maturavit, atque ibi castra posuit. Quae res
latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat, et po
eum quae essent tuta ab hostibus reddebat, et commeat
ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus ut sine periculo ad eu
6 portari posset, efficiebat. In eo flumine pons erat. I
praesidium ponit, et in altera parte fluminis Q. Titurii
Sabinum legatum cum sex cohortibus reliquit; castra
altitudinem pedum duodecim vallo fossaque duodevigin
pedum munire jubet.

1 **6**. Ab his castris oppidum Remorum, nomine Bibra
aberat millia passuum octo. Id ex itinere magno impe
Belgae oppugnare coeperunt. Aegre eo die sustentatu
2 est. Gallorum eadem atque Belgarum oppugnatio e
haec. Ubi circumjecta multitudine hominum totis moei
bus undique lapides in murum jaci coepti sunt, murusq
defensoribus nudatus est, testudine facta portas succedu
3 murumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiebat. N
cum tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conjicerent, in mu
4 consistendi potestas erat nulli. Cum finem oppugnan
nox fecisset, Iccius, Remus, summa nobilitate et grat
inter suos, qui tum oppido praeerat, unus ex iis

egati de pace ad Caesarem venerant, nuntium ad eum
nittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius susti-
nere non posse.

7. Eo de media nocte Caesar, isdem ducibus usus qui 1
untii ab Iccio venerant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios
t funditores Baleares subsidio oppidanis mittit; quorum 2
dventu et Remis cum spe defensionis studium propug-
nandi accessit, et hostibus eadem de causa spes potiundi
ppidi discessit. Itaque, paulisper apud oppidum morati 3
grosque Remorum depopulati, omnibus vicis aedificiisque,
uos adire potuerant, incensis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus
opiis contenderunt, et ab millibus passuum minus duobus
astra posuerunt; quae castra, ut fumo atque ignibus 4
ignificabatur, amplius millibus passuum octo in latitu-
inem patebant.

8. Caesar primo, et propter multitudinem hostium et 1
ropter eximiam opinionem virtutis, proelio supersedere
atuit; cotidie tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis 2
irtute posset et quid nostri auderent, periclitabatur. Ubi 3
ostros non esse inferiores intellexit, loco pro castris ad
ciem instruendam natura opportuno atque idoneo, — quod
s collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex planicie
litus tantum adversus in latitudinem patebat, quantum
oci acies instructa occupare poterat, atque ex utraque
arte lateris dejectus habebat, et, in fronte leniter fasti-
atus, paulatim ad planiciem redibat, — ab utroque latere
us collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum
uadringentorum, et ad extremas fossas castella consti-
uit, ibique tormenta collocavit, ne cum aciem instruxis- 4
et, hostes, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateri-
us pugnantes suos circumvenire possent. Hoc facto, 5

duabus legionibus quas proxime conscripserat in castris relictis, ut si quo opus esset, subsidio duci possent, reli quas sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit. Hoste item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxerant.

1 **9.** Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent, hostes exspectabant nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, u
2 impeditos aggrederentur, parati in armis erant. Interim proelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. Ul neutri transeundi initium faciunt, secundiore equitum
3 proelio nostris, Caesar suos in castra reduxit. Hoste protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contenderunt, quo
4 esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. Ibi vad repertis, partem suarum copiarum transducere cona sunt, eo consilio, ut, si possent, castellum, cui praeera Q. Titurius legatus, expugnarent, pontemque interscin
5 derent; si minus potuissent, agros Remorum popul rentur, qui magno nobis usui ad bellum gerendum eran commeatuque nostros prohiberent.

1 **10.** Caesar, certior factus ab Titurio omnem equita tum et levis armaturae Numidas, funditores sagittar
2 osque pontem traducit, atque ad eos contendit. Acrit in eo loco pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri flumine aggressi, magnum eorum numerum occiderun
3 Per eorum corpora reliquos audacissime transire conante multitudine telorum reppulerunt; primos, qui transiera
4 equitatu circumventos interfecerunt. Hostes, ubi et expugnando oppido et de flumine transeundo spem fefellisse intellexerunt, neque nostros in locum iniquiore progredi pugnandi causa viderunt, atque ipsos res fr mentaria deficere coepit, concilio convocato constituer

ptimum esse, domum suam quemque reverti, et, quorum
n fines primum Romani exercitum introduxissent, ad eos
efendendos undique convenirent, ut potius in suis, quam
n alienis finibus, decertarent, et domesticis copiis rei
rumentariae uterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis 5
ausis haec quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiacum
tque Aeduos finibus Bellovacorum appropinquare cog-
overant. His persuaderi ut diutius morarentur, neque
uis auxilium ferrent, non poterat.

11. Ea re constituta, secunda vigilia magno cum stre- 1
itu ac tumultu castris egressi, nullo certo ordine neque
nperio, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret
t domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt, ut consimilis
ugae profectio videretur. Hac re statim Caesar per 2
peculatores cognita insidias veritus, quod qua de causa
iscederent nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque
astris continuit. Prima luce confirmata re ab explora- 3
oribus, omnem equitatum, qui novissimum agmen mora-
etur, praemisit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculeium Cot-
am legatos praefecit. T. Labienum legatum cum legioni-
us tribus subsequi jussit. Hi novissimos adorti et multa 4
nillia passuum prosecuti, magnam multitudinem eorum
ugientium conciderunt, cum ab extremo agmine, ad quos
entum erat, consisterent, fortiterque impetum nostrorum
nilitum sustinerent, prioresque, quod abesse a periculo 5
iderentur, neque ulla necessitate neque imperio contine-
entur, exaudito clamore perturbatis ordinibus, omnes in
uga sibi praesidium ponerent. Ita sine ullo periculo tan- 6
am eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt, quantum
uit diei spatium; sub occasumque solis destiterunt, seque
n castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt.

1 **12.** Postridie ejus diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex
terrore ac fuga reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui proxim
Remis erant, exercitum duxit, et magno itinere [confecto
2 ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppug-
nare conatus, quod vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat,
propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem, paucis de-
3 fendentibus, expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis, vineas
agere quaeque ad oppugnandum usui erant comparar
4 coepit. Interim omnis ex fuga Suessionum multitudo i
5 oppidum proxima nocte convenit. Celeriter vineis ad oppi
dum actis, aggere jacto, turribusque constitutis, magnitu
dine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audie-
rant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti legatos ad Caesaren
de deditione mittunt, et petentibus Remis ut conserva
rentur impetrant.

1 **13.** Caesar, obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis atqu
ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus e
oppido traditis, in deditionem Suessiones accepit, exercitum
2 que in Bellovacos duxit. Qui cum se suaque omnia i
oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppid
Caesar cum exercitu circiter milli passuum quinque abesse
omnes majores natu, ex oppido egressi, manus ad Caesaren
tendere, et voce significare coeperunt, sese in ejus fiden
ac potestatem venire, neque contra populum Romanun
3 armis contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset cas
traque ibi poneret, pueri mulieresque ex muro passis man
bus suo more pacem ab Romanis petierunt.

1 **14.** Pro his Divitiacus—nam post discessum Belgarun
dimissis Aeduorum copiis, ad eum reverterat—facit verba
2 Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitat
3 Aeduae fuisse: impulsos a suis principibus, qui dicere

rduos, a Caesare in servitutem redactos, omnes indigni-
tes contumeliasque perferre, et ab Aeduis defecisse et
pulo Romano bellum intulisse. Qui ejus consilii prin- 4
es fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitatem
vitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non 5
lum Bellovacos, sed etiam pro his Aeduos, ut sua cle-
ntia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur. Quod si fecerit, 6
duorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificatu-
n, quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint,
stentare consuerint.

15. Caesar honoris Divitiaci atque Aeduorum causa 1
se eos in fidem recepturum et conservaturum dixit:
od erat civitas magna inter Belgas auctoritate
ue hominum multitudine praestabat, sescentos obsides
oscit. His traditis omnibusque armis ex oppido col- 2
is, ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervenit, qui se
que omnia sine mora dediderunt. Eorum fines Nervii 3
ingebant; quorum de natura moribusque Caesar cum
ereret, sic reperiebat: Nullum aditum esse ad eos 4
rcatoribus; nihil pati vini reliquarumque rerum ad
xuriam pertinentium inferri, quod iis rebus relangues-
re animos et remitti virtutem existimarent: esse ho- 5
nes feros magnæque virtutis, increpitare atque incusare
iquos Belgas, qui se populo Romano dedidissent, patri-
que virtutem projecissent; confirmare, sese neque lega- 6
missuros, neque ullam condicionem pacis accepturos.

16. Cum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, invenie- 1
ex captivis Sabim flumen ab castris suis non amplius
lia passuum decem abesse: trans id flumen omnes Ner- 2
s consedisse, adventumque ibi Romanorum exspectare
cum Atrebatibus et Viromanduis, finitimis suis (nam 3

his utrisque persuaserant, uti eandem belli fortunam exp
4 rirentur); exspectari etiam ab his Aduatucorum copi
5 atque esse in itinere: mulieres, quique per aetatem a
pugnam inutiles viderentur, in eum locum conjecisse, qu
propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

1 **17.** His rebus cognitis, exploratores centurionesq
2 praemittit, qui locum idoneum castris deligant. Cu
ex dediticiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesar
secuti una iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex ca
tivis cognitum est, eorum dierum consuetudine itiner
nostri exercitus perspecta, nocte ad Nervios pervenerun
atque his demonstrarunt inter singulas legiones impe
mentorum magnum numerum intercedere, neque esse qui
quam negotii, cum prima legio in castra venisset reliqua
que legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarci
3 adoriri; qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis, futurum
4 reliquae contra consistere non auderent. Adjuvab
etiam eorum consilium qui rem deferebant, quod Ner
antiquitus, cum equitatu nihil possent (neque enim ad h
tempus ei rei student, sed, quicquid possunt, pedestribu
valent copiis), quo facilius finitimorum equitatum, si pra
dandi causa ad eos venisset, impedirent, teneris arboribu
incisis atque inflexis, crebrisque in latitudinem ram
enatis et rubis sentibusque interjectis effecerant, ut inst
muri hae saepes munimenta praeberent, quo non mod
5 non intrari, sed ne perspici quidem posset. His rebus cu
iter agminis nostri impediretur, non omittendum sibi co
silium Nervii existimaverunt.

1 **18.** Loci natura erat haec, quem locum nostri cast
delegerant. Collis ab summo aequaliter declivis
2 flumen Sabim, quod supra nominavimus, vergebat.

o flumine pari acclivitate collis nascebatur, adversus
uic et contrarius, passus circiter ducentos infimus apertus,
b superiore parte silvestris, ut non facile introrsus per-
pici posset. Intra eas silvas hostes in occulto sese con- 3
inebant; in aperto loco secundum flumen paucae
tationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo
edum circiter trium.

19. Caesar equitatu praemisso subsequebatur omnibus 1
opiis; sed ratio ordoque agminis aliter se habebat, ac
elgae ad Nervios detulerant. Nam, quod ad hostes ap- 2
ropinquabat, consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones ex-
editas ducebat; post eas totius exercitus impedimenta 3
ollocarat; inde duae legiones, quae proxime conscriptae
rant, totum agmen claudebant, praesidioque impedimen-
s erant. Equites nostri, cum funditoribus sagittariisque 4
umen transgressi, cum hostium equitatu proelium com-
iserunt. Cum se illi identidem in silvas ad suos reci- 5
erent, ac rursus ex silva in nostros impetum facerent,
eque nostri longius, quam quem ad finem porrecta ac
oca aperta pertinebant, cedentes insequi auderent, interim
giones sex, quae primae venerant, opere dimenso castra
munire coeperunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exer- 6
itus ab iis, qui in silvis abditi latebant, visa sunt, quod
empus inter eos committendi proelii convenerat, ut intra
ilvas aciem ordinesque constituerant, atque ipsi sese
onfirmaverant, subito omnibus copiis provolaverunt im-
etumque in nostros equites fecerunt. His facile pulsis 7
proturbatis, incredibili celeritate ad flumen decucurre-
nt, ut paene uno tempore et ad silvas et in flumine et
m in manibus nostris hostes viderentur. Eadem autem 8
leritate adverso colle ad nostra castra atque eos, qui in
ere occupati erant, contenderunt

1 **20**. Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum
propondendum, quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurri
oporteret, signum tuba dandum, ab opere revocandi
milites, qui paulo longius aggeris petendi causa proces-
serant arcessendi, acies instruenda, milites cohortandi,
2 signum dandum. Quarum rerum magnam partem tem-
3 poris brevitas et successus hostium impediebat. His
difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio, scientia atque
usus militum, quod superioribus proeliis exercitati, quid
fieri oporteret, non minus commode ipsi sibi praescri-
bere, quam ab aliis doceri poterant; et quod ab opere
singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere,
4 nisi munitis castris, vetuerat. Hi propter propinquita-
tem et celeritatem hostium nihil jam Caesaris imperium
exspectabant sed per se, quae videbantur administrabant.

1 **21**. Caesar necessariis rebus imperatis ad cohortandos
milites, quam in partem fors obtulit, decucurrit, et ad
2 legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione
cohortatus, quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam
retinerent, neu perturbarentur animo, hostiumque impe-
3 tum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes abe-
rant, quam quo telum adjici posset, proelii committendi
4 signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi
5 causa profectus, pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta
fuit exiguitas, hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum
animus, ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed
etiam ad galeas induendas scutisque tegimenta detra-
6 henda tempus defuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in
partem casu devenit, quaeque prima signa conspexit, ad
haec constitit, ne in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus
dimitteret.

22. Instructo exercitu, magis ut loci natura dejectus- 1
que collis et necessitas temporis, quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, cum diversis legionibus, aliae alia in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque densissimis, ut ante demonstravimus, interjectis prospectus impediretur neque certa subsidia collocari, neque quid in quaque parte opus esset provideri, neque ab uno omnia imperia administrari poterant. Itaque, in tanta rerum 2
iniquitate, fortunae quoque eventus varii sequebantur.

23. Legionis nonae et decimae milites, ut in sinistra 1
parte acie constiterant, pilis emissis, cursu ac lassitudine exanimatos vulneribusque confectos Atrebates—nam his ea pars obvenerat—celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen compulerunt, et transire conantes insecuti gladiis magnam partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsi trans- 2
ire flumen non dubitaverunt, et in locum iniquum progressi, rursus resistentes hostes redintegrato proelio in fugam conjecerunt. Item alia in parte diversae 3
duae legiones, undecima et octava, profligatis Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore, in ipsis fluminis ripis proeliabantur. At totis fere a fronte 4
et ab sinistra parte nudatis castris, cum in dextro cornu legio duodecima et non magno ab ea intervallo septima constitisset, omnes Nervii confertissimo agmine, duce Boduognato, qui summam imperii tenebat, ad eum locum contenderunt; quorum pars aperto latere legiones 5
circumvenire, pars summum castrorum locum petere coepit.

24. Eodem tempore equites nostri levisque armaturae 1
pedites, qui cum iis una fuerant, quos primo hostium impetu pulsos dixeram, cum se in castra reciperent, adversis

hostibus occurrebant, ac rursus aliam in partem fugam
2 petebant: et calones, qui ab decumana porta ac summo jugo collis nostros victores flumen transisse conspexerant, praedandi causa egressi, cum respexissent et hostes in nostris castris versari vidissent, praecipites fugae sese
3 mandabant. Simul eorum, qui cum impedimentis veniebant, clamor fremitusque oriebatur, aliique aliam in par-
4 tem perterriti ferebantur. Quibus omnibus rebus permoti equites Treveri, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est singularis, qui auxilii causa ab civitate ad Caesarem missi venerant, cum multitudine hostium castra compleri nostra, legiones premi et paene circumventas teneri, calones, equites, funditores, Numidas diversos dissipatosque in omnes partes fugere vidissent, desperatis nostris rebus,
5 domum contenderunt; Romanos pulsos superatosque, castris impedimentisque eorum hostes potitos, civitati renuntiaverunt.

1 **25.** Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri, signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit, quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis signiferoque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo, P. Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto, ut jam se sustinere non posset; reliquos esse tardiores, et nonnullos ab novissimis deserto proelio excedere ac tela vitare; hostes neque a fronte ex inferiore loco subeuntes intermittere, et ab utroque latere instare, et rem esse in angusto vidit, neque ullum esse
2 subsidium, quod submitti posset, scuto ab novissimis

[uni] militi detracto, quod ipse eo sine scuto venerat, in
primam aciem processit, centurionibusque nominatim
appellatis, reliquos cohortatus milites signa inferre et
manipulos laxare jussit, quo facilius gladiis uti possent.
Cujus adventu spe illata militibus ac redintegrato animo, 3
cum pro se quisque in conspectu imperatoris etiam in
extremis suis rebus operam navare cuperet, paulum
hostium impetus tardatus est.

26. Caesar, cum septimam legionem, quae juxta con- 1
stiterat, item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum
monuit, ut paulatim sese legiones conjungerent, et conversa
signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto, cum alius alii sub- 2
sidium ferret, neque timerent ne aversi ab hoste circum-
venirentur, audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare coepe-
runt. Interim milites legionum duarum, quae in novissimo 3
agmine praesidio impedimentis fuerant, proelio nuntiato,
cursu incitato, in summo colle ab hostibus conspicieban-
tur, et T. Labienus, castris hostium potitus, et ex loco 4
superiore, quae res in nostris castris gererentur, con-
spicatus, decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit. Qui, 5
cum ex equitum et calonum fuga, quo in loco res esset,
quantoque in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator
versaretur, cognovissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui
fecerunt.

27. Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio est facta, 1
ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procubuissent,
scutis innixi proelium redintegrarent; tum calones, per-
territos hostes conspicati, etiam inermes armatis occurre-
runt; equites vero, ut turpitudinem fugae virtute delerent, 2
omnibus in locis pugnarunt quo se legionariis militibus
praeferrent. At hostes etiam in extrema spe salutis tantam 3

virtutem praestiterunt, ut, cum primi eorum cecidissent, proximi jacentibus insisterent, atque ex eorum corporibus
4 pugnarent; his dejectis, et coacervatis cadaveribus, qui superessent, ut ex tumulo tela in nostros conjicerent, et
5 pila intercepta remitterent: ut non nequiquam tantae virtutis homines judicari deberet ausos esse transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo redegerat.

1 **28**. Hoc proelio facto, et prope ad internecionem gente ac nomine Nerviorum redacto, majores natu, quos una cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuaria ac paludes conjectos dixeramus, hac pugna nuntiata, cum victoribus nihil
2 impeditum, victis nihil tutum arbitrarentur, omnium, qui supererant, consensu legatos ad Caesarem miserunt seque ei dediderunt: et, in commemoranda civitatis calamitate, ex sescentis ad tres senatores, ex hominum millibus sexaginta vix ad quingentos, qui arma ferre possent, sese
3 redactos esse dixerunt. Quos Caesar, ut in miseros ac supplices usus misericordia videretur, diligentissime conservavit, suisque finibus atque oppidis uti jussit, et finitimis imperavit, ut ab injuria et maleficio se suosque prohiberent.

1 **29.** Aduatuci, de quibus supra scripsimus, cum omnibus copiis auxilio Nerviis venirent, hac pugna nuntiata, ex
2 itinere domum reverterunt; cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis sua omnia in unum oppidum egregie natura
3 munitum contulerunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitu partibus altissimas rupes despectusque haberet, una ex parte leniter acclivis aditus in latitudinem non amplius ducentorum pedum relinquebatur: quem locum duplici

altissimo muro munierant; tum magni ponderis saxa et
praeacutas trabes in muro collocabant. Ipsi erant ex 4
Cimbris Teutonisque prognati; qui, cum iter in provinciam
nostram atque Italiam facerent, iis impedimentis, quae
secum agere ac portare non poterant, citra flumen Rhenum
depositis, custodiam ex suis ac praesidium sex millia homi-
num una reliquerunt. Hi post eorum obitum multos 5
annos a finitimis exagitati cum aliis bellum inferrent,
alias illatum defenderent, consensu eorum omnium pace
facta, hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt.

30. Ac primo adventu exercitus nostri crebras ex oppido 1
excursiones faciebant, parvulisque proeliis cum nostris
contendebant; postea vallo pedum duodecim in circuitu 2
quindecim millium crebrisque castellis circummuniti,
oppido sese continebant. Ubi vineis actis, aggere ex- 3
structo, turrim procul constitui viderunt, primum irridere
ex muro, atque increpitare vocibus, quod tanta machinatio
ab tanto spatio institueretur: quibusnam manibus aut 4
quibus viribus praesertim homines tantulae staturae—nam
plerumque hominibus Gallis prae magnitudine corporum
suorum brevitas nostra contemptui est—tanti oneris tur-
rim moturos sese confiderent?

31. Ubi vero moveri, et appropinquare moenibus vide- 1
runt, nova atque inusitata specie commoti, legatos ad
Caesarem de pace miserunt, qui ad hunc modum locuti:
Non existimare Romanos sine ope divina bellum gerere, 2
qui tantae altitudinis machinationes tanta celeritate pro-
movere possent; se suaque omnia eorum potestati permit- 3
tere, dixerunt. Unum petere ac deprecari: si forte pro 4
sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audi-
rent, statuisset Aduatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis

5 despoliaret. Sibi omnes fere finitimos esse inimicos ac suae virtuti invidere; a quibus se defendere traditis armis
6 non possent. Sibi praestare, si in eum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortunam a populo Romano pati, quam ab his per cruciatum interfici, inter quos dominari consuessent.

1 **32**. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Se magis consuetudine sua quam merito eorum civitatem conservaturum,
2 si prius, quam murum aries attigisset, se dedidissent; sed deditionis nullam esse condicionem, nisi armis traditis. Se id, quod in Nerviis fecisset, facturum, finitimisque imperaturum, ne quam dediticiis populi Romani injuriam
3 inferrent. Re nuntiata ad suos, quae imperarentur,
4 facere dixerunt. Armorum magna multitudine de muro in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, jacta, sic ut prope summam muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum adaequarent, et tamen circiter parte tertia, ut postea perspectum est, celata atque in oppido retenta, portis patefactis, eo die pace sunt usi.

1 **33**. Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militesque ex oppido exire jussit, ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus
2 injuriam acciperent. Illi ante inito, ut intellectum est, consilio, quod, deditione facta nostros praesidia deducturos aut denique indiligentius servaturos crediderant, partim, cum his, quae retinuerant et celaverant, armis, partim scutis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intextis, quae subito, ut temporis exiguitas postulabat, pellibus induxerant, tertia vigilia, qua minime arduus ad nostras munitiones ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis repentino
3 ex oppido eruptionem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperarat, ignibus significatione facta, ex proximis castel-

lis eo concursum est, pugnatumque ab hostibus ita acriter 4
est, ut a viris fortibus, in extrema spe salutis, iniquo loco,
contra eos, qui ex vallo turribusque tela jacerent, pugnari
debuit, cum in una virtute omnis spes salutis consisteret.
Occisis ad hominum millibus quattuor, reliqui in oppidum 5
rejecti sunt. Postridie ejus diei refractis portis, cum jam 6
defenderet nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris, sec-
tionem ejus oppidi universam Caesar vendidit. Ab his, 7
qui emerant, capitum numerus ad eum relatus est millium
quinquaginta trium.

34. Eodem tempore a Publio Crasso, quem cum legione 1
una miserat ad Venetos, Venellos, Osismios, Curiosolitas,
Esubios, Aulercos, Redones, quae sunt maritimae civi-
tates Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnes eas
civitates in dicionem potestatemque populi Romani esse
redactas.

35. His rebus gestis, omni Gallia pacata, tanta hujus 1
belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est, uti ab iis nationibus,
quae trans Rhenum incolerent, mitterentur legati ad
Caesarem, qui se obsides daturas, imperata facturas,
pollicerentur. Quas legationes Caesar, quod in Italiam 2
Illyricumque properabat, inita proxima æstate ad se
reverti jussit. Ipse in Carnutes, Andes Turonesque, quae 3
civitates propinquae his locis erant, ubi bellum gesserat,
legionibus in hibernacula deductis in Italiam profectus
est. Ob easque res ex litteris Caesaris dies quindecim 4
supplicatio decreta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.

DE BELLO GALLICO.

IN THE NOTES THE FOLLOWING ABBREVIATIONS ARE USED:

App.—The sections of Appendix I. following the Vocabulary and entitled 'Hints and Suggestions for the Translation of Caesar's Latin.'

RC.—The sections of Part III. of Robertson and Carruthers' Primary Latin Book.

BA.—Bradley's Arnold's Latin Prose Composition.

HF.—The pages and sections of Henderson and Fletcher's First Latin Book.

H.—Harkness' Standard Latin Grammar.

AG.—Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar (Revised Edition).

c.—Chapter (of the same book unless otherwise stated).

trans.—translate or translation.

lit.?—where a free rendering has been given, to call attention to the literal translation.

fn.—footnote.

p.—page.

cf.—compare.

Where Caesar's style or usage is referred to, the *De Bello Gallico* alone is meant.

NOTES ON BOOK II.

For the events described in the preceding book see Introduction, § III., page x.

Chap. 1–35.—Caesar's campaign against the Belgae.

1. *Caesar learns that the Belgae are preparing to resist him.*

CAP. I.

1. **cum esset,** etc.,—At the end of Bk.I. we read that Caesar left his army for the winter among the Sequani (see map) under the charge of his chief officer Labienus, while he himself went to hither Gaul, the province where he used to spend each winter attending to its administration. (For Caesar's provinces see Introduction, p. ix., and the map, p. xi.) **hibernis,**—regularly of an army's quarters, so that many editions omit the words here. But Caesar probably had some troops with him. **ita uti,**—lit. 'in such a way as,' freely, 'as.' **supra,**—referring to last lines of Bk.I. **afferebantur,**—impf. denoting repeated action, so *fiebat.* Trans. 'kept coming in,' (App.26.*c*.), and add 'repeatedly' to the trans. of *fiebat.* **Labieni,**—we should say 'from,' not 'of.' **Belgas...conjurare,**—acc. and infin. after *certior fiebat.* App.34. (RC.101.*b*. HF.109.1.) **quam...dixeramus,**—lit. 'which we had stated to be,' etc.; freely, 'who, as we have said, form,' etc. The reference is to Bk.I.c.1. where we are told that Gaul is divided into three parts, inhabited respectively by the *Belgae*, *Galli* or *Celtae*, and *Aquitani.*

The indic. mood shows this is a parenthetic addition by the writer, not part of Labienus' report. (RC.II.215.*e*. HF.207. 4.N.2.) Notice that *quam* agrees with *partem*, not with its antecedent *Belgas*. (RC.93.ii.) **inter se dare,**—'were giving to one another,' or 'exchanging.'

2. **Conjurandi...causas,**—'that the reasons for...were as follows (lit. these).' The acc. and infin. shows that he is still quoting Labienus' information; so too the subjunctives *vererentur* and *sollicitarentur*, for which see RC.99.*g*.i. HF. 206.4. **ne...adduceretur,**—'lest,' etc. (RC.99.*a*.1.ii. HF. 185.3.) **pacata Gallia,**—abl. absol.; trans. by clause w. 'when,' or 'after.' App.5.*a*.ii. *Gallia* here is but one of the three divisions of *Gallia* three lines above, and in the first line still a different force is found. See Vocabulary under *Gallia*. **ad,**—'against.'

3. **partim qui,**—lit. 'partly (by those) who'; freely, 'some of whom'; in which case trans. *partim qui* below by 'while others.' **ut...ita,**—lit. 'as...so'; freely, omit 'as,' and replace 'so' by 'and in the same way.' **Germanos versari,** —trans. by 'for' and infin., or by 'that...should.' Notice that the indicatives here and to the end of the chapter show that Caesar is giving facts known to himself, and not reporting Labienus' statements. Cf. on *dixeramus*, § 1. **hiemare.**— trans. by 'that...should.' **mobilitate,**—trans. by 'though,' or 'by reason of.' (RC.85.*m*. HF.71.3.) **novis imperiis,**— dat.; freely, 'a change of government'; lit.?

4. **ab nonnullis,**—a third class in addition to those of § 3. Supply the verb *sollicitarentur*, or rather perhaps, on account of the change of mood throughout, *sollicitabantur*. **potentioribus,**—used substantively. **conducendos,**—'take into their pay.' For gerundive constr. see App.40. (RC.104.*b*. HF.170.3.) **vulgo regna occupabantur,**—'royal power was constantly being seized'; the plur. *regna* because of the many states in which this happened. **rem,**—'end *or* object.' **imperio nostro,**—trans. by 'under.' (RC.85.*b*. HF.82.1.)

N.B.—Position of *esset*, §1., and *conjurandi*, §2. [Generally in Caesar, the first words of a sentence form a connecting link in the thought, by beginning the new sentence with something known to us from the preceding one, and then leading up to the new matter. This is clear at the beginning of § 2. In the case of *esset* there seems direct reference to the last words of Bk.I., *ipse in citeriorem Galliam profectus est;* 'and when he *was* in Gaul.'] The three meanings of *Gallia*, §§1.2. Agreement of relative with predicate noun, §1. [RC.93.ii. BA.83. H.445.4. AG.199.] Tense of *dixeramus*, §1. [The change from the perfect that we should expect seems due to Caesar's making the time of the action in the parenthetic clause relative to the time of the events just mentioned; these events were subsequent to the writing of the statement in Bk.I., which is thus regarded as a completed work.] The use of *inter se*, §1. [This is the Latin substitute for a reciprocal pronoun. Generally, as here, *inter se*='one another' with some preposition.] *Ad eos* for *ad se*, § 2. [The slight irregularity, often occurring in Caesar, seems to arise here from his writing from his own, not the Gauls', point of view.] Change from indirect to direct narration, §3. *Ut* with indic. §§1.3. *Nolo* and *moleste fero* with acc. and infin. §3. Change in construction, §4. [We might have expected a third *partim qui*. The change is due less to desire for variety than to the difficulty of continuing the relative clause so as to bring out the desired meaning. The *nonnullis* are of course the *potentioribus*.] The plural of an abstract noun, *regna*, §4. [RC. 54.e. H.130.2. AG.75.c.] The use of the imperf. throughout.

2, 3. ***Raising two new legions, Caesar advances into the country of the Belgae, where the Remi join him.***

CAP. II.

1. **duas legiones,**—Caesar had already six legions. **inita aestate,**—abl. absol.; freely, 'at the beginning of summer'; lit.? These, with the following words, depend on *deduceret*. **interiorem,**—'central,' *i.e.* north of the province, but still near the Alps. **qui deduceret,**—trans. as in App.29.*b*. The antecedent is *Pedium*. For the mood see RC.II.25. HF.184.1.

2. **pabuli,**—so as to allow the cavalry and baggage to

move. **inciperet,**—'there was beginning.' The grammatical subj. is *copia*.

3. **negotium,**—freely, 'instructions,' or more lit. 'a commission.' **finitimi Belgis,**—'neighbors of,' more lit. 'adjacent to.' **uti cognoscant,**—trans. as in App.29.*b*. (RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.) **ea quae,**—App.12.*b*.N.B. **gerantur,**—for mood see RC.99.*e*. HF.206.4. **se,**—referring to the subj. of *dat*. App.14.*b*.

4. **manus,**—evidently smaller bodies which went to make up the *exercitum*. **cogi, conduci,**—note the tense. App. 84.*d*.

5. **Tum vero,**—*vero* emphasizes *tum* and can be translated only by emphasizing 'then.' **dubitandum,**—App.41.34.*c*. Trans. 'he must not hesitate to set out (*or* delay his departure).' **quin proficisceretur,**—lit. 'so that he should not set out.' (RC.99.*b*.i.)

6. **movet,**—'breaks up.' **diebus,**—abl. of time *within* which. (RC.85.*b*. HF.82.2.)

N.B.—Trans. use of *ineo*, §1. [So always in Caesar; but Cicero in time phrase uses it intransitively, e.g. *ineunte aestate*.] Subj. with *cum primum*, §2. [Usually w. indic., especially when a point (rather than, as here, a period) of time is indicated. Here the causal sense may predominate over the temporal. The other passages where *cum primum* occurs are in Bk.III.c.9. and c.11.] Syntax of *gerantur*, §3. [As the antecedent *ea* shows, this is a relative, not an interrogative clause.] *Dubito*=hesitate, with *quin*, §5. [With this meaning the regular construction is the pres. inf.; *quin* is regularly used when *dubito*=doubt. RC.II.156. BA.130-133. H.504.3.2. AG.332.*g*.]

CAP. III.

1. **Eo,**—adverb. **omni opinione,**—lit. 'than all expectation'; freely, 'than any one had expected.'

2. **ex Belgis,**—trans. by 'of'; with *proximi*. **Galliae,**—dat.; used in limited sense of c.1. §2. **legatos,**—'as ambassadors,' in apposition w. *Iccium*, etc. **primos,**—as subst. =*principes*.

qui dicerent,—trans. like *qui deduceret*, c.2. § 2. **se... permittere,**—the subject *se* of the infin. is not expressed because of the awkwardness of the double use of the same word as subj. and obj. It is expressed w. the next infin. Note the tense of *permittere*. **neque,**—'and...not.' **conjurasse,**—a contracted form for *conjuravisse*. (RC.66.)

3. **et obsides,**—*et* is lit. 'both'; omit in trans. **imperata,**—'his bidding.' **oppidis,**—we should say 'into their towns'; Latin says 'in' (or rather 'with) their towns.' (RC.85.*a*.ii.*g*.) The object 'him' is easily supplied from the context.

4. **incolant,**—for mood see RC.99.*e*. HF.206.4. **sese,**—object of *conjunxisse*, and referring to *Germanos*. **cum his,**—referring to *Belgas*. English says 'they join us,' Latin 'they join themselves with us.'

5. **eorum,**—is not partitive gen. after *omnium*. **ne... quidem,**—with the emphasized word between. In English 'not' will go with the verb. **Suessiones,**—as *consanguineos* shows, is acc., not nom.; it is the object of *deterrere*. **qui ...utantur,**—as the clause tells why they might have been expected to act differently, trans. by 'although they,' etc., and for the mood see RC.99.*i*.iv. HF.196.8. **isdem,**—for *eisdem*. (RC.61.) **unum...habeant,**—in English supply a connective 'and'; the verb is co-ordinate w. *utantur*. **quin...consentirent,**—'from combining'; cf. on c.2. § 5. (RC.99.*b*.i. HF.185.2.N.)

N.B.—Relative clause of purpose, § 2. [cf.c.2. § 2.] Change of mood in indirect discourse, §§ 2-5. [Of the subjunctives, only *incolant* represents an original indic.; the others are in no sense influenced by being in *oratio obliqua*.] Omission of pronominal subj. of infin., § 2. [Not infrequent in the best Latin writers, when it is easily understood from the context. Here the omission is practically unavoidable on account of the necessity for expressing the object *se*.] *Paratus* w. infin., § 3. [Less common than with *ad* and gerund or gerundive. Caesar has it also w. *ut* and subj., e.g. c.9. § 2.] The abl. of means, *oppidis, frumento*, § 3. Tenses of subj. in §§ 4.5. [Although the principal verb is in a secondary tense, the original primary tenses are retained throughout, as is often the

case, especially for the sake of emphasis or vividness. RC.107.*a*.ii. H.525.1. Notice especially the perf. subj. *potuerint*, in a result clause. This, where it is not the true perfect, is used chiefly to call attention to the independent fact rather than to dwell on the relation of cause and effect. RC.II.39. BA.118. AG.287.*c*.R.] *Quin* and subj. w. *deterreo*. [In Bk.I.c.17. and 31. *deterreo* in affirmative sentences has *ne* and subj. Here the sentence is negative, because of *ne...quidem*.] *Ipsis*, for *se*, § 5. [Doubtless because of the emphasis here desired.]

---

4. *The strength and numbers of the Belgae.*

CAP. IV.

1. **his,**—the *legatos* of c.3. § 1. **quantaeque,**—trans. freely by 'and how large they were' after *in armis essent*. **quid... possent,**—'what was their strength.' See note on c.8. § 2. For the subj. *essent* and *possent* see RC.99.*d*. HF.176.2. For the case of *quid* see RC.88.*e*. **sic,**—'as follows.'

Germanis,—the truth of this statement is uncertain. Their language seems to have been Gallic, not German. **Rhenum,**—depending on *trans* in *traductos*. (RC.II.72. HF.96.3.) **loci, loca,**—'country.' **incolerent,**—for the mood see RC.99.*e*. HF.206.4.

2. **solos esse,**—'were the only ones.' **memoria,**—time within which; trans. after *omni...vexata*. **omni Gallia,**—*i.e.* all the rest of Gaul. As both the Province and Aquitania were overrun (according to Livy), Caesar cannot be referring to Celtic Gaul alone. **Teutonos,**—see Introduction, p. viii. **ingredi,**—'from entering.' **prohibuerint,**—for the mood see RC.II.35. HF.188.4.

3. **qua...fieri,**—'the result of this was'; lit. 'from which circumstance it was coming about.' **memoria,**—trans. by 'because of'; cf. on *mobilitate*, c.1. § 3.

magnam...sumerent,—freely, 'they were putting on airs of superiority in matters of war'; lit. 'they were taking on themselves (*or* assuming) great importance and great pride.'

4. **omnia habere explorata,**—'had complete information'; lit.? **conjuncti,**—with causal force, 'as they were,' etc. **quisque,**—implying each tribe, but the masc. sing. refers specially to the deputy representing the tribe. **ad,**—'for.' **pollicitus sit,**—for subj. see on *essent*, § 1. **cognoverint,**—'they knew,' or 'they had learned.' For the mood see RC.99.*g*.i. HF.206.4.

5. **plurimum valere,**—'were the strongest.' **virtute,**—for the abl. see RC.85.*d*. **conficere,**—'muster,' 'put in the field.' **armata millia,**—lit. 'armed thousands'; freely, 'thousand armed men.'

pollicitos,—infin., supplying *esse*. **electa,**—supply *millia*; 'picked troops.' **sibi,**—trans. by 'for.'

6. **suos,**—*i.e.* of the Remi.

7. **fuisse,**—notice the change later on to *esse*. **memoria,**—as in § 2. **Galliae,**—trans. by 'in'; lit.? **potentissimum,**—add in trans. 'man,' or 'king.' **cum...tum,**—see Vocabulary under *cum*. **partis,**—like *Britanniae*, depending on *imperium*.

summam,—not the adjective. **omnium voluntate,**—'by common consent,' lit.? **deferri,**—notice the tense. **numero,**—for the abl. see RC.85.*d*.; better omitted in trans.

8. **totidem,**—object of *polliceri* understood. **maxime feri,**—'the fiercest'; notice the form of the superl.; for the case see RC.79.*c*.i. HF.90.2. **ipsos,**—the Belgae. *Inter ipsos* goes w. *habeantur*. **longissime,**—'farthest,' at least towards the north. In Bk.I.c.1. Caesar says that one reason of the warlike character of the Belgae was their remoteness from the refining influences of civilization.

9. **Atrebates,**—with all these nouns supply *polliceri*.

10. **qui...appellantur,**—for the fact cf. c.3. § 4. The mood shows that this is an addition by Caesar to the statement of the Remi; cf. on *noluerant*, c.1. § 3. **uno,**—'common.' **arbitrari,**—the subject is *se*, *i.e.* the Remi. Supply *polliceri*, so that *Condrusos polliceri millia* will depend on

arbitrari; or if a positive statement is avoided because these tribes were not represented at the conference, supply *posse conficere* instead of *polliceri*. **ad,**—'about.'

N.B.—Tense of *quaereret* and *reperiebat*, § 1. [A series of questions is implied; cf. our expression 'in the course of his inquiries.'] Tense of *incolerent*, § 1. as compared w. *incolant*, c.3. § 4. [Here it represents an original *incolebant*.] Relative clause of characteristic, § 2. Infin. w. *prohibeo*. [The only construction in Caesar.]

The expression *habere explorata*, § 4. [The meaning is not the same as that of *exploravisse*. Such phrases as the former (from which arose the use of the modern auxiliary 'have') call special attention to the continuance of an act already past; they have always the effect of two verbs, not one; here *e.g.* the force is 'they had inquired into the matter and were in possession of information.']

The use of *propterea quod*, § 4. [It is more rhetorical than the simple *quod*, and for this reason probably, Caesar very soon dropped it in his composition of the Commentaries. It occurs 14 times in Bk.I., and once each in Bks.II.III.IV.V. and VII.] Tense of *cognoverint*, § 4. [cf. N.B. to c.3. § 5.] Abl. of cause, § 3 and of specification, §§ 5.7. The phrase *armata millia*, § 5. [Only once, Bk.IV.c.1., does Caesar use the genitive *millia armatorum* in similar phrases.] The difference between *fines* and *agros*, § 6. [Several times we have these words brought together, with the same reference in *fines* to *extent*, and in *agri* to *character* of territory.] *Cum...tum*, § 7. Irregular use of *nunc*, § 7. [The retention of this word from the direct form emphasizes the contrast, also brought out by *fuisse* and *esse*.] The superlative *maxime feri*, § 8. [The only form found.] The parenthetic clause in indic., § 10. The use of *ad* w. numerals, § 10. [Used by Caesar and other historians, practically as an adverb = *circiter*.]

---

5. *Caesar sends the Aedui against the Bellovaci, to divide the enemy's forces, and himself takes up a strong position on the further bank of the Axona.*

CAP. V.

1. **oratione prosecutus,**—'having addressed,' lit.? **senatum,**—a Roman term given to the council of the Remi. **obsides,**—'as hostages'; in apposition with *liberos*. **Quae omnia,**—'all this.' App.11.*b*. So in § 5.

2. **Divitiacum,**—not the man mentioned in c.4. § 7. **cohortatus,**—trans. by clause co-ordinate with *docet*. App.37.a.N.B. **quanto opere . . . intersit,**—'how important it is for, etc.' (RC.99.*d*. HF.176.2.) **rei publicae,**—'the interests of the state,' *i.e.* of the Roman power. **communis,**—*i.e.* of both Romans and Aedui. For the genitives with *intersit* see RC. II.63. HF.166.3. **distineri,**—'that . . . be kept, etc.,' or 'for . . . to be kept, etc.' App.35.*a*. **ne confligendum sit,**—'that he might not have to, *or* be obliged to, etc.' App.41. For the subj. see RC.99.*a*. HF.183.2. For the impersonal pass. see App.24. (RC.96.*b*. HF.164.2.)

3. **id . . . posse,**—depending on *docet*, § 2.; 'that this could be done,' referring to *manus distineri*. **suas,**—referring to *Aedui*. App.14.*d*. **introduxerint,**—freely, 'would lead'; so *coeperint*. The perf. subj. stands in primary sequence after *docet* for the future perf. indic. of the actual words. (RC.99.*h*.iii.; 107.*b*. HF.206.4.; 207.7.)

4. **His mandatis,**—'having given these instructions'; *his* is neuter. **coactas,**—participle; trans. by clause co-ordinate with *venire*. App.37.*a*.N.B. **ad,**—'against.' **vidit,**—not of literal sight here. **neque jam,**—'and no longer.' **abesse,**—the subject is *copias*.

ab iis exploratoribus,—with *cognovit*, not *abesse*. Trans. *iis* by 'the.' App.12.*a*. **flumen,**—depending on *trans* of *traducere*. (RC.II.72. HF.96.3.) **quod,**—taking its gender from *flumen* not *Axonam*. **extremis,**—*i.e.* from the Roman province. **ibi,**—*i.e.* on the north side of the river.

5. **Quae res,**—'this movement, *or* this position,' **et . . . et,**—both . . . and,' but, as often, 'both' is better omitted. **ripis,**—'by means of.' **post . . . essent,**—'his rear,' lit. 'what was behind him.' For the subj. see RC.99.*c*. HF. 188.4. **commeatus . . . . ut . . . . posset efficiebat,**—'made it possible for supplies to be, etc.,' lit. 'brought it about that, etc.' For the subj. see RC.99.*b*. HF.187.2.

6. **In,**—'over.' **altera parte,**—*i.e.* the south side. **In**

altitudinem,—'in height,' or freely, 'high.' This applies only to *vallo;* with *fossa duodeviginti* supply 'in breadth' or 'wide.' **pedum,**—modifying *vallo* not *altitudinem.* (RC. 81.*e.* HF.130.7.) **munire,**—trans. as though passive. Often with *jubeo* the accusative (here *milites*) is omitted, when easily gathered from the context; so in English, 'he gives orders to fortify.'

N.B.—Apposition in Latin. [*obsides*, § 1. Regularly without a sign of apposition, such as our 'as.'] Construction with *interest*, § 2. [RC.II.63. HF.103.3. BA.310. H.408. AG.222.] Use of *ad*, § 4. [The idea of approach, not hostility, is uppermost, hence *ad*, not *adversus.*] *Neque* as connective, § 4. [This is regularly used in Latin in preference to *et non*, even when, as here, *non* does not belong to the leading verb of the clause.] Two accusatives with *traduco*, § 4. [RC.II.72. HF.96.3. BA.229.Obs. H.376. AG.239.*b.*] *Quae res muniebat*, § 5. [The natural expression would have been *qua re muniebatur*, but with this another ablative, *ripis*, would have been awkward. The active is not therefore used for vividness, as Livy might have used it.] The subj. in relative clauses of characteristic. [*essent*, § 5. The phrase is purposely indefinite, = all such parts as were (or whatever parts were). RC.II.34. HF.188.4. BA.503. H. 503. AG.320.] *Efficio ut* and subj. § 5. [In this case the subj. seems to be clearly consecutive, although as a rule the idea of purpose is as prominent as the idea of result.] The plural *commeatus*, § 5. [Only in two other passages does Caesar use the plur.; here the reason may be found in the plural *civitatibus*, *i.e.* the supplies were from several sources. For this common idiom cf. N.B. to *regna*, c.1. § 4.] The omission of the accus. with *jubeo* and infin., § 6. [Not infrequent with the active inf. where no obscurity results.]

6, 7. *The Belgae attack Bibrax, a town of the Remi. When Caesar sends help to the town, the Belgae abandon the siege and come against Caesar's camp.*

CAP. VI.

1. **nomine,**—RC.85.*d.* **millia,**—RC.83.*c.* HF.69.9. **ex itinere,**—'on the march,' or freely, 'as they passed'; lit.

'from the march,' *i.e.* just turning aside for a rapid assault and not stopping for a regular siege. **magno impetu,**—'with great violence *or* impetuosity.' (RC.85.*e.* HF.71.3.) **sustentatum est,**—for the impersonal pass. see App.24. (RC.96.*b.* HF.164.2.) Freely, 'they held out.'

2. **Gallorum,** etc.,—'the mode of attack among the G., (which is) the same as among the B., is as follows'; or more freely, 'the G., just like the B., assault a place in the following way.'

circumjecta, facta,—trans. these by clauses co-ordinate with *coepti sunt* and *succedunt* respectively. **totis moenibus,**—'all around the fortifications.' For the abl. see RC.85.*k*.ii. HF.85.3. **jaci coepti sunt,**—lit. 'have begun to be thrown.' (RC.72.*a.*) Trans. freely by active. **murusque,**—*que* here ='and so.' **defensoribus,**—trans. the abl. by 'of.' (RC. 85.*h.* HF.158.2.)

3. **Quod,**—'this'; the plan described in § 2. **tum,**—'on this occasion.' He returns from the general description to his narrative of the attack on Bibrax. **cum,**—'since *or* as.' **conjicerent,**—for the plur. verb with a sing. collective noun see RC.79.*a.*i. **consistendi...nulli,**—lit. 'there was for no one the power of standing,' freely, 'no one was able to,' etc. **nulli,**—with the force of *nemini*. For the case see RC.82.*g.* HF.120.3.

4. **finem fecisset,**—'had put an end to,' lit.? **summa nobilitate,**—'a man of the highest rank.' (RC.85.*c.* HF. 131.9.) *Summa* goes also with *gratia*. **suos,**—'his countrymen.' **oppido,**—for the dat. see RC.II.56. HF.120.2. **ex,**—'of.' **legati,**—'as ambassadors.' The reference is to c.3. § 1. **nuntium,**—'word,' not 'a messenger,' for, as c.7. § 1. shows, there were more than one of these. **nisi...posse,**—depending on the idea of statement in *nuntium mittit*. (RC. 106.*a.* HF.209.1.) **sibi, sese,**—either Iccius, or all in the town, whom Iccius represents. **sustinere,**—here intransitive, 'hold out.'

N.B.—Emphatic position of *aegre*, § 1. Abl. of time when, approaching the conception of time how long, *eo die*, § 1. The impersonal passive construction, *sustentatum est*, § 1. [RC.96.*b*. HF.164.2. BA. 217. H.301.1. AG.146.*c*.] *Haec*='as follows,' § 2. Abl. of place where, *totis moenibus*, § 2. [With *totus* the preposition is regularly omitted. RC.85.*k*.ii. H.425.2. AG.258.*f*. The usual force of the local abl. w. *totus* is 'throughout.' By some *moenibus* is regarded as the dat.='with reference to,' with *circumjecta*.] *Que*='and so,' § 2. [It can thus be used of actions separated in point of time and representing not so much co-ordinate ideas as different stages in an action.] The use of *coepti sunt*, § 2. [With active or deponent inf. *coepi* is used, with the passive inf. *coeptus sum*. RC.72.*a*. BA.216. H.297.I.1. AG.143.*a*.] Tense of *fiebat*, § 3. [Of what was in process of being done, the imperf. being the tense of description.] Collective noun with verb in plural, § 3. [The many individuals are in the writer's mind, not the crowd as a whole. RC.II.11. BA.30. H.461.1. AG.205.*c*.] *Nulli*, as the dat. of *nemo*, § 3. [Regularly for the gen. and abl. of *nemo*, and often for the *dat*., those cases of *nullus* are used.] Abl. of characteristic, § 4. [There is an irregularity in the abl. being attached directly to the proper noun, and not, as is the rule, to some such word as *homo* or *vir*. Here the abl. may attach itself to *Remus*, as a class name.] Indirect narration, § 4. [Any verb or phrase that virtually implies that something was said, is in Latin sufficient for introducing any or all kinds of reported utterance.] The dative with a verb of sending, *sibi*, § 4. [The idea of 'for the benefit of' (dat. of interest) predominates over that of 'motion towards.'] Force of *sub* in compounds, §§ 1.2.4. [In § 2. *sub* means 'under' in a literal sense, in §§ 1. and 4. in a transferred sense.]

CAP. VII.

1. **Eo,**—to Bibrax. **de media nocte,**—'soon after midnight.' **isdem ducibus usus,**—'using the same men as guides'; so also trans. *nuntii* by 'as.' For *isdem*=*eisdem* see RC.61. **Numidas,** etc.,—for these light-armed auxiliaries see Introduction, p. xvi. **subsidio oppidanis,**—'to aid the townsmen,' lit.? App.3.*c*. (RC.II.75. HF.134.1.)

2. **et...et,**—omit 'both' in trans. **Remis...discessit,**—'to the Remi with the hope of defence there came also eagerness to sally forth (lit. fight before the walls), while (lit.

and) for the same reason the hope of gaining the town left the enemy (lit. departed for the enemy).' For the dat. *hostibus* see RC.82.*b*. More freely, 'the Remi, besides having hopes of defending the town, were also eager to sally forth, while the enemy for the same reason had lost all hope of taking the town.' **potiundi,**—for the form see RC.66.; for the gerundive construction w. *potior* see RC.104.*b*.ii.

3. **apud,**—'before *or* near.' **quos,**—takes its gender from the more remote (but the more important) of its two antecedents. **copiis,**—for the abl. see RC.85.*e*.i. HF.236.N.11. **ab...duobus,**—'at a distance of less than, etc.' **minus,**—'less than'; for the regular omission of *quam* in such cases see RC.II.123.*c*.2.

4. **ut,**—'as,' with indic. **amplius,**—'more than,' followed by abl. of comparison. (RC.85.*f*. HF.55.5.) **in,**—though with the accus., trans. 'in.'

N.B.—Predicate nom. and abl., § 1. [*nuntii*, *ducibus*. For the use with *utor* see RC.II.76.] Tense of *usus*, § 1. [We should expect the present part., but see RC.102.*c* vi. H.550.N.1. AG.290.*b*.] Greek accus. plur. of third decl. in *ăs*. [*Cretas*, § 1. RC.49.*d*. HF. 274. H.68. AG.64. *Numidas* is first decl. and has *ās*.] Dative of interest. [In § 1. combined with dat. of purpose. RC.II.75. HF. 134.1. BA.259. H.390. AG.233. In § 2. *Remis* and *hostibus* have the same relation to their respective verbs, though we should use 'from' in the latter case. Cf. the dat. with verbs of *taking away*. RC.82.*b*.i. H.385.2. AG.229.] The gerundive *potiundi*, § 2. [*Potior*, like *fruor*, *fungor* and *utor*, is an intrans. verb, but the personal gerundive has survived from the earlier use of these verbs as transitives. With *esse*, however, the impersonal construction should be used. RC.II.141.*b*. H.544.2.N.5. AG.296.R.] The agreement of *quos*, § 3. The tense of *potuerant*, § 3. [The time is calculated not from *incensis*, but from the principal verb *contenderunt*.] Omission of *cum* with *copiis*, § 3. [So frequently when a march (or similar movement) is mentioned, and when there is an adjectival modifier. RC.85.*e*.1. BA.p.178.fn.2. H.419.1. AG.248.*a*.] Use of *minus* and *amplius* with numerals, §§ 3.4. Repetition of *castra*, § 4. [Conducing to clearness, though scarcely to elegance.] *Ut*=as, with indic., § 4. *In latitudinem*, § 4. [The accus. is used, because the idea of extent involves motion.]

8, 9. *After elaborate preparations by Caesar for a pitched battle, both sides decline to make the attack, and the enemy instead attempt to cut off Caesar's communications with the rear.*

CAP. VIII.

1. **opinionem virtutis,**—'their reputation for,' etc. For the genitive see App.2.*c*. **proelio,**—here 'a pitched battle'; in § 2. *proeliis* means 'skirmishes.' For the abl. see RC. 85.*h*. HF.158.2.

2. **quid posset,**—lit. 'what strength the enemy had in valor,' freely, 'what the enemy's valor amounted to.' For the acc. *quid* see RC.88.*e*.; for the mood of *posset* (and *auderent*) RC.99.*d*. HF.176.2. *Possum* without an infin. means 'to have power,' with which an adverbial acc. tells the extent of the power. **periclitabatur,**—'kept trying to find out' or 'kept testing.' App.26.*c*.

3. **inferiores,**—*i.e.* man for man; the extra fortifications were because of the difference in numbers. **loco...idoneo,**—'as the ground...was,' etc. App.5.*a*.N. (RC.85.*o*. HF. 102.3.N.) **natura,**—'naturally,' lit. 'by nature.'

For the right understanding of this passage, see the plan at the end of the notes on Book II. In 1862 traces of Caesar's fortifications at this point were discovered by excavations.

quod,—'for,' lit.? **is,**—'the.' **ubi,**—'where *or* on which.' **editus...patebat,**—freely, 'rose...and extended.' **adversus,**—adj. agreeing w. *collis*; 'facing *or* opposite (the enemy),' or freely, 'in front.' **tantum quantum loci,**—lit. 'over that amount which amount of ground,' freely, 'as far as,' or rather, to bring out the meaning, 'just (*or* only) as far as.' For the acc. *tantum* see RC.83.*c*. HF.69.9.; *quantum* is object of *occupare*. **loci,**—RC.81.*b*. HF.69.10. In sense it goes with *tantum* also.

ex utraque parte,—'on either hand.' As *pro castris* above shows, Caesar's point of view is from th[illegible], looking westward along the hill, and so the side[illegible] [illegible]ant ar

right and left of the camp to one looking in that direction. **lateris dejectus,**—'sloping sides,' lit. 'slopings of the side.' **in fronte,**—at the westward end of the hill, farthest from the camp. As one approached the brow of the hill from the camp, the ground gradually fell away to the plain. **latere,**—with the same meaning as *parte* above. **transversam fossam,**—'a cross-trench,' or trans. *transversam* freely by 'obliquely,' *i.e.* at right angles to the length of the hill, the direction in which Caesar is (mentally) looking as he describes the position. **passuum,**—add in trans. 'in length.' For the gen. see RC.81.*e.* HF.130.7. **extremas fossas,**—'at the ends of, etc.,' *i.e.* the ends farthest from the camp. (RC.II.114.*b.*)

4. **instruxisset,**—'drew up,' lit. 'should have,' etc. (RC. II.214.*a.*2. HF.206.4.) **tantum poterant,**—'were so strong'; cf. on *quid posset*, §2. **ab lateribus,**—with *circumvenire.* **pugnantes,**—agrees with *suos;* trans. by 'while,' App.38. **possent,**—RC.99.*a.* HF.183.2. So in §5. also.

5. **relictis,**—trans. by principal clause. App.5.*a.*iii. **si quo...esset,**—'wherever they were needed,' lit. supplying *duci,* 'if it should be necessary (for them to be led) to any point.' **subsidio,**—'as reinforcements.' (RC.82.*c.* HF.134. 1.) **suas,**—'their,' emphasized by way of contrast. App. 15.*b.* **eductas,**—agreeing w. *copias,* and in time preceding *instruxerant.* Trans. by principal clause in active voice co-ordinate w. *instruxerant;* 'had led out...and drawn up.' App.37.*a.*N.B. (RC.II.52.*c.*,148.*a.* HF.219.2.*a.*)

N.B.—Difference between *primo*, §1., and *primum*, c.1. §2. [The former means 'at first,' and answers regularly to *postea;* the latter means 'in the first place' and answers to *deinde.* Contrast also the usage in c.19. §5. *quae primae venerant.*] Objective gen. *virtutis*, §1. [Strictly the 'opinion of their valor' held by others. RC.81.*d.* BA.300. H.396.III. AG.217.] *Possum* with adverbial accus., §§ 2.4. [So in c.4. §1. and c.17. §4. RC.II.97. H.378.2. AG.240.*a.*] Tense of *periclitabatur*, §2., and *intellexit*, §3. [The former of a repeated action; the latter, in spite of the fact that verbs of thinking take regularly the imperf. for our past tense (App.26.*a.*), in the

perfect because the moment of his coming to a conclusion (or the moment of his discovery) is referred to.] Use of *atque*, § 3. [Evidently *idoneo* is a stronger word than *opportuno*.] The phrase *tantum quantum loci*, § 3. [*Loci* might have been put with either *tantum* or *quantum*, though here it was not needed with either. Notice too the emphatic position of *tantum*.] Adjectives in partitive sense, *extremas*, § 3. [RC.II.114.*b*. BA.60. H.440.N. 1.2. AG.193.] The use of *ex* and *ab* to indicate the direction in which. [In § 3. twice, in § 4. once. In the last two cases the idea of motion *from* is clearly involved. This usage is found with *agmen* (c.11. § 4.) and *frons* (c.23. § 4.) as well as with *pars* and *latus*. *In* is also used; cf. *in fronte*, § 3.] The mood of *instruxisset* and *poterant*, § 4. [The former is more directly a part of the purpose Caesar had at the time, the latter is an explanatory clause by the writer. That is, Caesar in arranging his plans thought to himself, *ne cum aciem instruxero, hostes nostros circumvenire possint*, but *quod... possunt* is not represented as part of his thought. There is, of course, no reason why it might not have been so represented. Notice, too, the pluperf. subj. for fut. perf. indic. with *cum*.] Force of present partic. *pugnantes*, § 4. The mood and tense of *esset*, § 5. [In a virtual quotation of Caesar's thoughts, for an original fut. indic. Cf. *instruxisset*, § 4. RC.II.220. BA.447. H.52[illegible] II. AG.342.] Condensed expression with partic. *eductas*, § [illegible] [A regular idiom in Latin, and in the subject nominative (or with accus. and infin. the subject accus.) and in the abl. absol. very frequent in Caesar. The present idiom is rarer in Caesar than in other historians. RC.II.52.*c*.,148.*a*. HF.219.2.*a*. BA.406.ii. H.549[illegible] AG.292.R.]

CAP. IX.

1. **erat,**—'there was.' App.1. **non magna,**—'of no great extent,' lit.? **nostrum,**—possessive adj. w. *exercitum*; trans. 'our army and that of the enemy.' (RC.II.183.)

si,—freely, 'to see whether.' (RC.II.216.) **transirent,**— trans. by 'would.' **si...fieret,**—'in case the others should cross first,' lit.? **impeditos,**—'while at a disadvantage,' lit.? It agrees with *eos* understood.

2. **proelio contendebatur,**—'there was an engagement,' lit.? App.24. (RC.96.*b*. HF.164.2.) **neutri,**—'neither side.' The plur. is used because each side consisted of many men. **initium faciunt,**—'took the first step.' ... the tense s[illegible]

RC.II.198.*a*. HF.216.2.*a*. **secundiore nostris,**—'as the cavalry battle was (*or* proved) more favorable to our men.' (RC.85.*o*. HF.102.3.N.)

3. **post,**—'behind *or* in the rear of.' **demonstratum est,**—in c.6. §§ 4.5.

4. **eo consilio ut,**—lit.? 'with this intention that'; freely, 'for the purpose of.' With *ut* go *expugnarent, interscinderent, popularentur* and *prohiberent*. (RC.99.*a*.1. HF.183.2.) **si possent, si potuissent,**—for the mood see RC.II.220. HF. 206.4. The difference in tense is seen if the infin. *expugnare* be supplied with each; the time of *popularentur* is subsequent to the attempt *expugnare*, but of course the time of *expugnarent* is not. **cui,**—RC.II.56.104. HF.120.2.

5. **minus,**—here='not.' **magno usui,**—freely, 'very useful,' lit.? App.3.*c*. (RC.82.*c*. HF.134.1.) **commeatu,**—RC. 85.*h*. HF.158.2.

N.B.—Difference between English and Latin idiom in *nostrum atque hostium exercitum*, § 1. [RC.II.183. BA.345.] The use of *si* with *exspectare*, § 1. [It is generally stated that *si* in such cases (*i e.* with verbs of trial) means 'whether' (=*num*) and that the subjunctive is that of virtual indirect question. H.529.I.1. AG.334.*f*. It is perhaps more probable that in all such cases *si* is strictly conditional, the apodosis being easily understood from the context, here *e.g.* 'were waiting (to attack) in case our men crossed.' RC.II.216. BA.474.*b*.] In either case the subj. is for an original fut. indic.; cf. N.B. to *esset*, c.8. § 5. The historical present with *ubi*, § 3. [This is the only instance in Caesar.] The ablative absolute without a participle, § 2. [Cf. *loco...idoneo*, c.8. § 3. RC.85.*o*.i.fn.2. HF.102.3.N. BA.424. H.431.4. AG.255 *a*.] The comparative with the standard of comparison omitted, *secundiore*, § 2. [The context shows that Caesar means, 'more favorable to our men than to the enemy.' For very similar cases see c.1. §§ 1.3.4., c.6. § 4., c.8. § 3.] The change of tense from *possent*. § 4., to *potuissent*, § 5. [See note to § 4. above. This is a good instance of the accuracy of Latin in the tenses of dependent clauses.] The mood of *possent* and *potuissent* as contrasted with *praeerant* and *erant*, §§ 4.5. [The former part of the purpose of the enemy; the latter explanatory additions by the writer. Cf. N.B. to c.8. § 4.] The dative of purpose, § 5. [Here combined with the dat. of interest; in c.8. § 5. alone. RC.82.*c*. HF. 134.1. BA.259. H.390. AG.233.]

10, 11. *The enemy, repulsed in this attempt, decide to disband. Setting out for their homes during the night in grea confusion, they are pursued by Caesar's cavalry, who inflic great loss on them.*

CAP. X.

1. **equitatum pontem traducit,**—cf. on c.5. §4. **levi armaturae,**—'light-armed,' lit. 'of light equipment.' (RC 81.*e.* HF.130.7.)

2. **pugnatum est,**—'they fought.' App.24. (RC.96. HF.164.2.) **Hostes,**—object of *aggressi*, which may be translated by a principal clause. App.37.*a*.N.B.

3. **Per,**—'over,' lit. 'by means of'; with *transire.* **c nantes,**—trans. by relative clause. App.38. **multitudine,**- freely, 'a shower.' **circumventos,**—cf. on *eductas,* c.8. §5.

4. **Hostes,**—the main body, not those of §2. **ubi,**—wi *intellexerunt, viderunt* and *coepit.* **spem se fefellisse,**—fro *fallo*; 'that they had been disappointed in their expectatic of,' etc.; lit. 'that the hope had disappointed them.' **pr gredi,**—'were not advancing,' or freely, 'would not a vance.' **ipsos,**—'them themselves'; emphatic, in contra with the Romans whom they had hoped to cut off fron supplies, c.9. §5.

optimum esse, etc.,—'the best course was for each,' etc For *quemque reverti* see App.35.*a.* (RC.101.*c.*) **domum,**- RC.II.93.*a.* HF.85.1. **quorum,** etc.,—the antecedent is *co* in English the relative clause would come after its ant cedent. **primum,**—adverb. **introduxisset,**—'should lea lit.? For the mood see RC.99.*e.* HF.206.4. and cf. on *struxisset,* c.8. §4. **convenirent,**—depending, like *optim esse,* on *constituerunt.* On account of the change of c struction, repeat (with a different verb) the trans. of *c stituerunt, e.g.* 'decided that it was best...and resolved assemble.' For the subj., with which *ut* might have b used, see RC.99.*a*.2.i. HF.181.3. **suis,**—with *finib*

alienis,—'foreign,' lit.? **decertarent, uterentur,**—RC.99. *a*. HF.183.2. **domesticis,**—'which they had at home.'

5. **cum,** — 'besides.' **haec ratio,** — 'the following consideration'; explained by *quod...cognoverant*. **finibus,**—at. For the fact see c.5. §§2.3.

His,—the Bellovaci who were present in the confederate rmy. **His persuaderi non poterat,**—'these could not be ersuaded.' App.3.*b*.; 24. For the impersonal pass. and the at. see RC.II.57. HF.164.1. **ut,** etc.,—trans. by infin. with to.' (RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.) **neque,**—'and so not.'

.B.—The impersonal passive construction, *pugnatum est*, §2., *persuaderi*, §5. [RC.96.*b*. HF.164.1.2. BA.5.217. H.301.1. AG.146.*c*. 230. Condensed constr. w. partic. *circumventos*, §3. [Cf. N.B. to *eductas*, c.8. §5.] The double construction with *constituo*, §4. [Both virtually represent two distinct original clauses, the one a statement, *optimum est*, the other an exhortation, *conveniamus*. The subj. may be classed either as subj. of substantival clause of purpose with *ut* omitted (RC.99.*a*.2.1. H.499.2. AG.331.*f*.R.) or as subj. of indirect command (RC.106.*a*. HF.207.5. BA.522. H.523.III. AG.339.) These are but two varieties of one and the same subjunctive, that expressing a wish or command, which gradually developed into the subj. of purpose.] Omission of prep. w. *domum*, §4. [RC.II.93.*a*. HF.85.1. BA.313.Obs. H.380.2.1. AG.258.] The phrase *suus quisque*, §4. [This is the regular order; so w. *sui* (*sibi*, *se*) *quisque*; cf.c.11. §1., c.25. §3.] The relative clause preceding the antecedent, *quorum...eos*, §4. [Constantly occurring in Latin, especially for emphasis. BA.75.] The mood of *cognoverant*, §5. [Although the subj. might have been used, as a statement of what the Belgae thought, Caesar prefers, by using the indic., to tell us that they had really received this information. The idiomatic subj. might have been *quod Divitiacus atque Aedui ...appropinquarent*, omitting *cognoverant*. RC.II.165.216. HF.198. 2. BA.418.484. H.516. AG.341.*d*.] *Appropinquare* with the dat., §5. [This is the only construction in Caesar, except in c.19. §2. where the reading is doubtful. The idea of 'nearness to' not 'motion towards' prevails, following the derivation.] *Neque* connecting final clauses. [Only apparently an exception to the usage which requires *neve* in adding a negative final clause. RC.II.30. HF.186.6. BA.103. H.497.1.N. It is not a new final clause representing a distinct action that is here added, but a clearer statement of what was involved in the first clause. So the translation 'and so,' not 'or.']

CAP. XI.

1. **ea re,** etc.,—'having decided on this plan *or* course,' or 'having come to this dec[illegible] **vigilia,**—the time from sunset to sunrise was divided into four equal periods called *vigiliae* or watches, and the time from sunrise to sunset into twelve equal periods called *horae* or hours. The length of the *vigilia* and *hora* would thus vary with the season. **egressi . . . fecerunt,**—'they left . . . and thus brought it about.' **castris,**—RC.85.*h*. HF.158.2. **nullo . . . imperio,**—'without any regular arrangement (order) or control (discipline).' (RC.85.*e*. HF.71.8.)

cum,—'since, as, for.' **itineris,**—'on the march.' The meaning is that each sought to get away first (as that was safest), and this increased the confusion. **fecerunt ut . . . videretur,**—lit. 'they brought it about that . . . seemed,' freely, 'they made . . . seem' or 'they gave . . . all the appearance of.' (RC.99.*b*. HF.187.2.) **consimilis,**—'quite like'; stronger than *similis*. **fugae,**—dative.

2. **Caesar,**—subject of *continuit*. **cognita, veritus,**—to bring out the full meaning, trans. 'although C. learned . . . yet, as he feared,' etc. **speculatores,**—the spies are here clearly distinguished from the *exploratores* or scouts of § 3. **qua,**—interrogative adj. w. *causa*. **discederent,**—notice the tense. (RC.99.*d*. HF.176.2.) **exercitum,**—often of the Roman legions as distinguished from the cavalry, who were native auxiliaries. **castris,**—RC.85.*a*.ii.*g*.

3. **qui . . . moraretur,**—trans. by 'to' and infin. (RC.II. 25. HF.184.1.) **His,**—the plur., following the meaning, though not the form, of *equitatum*. For the dat. see RC.II.[illegible] HF.120.1.

4. **Hi,**—referring to both cavalry and legions. **eorum fugientium,**—'of them in their flight,' lit. 'of them while fleeing'; not 'of those flee[illegible].' [illegible]C.II.144. HF.100.4.)

cum, etc.,—from this point to the end of § 5. explains how

it happened that so many were slain; those in the rear because they stopped to make a useless resistance, those in the van because the sound of fighting in the rear threw them into greater confusion than ever. With *cum*, which we may trans. 'for,' go *consisterent, sustinerent* and *ponerent*. (RC. 99.*g*.ii. HF.208.1.)

ab extremo...erat,—freely, 'those in the rear, with whom our men had come up'; *quos* refers to the plural implied in *agmine* and expressed in the verb *consisterent*. **ventum erat,**—impersonal pass. (RC.96.*b*. HF.164.2.)

5. **prioresque,**—trans. *que* by 'while.' **viderentur,**—*i.e.* to themselves; so freely, 'they thought.' For the mood see RC.99.*k*.; so *continerentur*. **necessitate,**—'compulsion.'

exaudito clamore,—depends on *perturbatis*, for which it gives the reason. Trans. 'on hearing the shouting, broke their ranks and,' etc. **sibi ponerent,**—'sought,' lit.?

6. **sine,**—freely, 'without incurring.' **quantum...spatium,**—'as [illegible] length of the day allowed,' lit. 'as there was length of day.' **erat imperatum,**—impers. pass. App.24. Trans. personal[illegible]

N.B.—*Consimilis fugae*, § 1. The old rule that *similis* takes the gen. of internal, the dat. of external resemblance, is at variance with the facts. The only rule that can be laid down is that the gen. is generally found in the case of nouns or pronouns denoting persons.] Position of *Caesar*, § 2. [Not infrequently the subject of the whole clause is placed within some subordinate member, as here an abl. absol. clause. In such cases it serves to bind the various clauses more closely; as here the position says almost explicitly that Caesar is the logical subject of the abl. absol. clause.] *Moror* used transitively, § 3. [In c.7. § 3. and c.10. § 5. used intransitively. Such a twofold use of verbs is far rarer in Latin than in English.] Rel. clause of purpose, § 3. Difference between *eorum fugientium* and *fugientium*, § 4. [In the former case the participial force remains, in the latter we have the substantival force. RC.II.148.*b*. HF.219.*f*. BA.73.74.] Impersonal passives, §§ 4.6. [Cf. N.B. to c.10.] Subjunctive by attraction, § 5. [The subj. is used in the *quod* clause here because of its dependence upon *cum* and the subj. RC. 99.*k*. H.52[illegible] II. AG.342. At the same time it is possible that *quod*...

viderentur may be an example of that peculiar confusion with the subj. of virtual indirect narration described in RC.II.220.*b*. BA p.280. fn.1. H.516.II.1.; this explanation will not apply to *continerentur* which, however, would even more easily be assimilated to *viderentur* than to *ponerent*.] Relation of the two abl. absol. clauses in § 5. [Generally two such successive and unconnected clauses are coordinate, denoting successive steps, *e.g.* c.8. § 5., c.12. § 5.; less frequently one is distinctly subordinated to the other, as here.]

12–15. *Caesar now enters one state after another, receives the submission of the Suessiones, Bellovaci and Ambiani, and at last reaches the Nervii, the bravest of all the Belgic tribes.*

CAP. XII.

1. **Postridie ejus diei,**—'on the very next day,' lit. 'on the morrow of that day.' (RC.81.*i*.) **priusquam...reciperent,**—'before...should (*or* could) recover.' For the mood see RC.II.175. HF.201.5. **magno itinere,**—'by a forced march'; omitting *confecto*. **oppidum N.,**—in apposition; connect by 'of' in trans.

2. **ex itinere,**—cf. on c.6. § 1. **conatus...non potuit,**—'attempted...but...was unable.' **ab,**—'of.' **propter,** etc.—with *expugnare non potuit*. **paucis defendentibus,**—abl. absol.; 'though but few were defending it.' (RC.II.49.N.B.)

3. **vineas,**—on this and other similar terms below see Introduction, p. xxii. **quaeque,**—'and whatever'; supplying *ea* as antecedent of *quae*. **oppugnandum,**—notice the difference between this verb and *expugnare* of § 2. **usui,**—cf. on c.9. § 5.

4. **ex fuga,**—with *convenit*; trans. *ex* either 'from' or 'after.' **proxima nocte,**—defining *interim* more nearly. This would be the second night after their hurried disbanding.

5. **actis, jacto, constitutis,**—trans. as in App.5.*a*.ii. *Agere*=push forward; *constituere*=set up, or put in position.

magnitudine,—with *permoti*. **ante,**—adverb. **Galli,**—not the subject, but in apposition with the subject. Trans. 'being Gauls' or 'as they were Gauls.' *Ante* and *Galli* belong to both verbs. **permoti,**—*i.e.* the Suessiones.

petentibus Remis, etc.,—'and on the Remi asking that they be spared, they (*i.e.* the Suessiones) gain their request' (*i.e.* to be allowed to capitulate). For the subj. see RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.8.; *impetrant* has no dependent clause, the context making this unnecessary.

N.B.—The redundant phrase, *postridie ejus diei*, § 1. *Priusquam* with the subj. of purpose, § 1. [So always in Caesar (whether in this form or when divided, *e.g.* c.32. § 1.) except in Bk.I.c.53. (where the reading is uncertain) and Bk.VII.c.25. RC.II.175. HF.201.5. BA. 442. H.520.II. AG.327.] Concessive and causal abl. absol. clauses, [*defendentibus*, § 2., *petentibus*, § 5. RC.II.49.N.B. The latter kind is very common with the perfect partic., being often connected with the notion of time, *e.g.* c.11. § 3. Similarly the concessive sense may be found in connection with that of time, *e.g.* c.11. § 2.] The position of *ex fuga*, § 4. [While grammatically it goes with *convenit*, its position suggests the idea 'all the crowd of fugitive Suessiones.'] Force of *Galli*, § 5. [In a sort of causal apposition. The lack of a present partic. in Latin is most noticeable in such a case as this.] Dependence of *ut conservarentur*, § 5. [So placed as to make easier the omission of an object clause with *impetrant*.] Siege works among the Romans.

CAP. XIII.

1. **obsidibus,**—'as hostages'; in apposition with *primis*. **primis,**—here=*principibus*. **acceptis, traditis,**—as the agents are different, it is best to trans. both clauses by 'when.' **in deditionem,** etc.,—'received the surrender of,' etc., lit.?

2. **Qui,**—'these'; subj. of *contulissent*. App.11.*b*. **se suaque,**—freely, 'themselves with their possessions.' **oppidum,**—cf. on c.12. § 1. **millia,**—RC.83.*c*. HF.69.9. **majores natu,**—'the elders'; for the abl. see RC.85.*d*. **voce,**—'by their tones,' as they could not speak a language Caesar understood. **in...venire,**—'put themselves under

...and in,' etc. **neque,**—'and...not.' **contendere,**—notice the tense.

3. **accessisset, poneret,**—Notice the change of tense. **pueri,**—'children,' not 'boys.' **ex,**—freely, 'on.' **passis,**—abl. absol. **suo more,**—with *passis manibus*. Trans. by 'according to.' (RC.85.*e*. HF.71.3).

N.B.—The co-ordinating relative, *qui*, § 2. [This common usage has been very rare, so far, in Book II., the only previous examples being in c.4. § 3., c.5. §§ 1.5., c.6. § 3., c.7. § 4., in none of which is the use of the relative as idiomatic, or as impossible in English, as in the present passage. RC.II.195. BA.78. H.453. AG.180.*f*.] The difference between pluperf. and imperf. subj. with *cum*. [In § 2. *contulissent* and *abesset*, in § 3. *accessisset* and *poneret*.] Tense of *contendere*, § 2. [Much more vivid than the future would have been.] The phrase *majores natu*, § 2. [RC.57. AG.91.*b*.]

CAP. XIV.

1. **Pro his,**—'on their behalf.' **dimissis,**—the object sought having been attained, viz., the breaking up of the Belgian army. See c.5. §§ 2.3. and c.10. § 5. **eum,**—Caesar. **facit verba,**—'speaks' or 'intercedes.'

2. The remainder of the chapter is in indirect narration, depending on *facit verba*. For the subjunctives (with the exception of *intulissent*, § 4.) see RC.II.214.*a*.2. HF.206.4.

omni tempore,—'always'; the time *within* which. (RC. 85.*b*. HF.82.2.) **in fide,** etc.,—'had been in alliance and friendship with,' etc. **Aeduae,**—an adjective.

3. **impulsos,**—agreeing with the subject of *defecisse*, viz. *Bellovacos*. **suis,**—*i.e.* of the Bellovaci. **dicerent,**—trans. as in App.26.*c*. **omnes,**—'all manner of,' 'every kind of.' **perferre,**—depending on *dicerent*. **et,**—omit 'both' in trans. **populo,**—trans. dat. by 'on.' (RC.82.*a*. HF.5.4.)

4. **Qui,**—'those who'; as antecedent supply *eos* subject of *profugisse*. App.11.*d*.i. **ejus consilii principes,**—'leaders in that plot.' **civitati,**—see on *populo*, § 3. **intulissent,**—for the mood see RC.99.*d*. HF.176.2.

5. For the change to primary sequence in §§ 5.6. see RC. 107.*a*.ii.iv. Trans., however, as if the tenses were secondary. **sua,**—emphatic, 'his usual' or 'his well-known,' lit. 'his own.' **utatur,**—'show *or* display.' For the abl. see RC.II.65. HF.116.

6. **fecerit,**—'did'; perf. subj. for future perf. indic. of the original. (RC.107.*b*.; II.84. HF.210.2.*a*.) **amplificaturum,**—the subject is Caesar. **quorum,**—the antecedent is *Belgas*. **auxiliis,**—RC.85.*a*. HF.71.3. **si qua,**—'if any,' or freely, 'whatever'; from the indefinite *quis*. (RC.26. HF.132.1.) **inciderint,**—perf. subj. for the original perf. indic. (RC. 107.*b*.)

sustentare,—either with its object supplied from *si qua bella*, 'to maintain whatever wars,' etc., or absolutely, 'sustain themselves (hold out) if any,' etc. **consuerint,**—for *consueverint*. (RC.66.) The subject is *Aedui*. *Consuevi*='I have become accustomed,' hence, 'I am accustomed.'

N.B.—The rules of indirect narration. [RC.II.214. HF.209.1. BA.LXV. H.523-526. AG.336.] Tense of *dicerent*, § 3. [The statement was not made once only.] *Omnes* with the plural of abstract nouns in the sense of 'all kinds of,' § 3. The change from secondary to primary sequence, §§ 5.6. [This is not infrequent in Caesar, and often when this change occurs it is found to accompany a change from more general considerations to those of special moment. Here it coincides with the change from setting forth extenuating circumstances to pressing Caesar to spare the Bellovaci, *as a matter of good policy*.] The emphatic use of *sua*='his usual *or* well-known,' § 5. The difference between *clementia* and *mansuetudo*, § 5. [The former is specially directed to those in one's power, (mercifulness, forbearance); the latter is not so restricted, (kindliness, humanity.)] General conditional clauses ***si inciderint***, § 6. [Here in indirect narration for the original ***si inciderunt, consuevimus***. Besides the four usual classes of conditional sentences, we have in Latin another, where, referring indefinitely to any of a given class of acts, it is stated that something habitually occurs. If the reference is to the present, we have ***si*** with the perf. indic., and in the apodosis the present indic. or some equivalent form (*e.g.* here ***consuevimus***); if the reference is to the past, we have ***si*** with the

pluperf. indic., and the apodosis is in the imperfect or some equivalent form; where the reference is to the future, the sentence takes the same form as the regular future conditions with *si* and fut. perf. indic. Cf. clauses introduced by *whoever*, *wherever*, *whenever*, which follow a like construction.]

CAP. XV.

1. **honoris...causa,**—'out of respect (regard) to D.,' or 'as a compliment to D.' For the genitive *Divitiaci* see RC. 81.*d*. **in fidem,**—'under his protection.'

quod, — add the connective 'but.' **auctoritate,** — RC. 85.*c*. HF.131.9. **multitudine,** — RC.85.*d*. **sescentos,**—an unusually large number.

3. **quorum,**—'their.' **cum quaereret,** etc.,—cf.c.4. § 1. and N.B.

4. **nullum...mercatoribus,**—'that traders are not allowed to visit them,' or, 'are not admitted into their country'; more lit. 'traders have no access.' *Aditum* is subj. of *esse*; for the dat. *mercatoribus* see RC.82.*g*. HF.120.3.

pati,—for this and succeeding infinitives supply *eos* as subject. **nihil vini,**—'no wine' or 'not...any wine.' (RC. 81.*b*. HF.69.10.) **que,**—trans. by 'or.' **iis rebus,**—'by this means,' 'in this way.' **relanguescere animos,**—the reference is general, so that the present tense should be used in English.

5. **magnae virtutis,**—modifying *homines*. (RC.81.*e*. HF. 130.7.) **qui se dedidissent,**—'for having surrendered' or 'because they had,' etc. For the subj., which is not due to the dependence on *reperiebat*, see RC.99.*e*.i.; so *projecissent*.

6. **sese,**—subject of *missuros* (*esse*).

N.B.—The objective genitive with *honoris*, §1. [RC.81.*d*. BA.300. H. 396.III. AG.217.] Asyndeton before *quod erat*, §1. [So often to mark contrast; *e.g.* in c.9. § 5.] The tense of *attingebant*, §3. [The present tense would be the natural one to use, but the tense is assimilated to the time of the narrative in connection with which the statement is made.] The dative of possessor, §4. The

partitive gen. with *nihil*, § 4. The participle *pertinentium*, § 4. [In this phrase Caesar elsewhere always uses a relative clause, not the participle; *e.g.* Bk.III.9.3.] *Que* coupling an adjective and a genitive of characteristic, § 5. [Though of different kinds, they are both adjectival modifiers.] *Qui* with the subjunctive of virtual indirect narration, § 5. [The dependence on *reperiebat* is in no sense the cause of the subj., which would have been used in the original statement; *increpitant ... qui dediderint* = 'who (as they charge) have surrendered.' RC.II.216. BA.448. H.528.I. AG.341.*d.* This is to be carefully distinguished from the subjunctive with *qui* causal, as in c.31. § 2.]

16, 17. *Caesar learns that the Nervii with some neighboring tribes have gathered to resist him. The Nervii plan to surprise his army just as it is reaching the place of encampment.*

CAP. XVI.

1. **triduum,**—RC.83.*c.* HF.69.9. **Sabim,**—for the form of the accus. see RC.49.*c.* HF.40. **amplius,**—'more than'; or with *abesse*, 'was farther than.' (RC.II.123.*c.*2.) **millia,**—RC.83.*c.* HF.69.9.

2. **consedisse, exspectare,**—notice the difference in tense. **una,**—adverb. **suis,**—referring to *Nervios.*

3. **his utrisque,**—'both of these'; for the plur. see on *neutri*, c.9. § 2. **persuaserant,**—the mood shows that this is an addition of the author's. **uti...exspectarent,**—trans. by 'to' and inf. (RC.99.*a.*2. HF.181.3.) **eandem,**—*i.e.* as themselves; freely. 'with them.'

4. **his,**—the three tribes above mentioned.

5. **quique,**—two words; as antecedent understand *eos*, which with *mulieres* forms the object of *conjecisse*. **per,**—'by reason of.' **viderentur,**—RC.99.*c.* HF.188.4. So *esset*. **unum,**—'a.' **quo...aditus non esset,**—'which...could not approach'; cf.c.15. § 4.; *quo* is the adverb. **exercitui,**—'an army,' generally.

N.B.—The use of *amplius* with numerals, § 1. [RC.II.123.*c*.2. BA 318 Obs. H.417.N.2. AG.247.*c*. So *plus*, *minus* and *longius* also are used. Where the numeral (apart from the modifying adverb) would be in the gen., dat. or abl., this case is retained and the comparative does not influence the construction, as in c.29. § 3., 7. § 3.; but where the numeral would be in the nom. or accus. these cases may be retained as here, or the abl. of comparison used, as in c.7. § 4.] The reference of *suis*, § 2. [App.14.*d*.] The plural of *uterque*, § 3. [Only where each part has itself plural force.] Relative clause of characteristic, *viderentur*, *esset*, § 5. [RC.99.*c*. HF.188.4. BA.508. H.500.I. AG.320. As the clauses are in indirect narration, it is possible that *viderentur* may be an ordinary rel. clause representing an original indic.] Use of relative adverbs in place of rel. pronoun with a prep. [*quo*, § 5.=*ad quem*; cf.c.17. § 4. *quo*=*in quae*, c.8. § *ubi*=*in quo*, c.35. § 3. *ubi*=*in quibus*. So also *unde* is used. Cf. and *ibi*=demonstr. pron. with prep.]

CAP. XVII.

1. **qui...deligant,**—cf. on c.3. § 2. (RC.99.*a*.i. HF.184.1.) **castris,**—trans. by 'for.' (RC.82.*c*. HF.134.1.)

2. **ex,**—'of'; so *ex his* below. **una,**—adv.; 'along with him.' **ut,**—as in c.7. § 4. **eorum...exercitus,**—'our army's usual order of marching during those days.' For the gen. *dierum* see RC.81.*e*. HF.130.7.

demonstrarunt,—for *demonstraverunt*. (RC.66.) **inter singulas legiones,**—'between the several legions' or 'between every two legions.' **impedimentorum,** etc.,—'a large baggage-train'; *impedimentorum*, lit. 'of baggage-animals.'

neque esse, etc.,—'and that there was no difficulty... in attacking.' For the gen. see RC.81.*b*. HF.69.10.; *adoriri* subject of *esse*. **venisset,**—'had reached,' lit. 'should have.' *Venisset* and *abessent* are for fut. perf. and fut. indic. of the original statement. (RC.107.*b*. HF.206.4.) **spatium,**—RC.83.*c*. HF.69.9. **sub sarcinis,**—'while still bearing (*or* laden with) the packs,' *i.e.* in heavy marching-order; lit.? For *sarcinas* and *impedimenta* see Introduction, p. xx.

3. **qua pulsa,**—'if this were defeated.' (RC.II.49.N.B.) **futurum ut,**—understand *esse*, depending on *demonstrar*

'the result would be that.' **contra,**—adv. **auderent,**—'would venture.' (RC.99.*b*.iii. HF.217.5.N.; 187.2.)

4. **adjuvabat,**—the subject is the clause from *quod* to the end of the section. Trans. by passive voice; *quod* then will be 'by the fact that.' **rem deferebant,**—'brought this report.' **equitatu...possent,**—cf. on c.8. § 2. **hoc,**—'the present.' **ei rei,**—'to it'; referring to *equitatu.* **quicquid ...valent,**—'what strength they have lies in their infantry,' lit. 'to whatever extent they have power, they are strong' etc. **quo ... impedirent,**—'that ... the more easily,' etc. (RC.II.26. HF.183.5.) **venisset,**—'came,' lit. 'should have come'; for fut. perf. indic. of original thought. (RC.99.*h*.iii.; 107.*b*. HF.211.N.)

incisis...interjectis effecerant,—trans. abl. absol. by clauses co-ordinate with *effecerant,* before which add as connective 'and so.' **incisis,**—so as to bend them more easily without killing them. **crebris...enatis,**—trans. either 'so that their branches grew thick sideways (*or* in a lateral direction)' or 'and thus caused their branches to grow out' etc. **interjectis,**—'planted among them.' **effecerant ut,** etc.,—lit. 'had brought it about that'; freely, 'had made these hedges present (*or* form),' etc. (RC.99.*b*. HF.187.2.) **quo,**—adv. with the force of *in quae,* referring to *munimenta.* **quo...posset,**—freely, 'which not only could not be entered (penetrated) but could not even be seen through,' or 'which one could not only not enter,' etc. For impers. pass see App.26. (RC.96.*b*. HF.164.2.) For the mood see RC.99.*c*. HF.188.4.

5. **non omittendum,** etc.,—'they must carry out the plan, *or* follow up the suggestion,' lit.? App.41. **sibi,**—RC.82.*d*.i. HF.173.4.

N.B.—Relative clause of purpose, § 1. [So in c.2. § 1., c.3. § 2., c.11. § 3., c.35. § 1. In all these cases it comes after *mitto* or *praemitto*, with which it is most frequently found in Caesar.] Triple genitive *dierum, itineris, exercitus*, § 2. *Cum* and subj. in indirect

narration for *cum* and indic. of direct, § 2. [*Venisset* for fut. perf. *venerit*, *abessent* for fut. *aberunt*. RC.II.168. BA.432. H.521.I. AG. 325.c.] Substantival use of infin., *adoriri*, § 2. Conditional abl. absol., *qua pulsa*, § 3. Periphrasis with *futurum esse u[t]* § 3. [Here unnecessary, as *reliquas ausuras* might have been used. RC.II.33.N.B. HF.217.5. BA.38. H.537.3. AG.288.*f*.] Clause *qui[d]* *quid possunt* serving in the relation of adverbial accus. to *valent*, § [ ] *Quo* with subj. of purpose, § 4. [So in c.25. § 2. Chiefly whe[n] *closely* followed by a comparative.] *Instar* and the gen., § [ ] [Only here in Caesar.] Clause of characteristic w. rel. adverb *quo...posset*, § 4. [Cf. N.B. to c.16. § 5.] The tense of *existima-* *verunt*, § 5. [The perf. = 'they came to the conclusion'; the imperf. = 'they held the opinion.' Cf. c.2. § 5. and N.B. to *intellexit*, c.8. § [ ] The choice of the encampment, the baggage and the soldier's pack. [Introduction, p. xix., xx.]

---

18. *A description of the place where the attack was to be made.*

CAP. XVIII.

1. **haec,**—as in c.6. § 2. **quem locum,**—omit 'place' in trans. **castris,**—as in c.17 § 1. **summo,**—'the summit'; the neut. adj. used as subst.; *ab summo* goes with *declivis*. The plan given at the end of the notes on Book II. will make this and the succeeding chapters more intelligible.

2. **pari acclivitate,**—'with a similar slope.' (RC.85.c. HF.131.9.) Caesar's point of view in this description is the Roman camp. Hence the slope of the hill on which the camp lay is expressed by *declivis* ('sloping downward'), that of the hill rising opposite him by *acclivitas* ('upward slope'). **nascebatur,**—'rose.' **adversus huic et contrarius,**—'facing this and just opposite it.' The former means that the slopes of the two hills were in opposite directions, thus: \/; the latter that the two hills were exactly opposite each other, one on each side of the stream.

passus ducentos,—with *infimus apertus*. (RC.83.c. HF. 69.9.) The distance is measured from the river up the slope

f the opposite hill. **infimus apertus,**—*apertus* is predica-ve with *infimus* (*collis*); 'at the base, clear' (*i.e.* of woods). b...**parte,**—opposed to *infimus*; trans. *ab* by 'in.' Cf. N.B. o c.8. **ut,**—'so that.' **perspici,**—impers. pass.; trans. as n c.17. § 4.

3. **in occulto,**—'concealed,' or 'in hiding.' **secundum,** -preposition. **paucae,**—'only a few.' **videbantur,**—not s in c.16. § 5. **pedum trium,**—RC.81.*e*. HF.130.7.

.B.—The agreement of *haec* with *natura*, § 1. [Cf. c.1. § 2., c.6. § 2. RC.II.183. N.B. BA.347. H.445.4. AG.195.*d*.] The repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause *quem locum*, § 1. [This repetition, which is most frequent with *pars*, *res*, *locus* and *dies*, is fairly common in Caesar, and is due to a desire for clearness, even at the expense of elegance. Cf.c.7. § 4.] The imperfect tense throughout. [This is the proper tense for description as opposed to narration. RC.II. 199.*c*.*d*. BA.183. H.469.I. AG.277.*a*.] The gen. and abl. of characteristic, §§ 2.3. [Notice that with the numeral the gen. must be used.]

---

19. *As the six veteran legions are fortifying the camp, the nemy make a sudden attack upon them.*

CAP. XIX.

1. **praemisso,**—trans. by principal clause, in the pluper-ect. **copiis,**—cf. on c.7. § 3.; so in § 6. **ratio ordoque,**—arrangement and order,' or better still, 'method of arrange-nent'; as thus but a single idea is suggested, the verb is ng. **aliter...ac,**—'was different from what'; more lit. h d itself otherwise than.'

2. **consuetudine sua,**—trans. like *suo more*, c.13. § 3. Of ourse Caesar means his custom when approaching the nemy, not the custom described in c.17. § 2. **expeditas,**—e. without their *sarcinae*. Introduction, p. xxi.

3. **totius,**—emphatic from position. **collocarat,**—for *col-ocaverat*. (RC.66.) *Colloco* has nothing to do with 'col-ect.' **praesidio erant,**—'served to protect,' 'acted as scort.' (RC.83.*c*. HF.134.1.)

5. **Cum,**—'while.' **illi,**—referring to *hostium*. App.18. **reciperent,**—be careful to bring out the force of the tens App.26.*b.c.* So *facerent*. **neque...auderent,**—'and...d not venture.' **quam quem,** etc.,—lit. 'than to what lim extended the ground stretching along and open'; freel 'than the stretch of open ground extended.' [Another read ing is *porrecta loca aperta,* in which case *porrecta* belongs t the predicate, lit. 'the open ground extended stretched out,' and may be omitted in trans.] **cedentes,**—'them as the retreated'; agreeing with *eos* or *hostes* understood.

quae primae venerant,—'which had come up first,' o 'which had been the first to arrive.' For this use of *prima* see RC.88.*d*. **opere dimenso,**—referring to the markin out of the lines of the trench and rampart. For the par ticiple with passive force, though from a deponent, se RC.68.*c*.

6. **visa sunt,**—cf. *videbantur,* c.18. § 3. **quod ... conve nerat,**—'which was the time agreed on for,' etc., or 'which had been agreed on as the time for.' **committendi proelii** —depending on *tempus*, not on *convenerat*. **ut intra...con firmaverant,**—best translated after *subito...provolaverun* on which the *ut* clauses depend. The meaning is that th attack was made in the same order and with the same impet osity that had been intended. Trans. *ut* by 'just as,' to repeated before *ipsi sese*. **ipsi,**—emphasizing the subj. of th verb; omit in trans. (RC.92.*f*.i.)

7. **celeritate,**—RC.85.*e*. HF.71.3. **ut,**—as in c.18. § **et...et...et,**—lit. 'both...and...and.' English would om the two first. **ad,**—'near,' *i.e.* just at the edge of the wo where they first appeared. **jam,**—'already,' or 'finall **in manibus nostris,**—'close to us,' lit. 'in our hands,' *i.* close at hand. **viderentur,**—as in § 6.

8. **adverso colle,**—'up the hill.' Either the abl. absol 'the hill facing them'; or the abl. of the route by mean of which, 'by the hill which faced them.'

.B.—Various uses of the ablative. [The most difficult is *adverso colle*, § 8., on which see the note above. Cf. *adverso flumine*. Bk.VII.60. 61. On *copiis*, §§ 1.6., see N.B. to c.7.] The use of *ac* after *aliter*, § 1. [Caesar has *ac* (or *atque*)='as' or 'than' after *aliter*, *alius*, *idem*, *par* and *similis*. BA.91.] Adjectives with predicative force. [So *expeditas*, § 2., and (according to one reading) *porrecta*, § 5.] *Cum*, of both friends and foes, § 4. Incorporation of the antecedent in the relative clause, § 5. [*Quem ad finem*=*ad eum finem ad quem*.] The idiom *primae venerant*, § 5. [For this adverbial use of the adj. see RC.88.*d*. BA.62. H.442.N.,443.N.1. AG.191. The best trans. generally is to make the adj. the predicate of the verb 'to be'; here *e.g.* 'were the first to come.'] Deponent participle with passive force, *dimenso*, § 5. [RC.68.*c*. AG.135.*f*.] The impersonal use of *convenit*, § 6. *Ipse* emphasizing the subject rather than the reflexive, § 6. [RC.92 *f*.1. BA.356.ii. H.452.1. AG.195.*l*. The difference (though it is not always observed) between *e.g. se ipse interfecit*, and (the rarer) *se ipsum interfecit* is that the former means 'it was himself and no other that killed him'; the latter 'it was himself and no other that he killed. The former would answer the question 'who killed him?'; the latter, the question 'whom did he kill?' Cf.c.20. § 3 and c.25. § 1.] Polysyndeton in emphatic enumeration, *et...et...et*, § 7. The phrase *in manibus nostris*, § 7.

20–22. *The Romans are completely surprised, and in spite f their discipline and Caesar's energy, the utmost confusion revails.*

CAP. XX.

1. **Caesari omnia,** etc.,—'C. had to do everything at nce,' lit.? App.41. (RC.104.*a*. HF.172.173.) **vexillum,** tc.,—the rest of the section is explanatory of *omnia*; with ach gerundive understand *erat* or *erant*. Trans. 'to display...to give,' etc. **insigne,**—'the signal.' **concurri porteret,**—impers. pass. App.24. Trans. 'they (*or* the oldiers) were to run.'

opere,—the making of the camp. **qui,**—'those who.' App.11.*d*.i. Understand as antecedent *ei*, the subject of *rcessendi* (*erant*). **paulo longius,**—'some little distance,' it. 'a little farther,' *i.e.* than the rest. [Others take it to

mean 'a little too far.'] **aggeris,**—here 'material for th rampart,' *i.e.* branches, sods, stones, etc. **cohortandi,**—i was the custom in ancient times to inspire the soldiers f battle by a short address. **signum,**—this signal must be making the attack. Notice that the details in this secti are given in the natural order of time.

2. **Quarum...partem,**—'much of this.' **impediebat,**— 'interfered with.' The verb is singular because the tw subjects form but one idea, viz., 'the short time allowed b the enemy's approach.'

3. **His...subsidio,**—'these difficulties were relieved (or lessened) by two circumstances,' lit.? For the datives *diffi-cultatibus* and *subsidio* see RC.82.*b.c.* HF.134.1. **duae re** —these are, first, *scientia atque usus;* second, *quod ab op* ...*vetuerat.* **scientia,**—'skill.' **quid fieri oporteret,**— 'what was to be done,' or more freely, 'what to do'; dependin on *praescribere* (and *doceri*). (RC.99.*d.* HF.176.2.) **non minus commode quam,**—'just as well as,' lit.? **ipsi sibi prae-scribere,**—'give themselves directions,' lit.? **doceri,**—'b told.' **poterant,**—repeat in trans. with each infin.

quod,—'the fact that.' **singulis, singulos,**—trans. b 'different' or 'several.' These words tell us that to eac legion there had been assigned a *legatus.* **nisi muniti castris,**—'until after...had been,' etc.; more lit. 'excep after,' etc. (RC.II.51. HF.102.2.)

4. **nihil jam,**—'no longer,' lit. 'not at all now.' (RC 83.*e.*) **quae videbantur,**—'whatever seemed necessary,' o 'what seemed best.' Understand *administranda esse* to com plete the phrase.

N.B.—The passive periphrastic conjugation, §1. [RC.II.142. HF.172 BA 390. H. :34. AG.294.*b.*] Asyndeton in rapid enumeration, § Comparative with standard of comparison omitted, *longius,* § [See note above, and RC.88.*b.*] The use of the singular, *impe bat,* § 2. [*Et successus* is not a new subject differing from *tempo brevitas,* but an explanation of that phrase.] The dat. of p pose, § 3. [*Difficultatibus* is not the ordinary dat. of interest (*i.e.*

the person concerned) so often combined with the dat. of purpose, as it means 'with a view to,' 'with reference to,' rather than 'for the good of.'] The use of *ipsi sibi*, § 3. [Cf. N.B. to c.19. § 6.] Repetition of *singuli*, § 3. [For emphasis and clearness.] The use of *nisi* with the abl. absol., § 3. [Cf. c.32. § 2. The explanation that the verb of the protasis with *nisi* has been omitted, and may supplied from the context; here *e.g.* from *discedere*. RC.II.51. BA. 466. So *nisi* may be found with other cases of the partic. (Bk.I. 44.6.), with nouns modifying the omitted verb (Bk.III.8.3.; 17.7.), with prepositional phrases (Bk.IV.24.2., VI.20.3.), with relative clauses (Bk.I.30.5.), with temporal clauses (Bk.VI.18.3.) It need not be supposed, however, that the ellipse was a conscious one in such cases.]

CAP. XXI.

1. **necessariis . . . imperatis,**—'having given only the necessary (*or* indispensable) orders,' lit.? **ad . . . milites,**—with *decucurrit*. **quam in partem,**—for *in eam partem quam;* 'in that direction which,' or 'on the side which.' Chap.23. § 1. shows that it was the left side of the camp. Notice the accus. with *in*. **devenit,**—lit. 'came down.'

2. **non longiore,** etc.,—lit. 'with no longer a speech than (urging them) to keep,' etc.; freely, 'saying nothing further than to urge the soldiers to remember,' etc. **neu,**—'and not.' **animo,**—'at heart.' For the subjunctives see RC.99. c.2. HF.181.3.

3. **quod . . . posset,**—explains the following, not the preceding, words. To avoid ambiguity, trans. 'he encouraged' (or as above 'said nothing further) . . ., then because.' **quam quo,** etc.,—lit. 'than to what point a weapon could be thrown'; trans. 'than the distance to which,' etc., or more freely, 'than the cast of a weapon.' For the subj. see RC.99.c. HF.188.4. **committendi,**—trans. by 'for.' App.2.*c*.

4. **alteram,**—'the other,' *i.e.* towards the right. **pugnantibus occurrit,**—'he came upon (*or* found) them (already) fighting.' Understand *eis*. (RC.II.56. HF.120.2.)

5. **Temporis,** etc.,—freely, 'so short was the time.' **paratus ad,**—here 'bent on.' **animus,**—'spirit.' **insignia,**—



probably crests, badges, etc., which served both as ornaments and to distinguish various bodies of troops. **galeas,**—these were hung from the neck on the march; Introduction, p. xx. **scutis,**—RC.85.*h*. HF.158.2. **tegimenta,**—leather coverings to protect the shields from exposure to the wet; Introduction, p. xvii. **defuerit,**—RC.99.*b*. HF.187.2. For the tense see RC.II.39.

6. **Quam,**—with *partem* ('direction'); trans. by 'whatever'; so *quae*. **casu devenit,**—'happened to come,' lit. **prima,**—adj. w. *signa*; trans. by adv. 'first.' **ad haec,**—'by these'; understand *signa*. **suis,**—either masc. 'his comrades,' or neut. (supplying *signis*) 'his own standards.' **dimitteret,**—RC.99.*a*.1. HF.183.2.

N.B.—The gerund and the gerundive construction. [This chapter furnishes an excellent study of the use of these two forms. Cf. also c.20. on another common use of the gerundive.] *Impero* with the cognate accus. [The phrase *rebus imperatis*, §1., implies the active *res imperare*. Cf.c.32. §3. The dat. of the person to whom the order is given may be joined with this usage.] The perfect of compounds of *curro*, [*decucurrit*, §1., *occurrit*, §4.] The use of *uti...neu...que*, §2. [The whole clause is divided into two parts joined by *que*; the first part has the clause *neu...animo* added by way of contrast to *suae...retinerent*. It is unnecessary to supply *ut* with the last clause from the preceding *neu*, as must be done in some cases in Latin. A similar sentence is found in Bk.V.34.3.] Emphatic use of *suae*, §2. [Cf. N.B. to c.14. §5. The addition of *pristinae* makes it unnecessary to give the same rendering here.] Relative clause of characteristic, *quo...posset*, §3. [Cf.c.16. §5.] The perf. subj. in consecutive clause, *defuerit*, §5. [RC. II.39. BA.113. AG.287.*c*.] The abl. with *detraho*, §5. [As a rule verbs of *taking away* have the dat. of interest rather than the abl. of separation. But here the idea of interest (advantage or disadvantage) can scarcely be admitted; there would be no point in the personification.] Use of *prima*, §6. [Cf. N.B. on *primae*, c.19. §5.] *In partem* of the direction towards which, §§1.6. Condensed expressions with the relative. [*Quam in partem*, §1., for *in eam partem quam* (or possibly *in quam*); *quam in partem ...quaeque signa...ad haec*, §6. for *in ea parte in quam...et ad ea signa quae*. In §6. notice too that the rel. clause precedes its antecedent; cf. N.B. to c.10. §4.]

CAP. XXII.

1. **ut,**—'as'; the verb of this clause is *postulabant*, supplied from the next clause. If expressed twice in English trans. 'demanded...required.' **loci,**—'the ground'; *loci natura* is explained by *dejectus collis.* **rei...ordo,**—'the science and method of the art of war.'

cum,—'since.' For the subj., *resisterent* and *impediretur*, see RC.99.*g*.ii. HF.203.1. **diversis legionibus,** etc.,—'as the legions were separated, they were resisting the enemy in different quarters,' or more fully, 'some in one quarter, others in another.' For the abl. see RC.85.*o*. HF.102.2.; for *hostibus*, RC.II.55. HF.105.9.

neque ... neque,—'not (lit. neither)...nor.' The principal clause begins here. **certa,**—'definite.' Caesar could not tell at what point they might be of most use. **neque ...provideri,**—supply *poterat* from *poterant*; the impers. pass.; 'nor could it be foreseen what was needed in each direction.' **opus esset,**—RC.99.*d*. HF.176.2. **administrari,** —here 'be attended to,' not 'be carried out.'

2. **rerum iniquitate,**—'unfavorable position of affairs,' or perhaps 'inequality of circumstances,' which will give more point to *quoque*. **eventus,**—nom. plur. 'issues.'

N.B.—*Que* adding an explanatory phrase, §1. [The difference in effect between *et*, *que*, and *atque* may be studied in the first three lines.] The abl. absol. where the nom. might have been used, *diversis legionibus*, §1. [This usage is not to be imitated in prose composition (RC.II.52.*c*. HF.219.*e*. BA.422.*b*.), although it occurs in Caesar more frequently than might be supposed; cf.Bk.III 14.4., Bk.IV. 12.1. and 21.6. More stress doubtless is laid in this way on the scattered position of the legions.] The phrase *aliae alia in parte*, §1. [This represents but one half of the English equivalent 'one in one direction, another in another (direction).' Cf.c.24. § 3. and c.26. § 2.] The use of *ante* in quoting a previous part of the work, §1. [Caesar uses *supra* more than four times as often as *ante*.] The phrase *opus est*, §1. [Here with a subject nom., which in the case of a neuter pron. or adj. is more common than the regular abl. BA.286. H.414.iv.N.4. AG.243.*e*.R.]

23. *On the left of the camp the Atrebates are completely routed by the 9th and 10th legions; in front the 11th and 8th legions are fighting with the Viromandui down by the river; more serious is the position of the 12th and 7th legions on the right, who are being surrounded by the Nervii.*

CAP. XXIII.

1. **Legionis,**—to be repeated w. *decimae;* trans. freely by plur. **ut,**—'when.' (RC.99.*g*.i. HF.200.2.) **acie,**—an irregular form of the gen. (RC.51.*c*.) **Atrebates,**—the object of *compulerunt*. **his,**—the Atrebates. **ea pars,**—*i.e.* the *sinistra pars acie.* Trans. 'for it was these that that division had encountered.'

conantes,—acc. agreeing with *eos* (*i.e. Atrebates*) understand as object of *insecuti*. **impeditam,**—as in c.9. § 1.

2. **Ipsi,**—the soldiers of the legions just mentioned. **dubitaverunt,**—cf. on c.2. § 5. **locum iniquum,**—viz. the slope of the opposite hill. **resistentes hostes,**—object of *conjecerunt*. Trans. the participles in this section by principal clauses; *e.g.* 'advanced..., then when...resisted and...was renewed.'

3. **alia in parte,**—this was in front of the camp. **diversae,**—'separated (from the others),' or freely, 'separately'; cf.c.22. § 1. **congressi,**—agreeing in gender w. *milites* implied in *legiones*. **ex loco superiore,**—with *profligatis*. **ipsis,**—'very'; lit.?

4. **totis,**—agreeing w. *castris;* emphatic by position; trans. freely by adv. 'wholly.' **a fronte, ab...parte,**—'in front, on the left.' **intervallo,**—RC.85.*g*. HF.58.6. **constitisset,**—agreeing with the nearer of its two subjects. **duce,**—freely, 'under the leadership of,' lit.? App.5.*a*. (RC.II.50. HF.102.3.N.) **summam imperii,**—'the supreme (*or* chief) command,' lit. 'the chief part of the command'; cf. c.4. § 7.

pars...pars,—one portion advanced towards the extreme right (*aperto latere*) of these legions, so as to get around them and attack them on the rear and flank; the other made straight for the Roman camp, through the wide gap left between these two legions on the right and the two in the centre which had gone down to the river, § 3. **aperto latere,**—'on the right,' the side unprotected by the shield. (RC.85.*k*.) **summum castrorum locum,**—not 'the highest part of the camp,' but 'the high ground of the camp,' 'the height where the camp stood.'

N.B.—The genitive *acie*, § 1. [Great irregularity prevailed in the form of the gen. sing. of the 5th decl. adopted by various writers. We have the testimony of Gellius (a grammarian of A.D.175.) that Caesar in a work on grammar upheld the form in *e*.] *Ut* temporal, § 1. *Dubito* with infin., § 2. [Cf. N.B. to c.2.] The gender of *congressi*, § 3. [A construction according to sense; cf. *his*, c.11. § 3., and *qui*, c.26. § 5.] Various uses of the ablative. Phrases expressing direction in which. [Cf. N.B. to c.8.] The different genitives with *summam*, § 4., and *summum locum*, § 5. *Et non* rather than *neque*, § 4. [This is because *non* is closely joined to *magno*, forming with it one idea.]

---

24. *Among the cavalry, light-armed troops, camp-followers and in the baggage-train there is utter confusion and panic.*

CAP. XXIV.

1. **levis armaturae,**—as in c.10. § 1. **fuerant,**—at the time mentioned in c.19. § 4. **quos pulsos dixeram,**—understand *esse*; 'who, as I stated, had been routed'; cf. on c.1. § 1. **adversis,**—lit. 'opposite them'; freely, 'face to face.' For the dat. cf. on *pugnantibus*, c.21. § 4. **occurrebant,**—the imperfects in §§ 1.2.3. describe a number of occurrences simultaneous with the main action. **in partem,**—trans. by 'in.' Why accus.?

2. **summo...collis,**—defining the position of the *port* *decumana.* **nostros,**—the ninth and tenth legions; c.23. § **victores,** — predicative adj. **versari,** — 'busy,' 'movin about.' **praecipites,**—predicative, agreeing w. *sese;* tran freely as if it went with *fugae.*

3. **eorum,**—this does not include the two legions servin as rearguard; see c.26. § 3. Trans. freely 'from thos **alii aliam,** etc., — see on c.22. § 1. **ferebantur,** — 'we rushing.'

4. **quorum,**—possessive gen.; 'who have a reputation fo etc. **auxilii causa,** — 'as auxiliaries,' lit.? **ab,** — 'by **compleri,**—notice the tense of this and the following infi **circumventas teneri,**—lit. 'held surrounded'; freely, 'su rounded and hemmed in.' **rebus,**—'success *or* cause.' **d mum,**—RC.83.*g.* HF.85.1.

5. **pulsos,**—understand *esse.* **castris,**—RC.II.65. HF.11

N.B. *Dixeram*, § 1. [One of the few places where Caesar uses the fi singular of himself; for the tense cf. N.B. to *dixeramus*, c.1. § The imperfect and perfect tenses. [The former is used in principal clauses of §§ 1.–3., the latter in §§ 4.5. Evidently Caesar the first part is depicting the condition of affairs in other quart while the main action was in progress; at § 4. he resumes his nar tive.] The infin. with verbs of perception, §§ 2.4. [In Cic and later Latin the participle was often used 'to express the act condition of the object' perceived. But at all times, as in Caes the infin. was more common. The present participle is found *e.g.* Bk.IV.c.26. §§ 2.4. with *conspicio.* The perfect participle, as in c. § 1. is generally indistinguishable from the perfect infinitive w *esse* omitted.] Asyndeton between two relative clauses, 1.4. [In § 1. the reason is obvious; *qui* refers to *pedites* only, q to both *equites* and *pedites.* In § 4. *quorum* may refer more to Treveri as a whole than to the *equites* merely.] *Ab* v *civitate*, § 4. [This involves a sort of personification; the st being regarded as possessing power to act.] *Despero* used transitive verb, § 4. [So by Caesar in the abl. absol. only.] of *Romani* in Caesar. [Very seldom in Caesar's own narra (*nostri* being used instead); generally in expressing the words thoughts of the enemy, as in c.10. § 4.; 12. § 5.; 31. § 2.]

25. Caesar, coming to the right wing, finds it in desperate straits, but his presence and his example reanimate the troops.

CAP. XXV.

1. **Caesar,**—the subject of *processit* in § 2. The length of the sentence, which is the chief cause of its difficulty, is due to the long clause *ubi...posset,* stating the condition of affairs when Caesar came to the right wing. In this clause we have *ubi vidit* on which depend the infinitives *urgeri; esse* (*impedimento*) preceded by a causal abl. absol. clause; *esse* (*tardiores*) preceded by six causal abl. absol. clauses; *excedere, vitare, intermittere, instare;* (*rem*) *esse,* with which *vidit* is repeated for clearness' sake, and (*ullum*) *esse.* Then in § 2. another abl. absol. clause precedes the main verb. In English this should be broken up into shorter sentences. Trans. *profectus* by a principal clause; *ubi,* lit. 'when,' by 'there'; the abl. absol. and infin. clauses after *quartae cohortis* by principal clauses, omitting *vidit* at the end of the section; and begin the trans. of § 2. by 'so' or 'then.' **ab...cohortatione,**—'from encouraging,' etc. **signis... collatis,**—*i.e.* the cohorts no longer kept their proper intervals. **sibi...impedimento,**—'were hindering one another in fighting,' lit.? (RC.82.*c.* HF.134.1.) **quartae cohortis,**—this would be at the end of the front line, a very exposed position. **signifero, signo,**—*i.e.* of the fourth cohort. **in his,**—'among them.' **primipilo,**—see Introduction, p. xix. and Vocabulary under *pilus.* **ut,**—'so that. **jam non,**—'no longer.' **sustinere,**—'support.' **ab novissimis,**—'at the rear'; *ab* used as in *a fronte* and *ab utroque latere* below. **deserto proelio,**—abl. absol. **subeuntes,**—predicative w. *intermittere;* 'cease coming up.' **et (ab),**—we should say 'but.' **rem esse in angusto,**—'matters had reached a crisis,' lit.? **neque ullum esse,**—'and there was no.' **posset,**—RC.99.*c.* HF.188.4.

2. **ab novissimis,**—as in § 1. Naturally Caesar would

approach from the rear. **uni,**—if retained, trans. 'a.' **militi,**—trans. dat. by 'from.' (RC.82.*b*.i.) **eo,**—adv. **jussit,**—the object is easily supplied from *milites*. **quo facilius,**—as in c.17. § 4.

3. **spe...animo,**—freely, 'the soldiers were inspired with hope, and their spirits revived,' lit. 'hope having been put in the soldiers.' **militibus,**—dat. (RC.82.*b*. HF.5.4.) **pro se,**—'on his part.' **etiam...rebus,**—'even in his own extremity.'

N.B.—The structure of the Latin period. [The sentence beginning in § 1. is unusually long for Caesar. For good examples of the shorter period more common in Caesar see c.12. § 2., c.19. § 5., c.33. § 2. For longer passages, more like the present, see c.8. § 3., c.17. § 4. RC.II. 238. H.573. AG.345.N.346.] Verbal noun with objective genitive in place of the more usual gerundive construction. *legionis cohortatione*, § 1. *Intermittere* with supplementary partic., § 1. [The infin., as in Bk.IV.31.1., is the usual construction.] *Neque...et*. § 1. Relative clause of characteristic. *quod...posset*, § 1. The dative with verbs of taking away, *militi*, § 2. [Really a dat. of interest (sometimes of advantage, sometimes of disadvantage). RC. 82.*b*.i. BA.243. H.385.2. AG.229.] Use of *unus* as indefinite article. § 2. [This is extremely rare in Latin, found nowhere else in Caesar and rejected by many editors here.] The force of *ab novissimis* §§ 1.2. [Caesar nowhere else uses *ab* in the partitive sense like *ex* or *de*, and as it is exceedingly rare in Latin and another explanation is possible here, it seems best to take it as in the notes. Many who retain *uni* defend it by making *ab novissimis* dependent on it.]

26, 27. *The two legions forming square resist more successfully, and when the two legions of the rear-guard appear and the victorious tenth legion comes to their aid from the left wing, the rout of the enemy is complete, though they still fight desperately.*

CAP. XXVI.

1. **juxta,**—*i.e.* to the twelfth legion. **ut...conjungerent,**—as the subject (*legiones*) is not the object of *monuit*, the usual

trans. with 'to' and infin. is impossible. Trans. 'that... should come together,' or 'to have the legions come together.' **conversa signa inferrent,**—the exact nature of the movement is uncertain, but it seems probable that they formed a square either by portions of each legion facing about, or by one legion forming in rear of the other and then facing round. Trans. 'wheeling round, advance,' lit. 'bear forward the standards turned about.'

2. **alius alii...ferret,**—'they were lending...to one another,' more lit. 'one was lending...to another.' **ne,** etc., —'lest they should,' 'that they might,' or 'of being,' etc. (RC.99.*a*.1.ii. HF.185.3.) **aversi,**—'in the rear,' lit. 'when turned away,' *i.e.* facing the other way.

3. **legionum duarum...fuerant,**—see c.19. § 3. **proelio ...incitato,**—'on hearing of the battle, quickened their speed (*or* pace),' lit.? **summo colle,**—'the top of the hill,' lit. 'the hill where highest.' (RC.88.*c*. HF.59.1.)

4. **potitus et conspicatus,**—trans. by relative clauses. **loco superiore,**—the top of the hill across the river. **quae res gererentur,**—'what was going on (being done).' (RC. 99.*d*. HF.176.2.) **subsidio nostris,**—App.3.*c*.; 'to assist (*or* reinforce) our men.' (RC.82.*c*. HF.184.1.)

5. **Qui,**—the soldiers of the tenth legion; connected in sense, though not agreeing in form, with *legionem*. **quo... esset,**—freely, 'the position of affairs.' For the subj. see RC.99.*d*. HF.176.2. So *versaretur*. **versaretur,**—agreeing with the nearest of the three subjects; trans. 'were' or 'were involved.' **nihil...reliqui fecerunt,**—'made all possible haste,' or 'hastened forward as fast as they could,' more lit. 'left nothing undone with respect to speed.' For *reliqui* see RC.81.*b*.i. HF.69.10.; *sibi*, lit. 'for themselves.'

N.B.—Military phrases with *signa*. [Many military movements are regularly expressed in Latin by such phrases, *e.g. signa convertere, inferre, ferre, movere, constituere, conferre, convellere; ab signis discedere; **signis infestis***, etc.] The use of *alius alii*, § 2. [Cf.

N.B. to c.22.] The construction with verbs of fearing, § 2. [Cf. c.1. § 2. RC.II.154. HF.185.3. BA.138. H.498.III. AG.331 *f*.] The force of *aversi*, § 2. [So Bk.I.26.2. Contrast *adversi*, as used *e.g.* c.24. § 1.] The relation of the abl. absol. clauses in § 3. [Cf. N.B. to c.11. § 5.] The phrase *summo colle*, § 3. [In this idiom the adj. regularly precedes; cf.VII.69.1., *in colle summo*, a much rarer order. RC.II.114.*b*. HF.59.1. BA.60. H.440.2.1. AG.193.] Sense construction in *qui*, § 5. [Cf.c.23. § 3.] A singular verb with subjects plural and sing., *versaretur*, § 5. [This may occur where the nearest subject is singular, and is of special importance. Where all the subjects are singular the latter condition does not hold.] The phrase *nihil reliqui facere*=' to do one's utmost,' § 5.

CAP. XXVII.

1. **rerum,**—' in the position of affairs.' **est facta,**—' took place.' **etiam qui,** etc.,—' even such as had,' etc. For the subj. see RC.99.*c*. HF.188.4. **scutis,**—RC.85.*k*.iii.

etiam inermes, — ' even though,' etc. **occurrerunt,**— ' attacked.' For the dat. cf. on c.21. § 4.

2. **vero,** — ' moreover.' **omnibus in locis,** — *i.e.* even where the ground was very unsuitable for cavalry. **pugnarunt,**—for *pugnaverunt*. (RC.66.) **quo,**—here=*ut*, ' in order that.' **militibus,** — dat. [The text is uncertain, many editors substituting *pugnae* for *pugnarunt quo*. In that case *pugnae* depends on *locis*, and *praeferrent* with *occurrerent* (not *occurrerunt*) is co-ordinate with *ut* . . .*redintegrarent*.]

3. **in extrema spe salutis,**—freely, ' when hope of safety was all but gone,' lit. ' in the last hope of safety.' **primi,**— ' the foremost.' **jacentibus,**—supply *eis*; lit. ' those lying fallen'; freely, ' the fallen.'

4. **his,**—referring to *proximi*. **qui superessent,**—' the survivors,' more lit. ' such as survived.' For the subj. cf. on *procubuissent*, § 1. **ut ex tumulo,**—' as from a mound.' **conjicerent, remitterent,** — co-ordinate with *ut . . . insisterent*, § 3. **intercepta,**—' that they had caught.'

5. **ut non,** etc.,—' so that it must be held that men of such valor had not without good reason ventured,' etc. The

meaning is: no one is justified in attributing their defeat to lack of valor or to rashness. **nequiquam,**—lit. 'idly,' here 'without good hopes of success.' **virtutis,**—RC.81.*e.* HF.130.7. **homines,**—subj. of *ausos esse,* which depends on *judicari.*

quae facilia, etc.,—lit. 'which things the greatness of their spirit had made easy from (*i.e.* instead of) very difficult'; freely, 'things which, in themselves very difficult, their great courage had made easy,' or 'all which, though naturally very difficult,' etc.

N.B.—Clauses of result, §§1.3.4.5. [It will be noticed that the imperf. subj. is the natural tense for the narration of past results. RC.II. 38. BA.113.] Relative clauses of characteristic, §§1.4. [It is possible, though improbable, that *qui procubuissent* has a definite reference, and is subj. through its dependence on *redintegrarent*; cf. N.B. to c.11. § 5.] Emphatic juxtaposition of *inermes armatis,* §1. The use of *quo*=*ut* in a final clause, § 2. [The peculiarity (if the reading is correct) is that it is not followed by any comparative. The only classical prose writer who certainly uses *quo* thus is Sallust, and this is a serious objection to the genuineness of the text.] *Ut*='as,' in comparisons, § 4. [Other examples in Caesar are Bk.I.38.4., V.12.5., VI.34.7., VII.8.3. So also with indic. clauses, *e.g.* c.19. § 6.] Asyndeton in § 5. Use of *redigo,* § 5. [Cf. Bk.IV.3.4. Used in this way, *i.e.* with the double accus. (direct and factitive), it is very rare in Latin, *reddo* being much commoner, although occurring in this sense in Caesar only in c.5. § 5. Elsewhere Caesar uses *redigo* with *ad* (cf.c.28. §§1.2.), *in* (cf.c.14. § 3) or *sub* (Bk.V.29.4.) In the present passage doubtless the idea of reduction (from difficult to easy) was present in the writer's mind.]

---

28. *The remnant of the Nervii submit to Caesar.*

CAP. XXVIII.

1. **facto,**—*proelium facere,* 'to fight a battle.' **ad internecionem redacto,**—'exterminated *or* utterly destroyed,' lit.? The losses were probably not as heavy as Caesar was given to understand, for three years after, and again two

years after that, the Nervii were strong enough to revolt. **majores natu,**—as in c.13. § 2. **quos...dixeramus,**—cf. on *quam...dixeramus*, c.1. § 1. **aestuaria,**—low land near the sea, partly isolated by the tides. **nuntiata,**—cf. on c.26. § **cum...arbitrarentur,**—'thinking,' 'believing.' **nihil impeditum, nihil tutum,** — 'no obstacle, no safety'; lit. 'nothing was hindered,' supplying *esse*. Trans. the dat. by 'for.'

2. **se...dediderunt,**—*se* is necessary, *dedo* being a transitive verb. **civitatis calamitate,**—'the disaster which had befallen,' etc. **sescentis,**—supply *senatoribus*. In English we should put the noun with the first, not the second numeral. **vix ad,**—'to barely.' **possent,**—RC.99.c. HF. 188.4.

3. **miseros ac supplices,**—freely, 'wretched suppliants,' lit.? **usus videretur,** — supply *esse*; 'might be seen to have shown.' **uti jussit,**—'bade them occupy.' **ut prohiberent,**—'to restrain.' (RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.)

N.B.—*Qui supererant*, § 2., as contrasted with *qui superessent*, c.27. § 4. [It is often optional with a writer whether in rel. clauses he shall use the indic. (those very persons who) or the subj. limiting to a class (such persons as).] The order of *vix ad quingentos*, § 2. [*Vix* is not, as in Bk.III.4.1., placed for emphasis out of its natural order. Latin usage would not have allowed *vix* to come between the preposition and its object; the rule is that these are separated only by adjectival modifiers, or by adverbs modifying a partic. or gerund, or rarely by certain particles such as *que*, *enim*, *vero*.] The personal use of *videor*, followed by infin. with predicate nom., *usus videretur*, § 3. The difference between the constructions with *jubeo* and *impero*, § 3. [*Quos* at the beginning of the section goes also with *jussit*.] The phrase *se suosque prohibere*, § 3. [*Prohibeo* would scarcely have been used with *se* alone, but with *suos* it is quite proper.]

---

29. *The Aduatuci, retiring to a strongly fortified place, prepare to resist Caesar.*

CAP. XXIX.

1. **supra,**—c.16. § 4. **cum,**—'while.' **nuntiata,**—trans. by principal verb; cf. on c.26. § 3. **domum,**—see on c.24. 4. **reverterunt,**—'turned back.'

3. **Quod cum,**—'while (*or* although) this.' **ex...partibus,**—'all around,' lit. 'on all sides in its circumference.' *Omnibus* really means 'all other,' opposed to *una ex parte.* **despectus,**—accus. plur. 'precipices,' lit. 'places affording a view.' **in latitudinem, amplius,**—cf. on c.7. § 4. **pedum,**—RC.81.*e.* HF.130.7. So *ponderis.*

duplici altissimo,—change order in trans. **munierant,**—at some previous time. **tum collocabant,**—notice the change of tense; 'at this time (*or* now) they were engaged in placing.' *Tum* refers to the time Caesar is dealing with. The stones and beams were not to strengthen the wall, but to throw down on the heads of its assailants.

4. **Cimbris Teutonisque,** — see Introduction, p. viii. **agere,**—'drive'; of the cattle. **citra,**—*i.e.* on the western side. **depositis,**—trans. by a principal clause. **custodiam ac praesidium,**—the former to keep watch over the *impedimenta;* the latter to hold the place where they were left. Trans. by 'as.' **una,**—*i.e.* with the *impedimenta.*

5. **Hi,**—'the latter,' referring to the *sex millia hominum.* **exagitati,**—App.37.*a.*N.B. **cum...defenderent,**—'while at one time they were attacking others, and at another time defending themselves against the attacks of others,' or 'now invading, and again repelling invasion.' **illatum defenderent,**—supply *bellum;* lit. 'warding off war brought on (them).'

eorum omnium,—all the neighbors. **domicilio,**—RC. 82.*c.* HF.184.1. **hunc locum,**—the whole district, not the town alone.

N.B.—*Reverto,* active, § 1., and *revertor,* deponent, c.10. § 4. [The former in Caesar only in the perfect tenses, the latter, with but one exception (*reversus,* Bk.VI.42.1.) only in the present tenses. Caesar by

no means confines his use of the word to cases where one turns bac before his journey is finished; cf. *e.g.* c.35. § 2.] Prepositi adjective phrase, *in circuitu*, § 3. [These are rare in Latin.] *Amplius* and genitive, § 3. [Cf. N.B. to c.16.] *Duplici altissim* § 3. [The rule that two adjectives modifying the same noun are be connected by *et* or *que* is not observed where one adj. is a nume (here *duplici muro=duobus muris*) or an adj. of place or time.] Change of tense in § 3. *In* and abl. with *colloco*, § 3. [This the regular usage with verbs of placing; contrast *in oppidum c tulerunt*, § 2.] The invasion of the Cimbri and Teutones. The relative clause with indic., § 4. [Cf. N.B. to c.28.] T phrase *agere ac portare*, § 4. [So the phrase of plundering, *ferr agere*; here Lewis and Short hold the phrase means merely 'l and carry.'] The use of *prognati*, § 4., and *obitus*, § 5. [T former a poetical word; the latter elsewhere (as the verb *obeo*) u of individuals.] The phrase *alias...alias*, § 5. [In classic authors, of time, not place.] The phrases *bellum inferre*, *bell illatum defendere*, § 5. [Of offensive and defensive war respectiv The former is a regular rendering for 'invade,' *invado* being rath 'attack.']

30, 31. *Their confidence turns to dismay when they reali the Romans' skill in siege-works, and they seek to make th peace with Caesar.*

CAP. XXX.

1. **primo,**—adjective; it is answered by *postea*, § 2. **facie bant,**—notice the tense. App.26.*c*. **proeliis,**—'skirmishes.

2. **pedum,**—supply 'in height.' (RC.81.*e*. HF.130.7.) **circuitu...milium,**—evidently *pedum* not *passuum* is to b understood, as a wall 3 miles long is more probable than one of 15 miles. **circummuniti,**—'when invested *or* sur rounded.' **oppido,**—RC.85.*a*.ii.*g*.

3. **actis, exstructo,**—trans. by clause with 'after.' App 5.*a*.ii. For the explanation of the operations here spoken of see Introduction, p. xxii. **constitui,**—'was being set up *or* built.' **primum,**—corresponding to *vero*, c.31. § 1. **irridere,** —historical infin. App.36. (RC.101.*d*. HF.216.3.N.2.) So

ncrepitare. **quod...instituerotur,**—lit. 'because (as they aid)...was being set up'; freely, 'for setting up,' etc. For the subj. see RC.II.165.*b.* HF.198.2. **ab tanto spatio,**—'at such a distance'; cf.c.7. § 3.

4. **quibusnam,**—'with what...pray.' *Nam* adds force to he mocking question. **praesertim homines,**—in apposi- on with the subj. of *confiderent*; 'especially when they ere,' etc. **staturae,** — RC.81.*e.* HF.130.7. So *oneris.* **lerumque,**—'as a rule.' **magnitudine...suorum,**—'their wn huge stature,' lit.? **contemptui,**—App.? (RC.82.*c.* HF.134.1.) Trans. 'is an object of contempt to,' or 'is espised by.' **turrim,**—for the form see RC.49.*c.* HF.40. **noturos esse,**—the usual reading is *turrim in muro sese ollocare,* the chief difficulty in which is the pres. inf. where e expect the fut. With that reading the Aduatuci are epresented as thinking (or affecting to think) that the ower was to be lifted and placed on the town-wall. **con- iderent,**—RC.106.*a.* HF.209.1.6.

.B.—*Primo adventu,* § 1. [Equivalent to 'as soon as it arrived.'] The genitive of characteristic, §§ 2.4. The abl. with *contineo,* § 2. [Cf.c.11. § 2. So with *teneo.* The abl. is that of means rather that local. RC.85.*a.*ii.*g.* H.425.1.1.] The accus. in *-im,* *turrim,* §§ 3.4. The historical infin., § 3. [RC.II.131. HF.216. 3.N.2. BA.186. H.536.I. AG.275.] *Ab*=at a distance of, § 3. [Cf. c.7. § 3. Except in one case, Caesar does not specify the place from which the distance is measured; but the fact that this does occur (Bk.IV.22.4., *ex eo loco*) shows that it cannot be a case of hyperbaton or of omission of object.] *Quod* with the subj. of virtual indirect narration, § 3. [The subj. is not used to throw discredit on the statement, but tells us what was the substance of the taunting cries. RC.II.165.*b.*,216. HF.198.2. BA.481.*b.* H.516.II. AG.341.*d.*] The phrase *contemptui esse,* § 4. [Caesar's word for the feeling of contempt is *contemptio,* *e.g.* III.17.5.] *Praesertim,* adding an important point, § 4. [So most frequently in Latin with *cum* or *si* clauses; though Caesar almost always has it in clauses similar to the present; *e.g.* Bk.III.17.7., IV.8.2. The latter case is the only one in Caesar where *praesertim* does not precede the word it qualifies.] The subjunctive reporting a question, *confiderent,* § 4. [Notice that the question is virtually rhetorical.]

CAP. XXXI.

1. **moveri,**—'moving,' lit.? Supply as subj. *turrim.* **ad hunc modum,**—'after this fashion,' 'to this effect.' **locuti,**—participle, the verb of the clause being *dixerunt*, § 3. On *locuti* depends *non...possent,* the rest of the chapter on *dixerunt.*

2. **Non,**—may be taken closely with *sine ope divina,* 'it was not without...that,' etc. **existimare,**—the subj. *se* is not expressed; so with *permittere*, § 3., and *petere,* § 4. **qui possent,**—'seeing that they could.' For the subj. see RC. 99.*g*.iii. HF.198.4.

3. **eorum,**—referring to *Romanos.*

4. **deprecari,**—this word (='petition against') is used because they are asking that something be *not* done; trans. 'petition for.' **pro,**—'in accordance with.' **sua,**—as in c.14. § 5. **audirent,**—'heard of'; the imperf. implying 'constantly heard of.' **statuisset,**—for the fut. perf. indic. of the original. (RC.107.*b*. HF.211.N.) **ne...despoliaret,**—'not to,' etc.; in apposition with *unum* and depending on *petere ac deprecari.* (RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.) **armis,**—trans. by 'of.' (RC.85.*h*. HF.158.2.)

5. **virtuti,**—RC.II.55. HF.105.9. **traditis armis,**—trans. by clause with 'if.' App.5.*a*.ii.

6. **praestare,**—for original impersonal *praestat;* the subject is *pati.* **in...deduceretur,**—'reduced to that extremity or alternative'; *i.e.* if they had to choose between the two. For an original fut. indic. (RC.107.*b*. HF.211.2.*a*.) **quamvis,**—from *quivis.* (RC.95.viii.) **a,**—'at the hands of.' **quam,**—because of the comparative force of *praestare.* **per cruciatum interfici,**—freely, 'be tortured to death,' lit.? **consuessent,**—for *consuevissent.* (RC.66.)

N.B.—*Moveri*, § 1. = Eng. 'move,' intransitive. [BA.20.] Omission of *se*, §§ 2.3.4. [Cf. N.B. to c.8. § 2.] *Qui* with causal subj., § 2. [Representing an original *qui possint*, or if *vos* be substituted for

Romanos, qui possitis. RC.II.196. HF.198.4. BA.509. H.517. AG 320.*e*.] The tense of *audirent*, *statuisset*, § 4., *deducerentur*, § 6 [For the pres., fut. perf., and fut. indic. respectively.] The abl. absol. equivalent to a conditional clause, *traditis armis*, § 5. [Cf. c 17. § 3.] The mood of *possent*, § 5. [As *quibus* is the co-ordinating rel., we might have had the infin. *posse*. RC.II.215.*f*. BA.78. H.524.1.1. AG.336.*b*.R.] The phrase *praestat quam*, § 6. The force of *quivis*, § 6. [RC.II.190. BA.359. H.458. AG.202.*c*.]

32, 33. *Caesar makes terms with them, but on their attempting to escape by night in violation of the agreement, he sells the inhabitants as slaves.*

CAP. XXXII.

1. **consuetudine, merito,**—trans. by 'in accordance with.' (RC.85.*m*. HF.71.3.) **aries,**—see Introduction, p. xxii. **attigisset, dedidissent,**—for original fut. perf. indic.; trans. by past tense.

2. **nisi armis traditis,**—'unless they had previously surrendered,' etc., or 'except after,' etc. Cf. on c.20. § 3. **in Nerviis,**—'in the case of the N.'; see c.28. § 3. This is explained by *finitimisque . . . inferrent*. **quam,**—the indefinite adj. (RC.II.189.N.B.) **dediticiis,**—'those who had surrendered to,' etc.

3. **ad suos,**—as distinguished from *suis*, implying their return to the citizens. **quae,**—subj. of *imperarentur*. **facere dixerunt,**—the subj. of *dixerunt* is *legati*; with *facere* understand either *se* (the envoys speaking for the people), or *eos* referring to *suos*. *Facere* is more emphatic than *facturos*; the latter is but a promise for the future, the former a statement that already they were carrying out his orders.

4. **jacta, celata, retenta,**—trans. by principal clauses in the active. App.5.*a*.iii. **prope,**—adverb. **aggeris,**—that mentioned in c.30. § 3. **adaequarent,**—RC.99.*b*. HF.187.2. **eo die,**—contrasted with *sub vesperum*, c.33. § 1. **pace**

sunt usi,—'they kept quiet'; the subject being the Adu tuci. This phrase is generally best rendered 'they enjoy peace.'

N.B.—Tense of *attigisset*, §1. [The imperf. subj. representing a original subj. of purpose might have been used. RC.II.175. H 201.5. BA.412. H.520.I.2. AG.327. But in clauses referring to th future (as the original statement does here) the fut. or fut. pe indic. is more common than the pres. subj.] The phrase *a* *armis traditis*, §2. [Cf. N.B. to c.20. §3.] The indefinite *qui* or *quis*, §2. [RC.95.vi. BA.357. H.455 AG.105.*d.*] *Que* explanatory, *Quae imperarentur*, §3. [Cf. N.B. to c.21. §1.] D tinguish carefully from *quae* (accus.) *imperaretur* (impers. pas *facere*. The mood shows that it is part of the original statemen *quae imperabantur* would have been a phrase of the writer replacing the original.] The tense of *facere*, §3. [See n above.] *Eo die*, §4. [The point of time, where we might have expected duration of time. Cf.c.6. §1.]

CAP. XXXIII.

1. **quam,**—as in c.32. §2. **ab,**—cf. on *a*, c.31. §6.

2. **Illi,**—subject of *fecerunt*, at the end of the section, and referring to *oppidani*, §1. App.18.*b*. **ante inito consilio,** —'according to a prearranged plan,' lit.? **ut...est,**—a reference to *ut postea perspectum est*, c.32. §4.

praesidia deducturos,—from the *castella* on the wall of circumvallation; c.30. §2. **servaturos,**—'would keep watch'; or supplying *praesidia*, 'would maintain.' **his,**— 'the'; with *armis*. **scutis factis,**—abl. absol.; freely, 'with shields made,' etc. **viminibus intextis,**—also abl. absol., but dependent on, rather than co-ordinate with, *factis*; trans. 'or of twigs woven together.' **quae,**—referring to *scutis*.

qua,—adverb. **minime arduus,**—predicate of *videbatur* (*esse*). Evidently the Roman wall was on higher ground than the space between the wall and the town.

3. **celeriter,**—notice the emphatic position. **imperarat,** for *imperaverat*. (RC.66.) **ignibus....facta,**—trans. by

rincipal clause; 'warning was given with fire-signals.' concursum est,—'the soldiers rushed to the spot.' App. 4. (RC.96.*b*. HF.164.2.)

4. **pugnatumque est,**—App.24. Trans. *que* by 'but.' **ita...ut,**—'as...as,' not 'so that,' as the mood of *debuit* shows. **ut a viris fortibus pugnari debuit,**—'as brave men might have been expected to fight,' more lit. 'ought to have fought' or 'were bound to fight.' **in extrema,** etc., —as in c.27. § 3. **eos qui,** etc.,—'men who'; not 'those who,' which would have required the indic. (RC.99.*c*. HF. 188.4.) **cum,**—'when,' or 'at a time when.'

5. **ad,**—adverb; 'about.' It does not influence the case of the noun.

6. **cum,**—'since.' **jam,**—'any longer.' **sectionem,**—as § 7. shows, the inhabitants are included. **universam,**—'all together,' *i.e.* not divided into lots.

7. **capitum,**—'of persons (sold).' **millium,** etc.,—predicate gen. depending on *numerus* understood; lit. 'as (a number) of fifty,' etc.; freely, 'as fifty' or 'to be fifty,' etc. (RC.81.*e*.ii. HF.130.7.) The Aduatuci reappear again three years later, fighting with the Nervii against Caesar, so that the whole tribe could not have been in the town (as stated in c.29. § 2.) and either killed or enslaved.

N.B.—*Sub* in expressions of time, § 1. [Cf.c.11. § 6. So also *sub lucem*, VII.61.3.] *Noctu*, § 1. [The rarer *nocte* occurs in c.17. § 2.] *Ab*='at the hands of,' § 1. [This illustrates the transition from the local force, 'from,' to the indication of the agent, 'by'; *accipere injuriam*='to be injured.' Cf.c.31. § 6. with *pati;* I.20.4. with *si quid gravius accidit;* V.54.5. with *imperia perferre.*] *Milites... ab militibus*, § 1. [The pronoun *eis* would not have been so clear. Cf.c.13. § 2. *ad Caesarem.*] Use of *denique*, § 2. [It means: 'this finally if nothing else,' hence 'at least.'] Construction of *viminibus intextis*, § 2. [See note above. Other explanations are that the words depend on *ex;* or that *intextis* agrees with *scutis*, while *viminibus* is abl. of material depending on *intextis*.] The adverb *repentino* for *repente*, § 2. [Almost unparralleled in classical Latin.] The impersonal passive. [*Concursum est*, § 3.; *pugnatum est, pugnari debuit*, § 4.] *Debuit* with pres. infin., § 4.

[RC.II.160.N.B. HF.163.5.N. BA.198. H.537.I. AG.288.*a*.] The mo of *jacerent* and *consisteret*, § 4. [Both are in clauses of characte istic; the former, 'men in such a position that,' etc.; the latter, ' an occasion such that,' etc.] The use of *ad* with numerals *circiter*, § 5. [Caesar seems to be the first writer, and this the on passage in Caesar, where we find it used in a purely adverbial wa without being followed by the accus., as *e.g.* in c.4. § 10.] Th predicative gen of characteristic, *millium*, § 7.

34, 35. *The tribes in north-western Gaul submit to Crass and tribes across the Rhine sue for peace. Caesar sets out f Italy, and a thanksgiving for fifteen days is decreed in Ro for his successes.*

CAP. XXXIV.

1. **una,**—'a single.' **miserat,**—this is the first mentio of this expedition. **Curiosolitas,**—the accus. plur of *Curio solites*. (RC.49.*d*. HF.274.) **in,**—'under.'

N.B.—The accus. plur of the 3rd. decl. in *ăs*, *Curiosolitas*. [Caesar often uses Greek endings in the declension of names of Gallic tribes. Cf. N.B. to c.7. § 1., *Cretas*, which is a pure Greek word.]

CAP. XXXV.

1. **tanta...perlata est,**—'such a report...spread to or among,' etc.; or more freely, 'such was the impression the fame of this war made upon,' etc. **incolerent,**—for the subj. see RC.99.*k*. **se...daturas,**—the gender shows that the writer has in mind the states, not the ambassadors who represent them. Trans. by 'to' and infin. (RC.101.*b*.iii. HF.110.1.) **imperata,**—'his bidding.'

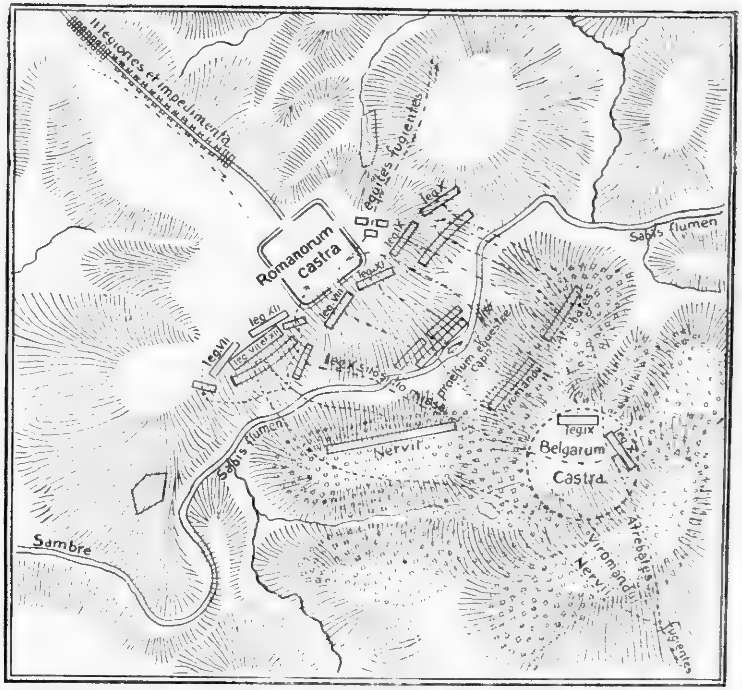
2. **properabat,**—as is shown by § 3., means here 'was anxious to go,' or 'was in a hurry to go.' **inita aestate,**— cf. on c.2. § 1.

3. **in,**—'among.' **propinquae,**—only as compared with the province. The winter quarters were nearer the scene of Crassus' operations than of Caesar's.

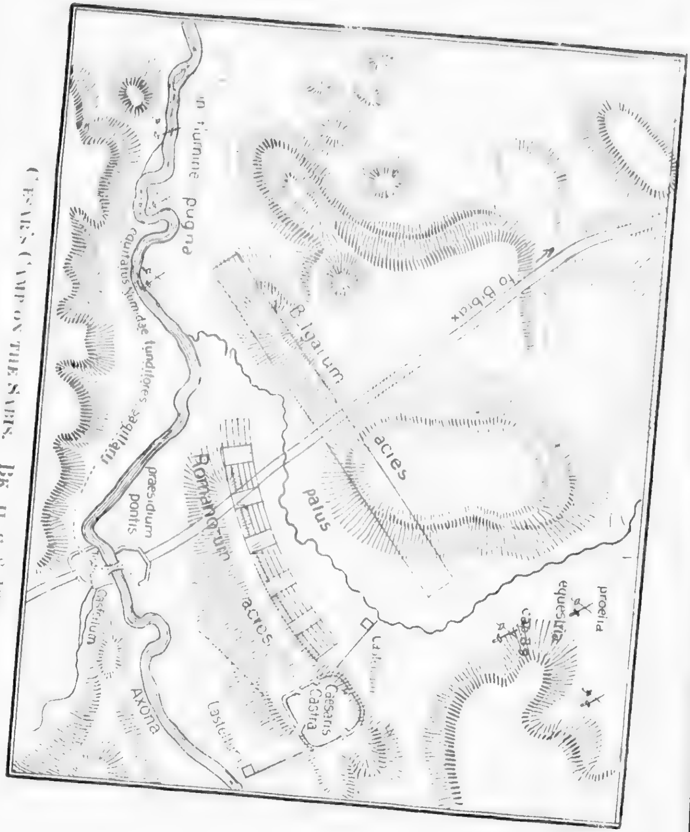
4. **ex,**—'in accordance with'; *i.e.* the senate at Rome acted on the information contained in the despatches. **dies quindecim,**—with *supplicatio.* (RC.83.*c.* HF.69.9.) **quod,**—'an honor which'; its antecedent is the preceding clause. The longest period of thanksgiving previously was twelve days, decreed for Pompey's victories over Mithridates. **accidit,**—'had fallen'; notice the tense in Latin. **nulli,**—cf. on c.6. § 3.

N.B.—The mood of *incolerent*, § 1. [Explained above as subj. by attraction to mood of *mitterentur*. RC.II.220.*c.* H.529.II. AG.342. Some editors, however, explain it as a rel. clause of characteristic, meaning 'even such as dwelt.'] *Qui se daturas*, § 1. [If *se*, referring to *nationes*, is justified by *qui*, meaning the envoys who represent the states, we should have expected *daturos*. That is, either *se daturos* or *eas daturas* would seem more consistent. But probably *nationibus* is felt as the logical subject of the main clause, as if we had *nationes legatos mitterent*, in which case *se* is regular.] The position of *que* in *ob easque*, § 4. [Cf. *sub occasumque*, c.11. § 6. This is the regular order in Latin, though occasionally *que* is appended to monosyllabic prepositions; cf. *inque eam rem*, Bk.V. 36.2. Notice also that the use of *que* to introduce a new period is exceedingly rare in Caesar.] The accus. of duration of time attached to a noun, § 4. [This is explained by the verbal force of *supplicatio*. Still the more regular genitive is the construction used in the two other passages where Caesar has the phrase (IV.38. and VII.90.)] *Quod* for *id quod*, § 4. Emphatic position of *nulli*, § 4. [Cf. *nulli*, c.6. § 3. and *nemo*, c.33. § 6.] The use, as in English, of a connective between the last two only of three words, § 3. [This is not incorrect, as is often stated; cf.III.1.1.; 11.4.IV.4.2.; 17.2.; 19.2. The connective in Caesar in such cases is *que*.]





THE BATTLE WITH THE NERVII. BK. II. C. 18-27.



CÆSAR'S CAMP ON THE SABIS. BK. II. C. 8, 10.

DI

1. Cu
Galbam
Nantuate
Allobrog
summas
per Alpe
portoriis
permisit,
hiemandi
factis ca
ad eum u
constituit
cum reliq
qui appel
valle non
undique
divideretu
alteram v
attribuit.

2. Cum
umque eo c



C. JULII CÆSARIS

COMMENTARII

DE BELLO GALLICO.

LIBER TERTIUS.

1. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Servium 1
Galbam cum legione duodecima et parte equitatus in
Nantuates Veragros Sedunosque misit, qui a finibus
Allobrogum et lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano ad
summas Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit, quod iter 2
per Alpes, quo magno cum periculo magnisque cum
portoriis mercatores ire consuerant, patefieri volebat. Huic 3
permisit, si opus esse arbitraretur, uti in his locis legionem
hiemandi causa collocaret. Galba secundis aliquot proeliis 4
factis castellisque compluribus eorum expugnatis missis
ad eum undique legatis obsidibusque datis et pace facta
constituit cohortes duas in Nantuatibus collocare et ipse
cum reliquis ejus legionis cohortibus in vico Veragrorum,
qui appellatur Octodurus, hiemare; qui vicus positus in 5
valle non magna adjecta planitie altissimis montibus
undique continetur. Cum hic in duas partes flumine 6
divideretur, alteram partem ejus vici Gallis concessit,
alteram vacuam ab his relictam cohortibus ad hiemandum
attribuit. Eum locum vallo fossaque munivit.

2. Cum dies hibernorum complures transissent, frument- 1
umque eo comportari jussisset, subito per exploratores certior

factus est ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omn
noctu discessisse montesque, qui impenderent, a maxim
2 multitudine Sedunorum et Veragrorum teneri. Id aliqu
de causis acciderat, ut subito Galli belli renovan
3 legionisque opprimendae consilium caperent: primum
quod legionem neque eam plenissimam detractis cohortibu
duabus et compluribus singillatim, qui commeatus peten
4 causa missi erant, propter paucitatem despiciebant; tu
etiam, quod propter iniquitatem loci, cum ipsi ex montibu
in vallem decurrerent et tela conjicerent, ne primum quiden
5 posse impetum suum sustineri existimabant. Accedebat
quod suos ab se liberos abstractos obsidum nomine
dolebant, et Romanos non solum itinerum causa, sed etiam
perpetuae possessionis culmina Alpium occupare conari et
ea loca finitimae provinciae adjungere sibi persuasum
habebant.

1 **3.** His nuntiis acceptis Galba, cum neque opus hibernorum munitionesque plene essent perfectae, neque de frumento reliquoque commeatu satis esset provisum, quod deditione facta obsidibusque acceptis nihil de bello timendum existimaverat, consilio celeriter convocato
2 sententias exquirere coepit. Quo in consilio, cum tantum repentini periculi praeter opinionem accidisset, ac jam omnia fere superiora loca multitudine armatorum completa conspicerentur, neque subsidio venire neque
3 commeatus supportari interclusis itineribus possent, prope jam desperata salute nonnullae hujusmodi sententiae dicebantur, ut impedimentis relictis eruptione facta isdem itineribus, quibus eo pervenissent, ad salutem contenderent.
4 Majori tamen parti placuit hoc reservato ad extremum consilio interim rei eventum experiri et castra defendere.

4. Brevi spatio interjecto, vix ut rebus, quas constituis- 1
sent, collocandis atque administrandis tempus daretur,
hostes ex omnibus partibus signo dato decurrere, lapides
gaesaque in vallum conjicere. Nostri primo integris viribus 2
fortiter repugnare neque ullum frustra telum ex loco
superiore mittere, ut quaeque pars castrorum nudata
defensoribus premi videbatur, eo occurrere et auxilium
ferre, sed hoc superari, quod diuturnitate pugnae hostes 3
defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant,
quarum rerum a nostris propter paucitatem fieri nihil
poterat, ac non modo defesso ex pugna excedendi, sed ne 4
saucio quidem ejus loci, ubi constiterat, relinquendi ac sui
recipiendi facultas dabatur.

5. Cum jam amplius horis sex continenter pugnaretur 1
ac non solum vires, sed etiam tela nostros deficerent, atque
hostes acrius instarent languidioribusque nostris vallum
scindere et fossas complere coepissent, resque esset jam ad
extremum perducta casum, P. Sextius Baculus, primi pili 2
centurio, quem Nervico proelio compluribus confectum
vulneribus diximus, et item Gaius Volusenus, tribunus
militum, vir et consilii magni et virtutis, ad Galbam
accurrunt atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si
eruptione facta extremum auxilium experirentur. Itaque 3
convocatis centurionibus celeriter milites certiores facit,
paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tela
missa exciperent seque ex labore reficerent, post dato signo
ex castris erumperent atque omnem spem salutis in virtute
ponerent.

6. Quod jussi sunt, faciunt ac subito omnibus portis 1
eruptione facta neque cognoscendi, quid fieret, neque sui
colligendi hostibus facultatem relinquunt. Ita commutata 2

fortuna eos, qui in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant,
undique circumventos interficiunt et ex hominum millibus
amplius triginta, quem numerum barbarorum ad castra
venisse constabat, plus tertia parte interfecta reliquos
perterritos in fugam conjiciunt ac ne in locis quidem
3 superioribus consistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium
copiis fusis armisque exutis se in castra munitionesque
4 suas recipiunt. Quo proelio facto, quod saepius fortunam
temptare Galba nolebat atque alio se in hiberna consilio
venisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rebus viderat, maxime
frumenti commeatusque inopia permotus postero die
omnibus ejus vici aedificiis incensis in provinciam reverti
contendit ac nullo hoste prohibente aut iter demorante
incolumem legionem in Nantuates, inde in Allobroges
perduxit ibique hiemavit.

1 7. His rebus gestis cum omnibus de causis Caesar
pacatam Galliam existimaret, superatis Belgis, expulsis
Germanis, victis in Alpibus Sedunis, atque ita inita hieme
in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque nationes
adire et regiones cognoscere volebat, subitum bellum in
2 Gallia coortum est. Ejus belli haec fuit causa. P.
Crassus adolescens cum legione septima proximus mare
3 Oceanum in Andibus hiemabat. Is, quod in his locis
inopia frumenti erat, praefectos tribunosque militum
complures in finitimas civitates frumenti causa dimisit;
4 quo in numero est T. Terrasidius missus in Esubios, M.
Trebius Gallus in Curiosolitas, Q. Velanius cum T. Silio in
Venetos.

1 8. Hujus est civitatis longe amplissima auctoritas omnis
orae maritimae regionum earum, quod et naves habent
Veneti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigare consue-

runt, et scientia atque usu nauticarum rerum reliquos
antecedunt et in magno impetu maris atque aperto paucis
portibus interjectis, quos tenent ipsi, omnes fere, qui eo
mari uti consuerunt, habent vectigales. Ab his fit initium 2
retinendi Silii atque Velanii, quod per eos suos se obsides,
quos Crasso dedissent, recuperaturos existimabant.
Horum auctoritate finitimi adducti (ut sunt Gallorum 3
subita et repentina consilia), eadem de causa Trebium
Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missis legatis per
suos principes inter se conjurant, nihil nisi communi
consilio acturos eundemque omnis fortunae exitum esse
laturos, reliquasque civitates solicitant, ut in ea libertate, 4
quam a majoribus acceperint, permanere quam Roman-
orum servitutem perferre malint. Omni ora maritima 5
celeriter ad suam sententiam perducta communem
legationem ad P. Crassum mittunt, si velit suos recipere,
obsides sibi remittat.

9. Quibus de rebus Caesar ab Crasso certior factus, 1
quod ipse aberat longius, naves interim longas aedificari
in flumine Ligere, quod influit in Oceanum, remiges ex
provincia institui, nautas gubernatoresque comparari
jubet. His rebus celeriter administratis ipse, cum primum 2
per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Veneti 3
reliquaeque item civitates cognito Caesaris adventu, simul
quod, quantum in se facinus admisissent, intelligebant,
legatos, quod nomen ad omnes nationes sanctum inviola-
tumque semper fuisset, retentos ab se et in vincula
conjectos, pro magnitudine periculi bellum parare et
maxime ea, quae ad usum navium pertinent, providere
instituunt, hoc majore spe, quod multum natura loci
confidebant. Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuariis, 4

navigationem impeditam propter inscientiam locor
5 paucitatemque portuum sciebant, neque nostros exerci
propter frumenti inopiam diutius apud se morari po
6 confidebant: ac jam ut omnia contra opinionem acciderer
tamen se plurimum navibus posse, Romanos neque ull
facultatem habere navium neque eorum locorum, ubi bell
7 gesturi essent, vada, portus, insulas novisse; ac lon
aliam esse navigationem in concluso mari atque in vast
8 simo atque apertissimo Oceano perspiciebant. His ini
consiliis oppida muniunt, frumenta ex agris in oppid
9 comportant, naves in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primu
bellum gesturum constabat, quam plurimas possun
10 cogunt. Socios sibi ad id bellum Osismos, Lexovi
Namnetes, Ambiliatos, Morinos, Diablintes, Menapi
adsciscunt; auxilia ex Britannia, quae contra eas regione
posita est, arcessunt.

1 **10.** Erant hae difficultates belli gerendi, quas supra
ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum
2 incitabant: injuria retentorum equitum Romanorum,
rebellio facta post deditionem, defectio datis obsidibus, tot
civitatum conjuratio, imprimis, ne hac parte neglecta
3 reliquae nationes sibi idem licere arbitrarentur. Itaque
cum intelligeret omnes fere Gallos novis rebus studere et
ad bellum mobiliter celeriterque excitari, omnes autem
homines natura libertati studere et conditionem servitutis
odisse, priusquam plures civitates conspirarent, partiendum
sibi ac latius distribuendum exercitum putavit.

1 **11.** Itaque T. Labienum legatum in Treveros, qui
2 proximi flumini Rheno sunt, cum equitatu mittit. Huic
mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat atque in officio
contineat Germanosque, qui auxilio a Belgis arcessiti

antur, si per vim navibus flumen transire conentur,
beat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legionariis 3
ecim et magno numero equitatus in Aquitaniam
isci jubet, ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam
ntur ac tantae nationes conjungantur. Q. Titurium 4
num legatum cum legionibus tribus in Venellos
osolites Lexoviosque mittit, qui eam manum distinen-
curet. D. Brutum adolescentem classi Gallicisque 5
bus, quas ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pacatis
onibus convenire jusserat, praeficit et, cum primum
t, in Venetos proficisci jubet. Ipse eo pedestribus
is contendit.

2. Erant ejusmodi fere situs oppidorum, ut posita in 1
emis lingulis promontoriisque neque pedibus aditum
erent, cum ex alto se aestus incitavisset, quod bis
idit semper horarum viginti quatuor spatio, neque
ibus, quod rursus minuente aestu naves in vadis
ictarentur. Ita utraque re oppidorum oppugnatio 2
ediebatur; ac si quando magnitudine operis forte 3
erati, extruso mari aggere ac molibus atque his oppidi
enibus adaequatis, suis fortunis desperare coeperant,
gno numero navium appulso, cujus rei summam
ultatem habebant, sua deportabant omnia seque in
oxima oppida recipiebant: ibi se rursus isdem opportuni- 4
ibus loci defendebant. Haec eo facilius magnam 5
rtem aestatis faciebant, quod nostrae naves tempestatibus
tinebantur, summaque erat vasto atque aperto mari,
agnis aestibus, raris ac prope nullis portibus, difficultas
vigandi.

13. Namque ipsorum naves ad hunc modum factae 1
mataeque erant: carinae aliquanto planiores quam

nostrarum navium, quo facilius vada ac decessum aestus
2 excipere possent; prorae admodum erectae atque item
puppes ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque
3 accommodatae; naves totae factae ex robore ad quamvis
4 vim et contumeliam perferendam; transtra ex pedalibus
in altitudinem trabibus confixa clavis ferreis digiti pollicis
5 crassitudine; ancorae pro funibus ferreis catenis revinctae;
6 pelles pro velis alutaeque tenuiter confectae, sive propter
lini inopiam atque ejus usus inscientiam, sive eo, quod est
magis verisimile, quod tantas tempestates Oceani tantosque
impetus ventorum sustineri ac tanta onera navium regi
7 velis non satis commode posse arbitrabantur. Cum his
navibus nostrae classi ejusmodi congressus erat, ut una
celeritate et pulsu remorum praestaret, reliqua pro loci
natura, pro vi tempestatum illis essent aptiora et accom-
8 modatiora. Neque enim his nostrae rostro nocere poterant
(tanta in iis erat firmitudo), neque propter altitudinem
facile telum adigebatur, et eadem de causa minus commode
9 copulis continebantur. Accedebat, ut, cum saevire ventus
coepisset et se vento dedissent, et tempestatem ferrent
facilius et in vadis consisterent tutius, et ab aestu relictae
nihil saxa et cautes timerent; quarum rerum omnium
nostris navibus casus erat extimescendus.

1 **14.** Compluribus expugnatis oppidis Caesar, ubi intel-
lexit frustra tantum laborem sumi, neque hostium fugam
captis oppidis reprimi neque iis noceri posse, statuit
2 exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convenit ac primum ab
hostibus visa est, circiter ducentae viginti naves eorum
paratissimae atque omni genere armorum ornatissimae
3 profectae ex portu nostris adversae constiterunt; neque
satis Bruto, qui classi praeerat, vel tribunis militum

centurionibusque, quibus singulae naves erant attributae, constabat, quid agerent aut quam rationem pugnae insisterent. Rostro enim noceri non posse cognoverant: 4
turribus autem excitatis tamen has altitudo puppium ex barbaris navibus superabat, ut neque ex inferiore loco satis commode tela adigi possent et missa ab Gallis gravius acciderent. Una erat magno usui res praeparata a nostris, 5
falces praeacutae insertae affixaeque longuriis non absimili forma muralium falcium. His cum funes, qui antennas 6
ad malos destinabant, comprehensi adductique erant, navigio remis incitato praerumpebantur. Quibus abscisis 7
antennae necessario concidebant, ut, cum omnis Gallicis navibus spes in velis armamentisque consisteret, his ereptis omnis usus navium uno tempore eriperetur. Reliquum erat certamen positum in virtute, qua nostri 8
milites facile superabant, atque eo magis, quod in conspectu Caesaris atque omnis exercitus res gerebatur, ut nullum paulo fortius factum latere posset; omnes enim colles ac 9
loca superiora, unde erat propinquus despectus in mare, ab exercitu tenebantur.

15. Disjectis, ut diximus, antennis, cum singulas binae 1
ac ternae naves circumsteterant, milites summa vi transcendere in hostium naves contendebant. Quod postquam 2
barbari fieri animadverterunt, expugnatis compluribus navibus, cum ei rei nullum reperiretur auxilium, fuga salutem petere contenderunt. Ac jam conversis in eam 3
partem navibus, quo ventus ferebat, tanta subito malacia ac tranquillitas exstitit, ut se ex loco movere non possent. Quae quidem res ad negotium conficiendum maxime fuit 4
opportuna: nam singulas nostri consectati expugnaverunt, 5
ut perpaucae ex omni numero noctis interventu ad terram

pervenerint, cum ab hora fere quarta usque ad solis
occasum pugnaretur.

1 **16**. Quo proelio bellum Venetorum totiusque orae
2 maritimae confectum est. Nam cum omnis juventus,
omnes etiam gravioris aetatis, in quibus aliquid consilii
aut dignitatis fuit, eo convenerant, tum navium quod
3 ubique fuerat in unum locum coëgerant; quibus amissis
reliqui neque quo se reciperent, neque quemadmodum
oppida defenderent, habebant. Itaque se suaque omnia
4 Caesari dediderunt. In quos eo gravius Caesar vindican-
dum statuit, quo diligentius in reliquum tempus a barbaris
jus legatorum conservaretur. Itaque omni senatu necato
reliquos sub corona vendidit.

1 **17.** Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titurius Sabinus
cum iis copiis, quas a Caesare acceperat, in fines Venel-
2 lorum pervenit. His praeerat Viridovix ac summam
imperii tenebat earum omnium civitatum, quae defecerant,
3 ex quibus exercitum magnasque copias coëgerat; atque
his paucis diebus Aulerci Eburovices Lexoviique senatu suo
interfecto, quod auctores belli esse nolebant, portas
4 clauserunt seque cum Viridovice conjunxerunt: magnaque
praeterea multitudo undique ex Gallia perditorum hominum
latronumque convenerat, quos spes praedandi studiumque
bellandi ab agricultura et quotidiano labore revocabat.
5 Sabinus idoneo omnibus rebus loco castris sese tenebat;
cum Viridovix contra eum duum millium spatio consedisset
quotidieque productis copiis pugnandi potestatem faceret,
ut jam non solum hostibus in contemptionem Sabinus
veniret, sed etiam nostrorum militum vocibus nonnihil
6 carperetur; tantamque opinionem timoris praebuit, ut jam
7 ad vallum castrorum hostes accedere auderent. Id ea de

causa faciebat, quod cum tanta multitudine hostium, praesertim eo absente, qui summam imperii teneret, nisi aequo loco aut opportunitate aliqua data legato dimicandum non existimabat.

18. Hac confirmata opinione timoris idoneum quendam 1
hominem et callidum delegit, Gallum, ex iis, quos auxilii
causa secum habebat. Huic magnis praemiis pollicitationi- 2
busque persuadet, uti ad hostes transeat, et, quid fieri
velit, edocet. Qui ubi pro perfuga ad eos venit, timorem 3
Romanorum proponit, quibus angustiis ipse Caesar a
Venetis prematur, docet, neque longius abesse, quin 4
proxima nocte Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum educat
et ad Caesarem auxilii ferendi causa proficiscatur. Quod 5
ubi auditum est, conclamant omnes occasionem negotii
bene gerendi amittendam non esse: ad castra ire oportere.
Multae res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur: superi- 6
orum dierum Sabini cunctatio, perfugae confirmatio, inopia
cibariorum, cui rei parum diligenter ab iis erat provisum,
spes Venetici belli et quod fere libenter homines id, quod
volunt, credunt. His rebus adducti non prius Viridovicem 7
reliquosque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quam ab his
sit concessum, arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant.
Qua re concessa laeti, ut explorata victoria, sarmentis 8
virgultisque collectis, quibus fossas Romanorum compleant,
ad castra pergunt.

19. Locus erat castrorum editus et paulatim ab imo 1
acclivis circiter passus mille. Huc magno cursu contend-
erunt, ut quam minimum spatii ad se colligendos
armandosque Romanis daretur, exanimatique pervenerunt.
Sabinus suos hortatus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis 2
hostibus propter ea, quae ferebant, onera subito duabus

3 portis eruptionem fieri jubet. Factum est opportunitate loci, hostium inscientia ac defatigatione, virtute militum et superiorum pugnarum exercitatione, ut ne unum quidem nostrorum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent.
4 Quos impeditos integris viribus milites nostri consecuti magnum numerum eorum occiderunt; reliquos equites
5 consectati paucos, qui ex fuga evaserant, reliquerunt. Sic uno tempore et de navali pugna Sabinus et de Sabini victoria Caesar certior factus est, civitatesque omnes se
6 statim Titurio dediderunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallorum alacer ac promptus est animus, sic mollis ac minime resistens ad calamitates perferendas mens eorum est.

1 **20.** Eodem fere tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquitaniam pervenisset, quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regionum latitudine et multitudine hominum ex tertia parte Galliae est aestimanda, cum intelligeret in iis locis sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucis ante annis L. Valerius Praeconinus legatus exercitu pulso interfectus esset, atque unde L. Mallius proconsul impedimentis amissis profugisset, non mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intelligebat.
2 Itaque re frumentaria provisa, auxiliis equitatuque comparato, multis praeterea viris fortibus Tolosa et Narbone, quae sunt civitates Galliae provinciae finitimae his regionibus, nominatim evocatis in Sontiatum fines exercitum
3 introduxit. Cujus adventu cognito Sontiates magnis copiis coactis equitatuque, quo plurimum valebant, in itinere agmen nostrum adorti primum equestre proelium
4 commiserunt, deinde equitatu suo pulso atque insequentibus nostris subito pedestres copias, quas in convalle in insidiis collocaverant, ostenderunt. Hi nostros disjectos adorti proelium renovarunt.

21. Pugnatum est diu atque acriter, cum Sontiates 1
superioribus victoriis freti in sua virtute totius Aquitaniae
salutem positam putarent, nostri autem, quid sine impera-
tore et sine reliquis legionibus adolescentulo duce efficere
possent, perspici cuperent: tandem confecti vulneribus
hostes terga vertere. Quorum magno numero interfecto 2
Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sontiatum oppugnare coepit.
Quibus fortiter resistentibus vineas turresque egit. Illi 3
alias eruptione temptata, alias cuniculis ad aggerem vine-
asque actis (cujus rei sunt longe peritissimi Aquitani,
propterea quod multis locis apud eos aerariae secturae
sunt), ubi diligentia nostrorum nihil his rebus profici posse
intellexerunt, legatos ad Crassum mittunt seque in dedi-
tionem ut recipiat, petunt. Qua re impetrata arma tradere
jussi faciunt.

22. Atque in ea re omnium nostrorum intentis animis alia 1
ex parte oppidi Adiatunnus, qui summam imperii tenebat,
cum sexcentis devotis, quos illi soldurios appellant, quorum 2
haec est conditio, uti omnibus in vita commodis una cum
iis fruantur, quorum se amicitiae dediderint, si quid his
per vim accidat, aut eundem casum una ferant aut sibi
mortem consciscant; neque adhuc hominum memoria 3
repertus est quisquam, qui eo interfecto, cujus se amicitiae
devovisset, mori recusaret: cum his Adiatunnus eruption- 4
em facere conatus, clamore ab ea parte munitionis sublato,
cum ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi
pugnatum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, uti eadem
deditionis conditione uteretur, a Crasso impetravit.

23. Armis obsidibusque acceptis Crassus in fines 1
Vocatium et Tarusatium profectus est. Tum vero barbari 2
commoti, quod oppidum et natura loci et manu munitum

paucis diebus, quibus eo ventum erat, expugnatum cogno-
verant, legatos quoquoversum dimittere, conjurare, obsides
3 inter se dare, copias parare coeperunt. Mittuntur etiam
ad eas civitates legati, quae sunt citerioris Hispaniae
finitimae Aquitaniae: inde auxilia ducesque arcessuntur.
4 Quorum adventu magna cum auctoritate et magna cum
5 hominum multitudine bellum gerere conantur. Duces vero
ii deliguntur, qui una cum Q. Sertorio omnes annos
fuerant summamque scientiam rei militaris habere existi-
6 mabantur. Hi consuetudine populi Romani loca capere,
castra munire, commeatibus nostros intercludere instituunt.
7 Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, suas copias propter exigu-
itatem non facile diduci, hostem et vagari et vias obsidere
et castris satis praesidii relinquere, ob eam causam minus
commode frumentum commeatumque sibi supportari, in
dies hostium numerum augeri, non cunctandum existim-
8 avit, quin pugna decertaret. Hac re ad consilium delata
ubi omnes idem sentire intellexit, posterum diem pugnae
constituit.

1 **24.** Prima luce productis omnibus copiis duplici acie
instituta, auxiliis in mediam aciem conjectis, quid hostes
2 consilii caperent, exspectabat. Illi, etsi propter multitudi-
nem et veterem belli gloriam paucitatemque nostrorum se
tuto dimicaturos existimabant, tamen tutius esse arbitra-
bantur obsessis viis commeatu intercluso sine ullo vulnere
3 victoria potiri et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariae
Romani sese recipere coepissent, impeditos in agmine et
4 sub sarcinis [infirmiore animo] adoriri cogitabant. Hoc
consilio probato a ducibus productis Romanorum copiis
5 sese castris tenebant. Hac re perspecta Crassus, cum sua
cunctatione atque opinione timoris hostes nostros milites

alacriores ad pugnandum effecissent, atque omnium voces audirentur, exspectari diutius non oportere, quin ad castra iretur, cohortatus suos omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cum alii fossas complerent, alii multis telis 1
conjectis defensores vallo munitionibusque depellerent,
auxiliaresque, quibus ad pugnam non multum Crassus
confidebat, lapidibus telisque subministrandis et ad agger-
em cespitibus comportandis speciem atque opinionem
pugnantium praeberent, cum item ab hostibus constanter
ac non timide pugnaretur telaque ex loco superiore missa
non frustra acciderent, equites circumitis hostium castris 2
Crasso renuntiaverunt non eadem esse diligentia ab
decumana porta castra munita facilemque aditum habere.

26. Crassus equitum praefectos cohortatus, ut magnis 1
praemiis pollicitationibusque suos excitarent, quid fieri
velit, ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperatum, eductis iis cohort- 2
ibus, quae praesidio castris relictae intritae ab labore
erant, et longiore itinere circumductis, ne ex hostium
castris conspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad
pugnam intentis celeriter ad eas, quas diximus, munitiones
pervenerunt atque his prorutis prius in hostium castris 3
constiterunt, quam plane ab his videri aut, quid rei
gereretur, cognosci posset. Tum vero clamore ab ea parte 4
audito nostri redintegratis viribus, quod plerumque in spe
victoriae accidere consuevit, acrius impugnare coeperunt.
Hostes undique circumventi desperatis omnibus rebus se 5
per munitiones dejicere et fuga salutem petere intenderunt.
Quos equitatus apertissimis campis consectatus ex millium 6
quinquaginta numero, quae ex Aquitania Cantabrisque
convenisse constabat, vix quarta parte relicta multa nocte
se in castra recipit.

1 **27**. Hac audita pugna maxima pars Aquitaniae sese Crasso dedidit obsidesque ultro misit; quo in numero fuerunt Tarbelli Bigerriones, Ptianii, Vocates, Tarusates, Elusates, Gates, Ausci, Garumni, Sibuzates, Cocosates:
2 paucae ultimae nationes anni tempore confisae, quod hiems suberat, hoc facere neglexerunt.

1 **28**. Eodem fere tempore Caesar, etsi prope exacta jam aestas erat, tamen, quod omni Gallia pacata Morini Menapiique supererant, qui in armis essent neque ad eum unquam legatos de pace misissent, arbitratus id bellum celeriter confici posse eo exercitum adduxit; qui longe alia
2 ratione ac reliqui Galli bellum gerere coeperunt. Nam quod intelligebant maximas nationes, quae proelio contendissent pulsas superatasque esse, continentesque silvas ac
3 paludes habebant, eo se suaque omnia contulerunt. Ad quarum initium silvarum cum Caesar pervenisset castraque munire instituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris subito ex omnibus partibus silvae
4 evolaverunt et in nostros impetum fecerunt. Nostri celeriter arma ceperunt eosque in silvas repulerunt et compluribus interfectis longius impeditioribus locis secuti paucos ex suis deperdiderunt.

1 **29**. Reliquis deinceps diebus Caesar silvas caedere instituit, et ne quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem collocabat et pro vallo ad
2 utrumque latus exstruebat. Incredibili celeritate magno spatio paucis diebus confecto, cum jam pecus atque extrema impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur, ipsi densiores silvas peterent, ejusmodi sunt tempestates consecutae, uti opus necessario intermitteretur, et continuatione imbrium

diutius sub pellibus milites contineri non possent. Itaque 3
vastatis omnibus eorum agris, vicis aedificiisque incensis
Caesar exercitum reduxit et in Aulercis Lexoviisque,
reliquis item civitatibus, quae proxime bellum fecerant, in
hibernis collocavit.

For th
Introduct

Chap. 1
tribe

1. *Galb*

1. **Cum**
"Caesar
himself le
out for I
Gallia Cit
and map,
or perhaps
in Nant
...which
summits o
2. **Causa**
or 'them'
per,—'the
(now know
north, was
Gaul.]
quo,—no
etc.,—'(th
'with.' **i**
Note that *c*

NOTES ON BOOK III.

For the events described in the preceding books, see the Introduction, § III., p. x.

Chap. 1–6.—Galba's experiences among the Alpine tribes.

1. *Galba is sent to keep the northern route over the Alps open.*

CAP. I.

1. **Cum in Italiam,** etc.,—At the end of Book II. we read, "Caesar was anxious to go to Italy and Illyricum...He himself led his legions into winter-quarters...and then set out for Italy." Italy here means Caesar's province of *Gallia Citerior* or Cisalpine Gaul; see Introduction, p. v., and map, p. xi. **proficisceretur in,**—'was setting out for,' or perhaps 'was on his way to.'

in Nantuates...qui...pertinent,—'into the country of ...which extends'; lit.? App. 6. **summas Alpes,**—'the summits of the Alps,' lit. 'the Alps (where) highest.'

2. **Causa mittendi,**—'the reason for,' etc. Add 'him' or 'them' in trans. **quod,**—'that,' lit. 'because.' **iter per,**—'the route (road) over,' lit. 'through.' [This route, (now known as the Great St. Bernard Pass), being well to the north, was especially useful for leading troops into Central Gaul.]

quo,—not adv., but abl. of relative pron. **magno cum,** etc.,—'(though) at great risk and subject to heavy tolls,' lit. 'with.' **ire,**—'to travel.' **consuerant,**—for *consueverant*. Note that *consuevi*=I have become (*i.e.* I am) accustomed.

3. **Huic,**—*i.e.* Galba. **permisit...uti,**—lit. 'he gave permission to the end that'; trans. by infin. with 'to.' (RC. 99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.)

opus,—see Vocabulary; not from *opus, operis*. **arbitraretur,**—App.32. For the subj. mood see RC.99.*h*.iii. HF.209.2. **his,**—implying that it has just been mentioned: where? **hiemandi causa,**—App.39.*b*.

4. **secundis,**—lit. 'successful.' *Proelium facere*, to fight a battle; *secundum proelium facere*, to gain a victory. **factis,**—App.5.*a*: so *expugnatis, missis, datis, facta*; but a series of participles like this must not be translated all in one way. **castellis compluribus eorum,**—'several strongholds of theirs,' or 'several of their strongholds.' Notice the difference between the Latin and the English idiom.

in,—'among.' **reliquis,**—'the other;' how many would these be? Introduction, p. xvi. **ejus,**—'of that'; why not 'his'? **qui...Octodurus,**—'which'; why not *quod?* (RC. 93.2.)

5. **qui,**—App.11.*b*. **positus...continetur,**—'is situated ... and is surrounded, (shut in).' App.37.*a*.N.B. **non magna,** etc.,—'with a small plain lying close to it,' lit.? App.5.*a*. **altissimis,**—App.10.

6. **Cum,**—'since,' or 'as.' **vacuam relictam,**—'vacated'; lit.? **concessit, attribuit,**—what is the difference? **ad hiemandum,**—App.39.*b*.

N.B.—Order of Opening Words. [Generally in Caesar, the first words of a sentence form a connecting link, by beginning the new sentence with something known to us from the preceding one.] The two modes of joining three words (or phrases) occurring in § 1. [It is not incorrect to couple (by *que*) the two last only: cf.III.11.4; also IV. 4.2; 17.2; 19.2; but in enumerations, or in checking off facts, *et* is generally placed between each two.] The phrase *summas Alpes*, § 1. [In this idiom the adj. regularly precedes; cf.VII.69.1., *in colle summo*, a much rarer order. RC.88.*c*. HF.59.1. BA.60. H.440.2.1. AG.193.] *Magno cum periculo*, § 2: note order. *Patefieri*, § 2. [For the form see RC.71.*c*. HF.156.3. AG.142.*a*.*b*. In English the active voice would do equally well, but Latin prefers the passive

inf. with verbs of desire.] *Galba*; why in first place? Five Ablatives Absolute together, §4. [The two first, coupled by *que*, give the cause of the action expressed by the next three; these are coupled by *que* and *et*, *et* marking off the last as the final result, while between the two groups there is asyndeton. Note that as usual the order of time is followed by the verbs.] *Ad eum*, where *se* might have been expected, §4, [explained probably by its being in an absolute clause, whose virtual subject is not the subject of the main verb.] Repetition of *vicus* in §§ 4, 5, 6. [A sacrifice of elegance to clearness.] Various ways of expressing purpose.

---

2. *His legion is suddenly threatened by a superior force of mountaineers.*

CAP. II.

1. **hibernorum,**—here not 'winter-quarters' but 'the time spent in winter-quarters, (their wintering.)' **transissent,**=*transiissent* (RC.66.); *transeo* is here intransitive, with subject *dies*. **eo,**—adv. 'to that place, (thither),' referring to the village just mentioned.

certior,—for the case see RC.79.*b*. **certior factus est,**—'learned,' lit.? **discessisse, teneri,**—RC.101.*b*. HF.109.1. **qui impenderent,**—may be rendered by one word in English. *Montes* is applied to low hills as well as to mountains or mountain chains. For the mood see RC.99.*e*. HF.206.4.

2. **Id...acciderat,**—*id* refers to what has just been told us, but is explained more fully by the clause *ut...caperent*. **Id,**—'this,' not the impersonal 'it.' **ut,**—'namely that.' **subito,**—emphatic from position, 'so suddenly.' **belli...opprimendae,**—App.40. (RC.104.*b*. HF.170.3.) **caperent,**—for the mood see RC.99.*b*. HF.182.4. *Consilium capere*, to form a design, adopt a plan. Trans. freely, 'this sudden resolve to...had been taken for several reasons.' Three reasons are given, *primum* §3, *tum etiam* §4, *accedebat* §5, the last giving the real motive.

3. **primum,**—adv. **quod,**—conj. **legionem.**—'a single (*or* mere) legion.' Before *legionem* trans. *propter...despiciebant.*

neque eam plenissimam,—'and one too that was not up to its full strength,' lit. 'very full (quite complete).' **detractis...erant,**—explains why it had not its full strength, and may be rendered by a parenthetic clause beginning with 'for.' There is no reference to the normal strength of a legion. **detractis,**—Where were they? See c.1. §4. **compluribus,**—as well as *cohortibus* goes with *detractis.* That it means 'many of the men,' (not many of the cohorts) is shown by *singillatim,* 'by themselves,' that is, in small detachments. **commeatus,**—gen. sing. **paucitatem,**—'its small size, (slenderness),' not as a legion, but as compared with the numbers of the mountaineers.

4. **tum etiam,**—'further also.' **iniquitatem loci,**—'unfavorable nature of our position,' explained by the opposition of *ex montibus* and *in vallem.* **cum,**—'when.' **ipsi,**—in opposition to the Romans. **decurrerent, dejicerent,**—trans. by 'were' or 'should be.' **existimabant,**—trans. immediately after *quod.*

5. **Accedebat quod,**—freely, 'besides this,' lit. 'there came also (*i.e.* there was added) the fact that.' (RC.109.*i.* HF.181.2.) **abstractos,**—the infin. with *esse* understood. (RC.101.*b.* HF.109.1.) **obsidum nomine,**—'under (lit. by means of) the name (guise, pretence) of hostages.' For the fact see c.1. §4.

Romanos,—subject of *conari,* depending on *persuasum habebant.* **itinerum causa,**—explained by c.1. §2. **possessionis,**—depends on *causa.* **ea loca,**—'that country (*or* district).' The plural of *locus* is seldom to be translated 'places'; see the Vocabulary. For the gender see RC.54.*b.* HF.280. **provinciae,**—dat. The Roman province of Gaul. **adjungere,**—depends on *conari.*

sibi persuasum habebant,—'were persuaded,' lit. 'had

conviction brought to them, *i.e.* they had themselves persuaded.' App.24. For the dat. see RC.II.57. HF.164.1.

N.B.—The difference of mood in the relative clauses § 1. [*Concesserat* an explanatory addition of the writer, *impenderent* part of the news brought. RC.99.*e.* HF.207.N.2. BA.77; 449. H.524.2. AG 336.*b.*] Choice of introductory words in each section. Phrase *certior factus est*, and case of *certior*, § 1. Emphasis gained by position of *subito*, § 2. Use of *ne quidem*, § 4, and position of emphasized word. Tense and mood of *decurrerent*, § 4. [The impf. subj. in indirect narration for the fut. ind. of direct, after a secondary tense.] Order of *suos ab se liberos*. § 5. [There is always a tendency in Latin to place personal and possessive pronouns, or pronouns serving as such, in juxtaposition, when they occur in the same sentence.] The impersonal use of *accedebat*, § 5. [Virtually *accedo* is the passive of *addo*. Its subject is the *quod* clause following.] Gerundive Constr. Accus. with Infin. Constr. [Note especially after *persuadeo*=convince, § 5. RC.II.31. BA.122.] Imperfect Tense. Difference between *sibi persuasum habebant*, § 5, and *sibi persuaserant*. [Such phrases as the former (from which arose the use of the modern auxiliary 'have'), call special attention to the continuance of the result of an action already past; they mark an attained condition, not the act of attainment.]

3-5. ***The Romans, who are ill-prepared for a siege, after six hours' hard fighting, make a sally.***

CAP. III.

1. **Galba,**—(subject of *coepit*) should not be so far from its verb in English as in Latin. **neque...neque,**—'not...or,' lit. 'neither...nor.' **opus hibernorum,**—a general term, 'the construction of the winter-camp.' **munitiones,**—a particular part of the work. **perfectae,**—agreeing with the nearer of the two subjects. (RC.79.*a.b.*i.)

de ... provisum,—freely, 'sufficient corn ... had been secured,' lit. 'there had been sufficient preparation with regard to, etc.' **reliquo,**—'the rest of,' or 'the other.'

quod...existimaverat,—gives the reason for the neglect just mentioned. **facta, acceptis,**—if rendered by the active voice, the subjects will be different. **nihil...timendum,**—understand *esse*; 'that there was no ground for fear'; for the acc. *nihil*='not at all," see RC.83.*e*. **consilio,**—'council (of war)' *i.e.* of the officers.

2. **cum,**—'since,' or 'as'; goes with *accidisset*, *conspicerentur* and *possent*. **tantum periculi,**—App.2.*d*. (RC.81.*b*. HF. 69.10.) Trans. *tantum*, 'such.' **praeter opinionem,**—'unexpectedly,' lit.? The idea (practically the same as in *repentini*) is repeated for emphasis' sake.

ac,—'and further.' **superiora loca,**—'the higher ground, *or* the heights.' **completa,**—with *loca*; 'filled,' or 'covered.'

neque,—see on §1; here, as often, *neque*='and neither.' **subsidio,**—App.3.*c*.; freely, 'to aid them.' (RC.82.*c*. HF. 134.1.) **venire, supportari,**—depend on *possent*. But with *venire* the subject of *possent* is understood (*i.e.* their friends), while with *supportari* it is *commeatus*. [Most editions read *veniri*, App.24., with which understand *posset*.]

3. **desperata,**—trans. by principal clause; App.5.*a*.iii. **hujusmodi,**—RC.81.*e*. HF.130.7. Trans. 'opinions were expressed to the effect that,' lit. 'opinions of this sort were expressed, namely that.'

relictis, facta,—trans. by clauses co-ordinate with *contenderent*; App.5.*a*.iii. **isdem,**=*eisdem*. (RC.61.) **quibus,**—'by which,' or 'as.' (RC.II.197.*f*. HF.127.2.) **pervenissent,**—for the mood see RC.99.*e*. HF.206.4. **ut...contenderent,**—'that they should make their way to a place of safety.' (RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.)

4. **Majori parti placuit,**—'the majority decided,' lit.? **reservato,**—trans. by infin. active co-ordinate with *experiri*; App.5.*a*.iii. **rei eventum experiri,**—'to await the issue of events,' lit.?

N.B.—Position of Galba, § 1. [cf. c.1. § 4.]   Agreement of *essent perfectae*, § 1. with the nearer of its two subjects. [RC.79. BA.28. H.439. 463. AG.205.*d*.]   Dactylic ending in *exquirere coepit*, § 1. [According to Cicero a period should not close with the end of a verse. Caesar has the dactylic ending now and then, however; cf. c.6. § 4. c.9. § 7. c.14. § 7.]   Partitive gen. with such words as *tantum*, § 2. [RC.81.*b*.i. BA.294.]   Verbs used impersonally in passive. [*Provisum*, *timendum*, § 1, and *veniri* (?) § 2; cf. *persuasum*, c.2. § 5. RC.96.*b*. HF.164.2. BA.5.217.sqq.]   The difference of tense in *dicebantur*, § 3, and *placuit*, § 4. [The former the repeated expression of opinion, the latter the final decision.]   *Despero* used as a transitive verb, § 3. [So by Caesar in abl. absol. only.]   Various ways of rendering the abl. absol., especially by a co-ordinate clause. [See also c.1. § 4. and c.2. § 3.]   Syntax and position of *cum* clauses of reason. [RC.99.*g*. HF.203.1. BA.429.430.]   Two meanings of *consilium*. [In the sense of 'council, meeting,' *concilium* (c.18. § 7.) is more frequent.]   Which is the wider term, *frumentum* or *commeatus*?

CAP. IV.

1. **interjecto,**—'having intervened,' lit.? **vix ut,**—'so that scarcely'; *vix* (like *brevi*) emphatic from position. Trans. freely, 'after an interval so short that, etc.' **constituissent,**—for the mood see RC.99.*k*. **collocandis,**—dative, (RC.104.*b*.); trans., 'for arranging,' or 'to arrange.' App. 40. **daretur,**—RC.99.*b*. HF.187.2.

partibus,—do not trans. 'parts.' **signo dato,**—App.5.*a*.; 'at a given signal.' **decurrere,**—historical inf., App.36; so *conjicere*, *repugnare*, *mittere*, *occurrere*, *ferre*, and *superari*. (RC.101.*d*. HF.216.3.N.2.) **gaesa,**—a native word; cf. *assegai*. **in,**—App.6.

2. **primo,**—adv. No word meaning 'afterwards' follows, but this is implied in the opening words of c.5. **integris viribus,**—App.5.*a*.N. Trans. by 'so long as,' or 'while.' (RC.85.*o*. HF.100.5.)

neque ullum,—'and no,' lit.? **loco superiore,**—see on c.3. § 2. The Romans were on the ramparts, the Gauls in the plain.

ut quaeque,—'(and) whenever any,' lit. 'when each'; from *quisque*. **nudata defensoribus,**—'by being stripped of its defenders,' lit. 'having been cleared from, etc.' (RC. 85.*h*. HF.158.2.) **eo,**—adv.

3. **hoc superari quod,**—'were inferior (over-matched) in this point that.' For the abl. see RC.85.*g*. **defessi,**—'when exhausted.' **excedebant,**—trans. by 'would'; App. 26.*c*. **proelio,**—(RC.85.*h*. HF.158.2.); *proelio excedere*, to leave the field.

alii,—'(while) others.' **integris viribus,**—different from §2; trans. by 'with.' (RC.85.*c*. HF.131.9.) **succedebant,**—'kept coming up to take their place,' or 'would relieve them.' App.26.*c*.

nihil,—'none,' lit. 'nothing'; trans. before *quarum rerum*.

4. **ac,**—'and further,' intensive. **non modo,**—as often, for *non modo non*. Trans. 'not only was no opportunity of...afforded...but none was given even to...for leaving, etc.' **defesso,**—'to one who was exhausted,' 'to an exhausted soldier'; similarly *saucio*.

relinquendi, recipiendi,—gerundive constr.; App.40. (RC.104.*b*. HF.170.3.) **ejus,**—'the,' lit.? **ubi,**—'where,' not 'when.' **constiterat,**—'stood,' lit.? **sui,**—lit. 'himself.'

N.B.—Use of historical infin. [Generally several are found together, describing rapid or excited movements.] Case of subject of historical infin. [*Nostri*, § 2. is conclusive.] Ablative absolute without a partic. [*Integris viribus*, § 2. RC.85.*c*. BA.424. H.431.4. AG.255.*a*.] Mood used with *ut* temporal, § 2. Various uses and renderings of imperf. tense. [*Videbatur*, § 2. is peculiar, the pluperf. being commonly found in frequentative or 'whenever' sentences referring to past time.] *Excedo* and abl. case, with or without *ex*. [RC.85.*h*. HF.158.2. BA.264. H.413.3. AG.243.*b*.] Phrase *non modo=non modo non*. [When followed by *sed ne... quidem*, *non* is generally omitted where a predicate (or other word) is common to both the contrasted clauses, and stands in the latter.] *Quarum rerum nihil*, where *nulla* would seem to be more in accordance with Latin usage, § 3. [Probably due to the habitual use in Latin of the neuter=*res* (esp. in nom. and acc.)]

CAP. V.

1. **Cum jam,** etc.,—lit. 'when the fight by this time was going on continuously for more than six hours'; freely, 'after more than six hours' continuous fighting.' **pugnaretur,**—App.24. (RC.99.*f*.v. HF.161.2.) **amplius horis sex,**—*horis* may be the abl. of comparison, equivalent to *quam horas* (RC.85.*f*. HF.55.5.), or the omission of *quam*, may, as is customary with *amplius*, have no effect on the case (RC. II.123.*c*.2.) and *horis* be the abl. of time within which. (RC. 85.*b*.iv.)

vires...nostros deficerent,—lit. 'strength was failing our men'; freely, 'the strength of our men was failing, (becoming exhausted).' **languidioribusque nostris,**—App. 5.*a*.N. (RC.85.*o*. HF.100.5.) Trans. 'and while, (*or* and as) our men were becoming less active,' lit.?

resque esset, etc.,—'and when matters were come (lit. had been brought) to the last extremity.' The *extremus casus* would be the camp's falling into the enemy's hands.

2. **primi pili centurio,**—'chief (*or* senior) centurion': also called *primipilus*. For the phrase see Introduction § V. c., p.xix. and Vocabulary under *pilus*.

quem,—subject of *confectum* (*esse*), which depends on *diximus*. Trans. 'who, as we have stated, was exhausted, etc.'; lit.? **Nervico proelio,**—the battle described in Book II. c. 16–27; see Introduction, p. xii.

et consilii magni et virtutis,—here, as often, it is better to omit 'both,' in trans. From *magni* understand *magnae* with *virtutis*. For the case see RC.81.*e*. HF.130.7.

unam,—emphatic from position, 'but one.' **esse,**—'there is.' **si...experirentur,**—for the mood see RC.99.*h*.iii. HF. 209.2. For the tense see RC.107.*a*.iii. **eruptione facta,**—trans. by clause co-ordinate with *experirentur*, App.5.*a*.iii. **extremum auxilium,**—'last resource,' (*i.e.* means of *help*.)

3. **milites certiores facit...intermitterent,**—'lets the soldiers know that they were to give up'; freely 'tells the soldiers to give up.' *Ut* might have been used with *intermitterent*, (RC.99.*a*.2.i.); so *exciperent*, *reficerent*, *erumperent*, *ponerent*.

ac...reficerent,—adds a fuller statement of what is meant by *intermitterent proelium*. **exciperent,**—'ward off,' lit. 'receive'; this seems better than 'catch *or* gather up,' as some explain it. **missa,**—'hurled at them.' **ex,**—'from *or* after.'

post,—'(and) afterwards'; adv. referring to *paulisper*. **signo dato,**—cf. c.4. § 1. **atque...ponerent,**—this is the *extremum auxilium* of § 2. *Pono*='rest.'

N.B.—Imperfect tense with *jam*=Eng. pluperfect, §1. [Similarly the present=Eng. perfect. Where an action has been going on and still continues, Eng. uses a tense referring to the past, Latin a tense referring to the present. RC.97.*a*.v.,*b*.iv. HF.216.2.*b*. BA.181. H.469. II.2. AG.277.*b*.] The use of *amplius* with numerals, §1. [So *plus*, *minus* and *longius*. RC.II.123.*c*.2. BA.318.Obs. H.417.N.2. AG. 247.*c*.] Sequence of tenses with historical present. [RC.107.*a*. iii. BA.179. H.495.II. AG.287.*e*.] Construction of *intermitterent*. [This may be classified as subj. of indirect command (RC.106.*a*. HF. 207.5. BA.522. H.523.III. AG.339.), or as subj. of substantival clause of purpose with *ut* omitted (as above.) In reality it illustrates the transition from the independent subjunctive of wish or command to the dependent subjunctive of purpose.] Asyndeton before *post*, § 3. [Very common in cases of contrast.]

---

6. *The Romans succeed in driving back the enemy, but think it prudent to return at once to the province.*

CAP. VI.

1. **quod,**—rel pron.: 'what,' or 'as'; depending on *facere* understood. **ac,**—introducing a fuller explanation; cf.c.3. § 2. **portis,**—lit. 'by means of,' not 'from'; (RC.85.*a*. ii.*a*. HF.71.3.)

quid fieret,—'what was going on,' (RC.99.*d*. HF.176.2.) **sui colligendi,**—'of rallying,' lit. 'of collecting themselves.' They were fighting all about the camp, and were too scattered to repel a sortie, or perhaps we may trans. 'recovering themselves,' *i.e.* from the surprise caused by the sudden attack. For the peculiar syntax see RC.II.134. **relinquunt,**—'allow (give),' lit. 'leave.'

2. **Ita,**—with *commutata*. **in spem venerant,**—note the accus.; 'had begun to have hopes,' lit.? **potiundorum castrorum,**—for the form see RC.66.; for the gerundive construction w. *potior* see RC.104.*b*.ii. **circumventos,**—agrees with *eos* and in time precedes *interficiunt*. Trans. by verb in active voice, co-ordinate with *interficiunt*, as in App.37.N.B.

hominum millibus,—App.2.*d*. (RC.81.*b*. HF.69.10.) **amplius, plus,**—'more (than)'; see note on *amplius*, c.5. § 1. **quem numerum,**—the subject of *venisse*, with which it forms the subject of *constabat*. Trans. 'the number...acknowledged as having come, etc.,' lit.? **tertia parte,**—may be rendered by *one* word. **reliquos perterritos,**—'the panic-stricken survivors.' **conjiciunt in,**—'put to,' lit.? **quidem,**—be careful to connect w. *locis superioribus*.

3. **Sic,**—with *fusis*. **armisque exutis,**—*exutis* agrees with *copiis*, not with *armis*. *Exuere armis* is to follow one so closely as to make him throw away his arms, to escape more easily. For the abl. *armis* see RC.85.*h*. HF.158.2.

4. **quod,**—conj. **saepius,**—'any further'; lit. 'oftener,' *i.e.* than this one time.

alio consilio,—'with one object'; see c.1. § 2. (RC.85.*m*. HF.71.3.) **meminerat,**—'remembered'; pluperf. with force of imperf. (RC.72.*b*. HF.145.3.)

aliis rebus,—dat., 'another (a different) state of things.' **viderat,**—'saw,' lit.?; both *meminerat* and *viderat* go with *quod*: in Eng. supply 'but,' or 'whilst,' as connective.

maxime,—with *permotus*. **postero die,**—with *contendit*, but not with *perduxit* or *hiemavit*. **contendit,**—'started.'

nullo...prohibente,—App.5.*a*.N.; 'without any enemy opposing him.' **incolumem,**—with *legionem*; 'without loss,' lit. 'safe.' **in,**—as in c.1. § 1. **hiemavit,**—this tense means 'went into winter quarters.'

Galba's expedition was evidently a greater failure than Caesar cares to show clearly.

N.B.—Opening words of each sentence. Difference in the nature and syntax of the two clauses, *quod jussi sunt*; *quid fieret*, § 1. [RC. 99.*d*.*e*. HF.173.2. BA.176. H.529.II.5.1.] Expressions like *sui colligendi*, § 1. [Nothing like *sui colligendorum* ever occurs. RC. II.134. BA.399. Obs.1. H.512.I.N.1. AG.298.*a*] The gerundive *potiundorum*, § 2. [*Potior*, like *fruor*, *fungor* and *utor*, is an intransitive verb, but the personal gerundive has survived from the earlier use of these verbs as transitives. With *esse* however the impersonal construction should be used. RC.II.141.*b*. H.544.2.N.5. AG.296.R.] *Millia* and genitive. *Plus* and *amplius* with numerals. [cf.c.5. § 1.] Irregular position of *superioribus*, § 2. [which should come between *ne* and *quidem*. The irregularity is caused partly by euphony, partly by the fact that *loca superiora*, being a very frequent expression, may not have been logically analysed, but regarded as practically a unit.] Use of *alius*... *alius*, § 4. Dative with verbs like *occurro*. [The usual translation of such words by a transitive verb followed by an objective case is to be regarded always as a *free* rendering. BA.228.Obs.] Meaning of *provincia*. [See Introduction, p. ix.] Time reference of perfect and present partic. [RC.102.*a*.*c*. HF.100.4.; 102.2. BA.410; 411.] Trans. of Abl. Absol. phrase containing a negative, § 4. [It is generally found convenient to use 'without.' RC.8: o.v. BA.425.] Active forms of deponent verbs. [cf. *demorantur*, § 4. RC.68.*c*. H.231.1. AG.135.*a*.*c*.]

Chap. 7-16.—The war with the Veneti.

7, 8. *The Veneti seize some Roman officers, and lead the tribes of north-western Gaul in revolting from the Romans.*

CAP. VII.

1. **His rebus,**—referring to all the events of the past two years (not the last few chapters merely); more fully explained

by *superatis...Sedunis.* **omnibus...existimaret,**—freely, 'had every reason to think.' **pacatam,**—understand *esse.*

superatis, etc.,—the order is not chronological, but seemingly geographical. The conquest of the Belgae is told in Bk.II.c.1–33, the war with Ariovistus in Bk.I.c.30–54, the defeat (?) of the Alpine tribes (of whom the most important alone is mentioned) in Bk.III.c.4–6. See Introduction, § III. No reference is made here to the defeat of the Helvetians.

atque ita,—'and as accordingly'; for *cum* above goes also with *profectus esset.* **inita hieme,**—abl. absol.; freely, 'at the beginning of winter,' lit.? **Illyricum,**—part of Caesar's province; see Introduction, p. v. **eas,**—'those,' viz. of Illyricum. **regiones cognoscere,**—'become acquainted with the country.'

2. **Ejus,**—'this,' the one just mentioned; lit. 'that.' **haec,**—'as follows,' lit. 'this.'

adolescens,—'the younger,' to distinguish him from his father (the triumvir), and his brother, M. Crassus, who also was with Caesar. The term *adolescens* was applicable up to 30 or 35, and even 40, years of age.

proximus mare Oceanum,—'very near the ocean.' (RC. 83.*f*.iii.) *Proximus*, an adj. with *Crassus; mare* the general term, *Oceanus* particularizing, as we say Lake Huron, River Thames, etc. **in,**—'among.'

3. **Is,**—'he'; in Eng. should be nearer the verb. **locis,**—see on c.2. § 5. **praefectos,**—these were Roman commanders of allied (*i.e.* Gallic) troops. **complures,**—with *civitates.*

4. **quo in numero,**—'of these,' lit. 'in which number.' **Curiosolitas,**—the accus. plur. of *Curiosolites.* (RC.19.*d.* HF.274.) **Venetos,**—not to be confounded with the Veneti at the head of the Adriatic.

N.B.—Transitive use of *ineo*, § 1. [So always in Caesar in time phrases, e.g. *inita aestate;* but Cicero uses it intransitively, *ineunte aestate.*] Caesar's jurisdiction and previous campaigns in Gaul. [See Introduction, § III.] Use of *is*, referring back, and of *hic*, looking forward or referring back. [RC.92.*a*.] Syntax of *prox-*

imus, § 2. [Here used, as still oftener the adverb is used, with the acc. as though a preposition.] The accus. plur. of Decl. III. in *ās*, § 4. [Caesar often uses Greek endings in the declension of names of Gallic tribes.]

CAP. VIII.

1. **Hujus est civitatis,**—that just mentioned, viz. of the Veneti. Trans. 'this state possesses (enjoys),' lit. 'is of (*i.e.* belongs to) this state.' **omnis,**—genitive. **orae maritimae,**—'sea-coast.' (RC.81.*b*. HF.69.10.) **earum,**—viz. in that neighborhood.

et...et...et,—'both...and...and.' **consuerunt,**—see on c.1. § 2. **scientia,**—for the case see RC.85.*d*. 'in skill and experience in (lit. as regards) seamanship.'

in magno, etc.,—lit. 'in the great and open (*i.e.* unchecked) violence of the sea'; freely, 'since the sea is very rough and also without shelter (open).' **paucis...interjectis,**—'as but a few harbors occur at intervals.' (RC.85.*o*. HF.100.5.) **quos,**—*i.e. portus*. **omnes...habent vectigales,**—lit. 'have all tributary'; freely, 'force (oblige) all to pay tolls *or* tribute.'

2. **Ab his fit initium,**—'these set an example,' 'take the first step'; lit.? **initium retinendi,** etc.,—a condensed expression for 'example of seizing the envoys by seizing S. and V.' Trans. freely, 'by seizing.' **dedissent,**—for the mood see RC.99.*e*. HF.206.4.

3. **auctoritate adducti,**—'influenced by their example.' **ut,**—'as'; comparing their present with their usual con duct. *Subita et repentina* (lit. 'quick and unexpected') is the predicate. Trans. freely, 'according to the usual custom of the Gauls to form resolutions rapidly and unexpectedly'; lit.?

per principes,—with *conjurant*. **inter se conjurant,**—lit. 'take an oath together among themselves'; trans. 'pledge themselves (by a joint oath).'

communi consilio,—'by concerted action,' lit. 'by a

common plan.' (RC.85.*e*.HF.71.3.) **acturos,**—understand *esse*, and as subject *se*; trans. 'to do'; similarly *laturos*. **eundem,** etc.,—'and to endure the same issue (result) in (lit. of) all their fortunes.'

4. **sollicitant ut,**—'urge to.' (RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.) **permanere in,**—'hold fast to.' **acceperint,**—'they have inherited (received).' (RC.99.*e*. HF.20[illegible].4.) The tenses of *acceperint* and *malint* are due to the historical present *sollicitant*; cf. § 5. **Romanorum servitutem,**—'bondage to (lit. the serving of) the R.' (RC.81.*d*.)

5. **suam, sibi,**—referring to the subject of *mittunt*; **suos,**—to the subject of *velit*. App. 14 and 15. **perducta,**—'having been won over.'

remittat,—depending on the idea of saying implied in *legationem mittunt*; trans. '(telling him) to restore.' For the mood cf. on *intermitterent*, c.5. § 3. **velit,**—for the mood see RC.99.*h*.iii. HF.209.2.

N.B.—Predicative gen. of possession. [*Hujus est civitatis*, § 1. The order is against taking *amplissima* as the predicate.] Force of *atque*; [§ 1, twice. It introduces something of even more importance.] Condensed expression (brachylogy) in § 2. [*Ab his... Velanii.*] Juxtaposition of *suos se*, § 2. [See N.B. to c.2. § 5.] Agreement of *retinendi* with nearer substantive, § 2. [RC.78. BA. 47.*b*.] *Ut* with the indicative in general statements, § 3. Difference between *subitus* and *repentinus*, *scientia* and *usus*. Force of *per* with accus. of person; §§ 2.3. Omission of *se* with infin. [§ 3, *conjurant acturos*. RC.101.*b*.i. Here the use of the phrase *inter se* helps to explain the omission, which causes no ambiguity or lack of clearness.] Difference between *acceperint*, § 4, and the common reading *acceperant*. [The latter would no longer be regarded as part of what the Gauls said, but an addition of the author's stating an historical fact; a very unlikely turn of expression in this case.] Use of *suus* and *se*, especially in § 5. [*Suam* in an abl. absol. clause referring to the logical subject (*i.e.* the real agent) of its verb *perducta*; contrast *missis ad eum legatis*, c.1. § 4, and N.B. For *suos* and *sibi* (both regularly used) see RC.91.ii.] Use of dat. *sibi*, not *ad se*, with *remittat*, § 5. [The idea of *giving back*, (dat. of interest), predominates over that of *sending back*, (limit of motion).] Subjunctive in indirect narration for imperative of direct; [§ 5, *remittat*. See also N.B. to c.5. § 3.]

9. *The preparations on either side, and the difficulties of the campaign.*

CAP. IX.

1. **aberat,**—from *absum*. **longius,**—App.10. 'too far,' *i.e.* too far to be able to attend to the matter in person. See c.7. § 1.

naves longas,—'ships of war (galleys),' lit. 'long ships,' in opposition to the merchant vessels and transports (*naves onerariae*) which were broader, and less swift.

quod,—takes its gender from *flumine*, not *Ligere*. **institui, comparari,**—the former of unskilled laborers, 'to be organized (almost=trained),' the latter of skilled seamen, 'to be procured.'

2. **cum primum,...potuit,**—'as soon as the time of year (the season) allowed,' lit. 'when first he could (do so) by means of, etc.'

3. **cognito,**—trans. by 'as,' not 'when.' **simul,**—'(and) at the same time,' '(and) also,' connecting the two reasons *cognito...adventu*, and *quod...conjectos*.

intellegebant,—App.26.*a*.; so *confidebant*, *sciebant*, *perspiciebant*. **in se admisissent,**—'they had committed,' lit. 'had admitted to themselves,' *i.e.* allowed themselves to be guilty of. (RC.99.*d*. HF.176.2.)

legatos...retentos, etc.,—explaining *facinus*, and (with *esse* understood) depending on *intellegebant*; freely, 'in detaining ambassadors,' lit. 'namely, that ambassadors... had been detained.' **quod nomen,**—referring to *legatos*, trans. 'a title which,' or 'whose title,' lit.? Caesar dignifies these foraging-officers with the title of *legati*, seemingly that he may have a better pretext for the coming campaign. **ad,**—'among.' **fuisset,**—RC.99.*e*. HF.206.4.

pro,—'in proportion to (in accordance with).' **ad usum,** etc.,—'are useful (needful) for ships,' lit.?

hoc majore spe,—'and all the more confidently,' lit. 'their hope (being) greater by this (*i.e.* for this reason).' For *hoc* see RC.85.*g*.ii. HF.58.6.; for *spe* see RC.85.*o*. HF.100.5. **multum confidebant,**—'they trusted greatly.' App.9. **natura,**—RC.85.*k*.iii.

4. **Pedestria...concisa,**—'the land approaches were interrupted.' **impeditam,**—understand *esse*. **inscientiam,**—'our lack of acquaintance (with).'

5. **neque,**—'and...not.' **diutius,**—'any length of time, (*or* very long),' lit.? App.10.

6. **ac jam ut...acciderent,**—'and even if in the end everything turned [illegible] etc.' (RC.99.*i*.ii. HF.196.7.) *Ut* here='although *or* granting that,' a rare use in Caesar.

posse,—depending on *confidebant*, or rather on a verb of thinking to be understood from *confidebant*; so *habere* and *novisse*. **plurimum posse,**—'were strongest.' **Romanos,**—'(while) the R.' **eorum...essent,**—freely, 'of the seat of war,' lit.? **novisse,**—'were (lit. had become) acquainted with.'

7. **longe aliam,**—'far different.' **concluso mari,**—meaning the Mediterranean. **vastissimo,**—trans. by positive, with or without 'exceedingly.' App. 10.

8. **His consiliis,**—those mentioned in § 3.

9. **ubi,**—'where,' not 'when.' **primum,**—adv. **constabat,**—'it was understood.' **quam plurimas possunt,**—'as many ships as possible (lit. as they can).' (RC.88.*b*. HF.143.N.)

10. **socios sibi,**—'as their allies,' lit. 'as allies for themselves.' (RC.77. HF.36.2.) **ad,**—'with a view to.' **posita est,**—'lies (is situated).' This illustrates the reason Caesar gives in Bk.IV.c.20. for invading Britain—that 'he knew that in almost all the wars with Gaul auxiliaries were furnished to the enemy from that country.'

N.B.—Idiomatic use of comparative with standard of comparison omitted. [*longius*. § 1; cf. *saepius*, c.6. § 4. RC.88.*b*. BA.57.*b*.] Asyndeton in enumeration, § 1. *Cum primum*, § 2. [with indic. of point of time; less frequently, as in II.2., with imperf. subj. of period of time.] Use of *per* with *possum*, § 2. [So with *licet*. The absence of obstruction is regarded as assistance.] Use of *ipse*, when there is no change of subject, §§ 1.2. [RC.92.*f*.iv. BA. 355.Obs.1.] Incorporation of antecedent in relative clause. [*quod nomen*, § 3.] Use of *hoc* anticipating a *quod* sentence, § 3. [So *eo*. This is found chiefly with comparatives, or words implying a comparison, (cf. *superari*, c.4. § 3.); it seems in such cases to be an abl. of measure of difference, approaching, if not finally identical with, the abl. of cause.] Contrast emphasized by position and asyndeton. [*Pedestria* and *navigationem*, § 4; *se* and *Romanos*, § 6.] *Posse* with future force, § 5. [Very common with verbs of hoping. RC.101.*a*.ii. BA.57.N.B.] *Ut* concessive, § 6. *Posse* with adverbs and without a complementary infin. § 6. *Ac* and *atque* in § 7: [especially the use of *atque* after *alius*. BA.91.] Use of *quam possum* with the superlative, § 9. [RC.88.*b*. HF.143.N. AG.93.*b*.] Various uses of *ad*.

10, 11. *The reasons for undertaking so difficult a war. Troops are sent to keep other parts of Gaul quiet, while Caesar by land and Brutus by sea attack the Veneti.*

CAP. X.

1. **Erant,**—'existed.' **gerendi,**—trans. by 'in'; App.2.*c*. **multa,**—explained by the words *injuria . . . arbitrarentur*.

2. **injuria retentorum,** etc.,—'the wrongful detention of R. knights,' lit. 'the wrong as regards the detained R. knights,' *i.e.* 'the wrong consisting in (*or* done by) detaining.' [Most editions read *injuriae*, to be translated in the same way; the plur. referring to the several cases of seizure.] **equitum,**—the 'knights,' or members of the equestrian order (to which rank the *tribuni militum* generally belonged), were the second order in the state, coming after the 'senators.'

rebellio,—'renewal of war,' not 'revolt,' which is *defectio.* **facta,**—may be omitted in trans. **ne...arbitrarentur,**—a substantival clause co-ordinate w. the preceding nominatives; '(the fear) lest...should think.' (RC.99.*a*.1.ii. HF. 185.3.) **neglecta,**—trans. by 'if.' **parte,**—'district *or* quarter.' **sibi idem licere,**—'they might do the same,' lit.?

3. **intellegeret,**—'knew.' (RC.99.*g*.ii. HF.203.1.) **novis rebus studere,**—'were fond of change.' (RC.82.*e*. HF.105.9.) **mobiliter,**—*i.e.* on slight pretexts.

autem,—'while.' **odisse,**—trans. by English present, as stating a universal truth; so the second *studere.* **For** the defective verb *odi*, see RC.72.*b*. HF.145.1.

priusquam...conspirarent,—'before...should (*or* could) join the conspiracy.' (RC.99.*f*.iv. HF.201.5.) **partiendum,**—understand *esse;* App.41. **sibi,**—RC.82.*d*. HF.173.4.

N.B.—Emphatic position of *erant*, [really existed, were actually present], and of *tamen* [which gains strength from being so far from its usual place; cf.c.9. § 6.] Asyndeton in enumeration, § 2. [cf.c.9 § 1.] The perfect part. with a noun, with the force of a gerund or abstract noun, [*retentorum equitum*, § 2. The participle is not descriptive, but contains the essential idea. Cf. the gerundive construction, esp. in the gen. RC.II.235. HF.219.*b*. BA.417.1. H.549.5. N.2. AG.292.*a*.] *Facta* used with *rebellio*, but omitted (and not to be understood) with *injuria*, *defectio*, and *conjuratio*, § 2. [This is because of the addition of *post deditionem*, the connecting of nouns with nouns by prepositions being very restricted in Latin.] *Intellego=scio*, § 3, ['know' rather than 'perceive'; so only in pres. and imperf. tenses.] Use of *priusquam* with subjunctive of purpose; [denoting something to be prevented. RC.99.*f*.iv. HF. 201.5. BA.442.] Tense of *incitabant*, § 1, and *putavit*, § 3. [The imperf. of deliberation, the perf. of final resolve.]

CAP. XI.

1. **equitatu,**—'some cavalry'; see § 3.

2. **adeat,**—trans. by infin. with 'to'; so *contineat* and *prohibeat*. (RC.99.*a*.2.i. HF.181.3.) **officio,**—'allegiance.' The Belgae had submitted to Caesar in his campaign of the previous year; see Introduction, p. xii.

Germanos,—depends on *prohibeat,* not on *contineat.* **auxilio,**—App.3.*c.*; freely, 'to their aid,' lit.? (RC.82.*c.* HF.134.1.) **arcessiti,**—understand *esse,* 'to have been called in.' **per vim,**—'forcibly (by force).' **conentur,**—trans. by 'should.' (RC.99.*h.*iii. HF.209.2.)

3. **legionariis,**—not implying that Caesar had any other cohorts than those of the legions, but in contrast to the cavalry, who were native auxiliaries, while the legions were from the Roman provinces. Introduction, p. xvi.

ne...mittantur,—App.29.*a.*; so *conjungantur.* (RC.99.*a.* 1. HF.183.2.) **his nationibus,**—*i.e.* of Aquitania. **Galliam,**—see the Vocabulary for the various meanings. **tantae nationes,**—*i.e.* the *Galli* and the *Aquitani.* There was so little intercourse between them that there was no justification, except perhaps ignorance, for Caesar's action.

4. **qui...curet,**—trans. by infin. with 'to.' App.29.*a.* (RC.99.*a.*1. HF.184.1.) **eam...curet,**—'see that that body of troops was kept at a distance,' lit. 'kept apart,' not from each other, but from the Veneti.

5. **adolescentem,**—cf.c.7. § 2. **classi praeficit,**—'he puts in command of,' etc. (RC.82.*e.* HF.120.1.) **pacatis,**—'friendly *or* subject,' lit.?

cum primum posset,—cf.c.9. § 2.; for the mood see RC. II.214.*a.*2. HF.206.4. **eo,**—*i.e. in Venetos;* adv. **pedestribus copiis,**—'with the land-forces.' (RC.85.*e.*i.)

N.B.—Syntax of *proximus,* § 1. [See N.B. to c.7. With the adj. the dat. is the usual constr.] Subjunctive after *mandat,* § 2. [generally with *ut*; see N.B. to c.5. on *intermitterent.*] Mood of *dicebantur,* § 2. [This is not, like *conentur,* part of Caesar's instructions, but is an explanatory note for the reader. RC.II.215.*e.* HF.207.4.N.2. BA. 449.] Syntax of *curo* and gerundive, § 4. [RC.104.*c.* HF.173.7. BA.400. H.544.N.2. AG.294.*d.*] Sequence of tenses with historical present. [Where the hist. pres. precedes, the subj. may be pres. (as in §§ 2.3.4.) or imperf. (as in c.5. §§ 2.3.); where the hist. pres. follows, the imperf. subj. (as in § 5.) is the rule. RC.107.*a.*iii.] Omission of *cum* with *pedestribus copiis contendit,* § 5. [So generally of the troops with which a march is made, when an adj. is used as a modifier.] Predicate nominative after pass. of *dico,* § 2. [RC.II.14.20. BA.43. H.536.2.1.]

12, 13. *The Romans spend most of the summer in useless attempts on the towns, while the enemies' ships, whose construction is described, have many advantages over the Romans'.*

CAP. XII.

1. **ejusmodi fere,**—'for the most part such.' **situs,**—trans. by sing. The plur. refers (according to Latin usage) to the several towns. **posita,**—'being situated (situated as they were)'; it agrees with *oppida* supplied from *oppidorum.* **extremis,** etc.,—'the ends (extremities, points) of, etc.' (RC.88.*c.*)

pedibus,—RC.85.*a.* HF.71.3. **aditum haberent,**—'were accessible,' lit.? (RC.99.*b.* HF.187.2.) **cum,**—'whenever.' **quod,**—'which,' referring to the whole clause, *cum...incitavisset.* **semper,**—may be rendered by 'every,' lit.? **spatio,**—'in the space.' (RC.85.*b.* HF.82.2.)

quod,—'because.' **minuente,**—App.5.*a.*N.; trans. 'when ....was ebbing.' **afflictarentur,**—trans. by 'would be.' (RC.98.*c.*)

2. **utraque re,**='by both circumstances *or* in either case.'

3. **ac si quando,**—'and even if at times (*or*, more freely, and even when).' **operis,**—'of the siege-works,' explained by *extruso...adaequatis.* **superati,**—'being overmatched,' agreeing with the subject (*Veneti* understood) of *coeperant.*

extruso, adaequatis,—trans. by 'when' clause. App. 5.*a.* **his,**—*i.e. aggere ac molibus*, not w. *moenibus*, which is dat. **moenibus adaequatis,**—'built as high as (raised to the height of) the walls,' lit. 'made equal to the walls.'

suis...desperare,—'to despair of (lit. lose hope for) their chances of success.' For the dat. see RC.82.*b.*

appulso,—trans. by clause co-ordinate with *deportabant.* **cujus rei,**—'of which,'=*quarum.* [This is also taken as objective gen. 'for which operation.'] **facultatem,**—according to the translation of *cujus rei*, either 'abundance' or

'facilities.' **deportabant,**—trans. by 'would'; App.26.*c.*; so *recipiebant* and *defendebant.*

4. **isdem,**—cf. on c.3. § 3. **opportunitatibus loci,**—'advantages of position.'

5. **eo facilius,**—'the more easily,' lit. 'more easily by this (for this reason);' cf. on *hoc*, c.9. § 3. **partem,**–RC.83.*c.* HF.82.4.

summa,—with *difficultas.* **vasto...portibus,**—App.5.*a.* N. **raris,** etc.—'as there were few and indeed scarcely any (lit. almost no) harbors.'

N.B.—Position of *erant*, § 1. [The copula rarely begins a sentence; when it does it either emphasizes the fact stated (cf.c.10. § 1.), or is used (as in § 1. apparently), as the most general word in the clause, to serve as the introductory word in beginning to speak of a *new* topic, cf. Eng. 'now there was.'] *Cum*=whenever, with pluperfect subjunctive, § 1. [This is rare in classical Latin, where the indic. is the rule. Here it is probably due to attraction. RC.99.*k.* H.529.II. AG.342.] So-called potential subj.; [*afflictarentur*, § 1. This may be regarded as the apodosis of an incomplete conditional sentence; sc. 'if they were to try to approach.' The imperfect tense is due to the thought of the whole sentence being referred to the past; 'the potential of past time.'] Use of tenses in § 3. [RC.II.204.*a.* BA.192. AG.280.277.] Case constructions with *despero.* [Dat.; Abl. with *de* (more frequent in Caesar than in Cicero); Acc. (in Caesar only with perf. part. pass. in abl. absol.)] *Eo* with comparative anticipating a *quod* clause. [See N.B. to c.9. on *hoc.*] Abl. Absol. with adjective as quasi-predicate, § 5. [RC.85.*o.*1. BA.424. H.431.4. AG.255.*a.*]

CAP. XIII.

1. **Namque,**—explaining why the Veneti had not the same difficulty. **ipsorum,**—'their,' emphasized; App.17.*a.* **ad hunc modum,**—'after this fashion (thus).' **factae armataeque,**—'built and rigged (equipped).'

carinae,—subject of *erant* understood. The verb may be omitted in trans. **quam,**—supply 'those' in trans. after *quam.* **quo,**—'that'; with *possent.* (RC.99.*a.*1. HF.183.5.)

excipere,—'stand (meet).' The term applies better to *decessum* than to *vada*.

2. **accommodatae,**—'corresponding'; the predicate.

3. **totae,**—'wholly,' lit.? **ad...perferendam,**—App. 40. **quamvis,**—'any'; from *quivis*.

4. **transtra,**—generally means the cross-benches for rowers, but the Veneti did not use oars in these vessels. **pedalibus in altitudinem,**—'a foot thick.' **confixa,**—*i.e.* to the sides of the vessels. **digiti pollicis crassitudine,**—'of the thickness of one's thumb.' (RC.85.*c.* HF.131.9.)

5. **pro,**—'instead of.'

6. **pelles,**—*i.e.* rough hides. **tenuiter confectae,**—'thinly dressed (worked thin).' **ejus usus inscientiam,**—'lack of acquaintance with its (*i.e. lini*) use.' (RC.81.*d.*)

eo...quod,—'for this reason...that.' **impetus ventorum,**—'violent winds,' lit.? **sustineri, regi,**—depend on *posse*, which has a different subject in the two cases. **tanta onera navium,**—'such heavy vessels,' lit.? **non satis commode,**—'not very easily.'

7. **congressus,**—a noun. Trans. 'an engagement between these ships and our fleet was such,' lit. 'an engagement with these ships was to our fleet of such a nature.'

una celeritate,—'in speed alone.' (RC.85.*d.*) **praestaret,**—'it (*i.e.* our fleet) had the advantage.' (RC.99.*b.* HF.187.2.)

reliqua,—'all else.' **pro,**—'considering (*or* in view of).' Replace the second *pro* in trans. by 'and.' **illis,**—feminine, referring to *navibus*; 'for them,' that is, the enemy's ships; emphatic by contrast. **accommodatiora,**—'more convenient.'

8. **Neque,**—'not.' **his,**—*i.e.* the ships just referred to in *illis*, §7.; for the case see RC.82.*e.*i. HF.105.9. **nostrae,**—supply *naves*. **rostro,**—see Introduction, p. xxiii. **in iis,**—freely, 'their,' lit.?

adigebatur,—lit. 'was thrown on them'; freely, 'could reach them.' **minus commode,**—'not very well'; cf. *non satis commode*, § 6.

9. **Accedebat ut,**—with same force as *accedebat quod*, see note on c.2. § 5. With *ut* connect *ferrent*, *consisterent* and *timerent*. (RC.99.*b*. HF.187.2.) **se vento dedissent,**—'they (*i.e.* the ships) ran before the wind,' lit.?

et...et,—'both...and.' **in vadis consisterent,**—'rode in shallow water'; others, not so well, translate 'grounded on the shoals.' **ab aestu relictae,**—'when left (stranded) by the tide.' **nihil,**—'not at all *or* not in the least.'

quarum rerum omnium...casus,—lit. 'the happening (*or* the risk) of all which things'; trans. freely, 'while in all these respects...an accident (mishap).' **navibus,**—trans. by 'by.' (RC.82.*d*. HF.178.4.) **erat extimescendus,**—'was to be, etc.'; more forcible than *erat timendus*.

N.B.—Absence of principal verb in §§ 1–6. [The passage is in the nature of an inventory or catalogue.] The phrase *quam nostrarum navium*, § 1. [Eng. would supply 'the keels' or 'those'; Latin does not repeat a word common to both members of a comparative clause when it would be in the same case in each. The use of a pronoun with a genitive in such cases is also contrary to the Latin idiom. RC.II.183. BA.345.] *Quo* with the subj. of purpose, § 1. [Chiefly when *closely* followed by a comparative.] A modifying genitive in place of the usual modifier agreeing with the abl. of characteristic, [*digiti pollicis crassitudine*, § 5.] Use of *eo=propterea*, anticipating a *quod* clause. [In § 6. without the comparative with which it is generally found. See N.B. to c.9. on *hoc*.] The correlatives *neque...et*, § 8. The idiom *accedebat ut*. The various uses of *et* in § 9. [The *ut* clause consists of two parts, *cum... tutius* and *ab...timerent*, coupled by *et*. The first part is made up of a *cum* clause (containing two verbs connected by *et*), and two verbs depending on *ut* (coupled by *et...et*, 'both...and'). The second part is made up of a participial phrase equivalent to a *cum* clause, and one verb depending on *ut* (and governing two nouns connected by *et*).] Use of *ab*, 'by,' with *aestu*, § 9. [A case of personification, the tide being regarded as animate.] Various uses of the dative in §§ 7.8.9.

14. 15. *At last in a sea-fight Brutus defeats and almost annihilates the enemy's fleet.*

CAP. XIV.

1. **ubi intellexit,**—'perceiving.' **tantum,**—'all this,' lit. 'so great.' **neque,**—'and neither,' cf.c.3. §2. **captis,**—trans. by 'after'; App.5.*a*. **reprimi, noceri posse,**—trans. by active 'that he could,' etc., lit.? Or if the passive is kept, 'that no harm could be done them.' **iis noceri,**—for the dative and impersonal passive see RC.82.*e*.iii.; 96.*b*. HF.164.1. App.3.*b*.; 24. **exspectandam,**—understand *esse*. Trans. 'that he would have to, etc.'

2. **ubi primum,**—'as soon as,' lit.? **visa est,**—'was caught sight of.' **ducentae viginti,**—connect by 'and.' (RC.58.*b*. HF.68.6.) **eorum,**—'of theirs.' **paratissimae,**—'fully equipped.' **ornatissimae,**—'finely furnished.' **armorum,**—'tackling.' **nostris,**—understand *navibus*.

3. **neque...vel,**—'but neither...nor.' **satis Bruto ... constabat,**—'B....was quite certain,' lit.? **singulae,**—'individual,' opposed to *classi*. **quid agerent,**—'what to do,' lit. 'what they were to do'; so *insisterent*. (RC.98.*b*. HF. 189.*a*.) **rationem...insisterent,**—'plan...to adopt.'

4. **rostro,**—abl. not dat. **noceri non posse,**—'no injury could be inflicted (*or* no harm done),' lit.? cf. on §1. **cognoverant,**—in previous unimportant engagements, cf.c.13. §8.

turribus autem excitatis,—'while even when towers were built,' *i.e.* on the Roman vessels. **has,**—*i.e. turres*. **ex,**—'on,' lit. 'on the side of.' **superabat,**—'overtopped.'

ut,—'so that'; so in §§7.8. **neque,**—'not.' **satis commode,**—see on c.13. §6. **possent,**—RC.99.*b*. HF.187.2. **missa,**—'those hurled.'

5. **Una,**—'only one,' emphatic from position. **magno usui,**—App.3.*c*. (RC.82.*c*. HF.134.1.)

non absimili forma, etc.,—'of a shape not unlike that

of wall-hooks, (of much the same shape as wall-hooks),' *i.e.* for tearing down walls and earth-works. *Falcium* depends on *formae* (dat.) understood after *absimili*; for the omission cf.c.13. § 1. **forma,**—(RC.85.*c.* HF.131.9.)

6. **His cum,**—'when (whenever) by means of these.' **adducti,**—'pulled to (drawn taut).' **navigio...praerumpebantur,**—'the boat would be...and the ropes snapped.' App.26.*c.*

7. **cum,**—'since *or* as.' **navibus,**—trans. by 'for.' (RC. 82.*f.* i. HF.134.2.) **consisteret,**—'rested on (depended on).' **his,**—*i.e.* the *antennae*. **usus,**—'usefulness.' **uno tempore,** —'at once,' referring to *omnis*, (better than 'at the same time,' referring to *his ereptis*. **eriperetur,**—'was lost (was gone).'

8. **erat positum in,**—'depended on'; cf.c.5. § 3. **qua,**— 'in which.' (RC.85.*d.*) **superabant,**—'were superior.'

eo magis,—'all the more,' 'the more so,' lit.? cf.c.12. § 5. **res,**—'the action *or* fight.' **ut nullum,** etc.,—'so that no deed of unusual bravery, etc.', lit. 'a little braver (*i.e.* than usual).' (RC.88.*b.*)

9. **unde,**—'from which.' **propinquus...mare,**—'a near view over the sea.'

N.B.—Passive of verbs governing dat. [*noceri*, §§ 1.4. RC.II.57. HF. 164.1. BA.5.217.] Combination of numerals. The deliberative subjunctive, § 3. [Here in *oratio obliqua*; which, however, is in no sense the cause of the subj. mood here. RC.98.*b.* HF.139.*a.* BA.150.] Ablative absolute and accus. in the same sentence referring to the same thing, § 4. [This rare construction is not to be imitated in prose composition (RC.II.52.*c.* BA.422.*b.*), although it occurs in Caesar more frequently than might be supposed; cf.IV. 12.1. and 21.6. More attention may, perhaps, be called to the unavailing towers by *turribus excitatis...has* than by *turres excitatas*.] Subjunctive of result. [In §§ 4.7.8. *ut* is not correlative to any preceding word.] Dative of purpose, § 5, and of reference, § 7. Ablative of characteristic, § 5. *Cum*, frequentative with **indic.**, § 6. [RC.II.168. HF.204.4. BA.434. H.472.2. Cf.N.B. to c.12. § 3.] Co-ordinating relative. *Usus navium*, [in § 7. objective gen.; in c.9. § 3. subjective gen. RC.81.*c.d.* BA.299.]

CAP. XV.

1. **ut,**—'as.' **cum singulas,** etc.,—'whenever two or (lit. and again) three ships had surrounded one of the enemy's.' **summa vi,**—'with all their might, (with the utmost vigor).' (RC.85.*e*.) **contendebant,**—trans. by 'would'; App.26.*c*.

2. **Quod,**—subject of *fieri*. **expugnaris,** etc.,—trans. by 'as,' and replace *cum* by 'and.' **ei rei . . . auxilium,**—'remedy for (*or* against) this'; *ei rei* means the capture of the vessels. **fuga,**—trans. by 'in.'

3. **in eam partem quo,**—'in the direction in which,' lit.? **ferebat,**—intransitive; 'was blowing.' **malacia,**—a foreign word (Greek) made more definite by the addition of *tranquillitas*. **exstitit,**—'came.' **se ex loco movere,**—'stir from the spot,' lit.?

4. **res,**—'circumstance.' **quidem,**—can be rendered only by emphasizing 'this.' **maxime opportuna ad,**—'most favorable for.' **negotium,**—'engagement.'

5. **interventu,**—RC.85.*b*. HF.82.1. **pervenerint,**—for the mood and tense see RC.II.39.

cum . . . pugnaretur,—'for the fight lasted'; App.24. For the voice see RC.96.*b*. HF.164.2. **hora quarta,**—The time from sunrise to sunset was divided into twelve equal periods, called *horae* or 'hours,' though in the summer the *hora* would be longer than our hour, and in the winter shorter.

N.B.—Use of distributive numerals, §§ 1.5. [RC.58.*c*. HF.69.8.*a*. H.174.2. AG.95.] Force of tenses. [Note esp. *circumsteterant* (cf.c.14. § 6.); *contendebant* as compared with *contenderunt*; *possent* and *pervenerint* in clause of result, (RC.II.39. BA.113. AG.287.c.); and *pugnaretur* (cf.c.5. § 1.)] Use of relative adverbs in place of rel. pronoun with a prep. [*quo*, § 3.=*in quam*; cf. *unde*, c.14. § 9.=*ex quibus*, and *ubi*, c.4. § 4.=*in quo*. So also *eo* and *ibi*=demonstr. pron with prep.] Division of day and night among the Romans. Ablative of manner. [*summa vi*, § 1.] Difference between *movere* and Eng. 'move,' § 3.

16. *The survivors of the nation on surrendering are severely punished by Caesar by way of example.*

CAP. XVI.

1. **Venetorum,**—trans. by 'with' or 'against.'

2. **cum...tum,**—'not only ... but also.' **gravioris aetatis,**—'more advanced in years,' lit. 'of more advanced age.' (RC.81.*e*. HF.130.7.)

in quibus, etc.,—'who possessed some judgment and rank,' lit. 'in whom there was something of, etc.' For the gen. see RC.81.*b*. HF.69.10.; so *navium*.

navium quod, etc.,—'all the ships they had had anywhere,' lit. 'what (*or* whatever) of ships there had been anywhere.'

3. **quibus amissis,** etc.,—'when these were lost the survivors had neither any place to which to retreat, nor any means of defending (*or* by which to defend) their towns.'

quibus,—*i.e. navibus*. **quo...quemadmodum...habebant,**—lit. 'had neither whither to...nor how to....' (RC. 99.*a*.i. HF.184.1.) [Another way of rendering is to translate *habebant* by 'knew,' the subj. being like *agerent*, c.14. § 3.]

4. **In quos...vindicandum,**—'that these were to be punished'; understand *esse;* impersonal passive, App.24. **eo gravius quo,**—'the more severely that.' **conservaretur,**—RC.99.*a*. HF.183.5.

sub corona,—'at auction,' lit. 'under the garland.' Prisoners of war sold as slaves by auction wore garlands on their heads during the sale. There is perhaps some connection with the garlanding of animals offered for sacrifice.

N.B.—Use of *cum...tum*='both...and,' 'not only...but also,' § 2. [In this usage *cum* has no effect on the mood of the verb.] Partitive genitive after neuter. [RC.81.*b*.i. BA.294.] Relative clauses of purpose, § 3. [RC.99.*a*.i. H.497.1. AG.317. *Non habeo* is also followed by interrogative clauses (dubitative question) such as in c.14. § 3.] *Eo* anticipating a clause of purpose, § 4. [followed by either *ut*, *ne* or *quo;* rare in Caesar, more often in Cic.] ***Reliquus,***='future,' § 4.

Chap. 17-19.—The war with the Venelli.

17. *Sabinus finds the Venelli in revolt and gathering in large numbers. For a time he refuses battle.*

CAP. XVII.

1. **Sabinus,**—see c.11. § 4.

2. **his...ac,**—freely, 'these were governed by V., who,' lit.? **summam imperii,**—'the supreme command (*or* chief authority) over,' lit. 'the chief part of the command'; so in § 7.

exercitum, copias,—the former a regular (lit. trained) army, the latter irregular (unorganized and untrained) forces. *Copias* cannot mean 'supplies,' judging from c.18. § 6.; moreover elsewhere Caesar always uses *copias cogere* of troops. [It is just possible that *-que* may be explanatory= 'consisting of,' as in § 4. and c.8. § 1.]

3. **atque,**—'moreover,' adding something important. **his paucis diebus,**—'within the last few days,' *i.e.* after Sabinus' arrival. (RC.85.*b*.iii. HF.82.2.) **Aulerci Eburovices,**—but one tribe; see Vocabulary.

auctores,—not 'authors,' but 'approvers'; trans. 'to approve of (sanction, consent to.)' **nolebant,**—understand as subject *senatores* from *senatu*. **se...conjunxerunt,**—'joined V,' lit.?

4. **undique ex Gallia,**—'from all parts of G.'; lit.? **bellandi,**—App.2.*c*. **revocabat,**—'drew away'; not on this occasion only (as the tense shows, App.26.*a*.) but habitually.

5. **omnibus rebus,**—'in all respects,' lit. 'by means of all things.' **idoneo loco,**—'being in a suitable place'; (RC. 85.*k*.) **castris sese tenebat,**—'remained in the camp,' lit. 'confined himself by means of the camp'; (RC.85.*a*.ii.*g*. HF.71.3.)

cum,—'although.' For subj. see RC.99.*i*.iii. HF.204.5.

duum millium spatio,—'at a distance of only two miles.' For *duum*=*duorum*, cf. RC.48.*c*.; with *millium* understand *passuum*; for *spatio* see RC.85.*g*. HF.58.6. **faceret,**—'gave.'

ut jam,—'so that by this time.' **hostibus,** etc.,—'was beginning to incur the enemy's contempt,' lit.? Cf.c.6. § 2. *in spem venerant*; for *hostibus* (here=in the eyes of the enemy) see RC.82.*f*. HF.134.2. **nonnihil,**—'to some extent.'

6. **tantam opinionem praebuit,**—'created so strong an impression.' **jam,**—'at length.'

7. **Id,**—'this,' referring to *castris sese tenebat*, § 5. **faciebat,**—for the tense see App.26.*a*.iv. **eo absente...teneret,**—'in the absence of the commander-in-chief,' *i.e.* Caesar; lit.? App.5.*a*.N. **teneret,**—RC.99.*e*. HF.206.4.

nisi aequo loco...non,—'only on favorable ground,' lit.? **legato,**—see RC.82.*d*. HF.173.4. **dimicandum,**—understand *esse*. App.41.

N.B.—*Dum*='while,' with present tense even in connection with past time. [Commonly explained as an instance of the historical pres. RC.II.173. HF.201.3. BA.180. H.467.III.4. AG.276.*e*.] The perfect in § 3. coming between the pluperfects in §§ 2. and 4. [The pluperfects refer to what has occurred before Sabinus' arrival; the statement of this is interrupted for a moment to tell of an increase in Viridovix' forces occurring at the time of Sabinus' arrival; this is put in the tense used in speaking of his arrival.] The phrase *his paucis diebus*, § 3. [Time within which. *His* regularly refers to the time of the speaker, but here to the time of Sabinus' arrival *just spoken of*.] Difference between *conjungo*, § 4. and 'join.' Tense of *revocabat*, § 4. Ablative of place, §§ 5.7. The syntax of *mille*, and the phrases *mille passus*, *millia passuum*. [RC.58.*f*. HF.68.5. H.178. AG.94.*e*. The word *passuum* is seldom omitted in Caesar, except after the gen. *millium*, as in § 5.] Dative of reference. [*hostibus*, § 5.] Tense of *faciebat* and *existimabat*, § 7. Dative of apparent agent. Mood of *teneret*, § 7. [Part of Sabinus' thought. By some it is explained as relative clause of characteristic; but in this case *eo* would not refer definitely to Caesar, but be used generally of a man possessing the *imperium*.] *Nisi* and abl. absol. [RC.II.51.] Difference between *non nihil* and *aliquid*, §§ 5.7. [The former not indefinite, though unspecified; the latter indefinite. RC.95.1.v.]

18, 19. *The Gauls, partly encouraged by his inaction, partly lured on by false reports, attack the Roman camp and are completely overthrown.*

CAP. XVIII.

1. **quendam,**—acc. sing. masc. of *quidam*. **ex iis,**—'(one) of those.' **auxilii causa,**—'as auxiliaries,' lit. 'for the sake of aid.'

2. **transeat,**—RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3. **quid fieri velit,**—'what he wants done.' **velit,**—RC.99.*d*. HF.176.2.; so *prematur*, § 3.

3. **Qui ubi...venit,**—'this man, coming,' lit.? **quibus ...prematur,**—depending on *docet*; *premere*='to beset.'

4. **neque longius abesse quin...educat,**—also depending on *docet*; 'and that not later than...will lead out;' more literally, 'and that Sabinus' leading out his army on the next night is not farther off.' **educat, proficiscatur,**—RC.99.*b*.i.

5. **negotii bene gerendi,**—App. 40. 'of successfully carrying out their enterprise.' **ire oportere,**—'they must go'; understand *se* as subj. of *ire*. [Some editions read *iri*, App. 24.]

6. **res,**—'considerations,' explained by the four nouns following (in apposition) and the *quod* clause. Cf. for the structure of the sentence, c.10. §§ 1.2.

superiorum...cunctatio,—'Sabinus' delay on the previous days.' For *Sabini* see RC.81.*c*.; for *dierum*, RC.81.*e*. HF.130.7.

cui rei, etc.,—'for which they had not made arrangement with sufficient care;' cf.c.3. § 1. **belli,**—App.2.c. 'founded on the war.' **quod,**—'the fact that.' **volunt,**—*i.e. credere.*

7. **non prius...dimittunt quam,**—'they do not let...go until,' lit. 'at an earlier time than.' *Prius quam* are often written as one word. **ab his sit concessum,**—App.24.; trans. 'they give them permission.' RC.99.*f*.iv. HF.201.5. **capiant,**—RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.

8. **Qua re concessa,**—'on this permission being given,' lit.?

ut explorata victoria,—'as if victory were certain,' lit. 'as (they would have rejoiced) victory being assured.' App. 5.*a*. (RC.85.*o*.) **quibus compleant,**—trans. by inf. with 'to.' App.29.*b*. (RC.99.*a*.i. HF.184.1.); cf.c.16. § 3. **fossas,**—there would be but one trench in reality, but the trench on each of the four sides may be regarded as a separate *fossa*.

N.B.—Difference between *quidam* and *aliquis*, § 1. [The former unspecified, and unnecessary that it be specified, though it need not be indefinite to the writer; the latter indefinite and unnecessary that it be definite. RC.95.i.iii.] Relative and substantive clauses of purpose. [§§ 2.7. and 8.] Subjunctive of indirect question. [§§ 2. and 3.] Use of *oportet*, § 5. *Priusquam* and subjunctive, § 7. [Here, as generally, the subj. expresses the end kept in view.] Emphatic position of *arma*, § 7. [Show the propriety of the emphasis.] The phrase *ut explorata victoria*, § 8. [Equivalent to a clause with *ut si*, the *si* clause being replaced by a conditional abl. absol.] Historical present, with primary sequence of tenses, §§ 7.8.

CAP. XIX.

1. **passus mille,**—App.4.*d*. (RC.83.*c*. HF.69.9.) **magno cursu,**—'at full speed.' (RC.85.*e*. HF.71.3.) **ut,**—'so that.' **quam minimum spatii,**—'as little time as possible.' **exanimatique,**—'and so...breathless, (*or* out of breath).'

cupientibus,—dative, with *eis* (*i.e. suis*) understood, and depending on *dat*. Trans. freely, 'who were all [illegible],' as though it went with *suos*.

2. **portis,**—those on each side of the camp (cf. Introduction, p. xix., xx.), so that they would not only be resisted at the ramparts in front, but be assailed on each flank. For the case cf.c.6. § 1.

3. **Factum est opportunitate,** etc.,—'the result of the favorable position...was, etc.,' lit. 'it was brought about by, etc.' **pugnarum exercitatione,**—'practice gained in *or* training of, etc.' **unum,**—'a single,' with *impetum*. **ne... ferrent,**—'did not stand.' **ac,**—we may trans. by 'but' in such a case.

4. **Quos impeditos,**—depending on *consecuti*. **integris viribus,**—causal abl. absol. with *consecuti*; cf.c.4. § 2. Trans. freely, 'as they were hampered, (*or* these, hampered as they were) our men, whose strength was fresh, followed and slew, etc.' **equites,**—nom. **paucos qui,**—'only a few of those who.'

5. **uno,**—'one and the same,' 'the same.' **Sabinus,**—understand *certior factus est*, which then need not be translated after *Caesar*. **Titurio,**—*i.e.* Sabinus.

6. **ut...sic,**—'as...so,' more freely, 'while...yet.' **animus,**—'spirit,' referring to impulses. **mens,**—'resolution,' referring to determination of purpose. **minime resistens,**—'incapable of steadfastness.'

N.B.—Use of *se* referring to a word which is not the subject of the clause. [§ 1. *Romanis*. This in Caesar is chiefly in familiar reflexive formulas, cf.c.4. § 4. and c.6. § 1. RC.91.iii. AG.196.*c*.] Present participle, [§ 1. as partic.; § 6. as adj.] Shifting of proper names in § 5. [*Sabinus*, *Sabini*, *Titurio*; the last evidently for variety's sake.] Various uses of *ut*. [See also c.18.] Use of *quam* with superlative, § 1. [cf.c.9. § 9. with *possum*.] Difference between English and Latin usage in the position of a verb common to two parallel clauses. [§ 5. In English placed with the first clause and understood with the second; in Latin repeatedly, if not generally, placed with the second, the sense of the first being held in suspense until both can be completed at once.]

Chap. 20-27.—The war with the Aquitani.

20, 21. *Crassus, entering the country of the Sontiates, after a hard fought battle, attacks their chief town and takes it.*

CAP. XX.

1. **P. Crassus,**—see c.11. § 3. **cum...pervenisset,**—'on reaching,' depending on *cum intellegeret,* 'understanding.' **ante,**—in Bk.I.c.1., where we read: 'Gaul as a whole is divided into three parts; one inhabited by the Belgae, another by the Aquitani, the third by those called in their own tongue Celts, in ours Gauls.'

et regionum, etc.,—'both in extent of territory and number of inhabitants.' (RC.85.*d*.) **ex tertia parte,**—can only be translated, 'as a third part'; but the form of expression cannot be paralleled or satisfactorily explained. Caesar's geographical statements are often incorrect, as is the case here.

sibi...gerendum,—understand *esse;* so *adhibendam.* **paucis ante annis,**—22 years before, in the war with Sertorius, the leader of a revolt in Spain. For the abl. see RC.85.*g*.i. HF.58.6. **interfectus esset, profugisset,**—RC.99.*e*. HF. 206.4. **non mediocrem,**—'no slight.'

2. **comparato,**—agreeing with the nearer of the two words it goes with. **Tolosa,**—'from T.,' depending on *evocatis.* (RC.85.*h*.i. HF.85.2.)

Galliae provinciae,—in apposition. **finitimae,**—with *civitates.* **evocatis,**—often (and perhaps here) of inviting back to service veterans who had received their discharge.

3. **equitatu,**—also with *coactis.* **quo plurimum valebant,**—'in which lay their chief strength,' lit.? For the abl. see RC.85.*d*. **primum,**—adv.

4. **pulso...insequentibus,**—App.5.*a*.; 'when...had been defeated...were in pursuit,' or, to have the same st... for

each verb, trans. *insequentibus* by the passive. **ostenderunt,**—'disclosed.'

Hi,—the *pedestres copiae.* **disjectos,**—'who were, etc.'; App.37.*c.* **renovarunt,**—*i.e. renovaverunt.* (RC.66.)

N.B.—Ablative of specification [§§1. and 3.], of measure of difference [§1.], of place whence [§2.] Dative of agent with gerundive; [twice in §1.] Litotes (or understatement, where more is meant than meets the ear); [*non mediocrem*, §1, cf.c.1. §5.; c.13. §6.; c.19. §6.] Difference in position of participle in agreement with two nouns in §§2. and 3. [The order of §2. is far the commoner in Caesar.] Apposition in Latin where Eng. uses 'of.' [*Gallia provincia*, §2.] *In* and abl. with *colloco.* [So regularly with verbs of placing, in spite of the idea of motion. RC.125.*a*.3.]

CAP. XXI.

1. **Pugnatum est,**—App.24. (RC.96.*b.* HF.164.2.) **cum,**—'since *or* for.' **victoriis,**—those referred to in c.20. § 1. (RC.85.*k*.iii. HF.64.4.) **positam,**—understand *esse.* **putarent,**—RC.99.*g*.ii. HF.203.1.

autem,—'while.' **quid...possent,**—RC.99.*d.* HF.176.2. **reliquis legionibus,**—what forces had Crassus? cf.c.11. § 3. **adolescentulo duce,**—'under the leadership of a mere youth,' lit. 'a youth (being) leader.' App.5.*a*.N. (RC.85.*o.* HF.102.3.N.) **perspici,**—its subject is *quid...possent*; trans. freely by act. 'were anxious to show,' lit.?

vertere,=*verterunt* (RC.66.), a form rarely occurring in Caesar. Others read it as *vertĕre,* an historical infin., but this seems out of place here, (see N.B. to c.4.)

2. **ex itinere,**—'on the march,' *i.e.* turning aside from his march. **resistentibus,**—App.5.*a*.N. Trans. by 'when' or 'since.' **vineas,**—see Introduction, p. xxii. **egit,**—'brought up,' *i.e.* to the walls; from *ago.*

3. **Illi,**—App.18.*b.* **temptata, actis,**—trans. by principal clauses; supply 'but' in trans. before *ubi...intellexerunt.*

cujus rei,—'in which,' App.2.*c.* (RC.81.*f*.i.) **multis locis,**—RC.85.*k.* **apud,**—'among.' **secturae,**—another

reading is *structurae*, to be translated in the same way, but referring rather to the props and galleries than to the excavations.

diligentia,—'on account of the alertness.' (RC.85.*m*. HF.71.3.) **ut se...reciplat,**—'accept their surrender, (submission),' lit.? (RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.)

impetrata, jussi,—'on gaining this request and being ordered.' **faciunt,**—'they do so'; freely, 'they obey.'

N.B.—The impersonal passive use of intrans. verbs, §1. [RC.96.*b*. HF.164.2. BA.217. H.301.1. AG.146.c.] The local ablative; (literally, *multis locis*, §3.; figuratively, *victoriis*, §1.) Abl. absol. with noun as quasi-predicate, §1. Dependent clause introduced by interrogative word, §1. [Subj. of indirect question, but found after many other verbs than those of *asking*.] Difference between *in itinere* (c.20. §3.), and *ex itinere*, §2. [The former=while still on the march; the latter=turning aside from the march, but not stopping to fortify a camp or set up regular siege-works.] The phrase *alias-alias*, §3. [In classical authors, of time, not place.] Abl. of cause, [*diligentia*, §3.] *Cujus rei* and *qua re* referring to a whole clause, §3. Use of *eos* and *se* of same persons, §3. Difference between *imperator* and *dux*. [The former the Roman commander-in-chief, formally invested with military power, the latter not a military title, but used of any leader of any body of troops.]

---

22. *An attempt to escape on the part of some of the citizens who had surrendered is frustrated.*

CAP. XXII.

1. **Atque,**—'now,' introducing something new and noteworthy; cf. *ac*, c.15. §3. **intentis animis,**—'while the attention was engrossed with,' 'while the minds were intent on.' App.5.*a*. **summam imperii,**—cf.c.17. §2.

devotis,—'devoted followers,' pledged by a solemn oath. **illi,**—App.18. **soldurios,**—the native term (of unknown derivation) of the *devoti*; to be retained untranslated, but in the nom. case.

2. **quorum,** etc.,—'whose compact is as follows.' **omnibus,** etc.,—'all the blessings of life.' **una,**—adv. **fruantur,**—RC.99.*a*. HF.183.2.; so *ferant* and *consciscant*. **dediderint,**—RC.99.*k*. So *devovisset*, § 3. **amicitiae,**—dative. **si quid,**—'(but) if anything.' **accidat,**—trans. by 'should.' (RC.II.83.2. HF.192.*b*.) **casum,**—'fate.' **sibi consciscant,** —*sibi*, lit. 'for themselves.' Compare what Valerius Maximus wrote half a century afterward of the Celtiberi: 'They thought it a sin to leave the field of battle alive, if their leader, for whose safety they had pledged their lives, had fallen'; and what Tacitus, a century and a half later, says of the Germans: 'It is a reproach all their days, to have survived their chief in battle.'

3. **memoria,** — 'within the memory.' **repertus est,** — trans. by 'has.' **eo interfecto,** etc.,—'on the death of the one to whose friendship.' **qui...recusaret,**—'who...would refuse.' (RC.99.*c*. HF.188.4.5.)

4. **cum his A.,**—on account of the long parenthesis about the *soldurii* the subject is repeated, and *cum his*, 'with these then,' resumes *cum sescentis devotis*.

conatus...repulsus...impetravit,—trans. by three coordinate verbs joining the two first by 'but,' the two last by 'and yet.' App.37.*a*.N.B.

ab, — 'at.' **sublato,**—trans. by 'when.' **pugnatum esset,**—cf. on. c.21. § 1. **uti uteretur,** — trans. by infin. with 'to.' (RC.99.*a*.2. HF.183.3.) **eadem,**—*i.e.* as the rest; see c.21. § 3. **a ... impetravit,** — 'was allowed by,' lit. 'obtained his request from.'

N.B.—Relative clause of characteristic. [*qui recusaret*, § 3. RC.99.*c*. HF.188.4.5. BA.504. H.503.I. AG.320.] Subjunctive by attraction. [*dederint*, § 2.; *devovisset*, § 3. Here, as generally in cases of attraction, the relative clauses form an essential part of the thought. This construction (rare in Caesar), is sometimes difficult to distinguish from the subj. of virtual indirect narration or the relative clause of characteristic. RC.99.*k*. H.529.II. and N.1. AG.342.] Difference between the use of *quis* and *quisquam*=any one, §§ 2.3.

[RC.95. HF.192.1.3. BA.357.; 358. H.455.1.; 457. AG.105.*d.*; *h.*] Subjunctive with *impetro ut.* [It is impossible to class the subj. after verbs of *effecting* as either purely final (RC.99.*a*.2. HF.183.3. H.498. AG.331.) or purely consecutive (RC.99.*b*. HF.187.1. H.500. AG. 332.) The negative, for example, has sometimes *ne*, and at other times *ut non*. With personal subjects the idea tends to that of the end in view, *i.e.* the subj. clause expresses the design, the verb of effecting, its accomplishment. This fluctuation illustrates the development of the consecutive subj., the idea of *tendency* suggesting that of *result*.]

---

23. *The other tribes combine to defend themselves, and send for experienced troops from Spain to help them.*

CAP. XXIII.

2. **Tum vero,**—'then'; *vero* to be rendered only by the emphasis; so in § 5. **et natura,** etc.,—'by its natural position and by art,' lit.? **oppidum...expugnatum,**—understand *esse*.

paucis diebus, etc., —'within a few days after his coming to it,' lit. 'within the few days, within which.' **ventum erat,**—App.24. **inter se dare,**—'exchange.' **parare,**—'raise.'

3. **quae sunt,** etc.,—'which belong to (lit. are of) hither S. (and are) next to A.' or 'border on A.' The Cantabrians especially are meant. Hither Spain means northern Spain; *finitimae* is nom.

4. **Quorum adventu,**—'on their arrival.' Abl. of time (suggesting also the cause.) **auctoritate,**—'prestige *or* impressiveness.'

5. **Duces,**—'as generals,' the predicate. (RC.79.*c*.1.) **Sertorio,**—the leader of a revolt in Spain from B.C. 80-72. **omnes annos,**—'all along,' lit. 'all the years,' *i.e.* of the revolt. **que,**—'and so'; cf.c.19. § .

6. **consuetudine,**—'according to the custom.' (RC.85. HF.71.3.) The Gauls were always negligent in such matters, while Sertorius, who was a Roman and had many Romans in his army, had introduced the Roman methods of warfare.

loca capere,—'to select positions,' *i.e.* for camps. **commeatibus,**—trans. by 'from.' (RC.85.*h.* HF.158.2.) **instituunt,**—'proceed.'

7. **Quod,**—explained by *suas...augeri,* which may be introduced by 'namely.' **exiguitatem,**—'their small number.' **diduci, supportari,**—trans. by 'could,' which is suggested by *facile* and *commode.*

castris,—trans. by 'for.' (RC.82.*b.*) **satis praesidii,**—App.2.*d.* (RC.81.*b.* HF.69.10.) **minus commode,**—cf.c.18. § 8. **in dies,**—'daily.'

cunctandum quin, etc.,—understand *esse;* App.24. 'should (must) not delay fighting a decisive battle,' lit.? (RC.99.*b.*1. HF.185.2.)

delata,—*defero ad*=I bring before. **idem sentire,**—'agreed with him.' lit.? **pugnae,**—trans. by 'for.' (RC. 82.*c.* HF.134.1.)

N.B.—The phrase *paucis diebus quibus.* [The two events mentioned come within the same period of a few days, at the beginning and end respectively.] The impersonal passive construction, §§ 2. and 7. Asyndeton in rapid enumeration. [§§ 2. and 7.; in § 7. combined with emphatic contrast (*suas—hostem*), and with polysyndeton (*et et-et*); the last *et*='and still.'] Introductory words of each section. [Note esp. §§ 3. and 5.] Predicative gen. of possession, [*sunt Hispaniae,* § 3.; contrast c.20. § 2.] Ablative of separation, § 6. Dative translated by 'for,' §§ 4. and 8. Difference between *in dies,* § 7., and *cotidie,* c.17. § 5.=daily. [The former of daily change (increase or decrease), the latter of daily repetition (though sometimes also, in the best authors, of daily change.)]

24, 27.—*As the Aquitanians decline a pitched battle, Crassus attacks their camp. The enemy are defeated and at once almost all Aquitania submits.*

CAP. XXIV.

1. **productis,**—trans. by principal clause followed by 'and.' **duplici acie instituta,**—'drawing up a double line,'

i.e. two cohorts deep. His troops were too few for the usual *triplex acies*. **mediam aciem,**—'the centre.' The reason for this can be gathered from c.25. § 1.

quid consilii,—App.2.*d*. **caperent,**—trans. by means of 'would,' the future reference being required by *exspectabat*. (RC.99.*d*. HF.176.2.) **exspectabat,**—'waited to see.'

2. **Illi,**—App.18. **belli,**—trans. by 'in.' App.2.*c*. **tuto, tutius,**—the former an adv., the latter an adj. **obsessis, intercluso,**—trans. by infin. with 'to,' co-ordinate with *potiri*. **sine ullo vulnere,**—'without a blow,' or 'bloodless,' lit.?

3. **sese recipere,**—*i.e.* from Aquitania. **impeditos,** etc., —'them, while hampered when on the march and bearing their packs.' **infirmiore animo,**—had better be omitted; if kept, trans. '(and so) less spirited.' (RC.85.*c*. HF.181.9.) **cogitabant,**—'intended *or* were planning.'

4. **a ducibus,**—with *probato*. **productis,**—trans. by 'although.' **castris,** etc.,—see on c.17. § 5.

5. **sua,**—refers to *hostes* the subject of *effecissent*. **opinione timoris,**—'the impression of fear (they had created).' cf. c.17. § 6.

omnium,—freely, 'on all sides,' lit.? **exspectari...iretur,**—'that they should not delay any longer going to the camp,' lit. 'that there ought not to be waiting, so that there would not be going'; for *exspectari* and *iretur* see App.24. (RC.96.*b*. HF.164.2.); for *quin* cf. on c.23. § 7.

omnibus cupientibus,—freely, 'to the delight of all,' lit.? App.5.*a*.N.

N.B.—Heaping of abl. absol. without connectives in §§ 1.2.4. [Where this is the case a succession of events is generally expressed, sometimes to be rendered by 'and so,' as in § 2.] Imperf. and pluperf. subj. representing respectively the fut. and fut. perf. indic. [§§ 1. and 3. RC.107.*b*. HF.207.7. BA.524. H.496.] The various constructions with *intercludo*. [§ 2.; c.3. § 2.; c.23. § 6.; the last being the most frequent.] *Sarcinae* and *acies*. [See Introduction, p. xx., xxi.] Ablative of agent in abl. absol. clause, § 4. [This

occurs very seldom in Caesar, who generally leaves us to gather from the context the actual agent.] Use of *Romani* in Caesar. [Very seldom in Caesar's own narrative, as in § 4. (*nostri* being used instead); generally in expressing the words or thoughts of the enemy, as in § 3.] Use of *quin*. [In Bk. III., occurring in § 5.; c.18. § 4.; c.23. § 7.] Ablative absolute referring to persons already mentioned in the same sentence, § 5. [This is of comparatively rare occurrence, and (when used) develops the thought more clearly and more vigorously. Contrast the form of expression in c.19. § 1.] Various uses of the genitive.

CAP. XXV.

1. **fossas,**—see on c.18. § 8. **vallo,**—RC.85.*h*. HF.158.2. **quibus multum confidebat,**—see on c.9. § 3. **ad pugnam,**—'for fighting.' **subministrandis, comportandis,**—gerundive constr., abl. of means; trans. by 'by.' App.40. (RC. 104.*b*. HF.170.3.) **ad aggerem,**—'for,' not 'to'; *faciendum* may be supplied.

speciem...praeberent,—'gave the appearance and impression of being combatants.' **pugnaretur,**— App.24. **missa, acciderent,**—cf.c.14. § 4.

2. **diligentia,**—RC.85.*e*. HF.71.3. **esse,**—with *munita*. **ab decumana porta,**—'on the side where the decuman (*or* rear) gate was.' See Introduction, p. xix. For *ab*=on the side of, cf.c.22. § 4. **facilemque aditum habere,**—'was easy of access, (could easily be approached),' lit.? Cf.c.12. § 1.

N.B.—The pres. partic. as a substantive. [*pugnantium*, § 1.; so most commonly in the oblique cases.] Formation of a Roman camp. Gerundive constr. in abl. of means, § 1. Litotes. [*non frustra* and *non timide*, § 1.; cf.N.B. to c.20.]

CAP. XXVI.

1. **cohortatus ut,**—'having urged to.' **suos,**—refers to the subject of *excitarent*. **quid fieri velit,**—see on c.18. § 2.

2. **ut erat imperatum,**—'according to instructions,' lit.?

eductis, circumductis,—trans. by principal clauses. App. 5.*a*.iii.

praesidio castris,—'to guard the camp.' (RC.82.*c*. HF. 134.1.) **relictae,**—App.37.*a*.N.B. **ab,**—'by,' lit. 'with respect to.' **mentibus,**—'thoughts.'

3. **prius...quam,**—'before,' lit.? cf. on c.18. § 7. **constiterunt,**—'gained a footing.' **videri,**—with this understand *possent* from the following *posset*. **quid rei gereretur,**—'what was going on'; for the gen. cf. *consilii*, c.24. § 1.; for the subj. see RC.99.*d*. HF.176.2. **conspici posset,**—the subject is *quid rei gereretur*. **posset,**—RC.99.*f*.iv. HF. 201.5.

4. **Tum vero,**—cf. on c.23. § 2. **ab ea parte,**—'on that side.' **redintegratis viribus,**—'with renewed vigor,' abl. absol., lit.? **quod,** etc.,—'as generally happens when there is hope, etc.,' lit.? *Quod* is the relative pron., referring to the clause *redintegratis viribus*.

5. **desperatis omnibus rebus,**—'giving up all hope,' lit.? cf. N.B. to c.3. § 3. **per,**—'over'; cf.c.1. § 2. **intenderunt,**—'strove, (did their best).'

6. **apertissimis campis,**—App.10. Trans. by 'through *or* over,' lit. 'by means of.' (RC.85.*a*.ii.*a*.)

quae,—neut. plur. referring to *millium*, and subject of *venisse*. **Cantabris,**—see c.23. § 3. and note. **constabat,**—cf. on c.6. § 2. **multa nocte,**—'late at night.' *Multus* with *dies* and *nox* means 'far advanced.' For the constr. and use of the adj. cf. *prima luce*, c.24. § 1.

N.B.—Change in sequence of tenses in § 1. Uses of *ex*. *Ab* = on the side of. [Literally, § 4.; transferred, § 2.; cf. also c.22. § 4.; 25. § 2.; 29. § 1.] *Prius quam* with subj. § 3. [expressing purpose, cf.c.10. § 3. and N.B. to c.18. § 7.] Dependent interrogative clauses, §§ 1. and 3. *Quod* referring to a clause, § 4. [The more rhetorical *id quod* and *quae res* are also used by Caesar, cf.Bk.IV.c.1. § 9. and 29. § 3. Usually in this idiom, though not here, the relative clause comes before the words to which it specially refers.]

CAP. XXVII.

1. **quo in numero,**—'among these'; cf.c.7. § 4.

2. **paucae ultimae nationes,**—'a few tribes, the farthest,' rather than 'a few of the farthest tribes.' **confisae,**—'trusting'; a semi-deponent. (RC.68.*b*.) **suberat,**—from *subsum*.

Chap. 28, 29.—The expedition against the Morini and Menapii.

28. *Caesar leads a force into north-eastern Gaul, where alone opposition to him remains.*

CAP. XXVIII.

1. **Caesar,**—should be nearer its verb in Eng. **jam,**—'by this time.' **pacata,**—trans. by 'while' or 'after.'

supererant qui, etc.,—trans. freely, 'the only people who ...were the M.' lit.? **essent, misissent,**—RC.99.*c*. HF.188. 4.5. **neque...unquam,**—'and...never.'

longe alia ratione ac,—'in a manner very different from.'

2. **quae proelio contendissent,**—'which had resisted in the field.' (RC.99.*e*. HF.206.4.)

3. **neque hostis,**—'and no enemy.' **interim,**—*i.e.* between the time of his arrival and his beginning to fortify the camp. **dispersis,**—trans. by 'while.' **in opere,**—'at their work,' *i.e.* of fortifying the camp.

4. **longius,**—'too far,' lit. 'farther,' *i.e.* than they should. **impeditioribus locis,**—'over ground unusually full of obstructions,' lit. 'by means of ground more entangled' *i.e.* than usual. **secuti,**—trans. as in App.87.*a*.N.B.

N.B.—The relative clause of characteristic, § 1. [RC.II.34.35. HF.188. 4.5. BA.504. H.503.II. AG.320.] Use of *ac* (or *atque*) with *alius*. [Cf. also c.9. § 7., where *atque* may be translated literally.] Substantival use of *suus*, §§ 2. and 4. Idiomatic uses of the

comparative, § 4. The frequency of the ending—*erunt* in §§ 3. and 4., in each case at the end of its clause. [This similarity of ending, resulting from co-ordinating a number of similar clauses, is rare and should be avoided in writing Latin.] Abl. of means to express the route by which. [§ 4.; cf. c.26. §§ 2. and 6.]

---

29. *The season for campaigning closes before anything effective can be done.*

CAP. XXIX.

1. **Reliquis,** etc.,—'during the remaining days that followed.' *Reliquis*, because the summer (the time for campaigning) was nearly over, (c.28. § 1.) **instituit,**—'proceeded.' **silvas caedere,**—*i.e.* to cut a broad road through the forest.

ne quis,—with *impetus*, 'that no,' lit.? **militibus,**—abl. absol.; trans. by 'while.' **ab,**—'on.' **posset,**—'might.' (RC.99.*a*.1. HF.183.2.)

materiam,—'timber.' **conversam ad,**—'facing,' lit.? The trees felled were piled on each side of the road, with the branches cut away next the road, but left on the side next the forest. **collocabat,**—'placed *or* arranged.' App.26.*c*. **pro,**—'as.' **ad,**—'on.'

2. **cum jam,**—'just as,' or more lit. 'when now at length.' **extrema impedimenta,**—'the rear of the baggage,' lit. 'the hindmost baggage.' **tenerentur,**—'were being seized,' or more freely, 'were getting within reach.' **ipsi,**—the enemy in person, as contrasted with their baggage and cattle. Supply 'while' as connective.

continuatione imbrium,—'because of the incessant rains.' lit.? (RC.85.*m*. HF.71.3.) **diutius,**—'(any) longer.' **sub pellibus,**—'under canvas, *or* in tents,' lit. 'under hides,' with which the tents used in summer were covered.

3. **in,**—'among.' **reliquis item,**—'and the other . . . also'; what states are meant?

N.B.—Abl. of time within which, §§ 1. and 2. *Quis*=any, § 1. [*Cf.* N.B. to c.22. § 2. Notice that here *quis* is used as an adj; as in Bk.I. c.48. § 6. we find *si qui* used substantively.] Accumulation of ablatives of three different kinds in § 2. [Cf. Bk. IV. c.4. § 5.] Asyndeton with *ipsi*, § 2., and with *item*, § 3. [With the former it is the rule in Caesar, but cf. c.1. § 1.; with the latter *et* or *-que* is generally found, cf. c.9. § 3.] Imperfect tense with *intermitteretur*, § 2. [Many editors say this is to express the idea of *constant* interruptions, and that the perf. would have been used of a complete cessation of work. The difference however between the perf. and the imperf. subj. in consecutive clauses is so slight (the imperf. being the favorite tense), that there is room for doubt.] The causal abl. [*continuatione*, § 2.; cf. also c.21. § 3.] *Et non*, § 2. [cf. *ac non*, c.25. § 1. The almost invariable rule is to connect two co-ordinate sentences (or two similar phrases) of which the second contains a negative, by *neque* (cf. c.4. § 2., c.22. § 3. and c.28. § 3.) Exceptions occur chiefly where, as in c.25., the negative is closely connected with a single word (forming with it one idea), or where, as here, emphasis is gained by the use of *non*.]

DE

1. EA,
Pompeio,
Tencteri
transieru
transeund
bello pren
Sueboru
Germanor
ex quibus
causa ex
se atque
armis su
nec ratio
separati
remanere
frumento,
multumqu
et quotidia
nullo offici

C. JULII CÆSARIS

COMMENTARII

DE BELLO GALLICO.

LIBER QUARTUS.

1. Ea, quae secuta est, hieme, qui fuit annus Cn. 1
Pompeio, M. Crasso consulibus, Usipetes Germani et item
Tencteri magna cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum
transierunt, non longe a mari, quo Rhenus influit. Causa 2
transeundi fuit, quod ab Suebis complures annos exagitati
bello premebantur et agricultura prohibebantur.

Sueborum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima 3
Germanorum omnium. Hi centum pagos habere dicuntur, 4
ex quibus quotannis singula millia armatorum bellandi
causa ex finibus educunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserunt, 5
se atque illos alunt. Hi rursus in vicem anno post in
armis sunt, illi domi remanent. Sic neque agricultura 6
nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur. Sed privati ac 7
separati agri apud eos nihil est, neque longius anno
remanere uno in loco incolendi causa licet. Neque multum 8
frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt
multumque sunt in venationibus; quae res et cibi genere 9
et quotidiana exercitatione et libertate vitae, cum a pueris
nullo officio aut disciplina assuefacti nihil omnino contra

voluntatem faciant, et vires alit et immani corporum magnitudine homines efficit. Atque in eam se consuetudinem adduxerunt, ut locis frigidissimis neque vestitus praeter pelles haberent quicquam, quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavarentur in fluminibus.

1 **2.** Mercatoribus est aditus magis eo, ut, quae bello
ceperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quo ullam rem
2 ad se importari desiderent. Quin etiam jumentis, quibus
maxime Galli delectantur, quaeque impenso parant pretio,
Germani importatis non utuntur, sed quae sunt apud eos
nata, parva atque deformia, haec quotidiana exercitatione
3 summi ut sint laboris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe
ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem
remanere vestigio assuefecerunt, ad quos se celeriter, cum
4 usus est, recipiunt; neque eorum moribus turpius quic-
5 quam aut inertius habetur, quam ephippiis uti. Itaque ad
quemvis numerum ephippiatorum equitum quamvis pauci
6 adire audent. Vinum ad se omnino importari non sinunt,
quod ea re ad laborem ferendum remollescere homines
atque effeminari arbitrantur.

1 **3.** Publice maximam putant esse laudem, quam latis-
sime a suis finibus vacare agros: hac re significari magnum
2 numerum civitatum suam vim sustinere non posse. Itaque
una ex parte a Suebis circiter millia passuum sexcenta agri
3 vacare dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succedunt Ubii,
quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens, ut est captus
Germanorum, et paulo sunt ejusdem generis ceteris
humaniores, propterea quod Rhenum attingunt, multum-
que ad eos mercatores ventitant, et ipsi propter propin-
4 quitatem Gallicis sunt moribus assuefacti. Hos cum

Suebi multis saepe bellis experti propter amplitudinem
gravitatemque civitatis finibus expellere non potuissent,
tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt, ac multo humiliores
infirmioresque redegerunt.

4. In eadem causa fuerunt Usipetes et Tencteri, quos 1
supra diximus, qui complures annos Sueborum vim sustin-
uerunt; ad extremum tamen agris expulsi et multis locis 2
Germaniae triennium vagati ad Rhenum pervenerunt; quas
regiones Menapii incolebant et ad utramque ripam fluminis
agros, aedificia vicosque habebant; sed tantae multitud- 3
inis adventu perterriti ex iis aedificiis, quae trans flumen
habuerant, demigraverunt et cis Rhenum dispositis
praesidiis Germanos transire prohibebant. Illi omnia 4
experti cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam navium
neque clam transire propter custodias Menapiorum possent,
reverti se in suas sedes regionesque simulaverunt, et tridui
viam progressi rursus reverterunt atque omni hoc itinere 5
una nocte equitatu confecto inscios inopinantesque
Menapios oppresserunt, qui de Germanorum discessu per 6
exploratores certiores facti sine metu trans Rhenum in suos
vicos remigraverant. His interfectis navibusque eorum 7
occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiorum, quae citra
Rhenum erat, certior fieret, flumen transierunt atque
omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis reliquam partem
hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt.

5. His de rebus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem 1
Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles
et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his committendum
existimavit. Est enim hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, uti et 2
viatores etiam invitos consistere cogant et, quid quisque
eorum de quaque re audierit aut cognoverit, quaerant, et

mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumsistat quibusque ex regionibus veniant quasque ibi res cognoverint, pronun-
3 tiare cogant. His rebus atque auditionibus permoti de summis saepe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum eos in vestigio poenitere necesse est, cum incertis rumoribus serviant, et plerique ad voluntatem eorum ficta respondeant.

1 **6.** Qua consuetudine cognita Caesar, ne gravior bello occurreret, maturius, quam consuerat, ad exercitum profi-
2 ciscitur. Eo cum venisset, ea quae fore suspicatus erat
3 facta cognovit: missas legationes ab nonnullis civitatibus ad Germanos invitatosque eos, uti ab Rheno discederent,
4 omniaque, quae postulassent, ab se fore parata. Qua spe adducti Germani latius vagabantur et in fines Eburonum et Condrusorum, qui sunt Treverorum clientes, pervenerant.
5 Principibus Galliae evocatis Caesar ea, quae cognoverat, dissimulanda sibi existimavit eorumque animis permulsis et confirmatis equitatuque imperato bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit.

1 **7.** Re frumentaria comparata equitibusque delectis iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos
2 audiebat. A quibus cum paucorum dierum iter abesset,
3 legati ab his venerunt, quorum haec fuit oratio: Germanos neque priores populo Romano bellum inferre neque tamen recusare, si lacessantur, quin armis contendant, quod Germanorum consuetudo sit a majoribus tradita, quicum-
4 que bellum inferant, resistere neque deprecari. Haec tamen dicere, venisse invitos, ejectos domo; si suam gratiam Romani velint, posse iis utiles esse amicos; vel sibi agros attribuant vel patiantur eos tenere, quos armis
5 possederint: sese unis Suebis concedere, quibus ne dii quidem immortales pares esse possint; reliquum quidem in terris esse neminem, quem non superare possint.

8. Ad haec quae visum est Caesar respondit; sed exitus 1
fuit orationis: Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse,
si in Gallia remanerent; neque verum esse, qui suos fines 2
tueri non potuerint, alienos occupare; neque ullos in
Gallia vacare agros, qui dari tantae praesertim multitu-
dini sine injuria possint; sed licere, si velint, in Ubiorum 3
finibus considere, quorum sint legati apud se, et de
Sueborum injuriis querantur et a se auxilium petant: hoc
se Ubiis imperaturum.

9. Legati haec se ad suos relaturos dixerunt et re deli- 1
berata post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversuros: interea
ne propius se castra moveret, petierunt. Ne id quidem 2
Caesar ab se impetrari posse dixit. Cognoverat enim 3
magnam partem equitatus ab iis aliquot diebus ante prae-
dandi frumentandique causa ad Ambivaritos trans Mosam
missam; hos exspectari equites atque ejus rei causa moram
interponi arbitrabatur.

10. Mosa profluit ex monte Vosego, qui est in finibus 1
Lingonum, et parte quadam ex Rheno recepta, quae appel-
latur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batavorum, neque longius 2
ab eo millibus passuum octoginta in Oceanum influit.
Rhenus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incolunt, et 3
longo spatio per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiorum, Sequan-
orum, Mediomatricum, Tribocorum, Treverorum citatus
fertur et, ubi Oceano appropinquavit, in plures defluit 4
partes multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quarum pars
magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur, ex quibus 5
sunt, qui piscibus atque ovis avium vivere existimantur,
multisque capitibus in Oceanum influit.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste non amplius passuum duode- 1
cim millibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati

revertuntur ; qui in itinere congressi magnopere, ne longius
2 progrederetur, orabant. Cum id non impetrassent, pete-
bant, uti ad eos equites, qui agmen antecessissent,
praemitteret eosque pugna prohiberet, sibique ut potesta-
3 tem faceret in Ubios legatos mittendi ; quorum si principes
ac senatus sibi jurejurando fidem fecisset, ea conditione,
quae a Caesare ferretur, se usuros ostendebant : ad has
4 res conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret. Haec omnia
Caesar eodem illo pertinere arbitrabatur, ut tridui mora
interposita equites eorum, qui abessent, reverterentur ;
tamen sese non longius millibus passuum quatuor aquati-
5 onis causa processurum eo die dixit ; huc postero die quam
frequentissimi convenirent, ut de eorum postulatis cognos-
6 ceret. Interim ad praefectos, qui cum omni equitatu
antecesserant, mittit, qui nuntiarent, ne hostes proelio
lacesserent et, si ipsi lacesserentur, sustinerent, quoad ipse
cum exercitu propius accessisset.

1 **12.** At hostes ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt,
quorum erat quinque millium numerus, cum ipsi non
amplius octingentos equites haberent, quod ii, qui frumen-
tandi causa ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil
timentibus nostris, quod legati eorum paulo ante a Caesare
discesserant atque is dies indutiis erat ab his petitus,
2 impetu facto celeriter nostros perturbaverunt ; rursus
resistentibus consuetudine sua ad pedes desiluerunt, sub-
fossis equis compluribusque nostris dejectis reliquos in
fugam conjecerunt atque ita perterritos egerunt, ut non
prius fuga desisterent, quam in conspectum agminis nostri
3 venissent. In eo proelio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur
4 quatuor et septuaginta, in his vir fortissimus, Piso
Aquitanus, amplissimo genere natus, cujus avus in civitate

sua regnum obtinuerat amicus ab senatu nostro appellatus.
Hic cum fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferret, 5
illum ex periculo eripuit, ipse equo vulnerato dejectus,
quoad potuit, fortissime restitit: cum circumventus multis 6
vulneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frater, qui in
proelio excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitato equo
se hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

13. Hoc facto proelio Caesar neque jam sibi legatos 1
audiendos neque conditiones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab
iis, qui per dolum atque insidias petita pace ultro bellum
intulissent: exspectare vero, dum hostium copiae auger- 2
entur equitatusque reverteretur, summae dementiae esse
judicabat, et cognita Gallorum infirmitate, quantum jam 3
apud eos hostes uno proelio auctoritatis essent consecuti,
sentiebat; quibus ad consilia capienda nihil spatii dandum
existimabat. His constitutis rebus et consilio cum legatis 4
et quaestore communicato, ne quem diem pugnae praeter-
mitteret, opportunissima res accidit, quod postridie ejus
diei mane eadem et perfidia et simulatione usi Germani
frequentes omnibus principibus majoribusque natu adhib-
itis ad eum in castra venerunt, simul, ut dicebatur, sui 5
purgandi causa, quod contra atque esset dictum et ipsi
petissent, proelium pridie commisissent, simul ut, si quid
possent, de indutiis fallendo impetrarent. Quos sibi Caesar 6
oblatos gavisus illos retineri jussit, ipse omnes copias
castris eduxit equitatumque, quod recenti proelio perter-
ritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi jussit.

14. Acie triplici instituta et celeriter octo millium 1
itinere confecto prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quam,
quid ageretur, Germani sentire possent. Qui omnibus 2
rebus subito perterriti et celeritate adventus nostri et



IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)

6"



discessu suorum, neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatio dato, perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem ducere, an castra defendere, an fuga salutem petere
3 praestaret. Quorum timor cum fremitu et concursu significaretur, milites nostri pristini diei perfidia incitati
4 in castra irruperunt. Quo loco qui celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris restiterunt atque inter carros
5 impedimentaque proelium commiserunt: at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenumque transierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quos consectandos Caesar equitatum misit.

1 **15.** Germani post tergum clamore audito, cum suos interfici viderent, armis abjectis signisque militaribus
2 relictis se ex castris ejecerunt, et cum ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni pervenissent, reliqua fuga desperata magno numero interfecto reliqui se in flumen praecipitaverunt atque ibi timore, lassitudine, vi fluminis oppressi
3 perierunt. Nostri ad unum omnes incolumes perpaucis vulneratis ex tanti belli timore, cum hostium numerus capitum quadringentorum triginta millium fuisset, se in
4 castra receperunt. Caesar iis, quos in castris retinuerat,
5 discedendi potestatem fecit. Illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum veriti, quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertatem concessit.

1 **16.** Germanico bello confecto multis de causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum; quarum illa fuit justissima, quod, cum videret Germanos tam facile impelli, ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit, cum intelligerent et posse et audere populi Romani exer-
2 citum Rhenum transire. Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum et Tencterorum, quam supra commem-

oravi praedandi frumentandique causa Mosam transisse
neque proelio interfuisse, post fugam suorum se trans
Rhenum in fines Sugambrorum receperat seque cum iis
conjunxerat. Ad quos cum Caesar nuntios misisset, qui 3
postularent, eos, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent,
sibi dederent, responderunt: Populi Romani imperium 4
Rhenum finire: si se invito Germanos in Galliam transire
non aequum existimaret, cur sui quicquam esse imperii aut
potestatis trans Rhenum postularet? Ubii autem, qui uni 5
ex Transrhenanis ad Caesarem legatos miserant, amicitiam
fecerant, obsides dederant, magnopere orabant, ut sibi
auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suebis premerentur; vel, 6
si id facere occupationibus reipublicae prohiberetur, exer-
citum modo Rhenum transportaret: id sibi ad auxilium
spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum. Tantum esse 7
nomen atque opinionem ejus exercitus Ariovisto pulso et
hoc novissimo proelio facto etiam ad ultimas Germanorum
nationes, uti opinione et amicitia populi Romani tuti esse
possint. Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum 8
exercitum pollicebantur.

17. Caesar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum 1
transire decreverat; sed navibus transire neque satis tutum
esse arbitrabatur, neque suae neque populi Romani digni-
tatis esse statuebat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultas faciendi 2
pontis proponebatur propter latitudinem, rapiditatem
altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut
aliter non traducendum exercitum existimabat. Rationem 3
pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bina sesquipedalia paulum
ab imo praeacuta dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis inter-
vallo pedum duorum inter se jungebat. Haec cum 4
machinationibus immissa in flumen defixerat fistucisque

adegerat, non sublicae modo directe ad perpendiculum, sed
prone ac fastigate, ut secundum naturam fluminis procum-
5 berent, his item contraria duo ad eundem modum juncta
intervallo pedum quadragenum ab inferiore parte contra
6 vim atque impetum fluminis conversa statuebat. Haec
utraque insuper bipedalibus trabibus immissis, quantum
eorum tignorum junctura distabat, binis utrimque fibulis
7 ab extrema parte distinebantur; quibus disclusis atque in
contrariam partem revinctis tanta erat operis firmitudo
atque ea rerum natura, ut, quo major vis aquae se incita-
8 visset, hoc artius illigata tenerentur. Haec directa
materia injecta contexebantur ac longuriis cratibusque
9 consternebantur; ac nihilo secius sublicae et ad inferiorem
partem fluminis oblique agebantur, quae pro ariete sub-
jectae et cum omni opere conjunctae vim fluminis
10 exciperent, et aliae item supra pontem mediocri spatio, ut,
si arborum trunci sive naves dejiciendi operis causa essent
a barbaris missae, his defensoribus earum rerum vis
minueretur, neu ponti nocerent.

1 **18.** Diebus decem, quibus materia coepta erat compor-
2 tari, omni opere effecto exercitus traducitur. Caesar ad
utramque partem pontis firmo praesidio relicto in fines
3 Sugambrorum contendit. Interim a compluribus civitati-
bus ad eum legati veniunt; quibus pacem atque amicitiam
petentibus liberaliter respondit obsidesque ad se adduci
4 jubet. At Sugambri ex eo tempore, quo pons institui
coeptus est, fuga comparata hortantibus iis, quos ex
Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus suis
excesserant suaque omnia exportaverant seque in solitud-
inem ac silvas abdiderant.

19. Caesar paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus

omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis frumentisque succisis
se in fines Ubiorum recepit, atque iis auxilium suum
pollicitus, si ab Suebis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit :
Suebos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri comper- 2
issent, more suo concilio habito nuntios in omnes partes
dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent, liberos uxores suaque
omnia in silvis deponerent, atque omnes, qui arma ferre
possent, unum in locum convenirent : hunc esse delectum 3
medium fere regionum earum, quas Suebi obtinerent : hic
Romanorum adventum exspectare atque ibi decertare
constituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus rebus 4
iis confectis, quarum rerum causa traducere exercitum
constituerat, ut Germanis metum injiceret, ut Sugambros
ulcisceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberaret, diebus omnino
decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis satis et ad laudem
et ad utilitatem profectum arbitratus se in Galliam recepit
pontemque rescidit.

20. Exigua parte aestatis reliqua Caesar, etsi in his 1
locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit, maturae
sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit,
quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde sub-
ministrata auxilia intelligebat et, si tempus anni ad bellum 2
gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitra-
batur, si modo insulam adisset et genus hominum
perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset ; quae omnia
fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter 3
mercatores illo adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam
praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiones, quae sunt
contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque vocatis ad se undique 4
mercatoribus neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque
quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum

belli haberent aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui
essent ad majorum navium multitudinem idonei portus,
reperire poterat.

1 **21.** Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret,
idoneum esse arbitratus C. Volusenum cum navi longa
2 praemittit. Huic mandat, ut exploratis omnibus rebus ad
3 se quam primum revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus copiis in
Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britan-
4 niam trajectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus
et quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum effecerat
5 classem jubet convenire. Interim consilio ejus cognito et
per mercatores perlato ad Britannos a compluribus insulae
civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides
6 dare atque imperio populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus
auditis liberaliter pollicitus hortatusque, ut in ea sententia
permanerent, eos domum remittit et cum iis una Commium,
7 quem ipse Atrebatibus superatis regem ibi constituerat,
cujus et virtutem et consilium probabat et quem sibi
fidelem esse arbitrabatur, cujusque auctoritas in his regioni-
8 bus magni habebatur, mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit,
adeat civitates horteturque, ut populi Romani fidem
9 sequantur, seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. Volusenus
perspectis regionibus omnibus, quantum ei facultatis dari
potuit, qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non
auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi
perspexisset renuntiat.

1 **22.** Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa
moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati vene-
runt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent,
quod homines barbari et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti
bellum populo Romano fecissent, seque ea, quae imperas-

set, facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis 2
opportune accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum
hostem relinquere volebat neque belli gerendi propter anni
tempus facultatem habebat neque has tantularum rerum
occupationes Britanniae anteponendas judicabat, magnum
iis numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eos in
fidem recepit. Navibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis 3
contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas
legiones existimabat, quod praeterea navium longarum
habebat, quaestori legatis praefectisque distribuit. Huc 4
accedebant decem et octo onerariae naves, quae ex eo loco
ab millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur, quo minus in
eundem portum venire possent: has equitibus distribuit.
Reliquum exercitum Q. Titurio Sabino et L. Aurunculeio 5
Cottae legatis in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum,
ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, ducendum dedit;
P. Sulpicium Rufum legatum cum eo praesidio, quod satis 6
esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere jussit.

23. His constitutis rebus nactus idoneam ad navigan- 1
dum tempestatem tertia fere vigilia solvit equitesque in
ulteriorem portum progredi et naves conscendere et se
sequi jussit. A quibus cum paulo tardius esset adminis- 2
tratum, ipse hora diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus
Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas
hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cujus loci haec erat 3
natura, atque ita montibus anguste mare continebatur, uti
ex locis superioribus in litus telum adigi posset. Hunc ad 4
egrediendum nequaquam idoneum locum arbitratus, dum
reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam nonam in ancoris
exspectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convo- 5
catis et quae ex Voluseno cognovisset, et quae fieri vellet,

ostendit monuitque, ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimae res postularent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent, ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis
6 administrarentur. His dimissis et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum dato signo et sublatis ancoris circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

1 **24.** At barbari consilio Romanorum cognito praemisso equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsecuti nostros navibus
2 egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves propter magnitudinem nisi in alto constitui non poterant, militibus autem ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi onere armorum oppressis simul et de navibus desiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum
3 hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illi aut ex arido aut paulum in aquam progressi omnibus membris expeditis, notissimis locis audacter tela conjicerent et equos insuefactos incita-
4 rent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti atque hujus omnino generis pugnae imperiti non eadem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consuerant, utebantur.

1 **25.** Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbaris inusitatior et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus et remis incitari et ad latus apertum hostium constitui atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostes propelli ac submov-
2 eri jussit; quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam et navium figura et remorum motu et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti barbari constiterunt ac paulum modo
3 pedem retulerunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis

aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter
eveniret: 'Desilite,' inquit, 'milites, nisi vultis aquilam
hostibus prodere: ego certe meum reipublicae atque
imperatori officium praestitero.' Hoc cum voce magna 4
dixisset, se ex navi projecit atque in hostes aquilam ferre
coepit. Tum nostri cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus 5
admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt. Hos item ex 6
proximis navibus cum conspexissent, subsecuti hostibus
appropinquarunt.

26. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen, 1
quod neque ordines servare neque firmiter insistere neque
signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibus-
cumque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magnopere
perturbabantur; hostes vero, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex 2
litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant,
incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur, plures paucos
circumsistebant, alii ab latere aperto in universos tela 3
conjiciebant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas 4
longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus
compleri jussit et, quos laborantes conspexerat, his sub-
sidia submittebat. Nostri, simul in arido constiterunt, 5
suis omnibus consecutis in hostes impetum fecerunt atque
eos in fugam dederunt, neque longius prosequi potuerunt,
quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non
potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari
defuit.

27. Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga 1
receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt;
obsides daturos quaeque imperasset facturos polliciti sunt.
Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem supra 2
demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemissum.

3 Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos oratoris modo
Caesaris mandata deferret, comprehenderant atque in
4 vincula conjecerant, tum proelio facto remiserunt. In
petenda pace ejus rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt,
et propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur petiverunt.
5 Caesar questus, quod, cum ultro in continentem legatis
missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent,
6 ignoscere imprudentiae dixit obsidesque imperavit; quorum
illi partem statim dederunt, partem ex longinquioribus
locis arcessitam paucis diebus sese daturos dixerunt.
7 Interea suos remigrare in agros jusserunt, principesque
undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt.

28. His rebus pace confirmata post diem quartum,
quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves decem et octo, de
quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant,
2 ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae cum appropinquarent Britanniae et ex castris viderentur, tanta
tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum cursum tenere
posset, sed aliae eodem, unde erant profectae, referrentur,
aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis
3 occasum, magno sui cum periculo dejicerentur; quae
tamen ancoris jactis cum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum profectae continentem
petierunt.

29. Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui dies
maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit,
2 nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas
naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat
quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus complebat, et onerarias, quae ad ancoras erant deligatae, tempestas

afflictabat neque ulla nostris facultas aut administrandi
aut auxiliandi dabatur. Compluribus navibus fractis 3
reliquae cum essent funibus, ancoris reliquisque arma-
mentis amissis ad navigandum inutiles, magna, id quod
necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta est.
Neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent, et 4
omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas naves erant usui, et,
quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere,
frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

30. Quibus rebus cognitis principes Britanniae, qui 1
post proelium ad Caesarem convenerant, inter se collocuti,
cum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intel-
ligerent et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate
cognoscerent, quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine
impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, optimum 2
factu esse duxerunt rebellione facta frumento commeatu-
que nostros prohibere et rem in hiemem producere, quod
his superatis aut reditu interclusis neminem postea belli
inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant.
Itaque rursus conjuratione facta paulatim ex castris 3
discedere et suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

31. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, 1
tamen et ex eventu navium suarum et ex eo, quod obsides
dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur.
Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat. Nam et 2
frumentum ex agris quotidie in castra conferebat et quae
gravissime afflictae erant naves, earum materia atque aere
ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur et quae ad eas res erant
usui ex continenti comportari jubebat. Itaque, cum 3
summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim
navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset,
effecit.

1 **32.** Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una
frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ulla
ad id tempus belli suspicione interposita, cum pars homi-
num in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, ii,
qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari nuntia-
verunt pulverem majorem, quam consuetudo ferret, in ea
2 parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id,
quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum
consilii, cohortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum in eam
partem proficisci, ex reliquis duas in stationem cohortes
succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi jussit.
3 Cum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus
premi atque aegre sustinere et conferta legione ex omnibus
4 partibus tela conjici animadvertit. Nam quod omni ex
reliquis partibus demesso frumento pars una erat reliqua,
suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos noctu in silvis
5 delituerant; tum dispersos depositis armis in metendo
occupatos subito adorti paucis interfectis reliquos incertis
ordinibus perturbaverant, simul equitatu atque essedis
circumdederant.

1 **33.** Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primo per omnes
partes perequitant et tela conjiciunt atque ipso terrore
equorum et strepitu rotarum ordines plerumque perturbant,
et cum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverunt, ex essedis
2 desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim
ex proelio excedunt atque ita currus collocant, ut, si illi a
multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos recep-
3 tum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem
peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum usu quotidiano et
exercitatione efficiunt, uti in declivi ac praecipiti loco
incitatos equos sustinere et brevi moderari ac flectere et

per temonem percurrere et in jugo insistere et se inde in currus citissime recipere consuerint.

34. Quibus rebus perturbatis nostris novitate pugnae 1
tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit: namque ejus adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Quo facto ad lacessendum hostem et ad com- 2
mittendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus suo se loco continuit et brevi tempore intermisso in castra legiones reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus 3
occupatis, qui erant in agris reliqui discesserunt. Secutae 4
sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continerent et hostem a pugna prohiberent. Interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes dimiserunt 5
paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis praedicaverunt, et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expulissent, demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna multitudine 6
peditatus equitatusque coacta ad castra venerunt.

35. Caesar etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, 1
fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equites circiter triginta quos Commius Atrebas, de quo ante dictum est, secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso proelio diutius nostrorum militum impetum 2
hostes ferre non potuerunt ac terga verterunt. Quos tanto 3
spatio secuti, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt, deinde omnibus longe lateque aedificiis incensis se in castra receperunt.

36. Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de 1
pace venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante 2
imperaverat, duplicavit eosque in continentem adduci jussit, quod propinqua die aequinoctii infirmis navibus

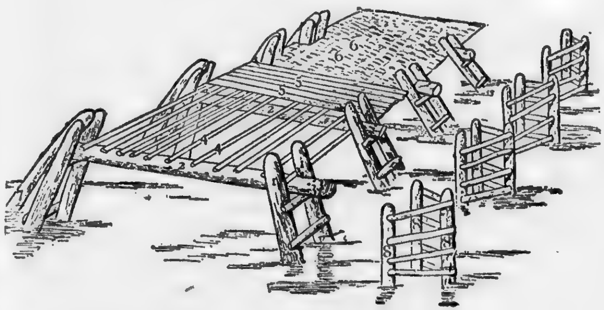
3 hiemi navigationem subjiciendam non existimabat. Ipse
idoneam tempestatem nanctus paulo post mediam noctem
4 naves solvit; quae omnes incolumes ad continentem
pervenerunt; sed ex iis onerariae duae eosdem quos reliqui
portus capere non potuerunt et paulo infra delatae sunt.

1 **37.** Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites
circiter trecenti atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos
Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pacatos reliquerat,
spe praedae adducti primo non ita magno suorum numero
circumsteterunt ac, si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere
2 jusserunt. Cum illi orbe facto sese defenderent, celeriter
ad clamorem hominum circiter millia sex convenerunt.
Qua re nuntiata Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis
3 auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium
sustinuerunt atque amplius horis quatuor fortissime
pugnaverunt et paucis vulneribus acceptis complures ex
4 his occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster in
conspectum venit, hostes abjectis armis terga verterunt
magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

1 **38.** Caesar postero die T. Labienum legatum cum iis
legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui
2 rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui cum propter siccitates
paludum, quo se reciperent, non haberent, quo superiore
anno perfugio fuerant usi, omnes fere in potestatem
3 Labieni pervenerunt. At Q. Titurius et L. Cotta legati,
qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum
agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod
Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad
4 Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum
hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia
5 obsides miserunt, reliquae neglexerunt. His rebus gestis
ex literis Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a senatu
decreta est.

THE BRIDGE BUILT BY CÆSAR OVER THE RHINE.

(TO ILLUSTRATE BOOK IV. C. 17.)



1. **tigna sesquipedalia.**
2. **trabes bipedales.**
3. **fibulae.**
4. **directa materia.**
5. **longurii.**
6. **crates.**
7. **sublicae.**
8. **defensores.**

For
Introd

Chap.
th

1–4.
whose
Tencte
Menap

1. **q**
fuit, e
'Pomp
50. HF
and Cr
Gern
which
adverb,
'that pa
2. **qu**
exagitat
agricul
4. **Hi,**
which..
...a tho
5. **ma**
App.18.

NOTES ON BOOK IV.

For the events described in the preceding books see the Introduction, § III., p. x.

Chap. 1–19.—The repulse of German tribes who were threatening Gaul.

1–4. *Driven from their lands in Germany by the Suebi, whose power and customs are described, the Usipetes and Tencteri cross the Rhine and seize the possessions of the Menapii.*

CAP. I.

1. **quae secuta est,**—may be rendered by one word. **qui fuit,** etc.,—'which was the year when...were consuls,' lit. 'Pompey and Crassus being consuls.' App.5.*a*.N. (RC.II. 50. HF.102.3.N.) For the relations between Caesar, Pompey and Crassus, see Introduction, p. v.

Germani,—not a single tribe, but the larger division to which Usipetes, Tencteri and Suebi all belonged. **quo,**—adverb, 'into which,' lit. 'whither.' **mari,**—really means 'that part of the sea.'

2. **quod,**—'that,' lit. 'because.' **annos,**—App.4.*c*.; with *exagitati*. (RC.83.*c*. HF.82.4.) **bello,**—with *premebantur*. **agricultura,**—RC.85.*h*. HF.158.2.

4. **Hi,**—the *Suebi*. **ex quibus singula millia,**—lit. 'from which...one thousand each'; freely, 'from each of which ...a thousand.' **armatorum,**—App.2.*d*.

5. **manserunt,**—'remain,' lit.? **illos, illi,**—'the others.' App.18. **Hi,**—the same persons as *illos*. **in vicem,**—'in

their turn.' **anno post,**—'the next year,' 'the year after,' lit.? (RC.85.*g*. HF.58.6.)

6. **belli,**—with both *ratio* (science, systematic conduct) and *usus* (practice.)

7. **agri ... nihil est,**—'there is no ... land.' App.2.*d*. (RC.81.*b*.i. HF.69.10.) **longius anno,**—'longer than a year.' (RC.85.*f*. HF.55.5.) **licet,**—'they are allowed,' lit.?

8. **frumento,**—trans. by 'on,' lit. 'by means of.' **maximam partem,**—'for the most part (principally).' (RC.83.*e*. HF.98.3.) **sunt in,**—'are engaged in *or* are occupied with.' **venationibus,**—'hunting,' lit. 'hunts.'

9. **quae res,**—'this fact,' *i.e.* the frequent hunting; it should be placed much nearer its verb in Eng. than it is in Latin. **genere,**—'from (*or* because of) the character.' (RC.85.*m*. HF.71.3.)

cum...faciant,—explaining *libertate vitae*; trans. by a parenthetic clause with 'for'; lit. 'since.' **a pueris,**—'from childhood,' lit.? **nullo...assuefacti,**—'as they are not accustomed to any obedience or discipline'; for the abl. see RC.85.*a*.i.*f*. HF.71.3. **faciant,**—RC.99.*g*.ii. HF.203.1.

alit,—'increases.' **immani,** etc.,—understand *eos, homines* being a factitive or predicate accus. (RC.II.70. HF.90.2.); 'makes them men of huge stature,' lit. 'of huge size of bodies.' **magnitudine,**—RC.85.*c*. HF.131.9.

10. **Atque,**—'moreover,' adding something of special significance. **in eam,** etc.,—lit. 'have brought themselves to that (=such a) custom,' freely, 'have so accustomed themselves.' **locis frigidissimis,**—App.5.*a*.N.: 'although the climate is very cold.' (RC.85.*o*. HF.102.3.N.)

neque vestitus quicquam,—'no clothing,' lit.? (RC.81.*b*.1. HF.69.10.) **haberent,**—(RC.99.*b*. HF.187.2.) Here to be translated exceptionally by the *present* tense, so *lavarentur*. **quarum,**—trans. with and after *exiguitatem*. **aperta,**—'exposed, bare.'

N.B.—Choice of opening words of each section. [Generally in Caesar, the first words of a sentence form a connecting link, by beginning the new sentence with something known to us from the preceding one. The last words of Book III. are "Caesar...placed his army in winter quarters."] Method of dating years among the Romans. *Magna cum multitudine, uno in loco*, §§1.7.; note emphatic order. Emphatic position of *omnium*, § 3. Partitive genitive with neuters such as *nihil*, § 7., *millia*, § 4., and *quicquam*, § 10. Agreement of relative with predicate rather than antecedent, [*qui fuit annus*, § 1. RC.93.ii. BA.83. H.445.4. AG.199.] Various uses of *longe*, [§§ 1.3.7. Elsewhere in Caesar only twice of time, as in § 7., (Bk.VII.c.9. and 71.), *diu* being the regular word.] Adverbial accusative, [*maximam partem*, § 8. Not a common prose construction; *ex...parte* being more frequent.] Use of tenses. [Especially *premebantur* and *prohibebantur*, § 2., (either describing an existing state of affairs, or possibly under the influence of *complures annos*='had been, etc.'); *manserunt* in a frequentative clause (prior to *alunt*), and *haberent, lavarentur* after *adduxerunt*='have brought.' In the last case, as in similar passages, the original intention is in the writer's mind. BA.105.fn.1. H.495.1. AG.287.*a*.] Difference between *privati* and *separati*, § 7., [belonging to an individual; marked off by itself], and between *rursus* and *in vicem*, § 5. [the repetition of the act; the change of persons.] Use of connectives *atque, et...et, neque, neque...nec, neque...et.* Latin passive=Eng. intransitive, where Latin active=Eng. transitive, [*lavarentur*, § 10. The so-called middle or reflexive use of the passive. RC.96.*c*. BA.20. H.465. AG.111.N.1.] Force of *hic, ille*, and *is*. [RC.92.] Concessive ablative absolute, and abl. absol. with adjective as quasi-predicate, § 10.

CAP. II.

1. **Mercatoribus est aditus,**—'Traders are admitted,' lit.? **eo,**—adv., 'for this purpose,' explained by *ut...habeant;* better omitted in trans. **quibus vendant,**—'(persons) to whom to sell,' freely, 'purchasers for.' The object of the verb is *quae bello ceperint*. (RC.99.*a*.1. HF.184.1.) **ceperint,** —RC.99.*k*.

quam quo,—'than because.' **ad,**—'among.' **desiderent,** —RC.99.*g*.iv. HF.199.6.

2. **Quin etiam,**—'nay even,' 'moreover.' **jumentis,**— 'horses,' of all kinds, generally beasts of burden. *Jumentis*

depends on *utuntur* and *importatis* agrees with it: to keep the Latin order, trans. freely, 'as for the horses...use imported ones.'

quibus, etc.,—'in which...take particular pleasure,' 'for which...have a special fancy,' lit. 'with which.' **quaeque,** —two words: trans. 'and for which they pay a high price,' lit.? **pretio,**—RC.85.*i*. HF.150.1.

quae...haec,—'those which.' App.11.*d*.iii. **quae... nata,**—may be freely rendered 'the native ones.' **parva,** etc.,—'which are small, etc.'

summi...efficiunt,—trans. 'they make capable of the utmost toil,' lit. 'render so that they are of the utmost endurance.' **laboris,**—not 'toil' as in § 6., but 'capability of toil.' (RC.81.*e*. HF.130.7.)

3. **eodem vestigio,**—'on the same spot.' (RC.85.*k*. HF. 85.3.) **quos,**—'and...them.' App.11.*b*. **cum usus est,**— 'when there is need.'

4. **moribus,**—abl.; trans. by 'according to.' (RC.85.*d*.) **turpius,**—pred. nom. (RC.79.*b*.v.) **habetur,**—'is regarded.' **ephippiis,**—the saddle proper was a much later invention.

5. **quemvis,**—from *quivis*, with *numerum*. **adire ad,**— 'advance against.' **quamvis pauci,**—'however small their numbers,' 'no matter how few.' Notice the case of *pauci*.

6. **quod,**—conj. **ea re,**—'by it, by that means,' lit.? **effeminari,**—'become enervated *or* effeminate.' **homines,** —accus.

N.B.—Mood of *ceperint*, §1. [The subjunctive is used because *quas bello ceperint* is an essential part of the thought or purpose of others than the narrator. This usage is frequent in indirect narration (actual or virtual) and in final clauses. RC.99.*e*.1.,*k*. AG.342. and fn.]

Mood of *desiderent*. [In clauses rejecting an imaginary suggestion the subjunctive is used. The form is generally *non quo* (*quod*, *quin*, *quia*)...*sed quod* (*quia*). The subjunctive is due to the suggestion's being imaginary (sc. 'as one might suppose') not to its being rejected. RC.99.*g*.iv. BA.485. H.516.II.2. AG.341.*d*.R.]

Germani inserted in §2. [to make more pointed the contrast with

Galli.] **Genitive of characteristic, §2.** [*Cf.* ablative of characteristic, c.1. §9.] *Cum* with indicative=whenever, §3. [RC. 99*f*.v. BA.434. The tense is peculiar.] Difference between *quisquam*, *quivis* and *ullus*, all=any. [*Quisquam* and *ullus*='any, even one,' excluding all: *quivis*='any, no matter who or what,' including all: *quisquam* 'anyone, anything' (substantively), and *ullus* 'any' (adjectively), in negative sentences or, as in §1., sentences with force of negative: *quivis*, 'any (at all)' in affirmative sentences regularly. RC.95.vii.viii. BA.358.359.] Various uses of, and ways of translating, the ablative.

CAP. III.

1. **Publice,**—not 'publicly,' but 'as a state,' 'on the part of the state,' in contrast with what is a merit in individuals. **quam latissime,**—'as far as possible.' (RC. 88.*b*. HF.143.N.) **vacare agros,**—App.85.*a*.

hac re significari,—'that this indicates,' lit.? The clause *magnum numerum...posse* forms the subject of *significari*.

2. **ex,**—'on.' **a Suebis,**—with *millia passuum sescenta*, not with *una ex parte*. **millia,**—RC.83.*c*. HF.69.9. **agri,**—nominative, not genitive.

3. **Ad alteram,** etc.,—'on the other side the Ubii adjoin them,' lit. 'come up to them.' There would doubtless be some unoccupied country between them.

fuit,—'has been,' not 'was'; see §4. **ut est captus G.,**—freely, 'according to German notions (*or* standards),' lit. 'as the capacity of the G. is,' *i.e.* 'as far as German ideas go.'

et sunt,—contrasted with *fuit*, 'and who even now are.' **ceteris,**—'than the rest.' (RC.85.*f*. HF.55.5.)

multum ventitant,—'often resort,' or with *ad* 'often visit.' Both *ventitant* and *sunt* depend on *quod*. **moribus,**—for the case cf. on c.1. §9. **sunt assuefacti,**—'have been brought up according to,' etc.

4. **Hos,**—with *expellere*. **cum,**—'although.' **experti,**—App.37.*a*.N.B. **finibus,**—RC.85.*h*. HF.158.2. **potuissent,**—RC.99.*i*.iii. HF.204.5.

vectigales,—accus., with *eos* understood. **humiliores infirmioresque,**—'less important and powerful,' lit.? (RC. 79.*b*.v.)

N.B.—Various uses of infin. found in §§1. and 2. Construction of *mille*, and *millia*, and phrase *millia passuum*. Three common uses of *ut* [c.1. §10. c.2. §1. c.3. §3.] *Quam* with superlative, §1. Position of *hos*, §4. [Repeatedly in Latin an important word (such as a connecting link with the previous sentence, or the subject of the clause, or a word to be emphasized by contrast), is placed before the conjunction introducing the clause to which this word belongs. In Eng. of course it must be placed later in the sentence.] *Cum* concessive, §4. Factitive object [or accusative in predicate after verb of making, rendering, §4., twice; cf.c.1. §9.] Difference between *ad eos*, §3., and *sibi*, §4. [RC.91.ii.*b*.] Various uses of the ablative case.

CAP. IV.

1. **causa,**—'condition.' **supra,**—c.1. §§1.2. **annos,**—App.4.*c*. (RC.83.*c*. HF.69.9.); so *triennium*, §2.

2. **ad extremum,**—'at last,' with *pervenerunt* only, not with *expulsi* or *vagati*.

agris,—cf. on *finibus*, c.3. §4. **multis locis,**—'through many parts,' lit. 'in many districts.' (RC.85.*k*.)

quas,—'these'; meaning the districts near the Rhine. **incolebant,**—App.26.*a*.; so *habebant*. **ad,**—'on.'

3. **adventu,**—'by,' not 'on.' **iis,**—'the'; App.12.*a*. **trans, cis,**—from Caesar's point of view. **dispositis praesidiis,**—App.5.*a*. Trans. 'by placing,' etc.

transire,—'from crossing.' **prohibebant,**—App.26.*d*.

4. **Illi,**—App.18.*b*. **omnia experti cum,**—'tried every plan (device), but when *or* as,' etc. App.37.*a*.N.B. **possent,**—RC.99.*g*.ii. HF.203.1. **vi contendere,**—'use force,' or 'force a passage,' lit. 'make their way by force.'

reverti se,—'to return,' lit.? App.34. **suas,**—'their own,' *i.e.* their original (or rightful) country.

tridui viam,—'a three days' journey,' lit.? For the gen. see RC.81.*e*. HF.130.7.; for the acc. RC.83.*c*. HF.69.9.

5. **itinere...confecto,**—'having covered...distance,' lit. 'having completed...march.' **equitatu,**—trans. by 'with,' lit. 'by means of.'

6. **qui...facti,**—'for when these learned...they'; more lit. 'who, on learning.'

7. **priusquam...certior fieret,**—'before...could be informed,' depending on *transierunt*. (RC.99.*f*.iv. HF.201.5.) **partem,**—RC.83.*c*. HF.69.9. **copiis aluerunt,**—'maintained...on...stores,' lit. 'by means of.'

N.B.—The natural means of narration, perf. part. (in nom. or abl. absol.), and perf. indic. Use of imperf. and pluperf., §§ 2. and 3. *Diximus*, § 1., the author's *we*. [See N.B. to c.27.] Absence of connective before *qui* in § 1. [This is because the two relative clauses are not of the same nature. The second, *qui...sustinuerunt*, refers to the whole phrase, *U. et T. quos supra diximus*. Similarly in Eng.] Accus. of duration of time, §§ 1.2.7. The use, as in Eng., of a connective between the last two only of three words. [§ 2. This is not incorrect, as is often stated: cf.III.1.1.; 11.4.IV.17. 2.; 19.2. The connective in Caesar in such cases is *que*.] Construction of verbs with *prohibeo*, § 3. [only the infin. in Caesar], and *simulo*, § 4. [regarded as one of the verbs *declarandi et sentiendi*.] The simple ablative, as in § 5, without *ab* or *cum*, of the troops by whom or with whom a march is made. *Reverto*, active, and *revertor*, deponent, § 4. [The former in Caesar only in the perfect tenses, the latter, with but one exception (*reversus*, VI.42.1.) only in the present tenses. Caesar by no means confines his use of the word to cases where one turns back before his journey is finished; cf. *e.g.* c.21. § 2.] *Suus* and *eorum* = their. The phrase *certior factus est*. Use of *ille* to mark a change of subject, § 4. [RC.92.*c*.] *Priusquam* with subjunctive [to mark an end kept in view, § 7. RC.99.*f*.iv. HF.201.5. BA.442. H.520. AG.327.]

5, 6. ***Caesar, distrusting the Gauls and unwilling that they should ally themselves with the Germans, decides to make war on the newcomers.***

CAP. V.

1. **His de rebus,**—'of this.' **capiendis,**—'forming *or* deciding upon.' **novis rebus,**—'political changes,' 'changes

in the government,' lit.? For the dative see RC.82.*e*. HF. 105.9.

nihil,—'not at all.' (RC.88.*e*.) **committendum,**—understand *esse;* the impersonal passive, App.24. (RC.96.*b*. HF. 164.2.) *His* is dat. Trans. 'that no confidence should be put in them,' lit.?

What Caesar feared was that the Gauls, soon wearying of Roman rule, would combine with these powerful newcomers, and revolt.

2. **Est enim,** etc.,—lit. 'for this is of (*i.e.* belongs to) G. custom'; trans. 'for it is a G. custom.' **hoc,**—explained by *uti* with its verbs *cogant, quaerant, circumsistat* and *cogant*. **cogant, quaerant,**—trans. by 'to' and infin.' (RC.99.*b*. HF.187.2.)

et...et,—in trans. omit 'both.' **audierit,**=*audiverit* (RC.66.) For the mood see RC.99.*d*. HF.176.2.; so *cognoverit, veniant* and *cognoverint*.

et...vulgus circumsistat...cogant,—'and for a crowd to surround ... and compel.' The second verb is plur. through a sense construction; *vulgus* being equal to a plural. (RC.79.*a*.i.) **quibusque,**—two words; so *quasque*.

3. **rebus,**—'statements,' or perhaps 'facts'; strictly the 'things' learned by their questioning. **summis,**—'most important.' **saepe,**—with *summis* not with *ineunt*.

quorum eos, etc.,—'which they have to repent of at once,' lit. 'on the spot.' **paenitere,**—with object, not subject, *eos*. (RC.II.68. HF.165.1.) **necesse est,**—lit. 'it is necessary,' with infin. (RC.101.*c*.)

cum,—'since.' **serviant,**—'they followed blindly (*or* are slaves to).' (RC.99.*g*.ii. HF.203.1.) So *respondeant*. **plerique,**—*i.e.* of the traders and travellers. **ad voluntatem eorum,**—*i.e.* of the Gauls, 'to suit (lit. with a view to) their pleasure,' *i.e.* 'to please them.' **ficta respondeant,**—'invent answers,' more lit. 'give answers invented.'

N.B.—Position and force of *his*, § 1., *hoc*, § 2., and *his*, § 3. The predicative genitive of possession. [*consuetudinis*, § 2. RC.81.*a*.1. HF.124.1. H.401–403. AG.214.*d*.] Use of the gerundive, § 1. Explanatory or subject clauses with abstract phrases. [Such phrases as *est consuetudinis*, or *necesse est*, may take either *ut* and subj., or (more frequently) the accus. and inf. as virtual subjects.] Dependent interrogative clauses, § 2. [RC.99.*d*. HF.176.2. BA.165.] Force of *quisque*, § 2.; [cf. *uterque*, c.4. § 2.; for the distinction see RC.95.ix.x.] Plural *cogant* after singular *circumsistat*, § 2. [*Vulgus*, a collective noun, contains a plural idea. Perhaps the thought changes from the crowd as a whole to the individual questioners. RC.II.11. BA.30. H.461.1. AG.205.*c*.] The syntax of *paenitet*, § 3. [Always impersonal. RC.II.68. HF.165.I. BA.309. H.409.III. AG.221.*b*.] The difference between literal translations (giving the right idea, but in a crude form) and free translations (giving the idea in idiomatic English) is well exemplified in this chapter.

CAP. VI.

1. **graviori,**—'too serious,' lit. 'more serious (*i.e.* than he could manage).' App.10. He was afraid of the Gauls and Germans combining. **consuerat,** = *consueverat.* (RC.66.) *Consuevi* = 'I have become accustomed,' hence, 'I am accustomed.' **exercitum,**—the army had been stationed during the winter among the Aulerci and Lexovii and other states in the north-west of Gaul. Bk.III.c.29.

2. **Eo,**—adv.; 'to it,' (*i.e.* to the army.) **ea quae,**—'what'; each word is subj. of an infin. **fore,**—'would be the case.' **facta,**—understand *esse*; 'had happened.'

3. **missas, invitatos,**—understand *esse*; depending on *cognovit*, and explaining *ea...facta*. **uti...discederent,**—trans. by 'to' with infin. (RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.) To leave the Rhine means here to come farther into Gaul.

omnia,—App.8. **postulassent,** = *postulavissent* (RC.66.); 'they asked,' lit. 'they should have asked' not 'they had already asked.' For the mood see RC.99.*e*. HF.206.4.; for the tense (in the original words fut. perf.) RC.107.*b*. HF. 207.7. **fore parata,**—a sort of future perf. infin. pass.

depending on an idea of promising easily supplied from *invitatos*; 'that everything...would be made ready.'

4. **vagabantur, pervenerant,**— *i.e.* by the time Caesar appeared on the scene. Observe the difference in tense.

5. **ea quae,**—cf. §2. **dissimulanda sibi,**—understand *esse*; App.41.

animis, etc.,—'having calmed and re-assured their hearts.' **imperato,**— this verb with the accus. means 'demand.' **constituit,**—the context requires the meaning 'announced his resolve.'

N.B.—The co-ordinating relative, §§1.4. [RC.93.iii. BA.78.] Idiomatic use of comparative with standard of comparison omitted. [*Graviori*, §1. RC.88.*b*. BA.57.*b*.] Order of *eo cum venisset*, §2. [See N.B. to c.3. §4. *hos*.] Accusative and infinitive construction, and omission of *esse* with the infin. Pluperfect subj. in indirect narration for the future perfect of the direct. [*postulassent*, §3.] Perfect tense of *existimavit*, §5. [So c.5. §1. Generally 'he thought' would be expressed by the imperf., but the perfect is used when speaking of a decision to which one has come. See App.26.*a*.i.] The contracted or syncopated forms of verbs. [§§1. and 3. and c.5. §2.] The form and force of *fore*.

7–9. *The Germans make offers of friendship to Caesar, but he insists on their returning to Germany, and though they are to answer him in three days, still advances towards them.*

CAP. VII.

1. **delectis,**—'levied'; the cavalry are those of c.6. § 5. **in ea loca...quibus in locis,**—'towards the district where,' 'in the direction in which,' lit.? **quibus in locis,**—App.11. *d*.ii. **audiebat,**—App.26.*a*.

2. **quibus,**—refers to *locis*, not to *Germanos*, for *ab his* follows referring to the latter. **paucorum dierum iter,**—'(now but) a few days' journey.' For the gen. see RC.81.*e*. HF.130.7.; for the acc. RC.83.*c*. HF.69.9.

quorum haec, etc.,—'who spoke as follows,' lit.? **haec,** —feminine sing. (RC.92.*a*.i.)

3. For all the subjunctives in §§3.4. and 5. except those specially mentioned, see RC.II.214.*a*.2. HF.206.4. For the primary tenses (to be translated as though secondary) see RC.107.*a*.ii.

neque priores, etc.,—'were not the aggressors in making war on, etc.,' lit. 'were not making war the former (of the two parties).' **neque...neque,**—here, as often, trans. 'not ...and not.' **recusare quin ... contendant,**—lit. 'offer objections by which (*i.e.* so that) they do not, etc.'; trans. 'object (*or* refuse) to, etc.' **si lacessantur,**—'if they were attacked.'

quicumque,—freely, 'if any.' **neque deprecari,**—'and not ask mercy, (lit. beg off.)'

4. **Haec,**—'this much'; explained by what follows. With *dicere*, as well as with *venisse* and *posse*, understand *se*. **suam,**—*i.e.* the Germans'.

attribuant, patiantur,—trans. by 'let them (*i.e.* the Romans), etc.' The imperative would have been used by the speakers themselves. (RC.106.*a*. HF.207.5.) **eos,**—*i.e.* *agros*. **possederint,**—'they had gained'; from *possido*. **armis,**—'in war,' lit.?

5. **dii,**—or *di*, the nom. plur. of *deus*. (RC.9. HF.13.2.) **reliquum,**—'besides, *or* else,' lit. 'remaining.' **quidem,**—adding emphasis to the statement; here, as often, untranslateable by any word. **in terris,**—'in the world,' or 'on earth.' **possint,**—for the mood see RC.99.*c*. HF.188.5.

N.B.—Abl. absol. clauses coupled by *-que*, §1. [One abl. absol. may be joined to another by *-que*, but must not be so joined to any other form of construction.] *Locis* repeated in §1. [A sacrifice of elegance to clearness.] Tense of *audiebat*, §1. [The imperf. implies that he continued to hear this during his march.] *Hic* referring to what follows, §§2.4. Oratio obliqua, §§3.4.5. [For the general rules see RC.106. HF.209. BA.LXV.] Primary tenses of subjunctive in oratio obliqua after a past tense. [By thus giving the exact

tenses used in the original form, the writer can secure greater vividness, as he gives the point of view of the speaker rather than of the reporter. RC.107.*a*.ii. BA.525. H.525.1.] Use of *quin* and subj. [This is the only occurrence of *quin* in Bk.IV. RC.II.156. BA.132. H.504. AG.319.*d*. After *recuso*, *quominus* is more frequent than *quin*, though in Caesar each is found but once.] Infin. with *consuetudo sit*, §3. [cf. N.B. to c.5. §2.] Omission of *se*, §4. [This is not uncommon in indirect narrative in Caesar, where the context allows of no ambiguity.] Representation of imperative in indirect narration, §4. [RC.106.*a*. HF.207.5. BA.522.] Emphatic position of *neminem*, §5., and of *haec*, §4. The position of *non*, §5. [It belongs to *possint*, but is placed before *superare*, because after *nemo est*, *nihil est*, or *quid est*, *non* is regularly placed immediately after the relative, *quem non* being the accusative of *quin*. RC. II.36. HF.188.6. BA.80. H.504.1.]

CAP. VIII.

1. **quae visum est,**—'what seemed proper'; *quae* depends on *respondere* understood with *visum est*.

Sibi nullam, etc.,—for the verbs in the rest of the chapter cf. on c.7. §3. **sibi...cum his,**—lit. 'to him with them'; trans. 'between him and them.' (RC.82.*g*. HF.120.3.)

2. **neque,**—'and further ... not.' **qui,**—App.11.*d*.i.; understanding *eos* as subject of *occupare*. **suos,**—'their own.' App.15.*b*. **occupare,**—'for (those)...to seize.' App. 35.*a*. **alienos,**—'those of others'; understand *agros*.

neque ullos,—'and...no,' lit.? **injuria,**—do not trans. by 'injury.'

3. **licere,**—freely, 'they might,' lit.? **apud,**—'with.' **se,**—*i.e.* Caesar. **hoc...imperaturum,**—lit. 'that he would give this order to the U.,' freely, 'that he would order the U. to do this,' viz. to allow them to settle among them.

N.B.—Relative with antecedent omitted, §§1. and 2. [cf.c.2. §1.] Impersonal verbs and phrases. [*visum est*, §1.; *verum esse*, §2.; *licere*, §2., cf.c.1. §7.] Shifting of tenses in oratio obliqua; [*remanerent*, §1., contrasted with the other subjunctives. This change from past tenses to present is very frequent in Caesar in continuous indirect narration.] Force of *sed*, §1. [It implies that the first

part is omitted as unimportant, perhaps because it would have been a repetition of arguments used and reported on previous occasions, esp. in Bk.I.] Dative of possessor, [*sibi*, § 1.] Use of *alienus*. [The genitive of *alius* is avoided in classical Latin; for the possessive relation *alienus* is used, for the other relations of the genitive, *alterius*.] Position of *praesertim*, § 2. *Neque ullos*, § 2., rather than *et nullos*. [As a connective, Latin prefers *neque* with positive adjective or pronoun, to *et* followed by a negative.] *Impero* with cognate accus. and dat., § 3. [In c.6. § 5. there is another use of *impero* and the accus., in which sense also the dat may be combined w. the accus., as in c.22. § 2.]

CAP. IX.

1. **suos,**—App.15.*c*. **post diem tertium,**—'two days later,' lit.? The Romans in reckoning from one day to another counted in the days at both extremes, where we include but one.

ne...moveret,—lit. 'that he should not, etc.,' trans. '(begged) him not to, etc.' (RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.) **se,**—the Germans.

2. **id,**—viz. the proposed delay. **ne...quidem,**—often means 'not...either'; it refers back to c.7. § 4. **impetrari,**—trans. by the active voice. Is *ab se* 'by them' or 'from him'? App.14.*b*.

3. **aliquot diebus ante,**—'a few days before,' lit.? (RC. 85.*g*. HF.58.6.) **trans Mosam,**—this would be towards the west, the others remaining between the Meuse and the Rhine.

exspectari, interponi,—trans. by active voice. **ejus rei causa,**—'for that reason,' *i.e.* in order to have their help against Caesar; lit.?

N.B.—Phrases of time with *ante* and *post*, §§ 1.3. [Either the ablative is used, *ante* and *post* being adverbs, or the accusative, governed by these words as prepositions. HF.82.3. BA.322. H.430. AG.259.*d*.] *Propius* with accus., § 1. [The adverbial forms of this word are frequently used with the acc. like prepositions; so sometimes the corresponding adjectives.] Substantive clause of purpose after verbs of asking, § 1. [RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3. BA.118.]

10. *Description of the country near the mouths of the Meuse and the Rhine.*

CAP. X.

1. **monte,**—*mons* is a range of mountains as well as a mountain or hill; trans. by plural. **qui,** etc.,—as the Vosges mountains are not all in the country of the Lingones, *qui* may here restrict, instead of defining, and we may trans. '(that part)...which is, etc.'

parte,—'branch.' **quadam,**—from *quidam.* **insulam efficit,**—what were the boundaries?

2. **neque longius,** etc.,—'and at a distance of not more than, etc.' **millibus,**—RC.85.*f.* HF.55.5. **eo,**—'it,' *i.e.* the Vacalus (where it enters the Meuse).

3. **autem,**—'on the other hand,' or 'as for the R. it, etc.' **ex,**—'in the country of,' lit.? **longo spatio,**—'in (lit. by) a long course.' **citatus fertur,**—'flows rapidly,' lit.?

4. **plures,**—'several,' lit. 'more (than one).' **partes,**—as in § 1. **ingentibusque,**—omit 'and' in trans.

5. **ex quibus sunt qui,**—'among whom are those who.' **piscibus,**—for abl. cf.c.1. § 8. **capitibus,**—'mouths,' lit.? *Caput* is generally the source.

N.B.—The predicate nominative with passive verbs like *appellor*, § 1. [RC.79.c.i. H.362.2.2. AG.176.] Adjective used in Latin where English has an adverb, [*citatus*, § 3. RC.88.*d.* H.443. AG.191.] Enumeration without any connective, § 3. [Eng. usually has 'and' between the two last of the series; Latin, as in § 3., generally omits even this, or else gives the effect of checking off items by inserting *et* between each two. See also N.B. to c.4. § 2., where there is no enumeration.] Use of *que* after *multi*, § 4. [Another adjective, unless it be so closely connected with the noun as to form with it one idea, is regularly connected with *multi* by *que*.] The indicative after *ex quibus sunt qui*, § 5. [This is because the phrase is not the idiomatic *sunt qui*=some, which regularly has the subjunctive. (RC.II.34. HF.188.5.*a.* BA.504. H.503.I. AG.320.*a.*) Caesar is not saying 'some of whom are believed to live on fish.'] *Appropinquo* with the dat., § 4. [This is the only construction in Caesar, except with *ad* in Bk.II.c.19, where the reading is doubtful. The idea of 'nearness to' not 'motion towards' prevails, following the derivation.]

11, 12. *The German envoys return, and ask for further delay. Caesar appoints the next day for a conference, but meanwhile a cavalry skirmish, provoked by the Germans, results in a shameful defeat of Caesar's cavalry.*

CAP. XI.

1. **amplius,**—'more than.' **millibus,**—RC.85.*f*. HF.55.5. **ut erat constitutum,**—'as had been arranged'; trans. after *legati*. The reference is to c.9. § 1., where a promise rather than an agreement was mentioned.

in itinere,—*i.e.* while he was on his march towards them. **ne...progrederetur,**—trans. as in c.9. § 1. **orabant,**—App.26.*a*.iv.; so *petebant*.

2. **impetrassent,**—cf. *postulassent*, c.6. § 3. **petebant uti ...praemitteret,**—'asked him to send on.' (RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.) **antecessissent,**—RC.99.*e*. HF.206.4. **pugna,**—RC.85.*h*. HF.158.2. **potestatem faceret mittendi,**—'give permission to send.'

3. **fidem fecisset,**—'pledged their word,' lit. 'should have made a pledge.' The verb agrees in number with the nearer of its two subjects. For the mood see RC.99.*h*.iii. HF.211.N.

ea condicione ... usuros,—'would agree to the terms which were (being) offered,' or 'the proposal which was made'; the reference is to c.8. § 3. For the abl. see RC.85.*a*.ii.*d*. HF.116.

daret,—cf.c.7. § 4., *attribuant*. Trans. 'let him give,' or '(they asked) him to give.' (RC.106.*a*. HF.207.5.)

4. **eodem illo pertinere,**—'looked in that same direction,' more freely, 'had the same object,' *i.e.* as that mentioned before, in c.9. § 3. This object is explained more fully by the *ut* clause. *Eodem illo* are both adverbs.

ut...reverterentur,—'that ... might.' **mora interposita,**—trans. by clause co-ordinate with *reverterentur*. **qui,**—refers to *equites* not to *eorum*.

longius,—'farther than'; cf. *amplius,* § 1. **causa,**—trans. freely by 'in order to.'

5. **huc,**—'to this place,' *i.e.* to the one just indicated, four miles farther on, where was a small stream. **quam frequentissimi,**—cf.c.3. § 1. **convenirent,**—'they were to,' or 'let them,' etc. Cf. *daret,* § 3. **cognosceret,**—here with a view to a decision, hence='inquire into.'

6. **praefectos,**—see Introduction, p. xix. **mittit qui nuntiarent,**—'sends men to tell them.' (RC.99.*a.* HF.184.1.) **ne...lacesseret,**—'not to provoke to (lit. by), etc.' (RC. 99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.) So *sustinerent. Proelio lacessere,* to take the offensive against; *sustinere,* to keep on the defensive, (to stand firm, hold one's ground). **exercitu,**—often of the legions only (the regular army) as opposed to the cavalry (native auxiliaries). **accessisset,**—'approached'; lit. 'should have, etc.' (RC.106.*a.*; 107.*b.* HF.206.4.; 207.7.)

N.B.—The ablative of comparison [*millibus,* §§ 1.4.; cf.c.10. § 2. In § 1. it is possible, but not so good, to regard the abl. as that of measure of difference which is sometimes used with *abesse;* see N.B. to c.12. § 1. and c.17. § 10.] The subjunctive with verbs of requesting, (*progrederetur,* § 1., *praemitteret, prohiberet, faceret,* § 2.); in clauses of purpose (*reverterentur,* § 4., *cognosceret,* § 5., *nuntiarent,* § 6.); and of indirect command or request (*daret,* § 3., *convenirent,* § 5., *lacesserent, sustinerent,* § 6.) [In reality these are all varieties of the same subjunctive, that expressing a wish or command, which has gradually developed into the dependent subj. of purpose. Accordingly *lacesserent* and *sustinerent* may with almost equal right be classed as subj. of indirect command (RC.106.*a.* HF.207.5. BA.522. H.523.III. AG.339.) or as subj. of substantival clause of purpose. (RC.99.*a*.2. H.498.I. AG.331.) *Nuntio* with subj. is very rare; cf.Bk.III.5.3.] The subjunctive in relative sentences forming part of a subj. clause of purpose, *antecessissent,* § 2. [This is virtually the same as the subj. used in all dependent clauses of a quotation or expression of another's thought. *Abessent,* § 4., is similar, only that the whole purpose clause is dependent on a verb of thinking.] The gerund and the gerundive, §§ 2.3. [RC.104.*b.* HF.170. BA.395. The reason for preferring the gerund to the gerundive in § 2. seems to be the ground of euphony.] The tense of *fecisset,* § 3., and *accessisset,* § 6., as compared with that of *lacesserentur,* § 6. [RC.107.*b.* BA.524.

The pluperf. (here lit. = 'should have' not 'had already'), implies that the action of those verbs is to be completed before that of the verbs on which they depend, *i.e. usuros* and *sustinerent*; the imperf. (here lit. = 'should' not 'were at that time') that the action is to be contemporaneous with that of the verb on which it depends, *i.e. sustinerent*. The verbs represent original future perfect and future respectively.] The tense of *ferretur*, § 3. [This is not, like *lacesserentur*, § 6., = 'should,' but = 'was at that time': the offer previously made still held good.] The subjunctive with *quoad*. [This is indirect for the original *quoad accessero*; the tense would have been imperf. if it were the subj. of purpose. RC.99.*f*.iii. BA. 440.]

CAP. XII.

1. **ubi primum,**—'as soon as,' lit.? **quorum,** etc.,—'who numbered, etc.,' lit.? **cum,**—'while *or* although.' **amplius,** —'more than.'

nihil timentibus nostris,—'while our men had (*or* felt) no fear'; App.5.*a*.N. (RC.85.*o*. HF.100.5.) *Nihil*, = 'not at all.' (RC.83.*e*.i.) **quod...petitus,**—explaining why there was no alarm. **eorum,**—*i.e.* the Germans'. **indutiis,**—lit. 'for a truce.' App.3.c. (RC.82.*c*. HF.134.1.) **facto,**—trans. by clause co-ordinate with *perturbaverunt*.

2. **rursus,**—*i.e.* after the first confusion. **resistentibus,** —understand *nostris* from the preceding *nostros*; App.5.*a*.N. **consuetudine sua,**—trans. by 'according to.' (RC.85.*e*. HF.71.8.) Cf.c.2. § 3.

subfossis,—add connective 'and.' **compluribus nostris,** —'several on our side *or* of our men.' **dejectis,**—here *dejicio* means 'unhorse' or 'dismount' (used transitively). **ita,**—with *perterritos*, not with *atque*. **egerunt,**—'drove them before them.' **fuga,**—RC.85.*h*. HF.158.2. **prius... quam,**—'until,' lit. 'at an earlier time than.' **in,**—though with the accus., trans. 'in.' **venissent,**—RC.99.*f*.iv. HF. 201.5.

Considering the difference of numbers, it is not unlikely that Caesar's cavalry were the aggressors. It is even possible

that the flight was planned beforehand to give Caesar a pretext for his subsequent course of action.

4. **in,**—'among.' **Aquitanus,**—not part of the man's name. **genere natus,**—'belonging to (lit. born from), etc.' For the abl. see RC.85.*l*. HF.156.4. **sua,**—App.15.*b*. **amicus,**—an honorary title, ranking next to *rex,* bestowed by the Roman Senate on distinguished foreigners. **appellatus,**—freely, 'and had been called.'

5. **cum ferret,**—'while bringing.' **intercluso,**—trans. by relative clause. App.37.*c*. **illum,**—'him'; emphatic, being contrasted with *ipse*. Insert 'but' before trans. of *ipse,* etc. **equo vulnerato,**—'on *or* through his horse being wounded.'

6. **id,**—'this,' referring to *cecidisset*. **proelio,**—trans. lit. by 'from.' (RC.85.*h*. HF.158.2.) **incitato equo,**—App.5.*a*.; 'spurring on his horse,' or trans. by principal clause. The subject of the two last verbs is *frater*. **atque,**—'and so.'

N.B.—The use of *amplius* with numerals, § 1. [RC.II.123.*c*.2. BA.318. Obs. H.417.N.2. AG.247.*c*. So *plus*, *minus* and *longius* also are used. Where the numeral (apart from the modifying adverb) would be in the gen., dat. or abl., this case is retained and the adverbs have no influence upon the construction; but where the numeral would be in the nom. or acc., these cases may be retained or the ablative of comparison used, in which case *amplius*, etc., will be the nom. or acc. adj. used as subst. Cf.c.10. § 2., c.11. §§ 1.4., c.37. § 3.] Use of the pres. partic. active, §§ 1.2. [Contrast the time reference with that of the perf. part. pass. RC.102.*a*.*c*. HF.100.4.; 102.2. BA.410.411.] *Priusquam* with subj., § 2. [Cf.c.4. § 7. and N.B.] Ablative of source; *genere*, § 4. Use of *hic*, *ille*, and *ipse* in § 5. Use of *quoad*, § 5. [Contrast *quoad*, c.11. § 6.] Ablative of separation, §§ 2.6. Use of *atque*, [adding a stronger or more important statement, suggesting a climax, §§ 1.2.6. (twice).] Omission of one member of abl. absol. clause, § 2. [Regularly, each clause consists of two members, a quasi-subject and a quasi-predicate. The omission of a quasi-subject which can readily be understood from the context, becomes common only in later Latin, and when the person is not emphatic. The older writers prefer some other construction when an unemphatic personal pronoun would otherwise be the subject of an abl. absol. clause.]

13-15. *Caesar resolves to trifle no longer, and when the German chiefs come to the conference he seizes them, leads his troops against the Germans and, taking them by surprise, drives them with great loss across the Rhine.*

CAP. XIII.

1. **facto,**—*proelium facere* is 'to fight a battle.' **neque jam...neque,** — 'no longer either...or.' **sibi,**—App.3.*d.* (RC.82.*d.* HF.173.4.) **audiendas, accipiendas,**—understand *esse;* so with *dandum,* §3. **ab iis qui,**—'from men who.' **ultro,**—'without provocation, unprovoked.' **intulissent,**—RC.99.*c.* HF.188.4.

2. **exspectare vero,**—'while to wait'; *exspectare* is subject of *esse.* **dum ... augerentur,**—'until...should,' etc. (RC.99.*f.*iii. HF.201.4.) **summae dementiae esse,**—'was the height of folly,' lit. 'was of the highest folly.' Cf. our expression, 'was a piece of folly.' (RC.81.*a.*i. HF.124.1.)

3. **cognita,**—'knowing,' or 'as he knew.' **quantum... auctoritatis,**—'how much prestige,' lit.? **hostes,**—nom. **essent consecuti,**—RC.99.*d.* HF.176.2.

quibus,—App.11.*b.;* 'so that...to them.' **capienda,**—cf. on c.5. §1. **nihil spatii,**—'no time,' lit.?

4. **consilio cum,** etc.,—'having communicated (announced) his decision to,' etc. **quaestore,**—see Introduction, p. xviii. **ne quem,** etc.,—explains *consilio,* 'not to let any chance of fighting be missed,' lit. 'pass over any day of battle.' (RC.99.*a.* HF.183.2.)

quod,—'namely that,' explaining *res.* **postridie ejus diei,**—'on the very next day,' lit. 'on the morrow of that day.' (RC.81.*i.*) **eadem,**—*i.e.* as on the preceding day, in the battle. **usi,**—'displaying.' **adhibitis,**—probably only those mentioned came. **majoribus natu,**—'elders.' (RC. 85.*d.*)

5. **simul...simul,**—'both...and,' lit.? **ut dicebatur,**—'as was alleged,' 'ostensibly.' **sui purgandi causa,**—'to

exonerate themselves.' **quod...commisissent,**—'for having,' etc.; lit. 'because (as they said) they had,' etc. (RC.99.*g*.i. HF.198.2.) **contra....dictum,**—'contrary to what had been agreed on.' **petissent,**=*petiissent.* (RC.66.)

si quid possent,—freely, 'whatever they could,' lit. 'if they could (obtain) anything'; *quid* depends on *impetrare* understood. **de,**—'in regard to,' 'in the matter of'; w. *impetrarent.* **fallendo,**—'by deceit,' lit.? App.39.

6. **Quos,**—'these'; subj. of *oblatos* (*esse*). **oblatos,**—'had fallen into his hands.' **gavisus,**—'rejoicing.'

castris,—RC.85.*h*. HF.158.2. **quod,**—conj. The subject of *perterritum esse* is easily supplied from *equitatum.*

N.B.—The tense of *arbitrabatur*, §1., *judicabat*, §2., *sentiebat*, §3., *existimabat*, §§3.6. [The imperf. refers to his deliberations, not to his decision, and expresses the thoughts that influenced him.]
The subjunctive of relative clause of characteristic, *intulissent*, §1. [RC.99.*c*. HF.188.4. BA.506. H.503.I. AG.320.] *Dum* with the subj. of purpose or end in view, §2. [RC.99.*f*.iii. HF.201.4. BA.441. H.519.II.2. AG.328.] *Que* explanatory, not making an addition, §2. [The number would be increased by the cavalry's return.]
The predicative gen. of possession, *dementiae*, §2. [Cf. *consuetudinis*, c.5. §2.] The partitive genitive with neuters, *quantum*, *nihil*, §3. [RC.81.*b*.i. BA.294. H.397. AG.216.*a*.] *Quis*=any, with *ne*, §4., and *si*, §5. Expressions like *sui purgandi.* [Nothing like *sui purgandorum* ever occurs. RC.II.143. BA.399.Obs.1. H.542.I.N.1. AG.298.*a*.] *Quod* with the subj. of virtual indirect narration, §5. [The subj. *commisissent* is used, because the words are given as part of the statement of the Germans. Cf.c.22. §1. RC.II.216. HF.198.2. BA.484.*b*. H.516.II. AG.341.*d*.] The phrases *postridie ejus diei*, *majores natu*, *contra atque.* Semi-deponent verbs, *gavisus*, §6. [RC.68.*b*. H.465.2.N.2. AG.136.] The use of *illos* after *quos* in §6. [Seemingly because of the opposition to *ipse*, hence *illos* rather than *eos*. Cf. *illum...ipse*, c.12. §5.]

CAP. XIV.

1. **acie triplici,**—see Introduction, p. xxi. **millium,**—understand *passuum*. (RC.81.*e*. HF.180.7.) **prius...quam,**—cf. on c.12. §2. **quid ageretur,**—'what was going on,' lit.? (RC.99.*d*. HF.176.2.)

2. **omnibus rebus,**—'by the whole state of affairs'; explained by *et...suorum.* **et...et,**—'both...and.' **discessu,** —'departure'; freely, 'absence.' **suorum,**—referring to the *principibus majoribusque natu* of c.13. § 4.

habendi,—App.40.; 'of holding.' **capiendi,**—App.89. **neque...dato,**—trans. by 'without.'

perturbantur,—'are at a loss,' lit. 'are confused,' (and hence 'do not know.') **-ne...an...an,**—'whether...or...or.' The three infinitives depend on *praestaret,*='it would be better.' (RC.99.*d.* HF.176.2.)

3. **pristini diei,**—w. *perfidia*; 'of the day before.' (RC. 81.*e.* HF.130.7.) **incitati,**—'irritated.'

4. **Quo loco,**—'there,' lit. 'in which place'; referring to *castris.* (RC.85.*k.*) **qui,**—App.11.*d.*i. **nostris,**—RC.83.*e.*i. HF.105.9.

5. **puerorum,**—'children,' not 'boys.' **suis,**—masc.; 'their families.' **domo excesserant,**—'they had left their homes,' lit.? (RC.85.*h.*i.*a.* HF.85.2.) This showed that it was not an invasion for plunder but an emigration.

For the treachery which Caesar, doubtless for policy's sake, displayed in this affair, he was severely censured at Rome, and Cato, one of the most prominent of his opponents, declared in the senate that Caesar should be delivered over to the Tencteri.

N.B.—*Millium*=*millium passuum*, § 1. [In this phrase *passuum* is rarely omitted in Caesar, except after the gen. *millium.*] Indirect questions. [Simple, § 1.; alternative, § 2. The latter are rare in Caesar. He uses *ne...an* three times; *utrum...an* twice; and once *an* without any particle for the first part; three times also the first part of the alternative is entirely omitted for rhetorical purposes. RC.99.*d.* BA.158.sqq.168.] Gerund and gerundive constructions, § 2. [The change is due to desire for euphony: cf. N.B. to c.11. § 2.] Co-ordinating relative, its use and position, §§ 2.3.4.5. [RC. 93.iii. BA.78.] Gerundive of deponent verbs, *consectandos*, § 5. [This part of a deponent verb regularly retains the passive signification. RC.68.*c.* H.231.2. AG.135.*d.*]

CAP. XV.

1. **Germani,**—those spoken of in c.14. § 4. **audito,**—trans. by 'when,' co-ordinate with *cum...viderent.* **abjectis,**—App.5.*a*.iii.

2. **reliqua,**—'further,' lit.? **interfecto,**—trans. by 'as,' giving the reason for *fuga desperata.* **timore, lassitudine, vi,**—with *oppressi.* **perierunt,**—from *pereo.*

3. **ad unum,**—'to a man,' lit.? **ex,**—'after,' 'in spite of.' **tanti,**—'so formidable'; explained by *cum...fuisset.* **numerus ... millium,**—cf.c.12. § 1. **cum,** etc.,—may be translated by a parenthetic clause beginning with 'for.'

4. **iis,**—the envoys of c.13. §§ 4–6. **fecit,**—'gave.'

5. **supplicia cruciatusque,**—'vengeance and cruelty,' lit.? **libertatem concessit,**—*i.e.* he kept them with him, but no longer as prisoners.

The fear of the Gauls here mentioned is inconsistent with c.6. § 3., and Caesar's release of the chief men inconsistent with the charge of treachery.

N.B.—The use of the abl. absol. in narration, and its various translations. [This is well illustrated in §§ 1.2. Such groupings of the abl. absol. should always be carefully studied. Notice that in this chapter, as appears to be the rule in Caesar, a *cum* clause is used only where a short phrase in the abl. absol., or some other common participial usage, is impossible.] *Cum* with the imperf. and pluperf. subj., *viderent*, *pervenisset*, § 1. [The difference in the tense used will be found to follow very closely the distinctions drawn in App.26.*a*.] Asyndeton in rapid and emphatic enumeration, § 2. Transitive force of *despero.* [So in Caesar in the abl. absol. only.] *Se* and *eum* in simple clauses of *oratio obliqua*, § 5. *Iis*, *illi*, *his*, used of the same persons in §§ 4.5. [RC.92. BA.335.sqq.]

16. *Caesar determines to cross the Rhine, and by overawing the Germans prevent further trouble with them.*

CAP. XVI.

1. **Germanico,**—'with the G.' **sibi...transeundum,**—'that he would have to,' etc.

illa fuit justissima,—'this was the most cogent, (important),' *or* 'the strongest was.' **quod,**—'that.' **cum videret,**—'seeing.' **ut...venirent,**—RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.

rebus timere,—'fear (be anxious) for...safety (interests).' (RC.82.*b*.) **cum intellegerent,**—'if they understood,' lit. 'when they should understand.' **posse, audere,**—be careful to translate in a similar way; *transire* depends on both.

2. **Accessit quod,**—'besides this,' lit. 'there came also (*i.e.* there was added) the fact that.' (RC.109.*i*. HF.181.2.) **quam commemoravi,**—trans. freely, 'which, as I have stated,' etc., lit.? **supra,**—c.9. § 3. **transisse,**=*transiisse.* (RC.66.) **proelio,**—dat. (RC.II.56.104. HF.120.4.) **se cum iis conjunxerat,**—'had joined them,' lit.?

3. **quos,**—the Sugambri. **qui postularent,**—RC.99.*a*. HF.181.1. **sibi Galliaeque,**—trans. by 'on.' **intulissent,**—RC.II.220. HF.206.4. **sibi dederent,**—'that they should surrender to him.' *Ut* might have been used with *dederent.* (RC.99.*a*.2.i. HF.181.3.)

4. **se invito,**—'against his wish,' 'without his leave,' lit. 'he (being) unwilling.' App.5.*a*.N. **Germanos...transire,**—App.35.; the subject of *non aequum,* with which understand *esse.* **non aequum,**—'unfair.' **existimaret,**—for an original pres. indic. (RC.99.*h*.iii. HF.206.4.)

sui...esse imperii,—'was under (lit. belonged to) his sway or power.' (RC.81.*a*.i. HF.124.1.) **quicquam,**—subject of *esse.* **cur postularet,**—'why did he claim?' (RC.99.*d*. HF.209.6.)

5. **qui uni,**—'who alone'; or more freely, 'the only ones ...who'; subject of all three pluperfects. **ex,**—'of,' not 'from.' **ut...ferret,**—'(begged) him to lend,' lit.? (RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.) **premerentur,**—RC.99.*e*.i. HF.198.2.

6. **id facere,**—'from doing so.' **occupationibus reipublicae,**—'by the pressure of state affairs.' **prohiberetur,**—cf. on *existimaret*, § 4. **transportaret,**—'let him take... across.' (RC.106.*a*. HF.207.5.)

ad, etc.,—lit. 'with a view to,' etc.; trans. 'as an aid and ground of hope,' or 'to give assistance and hope.' **reliqui temporis,**—App.2.*c*.; 'for the future.' **futurum,**—supply *esse*.

7. **opinionem,**—'reputation.' **ejus,**—*i.e.* Caesar's. **novissimo,**—'last.' **facto,**—cf. on c.13. § 1. **ad,**—'among.' **possint,**—trans. as though it were *possent*. (RC.107.*a*.iv.)

N.B.—The impersonal use of *accessit*, § 2. [Virtually *accedo* is the passive of *addo*. Its subject is the *quod* clause following.] The subj. of purpose after *qui*, § 3. The subjunctive in *oratio obliqua*. [Notice especially *intulissent*, § 3., and *premerentur*, § 5., virtual indirect narration; *postularet*, § 4., representing a question in the indicative; *transportaret*, § 6., representing an imperative. RC.106.*a*.; II.216. HF.206.4.; 207.5.6. BA.448.520.522.] Indirect petitions, [§ 3., *postularent...dederent*; § 5., *orabant ut...ferret*. The omission of *ut* in § 3., and the fact that *transportaret* could equally well be classed here, show the development of the substantival clause of purpose from the subj. expressing a wish.] The infin. with *postulo*, § 4. [Occasionally verbs of asking are treated as verbs of will or desire.] *Quicquam* in a question virtually equivalent to a negative statement, § 4. [RC.II.189. HF. 132.3. BA.358.] Asyndeton in § 5. The tense of *orabant*, § 5., and *pollicebantur*, § 8. Two accusatives with *transporto*, § 6. The abrupt transition to indirect statements in §§ 6.7. [The verb at the beginning of the *oratio obliqua* is *orabant*. It is not Latin usage to change the leading verb, as English often does, according as a statement, question, request or command is to be introduced; any verb or phrase which virtually implies that something was said is sufficient for introducing any or all forms of reported utterance.]

17. *Description of the bridge Caesar builds over the Rhine.*

CAP. XVII.

1. **transire,**—subject of both *tutum esse* and *dignitatis esse*. App.85.*a*. **neque...statuebat,**—'and did not consider it consistent with his own dignity or that of the Roman people.' (RC.81.*a*.i. HF.124.1.)

The objections urged are that to cross by boats would expose them more to attack while disembarking or re-embarking, and would not impress the Germans so much as a more unusual mode.

2. **summa difficultas...proponebatur,**—'very great difficulty presented itself,' 'the difficulty appeared very great.' **faciendi,**—App.2.*c*. **contendendum,**—understand *esse*. *Contendere id*, 'to strive earnestly at (for) that'; freely, 'give all one's energies to that end.'

3. **Rationem,** etc.,—'this was the plan he adopted for the bridge,' lit.? For the better understanding of the following description see the illustration on p. 21. At the place where Caesar is supposed to have crossed, the river is about 1500 ft. wide and 15 ft. deep.

bina,—'in pairs,' 'two by two'; trans. with *jungebat*. **sesquipedalia,**—add 'thick' in trans. **ab,**—'at.' **dimensa ad,**—'proportioned to,' lit. 'measured according to.' **intervallo inter se,**—'with an interval between them,' 'leaving a space between'; *i.e.* each pair of beams was fastened (probably by braces or crosspieces) so that a space of two feet was left between the two beams. **jungebat,**—App.26.*a*.iv.

4. **cum,**—conj. **immissa,**—trans. by active verb co-ordinate with *defixerat* and *adegerat*, 'when he had let these down...and had secured (fastened) them,' etc. **machinationibus,**—some floating structure. **in flumen,**—with *immissa*.

sublicae modo,—'like piles,' lit. 'in the manner of a

pile.' **directe ad perpendiculum,**—'perpendicularly,' lit. 'in a straight manner according to the plumb-line.' **prone ac fastigate,**—'inclined at an angle,' lit. 'in an inclined and sloping manner.' [For these adverbs other editions read *directa, prona ac fastigata,* adjectives agreeing with *haec.*] **ut...procumberent,**—App.30.*b*. (RC.99.*b*. HF.187.2.) **secundum...fluminis,**—'with (lit. according to) the current.'

5. **his,**—the *tigna* of § 4.; w. *contraria*. **duo,**—*i.e. tigna*; the word 'beams' may be inserted in trans. **ad eundem modum,**—'in (lit. according to) the same way'; with *juncta*. **intervallo,** etc.,—'at a distance of forty feet'; with *statuebat*. Some consider the difference to be measured at the surface of the water, others on the bottom of the river. **quadragenum,**=*quadragenorum*. (RC.58.*c*.) **ab inferiore parte,**—'lower down,' 'farther down stream,' lit. 'at the lower part,' *i.e.* of the river.

contra...conversa,—'to meet the force and current of the river,' lit. 'turned against (facing).' **statuebat,**—App.26.*c*.; 'would fix.'

6. **Haec utraque,**—'these two pairs'; subject of *distinebantur*. **trabibus,** etc.,—trans. by 'by.' **insuper...immissis,**—'laid on above.' **bipedalibus,**—cf. on *sesquipedalia,* § 3. **quantum...distabat,**—lit. 'as much as the joining was apart'; freely, 'which was the space left between those beams.' **eorum,**—those just described, § 4. **binis fibulis,**—the nature and the exact position (though not the purpose) of this 'pair of braces *or* ties' are unknown.

utrimque...ab extrema parte,—'at each end,' lit. 'on both sides at the end.'

7. **quibus disclusis,**—referring to the pairs of *tigna*. Trans. by 'as.' App.5.*a*.ii. **in contrariam partem,**—'in opposite directions'; the form of expression seems to refer to the different slope of the opposite piles; others trans. 'at the opposite ends.' **tanta, ea,**—trans. both by 'such.' **rerum,**—'of the structure,' lit.?

quo major, etc.,—'the greater the strength of the current that rushed down upon it,' lit.? **hoc artius,**—'the more firmly (closely).' **quo...hoc,**—lit. 'by what amount...by this amount.' (RC.85.*g*.ii. HF.58.6.) **incitavisset,**—RC. 99.*k*. **illigata tenerentur,**—*i.e.* the *tigna*; 'they were held fastened together.' (RC.99.*b*. HF.187.2.)

8. **Haec,**—*i.e.* all the framework described above. **directa ...contexebantur,**—'were connected by timbers laid upon them lengthwise.'

9. **nihilo secius,**—'none the less,' *i.e.* although already of sufficient strength; freely, 'besides all this.' **et,**—lit. 'both,' corresponding to *et* before *aliae*, § 10. Omit in trans. **ad,**—'on.' **oblique agebantur,**—'were driven obliquely (slanting).'

quae ... subjectae ... exciperent,—'that being placed underneath...they might break (resist).' (RC.99.*a*.i. HF. 184.1.) **pro,**—'as *or* like.'

10. **aliae,**—understand *sublicae agebantur*. **item,**—either 'also,' or, as some think, referring to *oblique*, 'in the same way.' **spatio,**—'at...distance.' (RC.85.*g*. HF.58.6.)

sive,—'or,' lit. 'or if.' **dejiciendi,**—App.40. [Many editions omit *causa*, in which case the same translation should be given. (RC.104.*b*.iii.)] **essent missae,**—'should be sent down.' (RC.99.*k*.)

his defensoribus,—lit. 'these (being) defenders.' App.5. *a*.N. (RC.85.*o*. HF.102.3.N.) Trans. freely, 'by these defences.' *Defensores*, though not a technical name, is for brevity's sake used in the plan on page 21, for the *aliae* (*sublicae*) *supra pontem*.

earum rerum,—'their'; roferring to *trunci* and *naves*; lit.? **minueretur, nocerent,**—(RC.99.... HF.183.2.) The subject of *nocerent* is to be understood from *earum rerum*. **neu,**—'and that...not.' **ponti,**—App.3.*b*.

N.B.—Use of imperf. indic. [*arbitrabatur*, *statuebat*, §1., *existimabat*, §2., of reflections while thinking over plans; *jungebat*, §3., *statuebat*, §5., *distinebantur*, §6., *contexebantur*, *consternebantur*, §8., *agebantur*, §9., of acts frequently repeated.] The force of distributives, §§3.5.6. [RC.58.c. HF.69.8. H.174.2. AG.95.] The pluperf. indic. with *cum*=whenever, §4. [RC.II.170.b. HF.204.4. BA.434.] *Ab* used to denote relative position, §§3.5.6. The abl. of measure of difference. [*quo*...*hoc*, §7., *nihilo*, §9., with comparatives; *spatio*, §10., with *supra*, which has comparative force; *intervallo*, §§3.5., expressing distance apart. RC.85.g.1.ii. H.423. AG.250. To express distance with *abesse* and *distare*, Caesar occasionally (especially with *spatium* and *intervallum*) uses the abl. When the verb of distance is not given, the acc. and the abl. are equally common.] Perf. part. deponent with passive force, *dimensa*, §3. [This is regular in the gerundive (see N.B. to c.14.), but rare in the perf. part. RC.68.c. H.231.2. AG.135.b.] The subj. by attraction, [*incitavisset*, §7., in a sentence of result; *essent missae*, §10., in a sentence of purpose. RC.99.k. H.529.II. AG.342.] Use of *neu*, or *neve*, §10. [The regular word to introduce a second final sentence if negative, whether a positive or negative final clause precedes. In other than final sentences *neque* would be used.] Predicative gen., §1. [Cf. N.B. to c.13.] The phrase *inter se*. [The substitute in Latin for a reciprocal pronoun. In §3. *se* refers to the *object* of the clause. App.14.d.] Force of *defensoribus*, §10. [Equal to *defendentibus*, except that it refers to a permanent attribute, not to a transitory act.]

18, 19. *After Caesar crosses into Germany, some tribes sue for peace, others flee before him. Having achieved his object he returns in 18 days.*

CAP. XVIII.

1. **Decem diebus quibus,**—'within ten days after,' lit. 'within the ten days within which.' **coepta erat,**—'had begun.' (RC.72.a.) **effecto,**—App.5.a.iii.

2. **ad utramque partem,**—'at each end.'

3. **quibus...petentibus,**—'on their asking for,' 'to their request for,' etc., lit.? App.5.a.N. (RC.85.o. HF.100.5.)

4. **ex eo tempore quo,**—freely, 'ever since,' lit.? **comparata,**—App.5.*a*.iii. *Fugam comparare,* 'to prepare for flight.' **hortantibus iis,**—with *comparata;* freely, 'urged (instigated) by those,' lit.? App.5.*a*.N. **ex Tencteris,**—with *quos;* trans. as if closely connected with *iis.* For the fact see c.16. §2. **finibus,**—RC.85.*h*. HF.158.2. **in,**—though with accus., trans. by 'in.'

N.B.—The phrase *decem diebus quibus,* §1. [The two events mentioned come *within* the same period of a few days, at the beginning and end respectively.] Passive of *coepi,* §§1.4. [This is used with a dependent infinitive in the passive. RC.72.*a*. BA.216. H.297.I.1. AG.143.*a*.] Resumption of historical pres. with resumption of narrative, §1. Combination of the perfect and hist. pres. in the same sentence, §3. [This change may possibly express the change in feeling from *liberaliter* to *obsides adduci jubet.*] The present and the perfect partic., §§3.4. [In the abl. absol. in narrative, the former is equivalent to *cum* with imperf. subj., the latter to *cum* with the pluperf. subj. In §4. *hortantibus* depends on *comparata,* and its time is relative to that verb not to the principal verb.] *Se abdere* with *in* and accus. [The accus. is due to the implied idea of motion towards (in order to hide).] The pres. partic. of deponents, §4. [RC.68.*c*. H.231.1. AG.135.*a*.]

CAP. XIX.

1. **dies,** — App.4.*c*. (RC.83.*c*. HF.69.9.) **frumentis,** — 'the crops.' **si,**—'in case *or* if.' **premerentur,**—for original future indic. (RC.99.*h*.iii., 107.*b*. HF.211.3.2.(*a*).)

2. **fieri,**—'was being built.' **more suo,**—'according to their custom.' (RC.85.*e*. HF.71.3.) It goes with *concilio habito,* which we may trans. by a clause co-ordinate with *dimisisse.* App.5.*a*.iii.

in . . . partes, — 'in . . . directions,' lit.? **uti . . . demigrarent,**—following on the idea of *telling* implied in *nuntios dimisisse.* (RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.) This idea must be brought out more clearly in English, so trans. freely, 'instructing (*or*

urging) them to move, etc. . . . and all . . . to gather,' **etc. possent,**—RC.99.*c*. HF.188.4. **in,**—'to.'

3. **hunc,**—referring to *unum locum*. **esse deiectum,**—from *deligo*. **medium,**—'in the centre'; really a predicate adj. agreeing with *locum*. **hic,**—adv. 'here,' referring to *locum*. **exspectare,**—like *decertare*, depending on *constituisse*. **ibi,**—the same place as *hic*.

4. **Quod,**—App.11.*b*. **confectis, consumptis, arbitratus,**—trans. by verbs introduced by 'as.' *Rem conficere*, 'to attain an object,' lit.? **quarum rerum causa,**—'for which,' lit.? **ut,**—'namely to.' The *ut* clauses are explanatory of *rebus*.

ut Germanis metum injiceret,—'to inspire the G. with fear,' lit.? (RC.82.*b*. HF.5.4.) **obsidione,**—'from pressure, (oppression),' lit.? (RC.85.*h*. HF.158.2.)

satis...profectum,—understand *esse*; from *proficio*. **et ad laudem,** etc.,—'for (lit. with a view to) both glory and actual advantage.'

N.B.—*Pauci*='only a few,' § 1. [*Pauci* is regularly opposed to ***multi***, a few but not many; a few=some, several, as opposed to none, is *nonnulli*, cf.c.6. § 3.] Virtual indirect narration, [*premerentur*, § 1. forming part of the statement made in promising. RC.II.216. BA. 474. AG.341.c.] *In* and the abl. with *deponere*, § 2. [So regularly with verbs of *placing*, in spite of the idea of motion.] Substantive clause of purpose after phrase=announce, [*nuntios dimisisse*, § 2., cf.c.11. § 6. after *nuntiarent*, and III.5.3. after *certiores facit*. This usage is very rare in Caesar.] The adjective in Latin where English uses an adv. or adverbial phrase, *medium*, § 3. [RC.88.*d*. BA.61. H.443. AG.191.] *Hic* and *ibi* referring to the same place. [It is very peculiar that these occur in the same clause.] Dactylic ending in *constituisse*, § 3. [According to Cicero a period should not close with the end of a verse. Caesar has the dactylic ending now and then, however; cf.c.26. § 3., c.27. § 1.] Repetition of *rerum*, § 4. [Cf. N.B. to c.7. § 1.] Explanatory clauses introduced by *ut*, § 4. [These are practically substantival clauses of purpose, in apposition with *rebus*.] The repetition of ***ut***, § 4. [This is because the various motives are being *enumerated*.]

Chap. 20-38.—The first expedition to Britain.

20–22. *Caesar determines to make an expedition to Britain. He tries with little success to get information about the island, and gathers his fleet together.*

CAP. XX.

1. **exigua,**—emphatic from position; 'only a small.' **parte ...reliqua,**—App.5.*a*.N. (RC.85.*o*. HF.102.3.N.) Trans. by clause beginning with 'although.' **Caesar,**—should in English come nearer its verb. **maturae sunt hiemes,**—trans. closely with *in his locis*.

ad septentriones vergit,—'lies towards the north.' **locis,**—see on c.1. § 10. **contendit,**—'made an effort.'

bellis,—RC.85.*b*. HF.82.1. **subministrata,**—understand *esse*. **intellegebat,**—'he knew (was aware).' App.26.*a*.i.

2. **si,**—'even if.' **deficeret,**—'did not enable him to,' etc.; lit.?

usui,—App.8.*c*. (RC.82.*c*. HF.184.1.) *Usui esse*='to be of service, to be an advantage, to be useful.' **fore,**—'it would be.' The subject is really the clause *si modo...cognovisset*. **adisset,**—for *adiisset*. (RC.66.) For the mood see RC.99.*h*.iii. HF.206.4. **genus hominum,**—'the character of the inhabitants.'

quae omnia...erant,—'all of which was,' lit.? **fere,**—with *omnia*. **incognita,**—this must be qualified by the statements in Bk.III.c.8., that the Veneti were in the habit of sailing to Britain, and in Bk.II.c.4., that Divitiacus, king of a Belgian tribe, also ruled over a part of Britain.

3. **neque...quisquam,**—'no one,' lit.? **illo,**—adv. **neque ...quicquam,**—'and ... nothing'; subject of *notum est*. **ipsis,**—App.17.; *i.e.* the *mercatores*.

Gallias,—'Gaul.' The plural with reference to the division of Gaul among the Belgae, Galli, and Aquitani.

4. **vocatis,**—trans. by 'although.' App.5.*a*.ii. **neque... neque,**—'not...or,' lit.? Trans. the subjunctive clauses

after *reperire poterat.* **esset,**—(RC.99.*d.* HF.176.2.) So the subjunctives which follow.

belli, — App.2.*c.* **uterentur,**—'they had.' **qui essent ...idonei portus,**—'what suitable harbors existed (there were).' **ad,**—'for.' **majorum,**—'larger than usual'; the war-galleys and transports being larger than the coasting vessels of the Gauls.

N.B.—Concessive clauses, [with *etsi*, §1., and in abl. absol., §§1.4.] Ablative of time with words not in themselves indicating time, *bellis*, §1. [Caesar also uses *in* with *bello* or *bellis ;* where *in* is used the circumstances under which, rather than the time at which, are expressed.] *Si* clauses in indirect narration, §2. [RC.99.*h.*iii.; 107.*b.* HF.210.3. BA.469.sqq. H.527. AG.337. Notice the difference in tense in *deficeret* and *adisset*, etc. The advantage is regarded as accruing only *after* the information is gained.] Emphatic position of *quisquam*, §3. Dependent clauses introduced by an interrogative, §4. [Notice that the sequence of tenses is observed even in expressing what is true at all times, *e.g. esset.*] Use of *aut* to couple two closely connected ideas which jointly are connected with the rest of the sentence by *neque*, §4. Position and force of *essent*, §4. [The order of words shows that *idonei* is not a predicative, but an attributive adjective, and that *essent* is not the copula, but=existed.] Connection of words and clauses in §2. *si modo...cognovisset.* [*Et* couples the first clause with the second, to which it is subsidiary; the asyndeton before the last clause marks off the two main ideas. There is also asyndeton between the nouns in the last clause.]

CAP. XXI.

1. **ad haec cognoscenda,** — with *praemittit,* not with *idoneum.* **priusquam faceret,**—'before making.' (RC.99. *f.*iv. HF.201.5.) **idoneum,**—'a suitable person.' **arbitratus,**—App.37.*a.* **navi longa,**—Introduction, p. xxiii.

2. **ut exploratis...revertatur,**—'after finding out...to return,' or 'to find out...and return.' App.5.*a.* (RC.99. *a.*2. HF.181.3.)

3. **trajectus,**—the straits of Dover are meant.

4. **quam...classem,** — App.11.*d.*iv. (RC.93.vii.) **ad,**— 'for.' **Veneticum bellum,**—see Bk.III.c.9. §1.

5. **qui polliceantur,**—App.29.*b*. (RC.II.25. HF.184.1.) **fore,**—irregularly used for the fut. infin. (RC.101.*a*.ii.) **imperio,**—App.3.*b*.

6. **Quibus,**—*i.e.* the *legati.* **liberaliter pollicitus,**—'(and) having made liberal promises,' lit.? **ut permaneant,**—cf. on *revertatur,* § 2. **domum,**—RC.II.98.*a*. HF. 85.1. **una,**—adv.

7. **Atrebatibus superatis,**—they were allied with the Nervii in the battle described in Bk.II.c.19–27. **constituerat,**—'had made.' **ibi,**—*i.e.* among the A. **quem,** etc.,—'whom he thought to be,' or more freely, 'who, he thought, was.' **his,**—of Gaul not Britain. **magni habebatur,**—'was valued highly,' 'was held in high esteem.' **magni,**—lit. 'at great price.' (RC.81.*g*.i. HF.150.2.)

8. **quas...civitates,**—'all the (lit. what) states he can.' **possit,**—RC.99.*e*. HF.206.4. **adeat,**—trans. by infin. with 'to'; so *hortetur* and *nuntiet*. (RC.99.*a*.2.1.) **fidem sequantur,**—'embrace the alliance,' depending on *hortetur*.

9. **regionibus,**—'country.' **quantum,** etc.,—freely, 'so far as one could who,' etc.; more lit. 'so far as opportunity could be given to one.' *Quantum facultatis* (App.2.*d*.) is equivalent to *tantum facultatis quantum*, 'according to whatsoever (of) opportunity could be given to him.' **navi,**—RC.85.*h*. HF.158.2. **auderet,**—RC.99.*c*. HF.188.4. [For another explanation see N.B. below.]

quae...perspexisset,—RC.99.*d*. HF.176.2.

N.B.—Subj. after verbs of commanding with or without *ut*, §§ 1.8. [For the latter, cf.c.16. § 3. and N.B.] Incorporation of antecedent into relative clause, § 4. The present inf. after *polliceor*, § 5. [Here the word is irregularly (but in harmony with its derivation) used as a modal verb with the complementary infin. The regular construction is found in c.22. § 1. and c.27. § 1.] The use of abl. absol. and acc. in the same sentence referring to the same thing, § 6. [This rare construction is not to be imitated in prose composition, (RC.II.52.*c*. HF.219.*e*. BA.422.*b*.), though found not infrequently in Caesar; cf.Bk.II.22.1., III.14.4. and IV.12.1.] Absence of connective between the first two of the four relative clauses in § 7.

[This is because they are not co-ordinate; the last three refer to the joint idea *Commium quem...constituerat.*] Gen. of price, *magni*, §7. [The gen. is used only where the value is given generally, the abl. where it is specified; the gen. also is used more freely with verbs of valuing than with verbs of buying, etc. RC.81.*g*. HF.150.2. BA.305. H.404.405. AG.215.*c*.] The reference of *se*, §8. [Not, as regularly (RC.91.ii.*a*.) to the subject of *nuntiet*, but to the person for whom the ambassador is speaking. The two are, as often, identified; cf.c.22. §1.] Relative clause of characteristic, *ei...qui...auderet*, §9. [Some editors regard *qui* as causal, 'to him, seeing that he did not venture.' RC.99.*g*.iii. HF.198.4. BA.509.] Sequence of tenses with historical pres. [Where the pres. follows, the secondary sequence is used, §§1.9.; where the pres. precedes, either the primary sequence, §§5.8., or the secondary, c.11. §6., c.14. §2.]

CAP. XXII.

1. **qui...excusarent,**—cf. on *polliceantur*, c.21. §5.; so *pollicerentur*. **de...consilio,**—'for their previous policy *or* conduct,' lit. 'with regard to the policy of previous time.' (RC.81.*e*. HF.130.7.) They had joined the Belgian confederacy against Caesar two years before, and the next year had been in alliance with the Veneti; Caesar had made an unsuccessful attempt to reduce them at the end of the previous summer.

quod, etc.,—'in that (lit. because) being uncivilized,' etc. **consuetudinis,**—App.2.*c*. (RC.81.*d*.*f*.i.) The 'custom' was, as Virgil, the Roman poet, expressed it, "to lay down the law of peace, to be merciful to the conquered, and beat the haughty down."

populo,—cf. on *sibi*, c.16. §3. **fecissent,**—RC.99.*g*.i. HF.198.2. **se...facturos,**—trans. by 'to' and infin. (RC. 101.*b*.iii. HF.110.1.) **ea quae,**—trans. by one word. **imperasset,**—for *imperavisset*. (RC.66.) For the mood and tense see on *postulassent*, c.6. §3.

2. **satis,**—'quite.' **post tergum,**—'behind him,' lit.? **has tantularum,** etc.,—'attention to such trifling matters.' Cf.c.16. §6. (RC.81.*d*.) **Britanniae,**—dat.; meaning the expedition against Britain. **anteponendas,**—supply *esse*.

App.41. **iis imperat,**—'requires (*or* demands) of them,' lit.?

Quibus,—the hostages. **eos,**—the Morini. **in fidem,**—'into alliance,' 'under his protection.'

3. **onerariis,**—see Introduction, p. xxiii. **coactis contractisque,**—the former of levying, pressing into service, the latter of gathering to one place. **quot,**—'the number which,' lit. 'as many as.' **duas,**—the tenth (c.25. § 3.) and the seventh (c.32. § 1.) **satis esse,**—omit 'to be' in trans.; so in § 6.

quod, etc.,—'all the ships of war he had besides,' lit.? App.2.*d*. (RC.81.*b*.i. HF.69.10.) This whole clause forms the object of *distribuit*. **quaestori,** etc.,—see Introduction, p. xviii.

4. **Huc accedebant,**—'besides this there were,' lit. 'to this were added.' **ab,**—'at a distance of.' **tenebantur quo minus,**—'were prevented (*or* kept) from being able,' lit.? *Quo minus* may also be written as one word. **possent,**—RC. 99.*a*.1.i. HF.185.2.

5. **ducendum dedit,**—'he gave...to lead *or* to be led'; *ducendum* is gerundive, agreeing with *exercitum*. (RC.104.*c*. HF.178.7.)

N.B.—*Dum*='while,' with present tense, even in connection with past time, § 1. [Commonly explained as an instance of the historical pres. Cf. c.32. § 1., c.34. § 3. RC.II.173. HF.201.3. BA.180. H.467. III.4. AG.276.*e*.] *Qui* with subj. of purpose, § 1. *Quod* with the subj. in virtual oblique narration, § 1. [RC.II.165.*b*. HF. 198.2. BA.484.*b*.] *Impero* with the accus. and the dat. [§§ 1.2.; cf.c.21. § 8.] *Ab*='at a distance of,' § 4. [In all the other cases in Caesar without specifying the place from which the distance is measured, *e.g.* Bk.II.7.3.; 30.3.; but here *ex eo loco* is added.] The syntax of *quo minus*, § 4. [Elsewhere in Caesar only once, after *terrere*. RC.II.156.158. HF.185.2. BA.130.131. *Quominus* is strictly a final particle, but the final idea is often dimmed.] The gerundive expressing the purpose or the object to be brought about, *ducendum dedit*, § 5.; cf.c.29. § 2. and Bk.III.11.4. RC.104.*c*. HF. 173.7. BA.400. H.544.N.2. AG.294.*d*.] The gerundive with *causa* and *ad* expressing purpose, §§ 1.3.

23. *Caesar crosses over to Britain.*

CAP. XXIII.

1. **constitutis,**—trans. by clause co-ordinate with *nactus*. **tertia vigilia,**—the time from sunset to sunrise was divided into four equal periods, called *vigiliae* or watches, and the time from sunrise to sunset into twelve equal periods, called *horae* or hours. These periods would vary with the season; at the time here referred to (late in August) the sun rose about 5. A.M., and set about 7. P.M.

solvit,—the full expression is found in c.36 §3. **ulteriorem,**—'farther,' *i.e.* lying up the coast (to the N.E.) The exact localities are unknown.

2. **cum,**—'as.' **tardius,**—'too slowly,' lit. 'more slowly (than they should).' (RC.88.*b*.) **esset administratum,**—App.24. Trans. 'these set about their work,' or 'carried out their instructions.'

ipse,—opposed to *quibus*. **hora,**—cf. on § 1. **expositas copias armatas,**—'the armed forces displayed'; *expositas* is chosen to suggest that their mere appearance was expected to overawe the invaders.

3. **haec,**—'as follows,' or 'such'; more fully explained by *atque...continebatur*. **ita anguste,** etc.,—'so closely bordered.' [Many editions read *angustis* (with *montibus*), which must be translated 'steep,' a meaning difficult to account for.] **posset,**—RC.99.*b*. HF.187.2.

4. **Hunc...arbitratus,**—understand *esse*. **dum convenirent,**—trans. after *ad ... exspectavit*; 'till...should,' etc. (RC.99.*f*.iii. HF.201.4.) **ad,**—'until.'

5. **cognovisset, vellet,**—RC.99.*d*. HF.176.2. **quae fieri vellet,**—'what he wished done.'

monuit ... administrarentur,—'instructed them to do everything (lit. that all things were to be done) at the [slightest] signal (lit. at a nod) and at the [proper] moment,

as the science of warfare, and especially naval warfare, required, seeing that this [latter] was subject to rapid and uncertain changes, (lit. had a rapid....movement).'

ut...postularent,—*ut*=as; for the subj. see RC.99.*e*.iii. HF.206.4. **maxime ut,**—this *ut* need not be translated; it is a repetition of the preceding *ut*, to introduce the second subject of *postularent*. **ut quae,**—'inasmuch as these'; *quae* refers to *maritimae res*; *ut quae* is a little more forcible than *quae* alone; for the subj., which is not influenced by *ut*, see RC.99.*g*.iii. HF.198.4. **administrarentur,**—depends directly on *monuit*; *ut* might have been used to connect them; cf.c.21. §8. (RC.99.*a*.2.i. HF.181.3.) **ad nutum et ad tempus,**—the former referring to *celerem*, the latter to *instabilem motum*.

6. **dimissis,**—see on *constitutis*, §1. **dato, sublatis,**—trans. by principal clauses. App.5.*a*.iii. **aperto...litore,**—'off a...shore'; really an abl. absol. App.5.*a*.N.

N.B.—The division of day and night. [What time of the day would *hora quarta*, §2., and *horam nonam*, §4., be?] *Dum*='until,' §4. with subj. of purpose, [indicating that for which one is looking or waiting. Cf.c.13. §2. Caesar does not use *donec*, and has *quoad* only with the indic. (or subj. due to oratio obliqua, *e.g.* c.11. §6.)] Uses of *ut* in §5. [Note also the omission of *ut* with *administrarentur*; cf.c.21. §8. and c.16. §3. and N.B.] *Qui* causal,='seeing that these,' with subj., §5. [Cf. N.B. to c.21. §9. Here this causal idea is heightened by *ut*; so *utpote* and *quippe* also are used, though not in Caesar.] Large proportion of participles in §6.

24-26. *The Britons oppose his landing, but after a hard battle are repulsed.*

CAP. XXIV.

1. **praemisso,**—trans. by principal clause. **quo genere,**—lit. 'which kind (*i.e.* of warriors),' referring to both *equitatu* and *essedariis*; freely, 'the class of warriors (*or* the sort of force) that.' **consuerunt,**—cf. on c.6. §1.

copiis,—RC.85.*e*.1. HF.236.N.11. **navibus,**—cf. on *navi*, c.21. § 9. **egredi prohibebant,**—App.26.*d*. Cf. on c.4. § 3.

2. **has,**—referring to what follows. **nisi...non,**—'only,' lit.?

militibus autem...desiliendum,—'while the soldiers had to leap down'; so *consistendum* and *pugnandum*. App.24. (RC.96.*b*.; 104.*a*.ii. HF.178.6.) For the dat. see RC.82.*d*. HF. 178.4. **ignotis locis,**—'unacquainted with the ground'; abl. absol.; lit.? **impeditis manibus,**—trans. by 'with'; abl. absol. **oppressis,**—dat. agreeing with *militibus*.

3. **cum,**—'whereas.' **illi,**—App.18.*b*. **membris expeditis,**—cf. on *impeditis manibus*, § 2. **notissimis locis,**—'perfectly familiar with the ground,' lit.? Cf. on *ignotis locis*, § 2. **insuefactos,**—'(who were) trained (to this).'

4. **generis pugnae,**—'style (*or* mode) of fighting.' For the case cf. on *consuetudinis*, c.22. § 1. **quo,**—rel. pron. with *uti*; 'as,' lit.? **uti, utebantur,**—here meaning 'display *or* show.' *Uti consuerant* need not be rendered into English. **consuerant,**—cf. on § 1.

N.B.—Use of the perfect participle and the abl. absol. to carry on narration. [In narrating a series of actions Latin generally expresses the last only of the series, in which the others culminate, by a principal verb. Cf. c.23. § 6. and c.32. § 5.] Use of *Romani* in Caesar [Very seldom in Caesar's own narrative, as in § 1. (*nostri* being used instead): generally in expressing the words or thoughts of the enemy, as in c.7. § 4., c.19. § 3., c.30. § 1., c.34. § 5.] Omission of *cum* with *copiis*, § 1. [So generally only when a march (or similar movement) is mentioned, and when there is an adjectival modifier. But see also c.21. § 3. RC.85.*e*.1. BA.p.178.fn.2. H.419.1. AG.248.*a*.] The conative imperfect, § 1. [RC.97.*b*. HF.216.3.N.1. BA.18[illegible]. H.469.II.1. AG.277.*c*.] The infin. with *prohibeo*, § 1. [The only modal construction in Caesar.] The gerundive with *esse* used impersonally, § 2. Polysyndeton in use of *et*, § 2. [This lends force to the detailed enumeration.] The agreement of *eadem* and *quo*, § 4. [In sense each of these belongs to both *alacritate* and *studio*; each agrees with the one next it. Caesar as a rule carefully avoids such collocations.]

CAP. XXV.

1. **naves,**—subj. of *removeri, incitari* and *constitui.* **quarum,**—'whose.' **inusitatior,**—'less familiar,' *i.e.* than that of the *naves onerariae.* **et motus,** etc.,—'and (whose) movement was quicker (*or* freer) for service (*or* handling).'

ad,—'on.' **apertum latus,**—'the exposed flank,' *i.e.* the right side, unprotected by shields. **hostes,**—subject of *propelli* and *submoveri.* **quae res,**—'a manœuvre which,' lit.? **usui,**—cf. on c.20. § 2.

2. **remorum motu,**—the Britons, like the Veneti (Bk.III. 15.3.), used sails only with their large vessels. **paulum modo,**—'but only a little'; trans. after *pedem retulerunt.*

3. **atque,**—'moreover,' 'and now.' **cunctantibus,**—App. 5.*a*.N.; trans. by 'while,' or 'as.' **qui,**—'he who.' App. 11.*d*.i. **aquilam,**—Introduction, p. xxi. **ut...eveniret,**—App.29.*a*. (RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.) **ea res,**—'his act *or* purpose,' lit.? **legioni,**—trans. by 'for.'

inquit,—'cried'; trans. before *desilite.* (RC.72.*d*. HF. 289.2.) **desilite,**—an imperative. **vultis,**—from *volo.* (RC.43. HF.147.) **praestitero,**—trans. by the English future. (RC.II.205.*b*.)

4. **cum,**—conj. **magna,**—'loud.' **voce,**—RC.85.*e*. HF. 71.3.

5. **inter se,**—'one another,' lit.? (RC.60.*e*.) **ne...admitteretur,**—'not to incur,' lit.? (RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.) **dedecus,**—viz. the loss of the eagle. **universi,**—'in a body'; § 6. shows that he is speaking only of those on the same ship as the standard bearer.

6. **Hos item,** etc.,—'when those in the nearest ships saw them, they also followed and,' etc.; lit. 'when also they saw these from the nearest ships.' **subsecuti,**—App.37.*a*.N.B. **appropinquarunt,**—for *appropinquaverunt.* (RC.66.)

N.B.—Use of *quae res* to refer to a preceding clause, § 1. Present partic. in abl. absol., § 3. *Qui=is qui*, § 3. [The antecedent is thus absorbed in the relative generally only when it would stand in the same case; cf.c.8. § 2. (an exception to this), c.10. § 5., c.14. § 4., c.34. § 3.; so also in the neuter, cf.c.8. § 1. and c.23. § 5.] The use and position of *inquit*, § 3. [RC.II.6.18. HF.289.2.N. BA.40. H.569.V. AG.345.*c*.] The nom. of a personal pronoun, *ego*, § 3. [Here, as usual, emphatic by contrast; the contrast is further emphasized by *certe*, and by *meum* which is placed close to *ego*.] Position of *meum*, § 3. [There is always a tendency in Latin to place personal and possessive pronouns, or pronouns serving as such, in juxtaposition when occurring in the same sentence.] The future perfect, *praestitero*, § 3. [As the future perfect views a future act as completed, it is often used to express certainty or rapidity of accomplishment. RC.II.205.*b*. BA.191. H.473.1. AG.281.R.] The use of *inter se*='one another.' [Here the *se*, which strictly is required after *cohortati*, is rendered unnecessary by *inter se*. Generally, but not here, *inter se*='one another' with some preposition, cf.c.17. § 3, c.30. § 1.] Brachylogy in § 6. [For 'when those in the nearest ships saw them from the nearest ships.']

CAP. XXVI.

1. **Pugnatum est,**—App.24. (RC.96.*b*. HF.164.2.) **alius alia ex navi,**—'the men from the different ships,' lit. '[one man from one ship and] another from another ship.' On account of this change in number, trans. *occurrerat* and *se aggregabat* also as through plur. **quibuscumque... occurerat,**—'whatever...they fell in with.' For the dat. see RC.II.56. HF.120.2. For the tense see RC.II.204.*a*. So *conspexerant*, § 2., and *conspexerat*, § 3.

2. **vero,**—'while.' **notis,**—cf. on *ignotis locis*, c.24. § 2.; freely, 'were familiar with...(and).' App.5.*a*.iii. **ubi,**—'whenever.' **singulares,**—'in small (*or* scattered) groups,' lit. 'one by one.' **adoriebantur,**—trans. by 'would.' App. 26.*c*. So *circumsistebant* and *conjiciebant*. **plures,**—not 'more.'

3. **universos,**—'the main body'; opposed to *singulares*.

4. **item,**—'(and) also.' **quos...his,**—freely, 'to whomsoever,' transposing the clauses; or 'whenever...any...to

these' without transposing. App.11.*d*.iii. **submittebant,**—cf. on *adoriebantur*, § 2.

5. **simul,**—with the force of *simul atque*; see Vocabulary. **suis,**—App.15.*c*. **consecutis,**—App.5.*a*. Trans. 'with... following.' **neque,**—'but ... not.' **longius,**—'any distance.' App.10. (RC.88.*b*.) **quod,** etc.,—cf.c.23. § 1. and c.28. **ad pristinam,** etc.,—'to complete Caesar's usual good fortune,' lit.?

N.B.—Combination of pluperf. and imperf. in frequentative sentences, §§ 1.2.4. [The pluperf. is used to express the relative time of the two actions, the imperf. to express repeated action. In such cases in the pluperf. clause we may generally use '-ever.' RC.II.204.*a*. BA.192. H.472.2. AG.280.] Change from perf. *jussit* to imperf. *submittebat*, § 4. The phrase *alius alia ex navi*, § 1., [representing but one half of the English equivalent 'one from one, another from another.'] The present participle with verbs of perception, §§ 2.4. [In Cicero and later Latin the participle was often used 'to express the actual condition of the object' perceived. But at all times, as in Caesar, the infin. was more common; *e.g.* Bk.II.24.4.] *Simul* for the more frequent *simul atque*, § 5. [Cf.c.27. § 1.] Frequency of ending *-erunt* in § 5., at the end of four consecutive clauses. [This is rare, and should be avoided in writing Latin by having fewer co-ordinate clauses of the same structure.]

---

27. *The Britons sue for peace, which Caesar grants after demanding hostages.*

CAP. XXVII.

1. **simul...receperunt,**—trans. after *statim...miserunt*. **daturos,**—understand *esse*, and *se* as subject. **quaeque,**—two words. **imperasset,**—cf. on c.22. § 1.

2. **quem supra,** etc.,—'who, as I stated before, was sent,' etc.; lit.? **supra,**—in c.21. § 6.

6. **Hunc, illi,**—object and subject of *comprehenderant*, which is to be translated before *e navi...deferret*. **egressum,**—'on his landing,' 'when he landed,' lit.? **cum,**—'although.' **modo,**—'in the character (*or* capacity) of'; or freely, '**as**.' **deferret,**—RC.99.*i*.iii. HF.204.5.

4. **rei,**—'act.' App.2.*c*. **contulerunt,**—'laid.' **imprudentiam,**—*i.e.* their ignorance of the customs observed between nations. Cf.c.22. §1. **ut ignosceretur,**—'to be pardoned.' App.24. (RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.)

5. **quod,**—'that'; with *bellum...intulissent*. For the subj. see RC.II.165.*b*. HF.198.2. **cum,**—'although,' or 'while.' **missis,**—App.5.*a*.iii.; trans. by clause co-ordinate with *petissent*. **petissent,**—for *petiissent*. (RC.66.) For the mood see RC.99.*i*.iii. HF.204.5.

ignoscere,—understand *se* as subject; notice the tense. **imprudentiae,**—App.3.*b*. (RC.82.*e*.i. HF.105.9.)

6. **arcessitam,**—App.37.*a*.N.B.; trans. by clause in active, co-ordinate with *daturos;* lit.? The tense of *arcessitam* is relative to *daturos* not to *dixerunt*.

7. **agros,**—'the country, the country districts.'

N.B.—The asyndeton in §1., *obsides*, etc. [This is because these words were felt to be but an explanation of *legatos de pace miserunt*.] The number and tense of *demonstraveram*, §2. [This is one of the few cases where Caesar uses the first person sing. The pluperf. seems to be used because the sentence is equivalent to *quem C. praemiserat*.] Omission of *se* with the infin., §§1.5. [So not infrequently in quotations in Caesar, when easily supplied from the context. But the beginner in Latin should avoid this omission in Latin prose composition.] Impersonal constr. in passive of intransitive verbs, *ignosceretur*, §4. [RC.II.57. HF.164.1. BA.5.217. H.301.1. AG.146.c.] *Quod* with subj. of virtual indirect narration, §5. [Cf.c.22. §1.]

28, 29. *A storm does great damage to the vessels carrying the cavalry and to those which had already crossed.*

CAP. XXVIII.

1. **His rebus,**—'by this means,' lit.? **post diem...ventum,**—'three days after he came'; more lit. 'on the fourth day after'; cf. on c.9. §1. **est ventum,**—App.24. **demonstratum est,**—'mention has been made,' lit.? App.24. **sustulerat,**—'had taken on board.' **superiore,**—in c.23. §1. called *ulteriorem*. **vento,**—RC.85.*o*.iv. HF.102.3.N.

2. **viderentur,**—'were in sight.' **posset,**—RC.99.*b*. HF. 187.2. So *referrentur* and *dejicerentur*. **inferiorem,**—*i.e.* towards the S.W. **propius,**—used like a prep. (RC.83.*f*.iii.) **sui,**—'to themselves.' (RC.81.*d*.)

3. **quae tamen,** etc.,—'and as these, having nevertheless (*i.e.* in spite of the danger) cast anchor, were filling,' etc.; or more freely, 'had cast... and were,' etc. [Another possible interpretation is to take *tamen* as applying to the whole sentence and opposed to the words just preceding; in this case trans. by 'however,' making this the first word. To regard *tamen* as opposed to *ancoris jactis* and connected with *complerentur,* disregards the natural order of the words, and implies that the ships were more likely to be filled while running free than while at anchor off the open coast.] **cum,**—conj. **necessario...profectae...petierunt,**—'they were compelled to put out... to make for,' lit.? **adversa nocte,**—'in the face of the night, into the night,' lit. 'the night meeting them.' App.5.*a*.N.

N.B.—The phrase *post diem quartum quam*, §1. [Strictly the phrase should be *post die quarto quam*='on the fourth day after'; and the meaning, 'later (*i.e.* on the fourth day) than'; *post* being an adverb. Its position, however, has caused it to influence the case that follows as if it were a preposition. The usage is rare in classical Latin. It must be remembered also that in reckoning from one date to another, the Romans counted both extremes, so that the phrase really=the third, not the fourth, day after.] The impersonal passive construction, in §1. twice. [Cf. N.B. to c.27.] Lack of connective between *de quibus*... and *quae*..., §1. [Cf. N.B. to c.4.] Use of *solverunt*, §1. [Generally *naves* is (not as here, the subject, but) the object, expressed as c.36. §3., or understood as c.23. §1.] *Appropinquo* with the dative, §1. [Caesar uses only the dative, not *ad*, except in Bk.II.19.2. where the reading is disputed; the idea of nearness to, not motion towards, predominates.] *Propius* with the accus., §2. [Cf. N.B. to c.9.] *Sui*, objective gen., with *periculo*, §2. [This is more emphatic than *suo* would have been. Notice also that *se* and *suus* in a sentence of result refer to the subject of the sentence of result, not to that of the leading verb.] The phrase *adversa nocte*, §3.

CAP. XXIX.

1. **nocte,**—that of Aug. 30-31, according to astronomical calculations. A reference to c.28. § 1. will then show on what day Caesar must have crossed to Britain. **esset,**—'there was.' (RC.99.*b*.ii. HF.182.4.) **qui dies,**—'a period (*or* time) which.' **maritimos,** etc.,—'very high tides.' **consuevit,**—'is wont,' or trans. by 'usually.' **incognitum,**—the tides at the straits of Dover are 20 or 30 feet high, those in the Mediterranean insignificant.

2. **uno,**—'one and the same.' **naves...complebat,**—trans. by passive voice. App.23. So *onerarias...afflictabat.* **quibus,**—'in (lit. with) which.' **transportandum,**—'to be brought over.' (RC.104.*c*. HF.173.7.) **ad,**—'at.' **neque ulla,**—'and no,' lit.? **administrandi, auxiliandi,**—the former of those on board, the latter of those on shore. In trans. add 'them' (*i.e.* the ships) with the former.

3. **fractis,**—trans. by 'as.' **amissis,**—freely, 'having lost.' App.5.*a*. **magna,** etc.,—'great alarm inevitably (*or* as was inevitable) arose throughout,' etc.; lit.? **id quod,**—lit. 'a thing which'; *quod* is acc., subj. of *accidere*. **exercitus,**—lit. 'of,' *i.e.* on the part of.

4. **neque,**—trans. by 'no.' **possent,**—RC.99.*c*. HF.188.4. **usui,**—cf. on c.20. § 2.

omnibus constabat,—'it was generally understood (*or* agreed'; *omnibus,* dative; more lit. 'among all.' **hiemari oportere,**—'that they must winter.' App.24. (RC.96.*b*. HF.164.2.) **in hiemem,**—trans. *in* by 'for.'

N.B.—*Luna plena, qui dies*, §1. [The incorporation in the relative clause of an antecedent in apposition with another word less general in meaning; cf.c.1. §1.] Gerundive with *curo*, § 2. [Cf. N.B. to c.22. § 5.] *Id quod*, referring to a clause, § 3. [Here, as is regularly the case, the clause follows.] Relative clause of characteristic, § 4. [RC.99.*c*. HF.188.4. BA.504. H.503. AG.320.*a*.] The impersonal passive construction in the infin., *hiemari*, § 4. In and accus. of the time for which arrangements are being made

beforehand, *in hiemem*, § 4. *Et non* rather than *neque*, § 4. [This emphasizes the words with which *non* is directly connected.] Construction with *oportet* and *necesse est*, §§ 3. 4. [The infin. is the only mood used by Caesar.]

30, 31. *The Britons take advantage of these misfortunes and renew the war. Caesar, suspecting this, makes counter preparations.*

CAP. XXX.

1. This long sentence may be conveniently broken into four in English, viz. at *collocuti, transportaverat* and *producere*. **principes,**—subj. of *duxerunt*, § 2. **collocuti,**—App. 37. *a*. N.B. **inter se,**—'with one another.' **Romanis deesse,**—freely, 'that the Romans were without,' lit.? **quae,**—referring to *castrorum*. **hoc angustiora,**—freely, 'all the smaller'; more lit. 'more contracted for this reason.' (RC. 85. *g*. ii.)

2. **optimum factu,**—'the best thing to do.' (RC. 105. *b*. HF. 175.) **duxerunt,**—'concluded, thought.' **rebellione facta,**—trans. by clause co-ordinate with *prohibere*. App. 5. *a*. iii. *Rebellionem facere*, 'to renew the war.' **frumento,**—RC. 85. *h*. HF. 158. 2. **prohibere, producere,**—the subject of *esse*. (RC. 101. *c*. HF. 108. 4.) **rem,**—'the campaign.' **superatis,**—App. 5. *a*. ii.; trans. by 'if.' **reditu,**—cf. on *frumento*, above.

3. **rursus,**—not 'a second time,' but referring to the change from *pace confirmata* (c. 28. § 1.) to *rebellione facta*. **agris,**—as in c. 27. § 7. **deducere,**—'to bring down,' *i.e.* to the coast, to the place where they were to begin war.

N.B.—*Hoc* anticipating a *quod* clause, § 1. [So *eo*. This use is found chiefly with comparatives, or words implying a comparison; it is in its origin an abl. of measure of difference, but seems often to merge into the abl. of cause.] The supine in *-u*. [RC. 105. *b*. HF. 175. BA. 401.] The conditional abl. absol., § 2. The mood of *confidebant*, § 2. [Caesar is not quoting reasons put forward by themselves.]

CAP. XXXI.

1. **ex eventu navium,**—'from what had happened to his ships,' lit. 'from the fate of.' **ex eo, quod,**—'from the fact that.' **fore,** etc.,—'suspected (*or* began to suspect) that that would happen which (actually) did occur.' **ad,**—'for *or* to meet.' **subsidia,**—'resources.'

2. **quae earum,**—App.11.*d*.iv. Trans. 'of the ships which had been,' etc. **quae,**—'whatever.' **res,**—'purpose.'

3. **cum ... administraretur,**—App.24.; 'as the soldiers worked,' lit.? Cf.c.23. § 2. **studio,**—RC.85.*e*. HF.71.3. **amissis,**—trans. by 'although.' **reliquis...effecit,**—freely, 'he made it possible to sail satisfactorily with the rest,' lit. 'he brought it about (*or* managed) that there could be sailing,' etc. **navigari,**—App.24. **posset,**—RC.99.*b*. HF.187.2.

N.B.—A neuter pronoun in apposition with a clause, *ex eo, quod*, etc., § 1. [Cf. *id quod*, c.29. § 3.] The mood of *accidit*, § 1. [*Id quod accidit* was not the suspicion but the writer's substitute for it, hence the indicative. The idea *quod accidit* could not possibly have been part of his thought. Cf.c.32. § 2. and c.35. § 1. In this last case, however, the subj. also might be used.] Incorporation of antecedent in the relative clause, *quae...naves, earum*, § 2. [This is frequent when the relative clause precedes the clause with the antecedent.] Tense of the principal verbs throughout. [In §§ 1.2. imperf., though for different reasons; in § 3. perfect.]

---

32. *The Britons surprise a legion out foraging.*

CAP. XXXII.

1. **ex consuetudine,**—'as usual,' lit.? referring only to *una*. **frumentatum,**—the supine; trans. by 'to' and infin. (RC.105.*a*. HF.174.3.) **missa,**—trans. by 'when'; so *interposita*. **neque ulla,**—cf.c.29. § 2. **ad,**—'up to.' **interposita,**—'had arisen,' *i.e.* between the time of the surrender and the present. **cum,**—'as *or* since,' explaining the preceding words. **hominum,**—'of the natives.' **ventitaret,**—'kept coming.' App.26.*c*. (RC.75.III. HF.303.*a*.)

consuetudo ferret,—'was customary *or* usual,' lit. 'custom allowed.' (RC.99.*e*.iii. HF.206.4.) **in ea . . . partem,**—'was visible in the direction in which,' lit.?

2. **id quod erat,**—'as was actually the case,' lit.? *Id* is explained by *aliquid . . . consilii.* **aliquid consilii,**—App.2.*d.* **initum,**—understand *esse.* **in stationibus,**—'on guard'; the plural because at each of the four gates would be a cohort. **in stationem succedere,**—'to take their place on guard,' more freely, 'to relieve them'; the sing. of the general idea of guarding. **reliquas,**—how many? Introduction, p. xvi. **armari,**—'to arm themselves. (RC.96.*c.*)

3. **paulo longius,**—'some little distance.' Cf. on c.26. §5. **sustinere,**—'were holding their own (*or* their ground)'; cf. on c.11. § 6. **conferta,**—trans. by 'as,' giving the reason for *ex omnibus partibus.*

4. **demesso,**—trans. by clause with 'because,' co-ordinate with *erat reliqua.* **erat reliqua,**—'remained,' lit.?

5. **dispersos, depositis, occupatos,** — trans. by clauses introduced by 'when'; *nostros* is to be supplied from § 4. **adorti,**—trans. by clause co-ordinate with *perturbaverant.* **incertis ordinibus,**—trans. by 'as,' giving the reason for *perturbaverant,* namely, that it was difficult for the men to find their own cohorts.

N.B.—Predicate nom. with *appellabatur*, § 1. [RC.II.70. H.362.2.2. AG. 176.] The numbering of the Roman legions. [The numbers given were in the order of their levying. Though Caesar had with him the tenth legion, he had never yet had ten legions under him.] The supine in *-um*, § 1. [RC.105.*a*. HF.174.3. BA.402.] Antecedent repeated in relative clause, *quam in partem*, § 1. [Cf.c.7. § 1. and c.19. § 4. This repetition, which is most frequent with *pars*, *res*, *locus* and *dies*, is due to a desire for clearness, even at the expense of elegance.] The frequent repetition of *reliquus*, §§ 2.4.5. [Caesar does not seem to object, as a modern writer would, to this frequent use of the same word.] The mood of *erat*, § 2. [Cf. N.B. to c.31. § 1.] Partitive gen. with neuters, *aliquid*, § 2. So with *nihil*, c.1. § 7., with *quicquam*, c.1. § 10., with *quantum*, c.13. § 3., with *quod*, c.22. § 3.] The pluperfect indic. in §§ 4.5. [Of events prior to Caesar's arrival in § 3.] The middle or reflexive use of passive verbs, *armari*, § 2. [RC.96.*c*. BA.20. H.465. AG.111.N.1.]

33. *The British mode of fighting with chariots.*

CAP. XXXIII.

1. **Genus,**—'manner.' **hoc,**—'as follows'; the predicate. **per omnes partes,**—'in all directions.' **ipso terrore equitum,**—'by the very (*or* mere) terror caused by their horses,' lit.? (RC.81.*c.*) **ordines,**—of their opponents. **equitum,**—*i.e.* their own, so that after the warriors on the chariots had dismounted, foot soldiers and cavalry alternated. Caesar had no cavalry with him.

2. **ita,**—'in such a way.' **illi,**—App.18.*b.*; *i.e.* those who had dismounted to fight on foot. **habeant,**—RC.99.*b.* HF. 187.2.

3. **tantum efficiunt,**—'become so proficient *or* expert,' lit.? **uti...consuerint,**—for *consueverint.* (RC.99.*b.* HF. 187.2.) **loco,**—'ground.' **per,**—'along.'

N.B.—The phrase *ex essedis pugnae*, §1. [Nouns are joined to each other by prepositions very seldom in Latin, and, as a rule, only when the word on which the prepositional phrase depends is of verbal origin. Cf. *in Britanniam trajectus*, c.21. §3.] *Ipse*, §1.= 'very,' [*i.e.* itself and nothing else.] *Cum*='whenever,' with the perfect indic., §1. [See N.B. to c.26. on frequentative sentences. In such sentences, when the reference is to present time, the perfect and present respectively are used for the pluperf. and imperf.]

34–36. *On Caesar's approach the Britons withdraw, and in a second attempt are routed and submit to Caesar, who at once returns to Gaul as the season is getting late.*

CAP. XXXIV.

1. **Quibus rebus,**—ablative of means. **nostris,**—may be dative with *auxilium tulit*, or ablative absolute. **novitate,**—trans. by 'because of.' (RC.85.*m.*)

2. **facto,**—trans. by 'although,' or more freely, 'in spite of this.' **ad,**—'for,' with *alienum*. **suo loco,**—'on his own ground.' (RC.85.*a*.ii.*g*.) **brevi . . . intermisso,** — 'after a short interval,' lit.?

3. **haec,**—referring to the whole incident of the attack. **occupatis,** — trans. by 'while'; referring to the return to the camp, the care of the wounded, the preparations for an attack, etc. **qui,**—App.11.*d*.i.; *i.e.* the Britons spoken of in c.32. § 1. **erant reliqui,**—as in c.32. § 4. **discesserunt,** —*i.e.* from the country districts to their strongholds.

4. **secutae sunt,**—App.1.N.B. **continerent,**—trans. as if indic. (RC.99.*c*. HF.188.4.)

5. **praedicaverunt,**—'announced,' perhaps with the added idea of 'boasting.' **quanta,**—'what *or* how favorable.' **faciendae,** — App.40.; 'for obtaining.' **sui liberandi,** — 'for freeing themselves.' (RC.II.134.) **daretur,**—RC.99.*d*. HF. 176.2. **expulissent,**—cf. on *adisset*, c.20. § 2. (RC.99.*h*.iii.; 107.*b*. HF.211.N.)

6. **His rebus,**—as in c.28. § 1.

N.B.—The various uses of the abl. in the chapter. [Note especially the heaping of abl. in § 1.] Asyndeton and polysyndeton both used in contrasting clauses, §§ 1.4. Relative clause of result, *quae*, § 4. [=*tantae ut*.] *Continere* and abl. with and without *in*, §§ 4.2. [The latter, probably an abl. of means, is the more usual construction. RC.85.*a*.ii.*g*. and fn.] Dependent interrogative clauses, § 5. The phrase *sui liberandi*. [Cf. N.B. to c.13. § 5.] The phrase *in perpetuum*. [Cf. *in hiemem*, c.29. § 4. and N.B.] The tense of *expulissent*, § 5. [For the future perf. of the actual words used.]

CAP. XXXV.

1. **idem . . . fore,**—'that the same thing would happen.' **ut . . . effugerent,**—'namely that . . . would escape,' explanatory of *idem*. (RC.101.*b*.v. HF.217.5.) **essent pulsi,** — cf. on *adisset*, c.20. § 2. **dictum est,**—App.24.

2. **diutius,**—'any longer,' *i.e.* than the beginning of the battle. **ac,**—we may trans. 'but.'

3. **secuti** ... **occiderunt,** — understand *nostri*. **tanto spatio,**—freely, 'as far,' lit. 'within (*or* over) as great a space.' **quantum**...**efficere,**—'as their speed and strength allowed,' lit.?

N.B.—The mood of *acciderat*. [Cf. N.B. to c.31. §1.] *Ut* introducing an explanatory clause, with the subjunctive of result, §1. [Here the *ut* clause is really in apposition with *idem*, and thus connected with *fore*.] Tense of *effugerent* and *essent pulsi*, §1. Comparative with standard of comparison to be supplied from the context. [*diutius*, §2.='longer' (than the beginning of the battle); cf. *tardius*, c.23. §2.='more slowly' (than they should), and *angustiora*, c.30. §1.='smaller' (than usual).] The phrase *tantum spatio quantum*, §3. [*Spatium* is not to be understood with *quantum*, which is used substantively.] A relative and a demonstrative in the same sentence of the same person, *quos*...*ex iis*, §3. [This is not infrequent in Caesar, and is more emphatic than a more condensed expression would have been. Notice, too, that in this clause the usual clear indication of a change of subject is wanting.] Position of *longe lateque*, §3. [Thus in effect an attribute of *aedificiis*.]

CAP. XXXVI.

2. **His,**—'for these.' **die,**—'the time *or* the season.' **die propinqua, infirmis navibus,**—App.5.*a*.N.; trans. by 'as.' **subjiciendam,**—understand *esse*.

3. **mediam noctem,**—'midnight.'

4. **quae,**—*i.e.* the ships. **ex**...**duae,**—we should say 'two of the transports,' lit.? **quos reliqui,**—'as the others,' lit. 'which the other (crews reached)'; *reliqui*, masc., as he is thinking of the men rather than of their vessels. **infra,**—*i.e.* towards the S.W.

N.B.—*Dies*, §2., feminine. [So very rarely, chiefly when *dies* does not mean 'day' in the usual sense, and never in the plural.] The force of *hiemi*, §2. [The dative with a gerundive is not necessarily dat. of apparent agent.] The phrase *media nox*, §3. [RC.88.c. BA.60.] *Qui*='as,' after *idem*, §4. The gender of *reliqui*, §4. [This is the so-called synesis or 'construction according to sense.']

37, 38. *After his return to Gaul, Caesar puts down a rising of the Morini and goes into winter quarters.*

CAP. XXXVII.

1. **Quibus navibus,**—the two mentioned in c.36. § 4. **castra,**—that of Sulpicius Rufus, c.22. § 6. **proficiscens,**—'on setting out.' (RC.102.*a*. HF.100.4.) **primo,**—adverb. **non ita magno,**—'with not a very large,' lit.? **si...nollent,**—'if they did not wish to be killed'; *sese*, subj. of *interfici*. (RC.II.22.) **nollent,**—RC.99.*h*.iii. HF.206.4.

2. **ad clamorem,**—'at (*or* in answer to) the shouting.' **hominum,**—as in c.32. § 1. **suis auxilio,**—'to aid his men,' lit.? (RC.82.c. HF.184.1.)

3. **amplius horis,**—'more than,' etc. *Horis* may be the abl. of comparison, equivalent to *quam horas* (RC.85.*f*. HF.55.5.), or the omission of *quam* may, as is customary with *amplius*, have no effect on the case (RC.II.123.*c*.2.) and *horis* be the abl. of time within which (RC.85.*b*.iv.) **paucis,**—'but a few.'

4. **postea quam,**—generally written as one word; referring to *primo*, § 1.

N.B.—Time reference of present and perf. partic. The accus. and infin. with *nolo*, § 1. [With *volo* and *nolo*, when the subj. of both verbs is the same, either the simple (complementary) infin. or the accus. and infin. construction may be used, the former being far the commoner.] The double dative (of purpose and interest) with *mitto*, § 2. The phrase *amplius horis quattuor*, § 3. [Cf. N.B. to c.12. § 1.] *In conspectum venire*, used passively, § 4. [In c.12. § 2. used actively.]

CAP. XXXVIII.

1. **rebellionem fecerant,**—cf. on c. 30. § 2.

2. **siccitates,**—trans. by singular; the plural is, according to Latin idiom, due to the plural *paludum*. The statement here seems inconsistent with c. 34. § 4. **quo...haberent,**—'had no place to which to retreat,' lit. 'had not

whither they should retreat.' (RC.II.25. HF.184.1.N.) Trans. *quo* . *haberent* before *propter*...*paludum*. **quo,** etc.,—*quo* referring to *paludum*, though agreeing in gender and number with the predicative *perfugio* (RC.II.197.*e*.), 'which they had used as,' etc. (RC.II.76.) **fuerant usi,**—RC.97.*g*.iii. **in potestatem venerunt,** 'fell into the hands,' lit.?

3. **in,**—cf. on c.18. § 4.

4. **legionum,**—trans. by 'for.' **neglexerunt,**—add in trans. 'to do so.'

5. **His rebus,**—referring to all the events of the summer's campaign. **ex litteris Caesaris,**—'in accordance with (or in consequence of) despatches from C.' **dierum,**—trans. by 'for' or by English possessive. (RC.81.*e*. HF.180.7.) **supplicatio,**—'a public thanksgiving,' celebrated by solemn sacrifice in the temples at Rome. At the end of the campaign two years before, Caesar writes, "and for these acts a thanksgiving for fifteen days was decreed, an honor which up to that time no one had received."

N.B.—The plural of an abstract noun, *siccitates*, § 2. [Here, as often in Latin, the plural of an abstract noun is used referring to the various instances or cases where the quality is manifested. RC.51.*e*. H.130.2. AG.75.*c*.] Relative clause of purpose, *quo se reciperent*, § 2. *Utor* with a twofold abl., § 2., [one being in the predicative relation to the other. RC.II.76.] *Fuerant usi*=*erant usi*, § 2. [In the perfect tense a difference is generally observable between the compound forms with *sum* and with *fui*, but in the pluperf. and fut. perf., *fueram* and *fuero* are used (though very rarely) quite with the force of *eram* and *ero*.] *Se abdere* with *in* and acc. [Cf. N.B. to c.18. § 4.] Asyndeton in contrast, § 4., and in emphatic enumeration, § 3.

VOCABULARY

TO

CAESAR, DE BELLO GALLICO,

BOOKS I.–VII.

MARKS AND ABBREVIATIONS.

The quantity of all vowels long by nature has been marked. Vowels not marked are to be considered short by nature.

abl.	*ablative.*
acc.	*accusative.*
adj.	*adjective.*
adv.	*adverb.*
conj.	*conjunction.*
dat.	*dative.*
f. or fem.	*feminine.*
gen.	*genitive.*
indecl.	*indeclinable.*
m. or masc.	*masculine.*
n. or neut.	*neuter.*
part.	*participle.*
perf.	*perfect.*
plur.	*plural.*
prep.	*preposition.*
pres.	*present.*
pron.	*pronoun.*
sing.	*singular.*
subst.	*substantive.*
w.	*with.*

VOCABULARY.

A.

A., an abbreviation for **Aulus.**

ā, ab, (abs), prep. with abl., (**ā** before consonants; **ab** before vowels and consonants; **abs** once before **te**), *away from, from, at a distance of; by; on the side of, at, on, in.*

ab-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *hide, conceal;* part. **abditus, a, um,** as adj., *hidden, secluded.*

ab-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, carry off.*

ab-eō, īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *go away, depart.*

abi-ēs, -etis, f., *fir.*

ab-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw away; throw.*

ab-jungō, ere, -junxī, -junctum, *detach, separate, part.*

ab-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *carry off, snatch.*

abs, see **ā.**

abs-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut off, cut, cut away; cut down.*

absēns, -entis, *absent.*

absimilis, e, *unlike.*

ab-sistō, ere, -stitī, *withdraw, keep away from.*

abs-tineō, ere, -tinuī, -tentum, *refrain, abstain, spare.*

abs-trahō, ere, traxī, tractum, *drag away, carry off.*

absum, abesse, āfuī, *be absent, be wanting; be far, be distant; take no part in, keep aloof; lack, be lacking.*

abundō, āre, āvī, ātum, *abound, be strong in.*

āc (shorter form for **atque,** used only before vowels), *and, and further;* in comparisons, *than, as.*

ac-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *approach, draw near, come up; be added.*

accelerō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hasten.*

acceptus, a, um, from **accipio.**

ac-cidō, ere, -cidī, *fall; befall, happen, occur; turn out.*

ac-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut into, cut.*

ac-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *receive, take; suffer, meet with; accept; find; hear;* part. **acceptus, a, um,** as adj., *acceptable, popular.*

acclīvis, e, *rising, sloping.*

acclīvitās, -tātis, f., *ascent, slope, steepness.*

Accō, -ōnis, m., a chief of the Senones.

accommodō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fit, adjust; adapt, suit.*

accūrātē, adv., *carefully, elaborately.*

accurrō, ere, -currī or **-cucurrī, -cursum,** *run up, rush up, hasten.*

accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *accuse, find fault, censure.*

ācer, cris, cre, *sharp, keen, violent, severe.*

acerbē, adv., *bitterly, keenly;* **acerbe ferre,** *be distressed by.*

acerbitās, -tātis, f., *bitterness; suffering, distress.*

acerbus, a, um, *bitter, painful.*

acervus, ī, m., *heap, pile.*

aciēs, ēī, f., *keenness, fierce glance; line of battle; battle.*

ac-quīrō, ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *gain, gain advantage.*

ācriter, adv., (**ācrius, ācerrimē**), *fiercely, hotly, desperately.*

āctuārius, a, um, *light, swift.*

āctus, a, um, from **ago.**

acūtus, a, um, *sharp, pointed.*

ad, prep. with acc., *to, towards; with a view to, for; according to; near, by, in, among;* (with numerals), *about.*

adāctus, a, um, from **adigo.**

adaequō, āre, āvī, ātum, *equal; make equal.*

adamō, āre, āvī, ātum, *love greatly, become enamored of, take a fancy to.*

ad-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *add, join; make an addition.*

ad-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead, bring; bring in, conduct; draw towards, draw taut; induce, influence, force.*

ademptus, a, um, from **adimo.**

adeō, adv., *so, so much.*

ad-eō, īre, -iī (-īvī,), -itum, *go to, advance; attack; visit; reach, get at; approach.*

adeptus, a, um, from **adipiscor.**

adequitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *ride up.*

ad-haerēscō, ere, -haesī, -haesum, *adhere, cling to, catch fast to.*

adhibeō, ēre, uī, itum, *call in, admit; bring along; use, show.*

adhortor, ārī, ātus sum, *urge, exhort, encourage.*

adhūc, adv., *till now, up to the present, as yet.*

Adiatunnus, ī, m., a chief of the Sontiates.

ad-igō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *drive up; drive in; hurl, cast; move up; force, bind.*

ad-imō, ere, -ēmī, -emptum, *take away, destroy; cut off.*

ad-ipiscor, ī, -eptus sum, *obtain, win.*

aditus, ūs, m., *approach, access, means of approach; right of approaching, admittance; intercourse.*

adjaceō, ēre, uī, *be adjacent, border upon.*

ad-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *cast; add; throw up.*

adjūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *adjudge.*

ad-jungō, ere, -junxī, -junctum, *join, unite, ally; annex.*

adjūtor, ōris, m., *assistant, ally.*

ad-juvō, āre, -jūvī, -jūtum, *assist, help; aid; be of assistance, further.*

Admagetobriga, ae, f., a town in Gaul, of uncertain position.

admātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *mature; hasten.*

administer, trī, m., *assistant, priest.*

administrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry out, execute, attend to; manage; issue.*

admīror, ārī, ātus sum, *wonder at, admire, be surprised.*

ad-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *allow, incur; commit; let go;* part. **admissus,** *at full speed.*

admodum, adv., *very, very much, exceedingly;* with numerals, *fully, quite.*

admoneō, ēre, uī, itum, *warn, advise.*

adolēscēns, see **adulescens.**

adolēscentia, see **adulescentia.**

adolēscentulus, see **adulescentulus.**

ad-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, -ultum, *grow up.*

ad-orior, īrī, -ortus sum, *attack, assault.*

ad-sciscō, ere, -scīvī, -scītum, *join, unite, take.*

adsistō, see **assisto.**

ad-sum, esse, -fuī, *be present, be at hand, be near; aid, assist.*

Aduātuca, ae, f., a stronghold in the north-east of Gaul.

Aduātucī, ōrum, m., *the Aduatuci,* a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

adulēscēns, -entis, m., *young man; the younger.*

adulēscentia, ae, f., *youth.*

adulēscentulus, ī, m., *a mere youth.*

adventus, ūs, m., *arrival, approach, coming.*

adversārius, ī, m., *opponent, enemy.*

adversus, a, um, *opposite, facing, in front; adverse, unsuccessful.*

adversus, prep. with acc., *against.*

ad-vertō, ere, -vertī, -versum, *turn towards;* w. **animum,** *observe, notice.*

advocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call, summon.*

advolō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fly to, rush upon* or *to.*

aedificium, ī, n., *building.*

aedificō, āre, āvī, ātum, *build.*

Aeduus, ī, m., *an Aeduan;* in plur., *the Aedui,* a tribe in the centre of Gaul.

aeger, gra, grum, *sick.*

aegrē, adv., (**aegrius, aegerrimē**), *scarcely, with difficulty.*

Aemilius, ī, m., *Lucius Aemilius,* a cavalry officer with Caesar.

aequāliter, adv., *uniformly.*

aequinoctium, ī, n., *equinox.*

aequitās, -tātis, f., *fairness, justice;* w. **animī,** *contentment.*

aequō, āre, āvī, ātum, *make equal, equalize.*

aequus, a, um, *level; fair, just; even, equal; favorable; contented, calm, resigned.*

aerārius, a, um, *of copper, copper.*

aes, aeris, n., *bronze; copper; money;* **aes alienum,** *debt.*

aestās, -tātis, f., *summer.*

aestimātiō, -ōnis, f., *valuation, estimate.*

aestimō, āre, āvī, ātum, *estimate, value, regard.*

aestīvus, a, um, *of summer.*

aestuārium, ī, n., *estuary, inlet.*

aestus, ūs, m., *heat; tide.*

aetās, -tātis, f., *age, years.*

aeternus, a, um, *perpetual, unending.*

afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, *bring; bring forward, announce; cause, bring about, produce.*

af-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *affect, visit, treat;* translate freely in act. by *cause, produce, inflict;* in pass. by *suffer, experience, enjoy, be afflicted with, be subjected to, be in.*

af-fīgō, ere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *fasten, attach.*

af-fingō, ere, -finxī, -fictum, *invent further,* or *in addition.*

affīnitās, -tātis, f., *relationship, marriage.*

affirmātiō, -ōnis, f., *assurance assertion.*

affīxus, a, um, from **affigo.**

afflictō, āre, āvī, ātum, *buffet, toss about; damage, wreck.*

afflictus, a, um, from **affligo.**

af-flīgō, ere, -flīxī, -flictum, *shatter, damage, wreck; throw down, bear down.*

affore, from **adsum.**

Africus, ī, m., *south-west wind.*

Agedincum, ī, n., a town in the north central part of Gaul.

ager, agrī, m., *field, land, country, territory.*

agger, eris, m., *mound; heap of earth; dam, rampart.*

ag-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *attack.*

aggregō, āre, āvī, ātum, *attach, join.*

agitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *discuss.*

agmen, -minis, n., *army on the march, line of march, column;* w. **primum,** *the van;* w. **novissimum,** *the rear.*

agō, ere, ēgī, āctum, *drive, carry off; bring up, advance; take; drive down; run; do, carry on, work, act; treat, plead, discuss, confer; hold; express.*

agricultūra, ae, f., *agriculture, tilling the land, farming.*

alacer, cris, cre, *eager.*

alacritās, -tātis, f., *eagerness, ardor.*

ālāriī, ōrum, m. plur., *auxiliaries* (usually placed on the wings).

albus, a, um, *white.*

alcēs, is, f., *elk.*

Alesia, ae, f., a town in the central part of Gaul.

aliās, adv., *at another time;* **alias ....alias,** *at one time....at another, now....now.*

aliēnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *alienate, estrange; deprive of reason, frenzy, distract.*

aliēnus, a, um, *of another, of others, another's; unfavorable; strange, foreign; out of place.*

aliō, adv., *elsewhere.*

aliquamdiū, adv., *for some time.*

aliquandō, adv., *at some time; at last, at length.*

aliquantō, adv., *somewhat.*

aliquantus, a, um, *some;* neut. as subst., *some portion, a considerable part.*

aliquī, qua, quod, *some, any.*

aliquis, quid, *someone, something.*

aliquot, indeclinable, *several, some.*

aliter, adv., *otherwise, in a different manner, else.*

alius, a, ud, *other, another; different;* **alius....alius,** *one.... another;* **alii....alii,** *some.... others.*

allātus, a, um, from **affero.**

al-liciō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *entice, allure, attract.*

Allobroges, um, m., *the Allobroges,* a tribe in the northern part of the Province.

alō, ere, aluī, altum, *nourish, support, feed; maintain, keep; strengthen, increase, foster.*

Alpēs, ium, f. plur., *the Alps.*

alter, era, erum, *the other; the second; another;* **alter....alter,** *the one....the other.*

alternus, a, um, *alternate.*

altitūd-ō, -inis, f., *height; depth; thickness.*

altus, a, um, *high, lofty; deep;* neut. as subst., **altum, ī,** n., *the deep, deep water, the sea.*

alūta, ae, f., *leather.*

ambactus, ī, m., *vassal, retainer.*

Ambarrī, ōrum, m., *the Ambarri,* a tribe north of the Province, on the Rhone.

Ambiānī, ōrum, m., *the Ambiani,* a tribe in the north of Gaul, on the Channel.

Ambibariī, ōrum, m., *the Ambibarii,* a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

Ambiliātī, ōrum, m., *the Ambiliati,* a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

Ambiorix, igis, m., a chief of the Eburones.

Ambivarētī, ōrum, m., *the Ambivareti,* a tribe in the centre of Gaul.

Ambivaritī, ōrum, m., *the Ambivariti,* a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

ambō, ae, ō, in plur. only, *both.*

āmentia, ae, f., *madness, folly.*

āmentum, ī, n., *thong* (for throwing a javelin).

amfrāctus, see **anfractus.**

amīcitia, ae, f., *friendship, alliance.*

amīcus, a, um, *friendly, devoted.*

amīcus, ī, m., *friend; ally.*

ā-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *lose; let slip.*

amor, ōris, m., *love, affection.*

amplē, adv., *largely, generously;* compar. **amplius,** *more, further, besides.*

amplificō, āre, āvī, ātum, *increase, heighten.*

amplitū-dō, -dinis, f., *size, extent; greatness.*

amplus, a, um, *large, great; magnificent, noble, high.*

an, conj., *or.*

Anartēs, ium, m., *the Anartes,* a tribe in Dacia, north of the Danube.

Ancalites, um, m., *the Ancalites,* a tribe in Britain.

an-ceps, -cipitis, *double, twofold.*

ancora, ae, f., *anchor.*

Andecumborius, ī, m., one of the Remi.

Andēs, ium, m., *the Andes,* a tribe near the mouth of the Loire.

ānfrāctus, ūs, m., *bend, circuit, winding.*

angulus, ī, m., *corner, angle.*

angustē, adv., *closely; sparingly.*

angustiae, ārum, f. plur., *narrow pass, defile; strait, trouble, difficulty.*

angustus, a, um, *narrow, small, contracted; steep;* neut. as subst., *critical position.*

anima, ae, f., *soul.*

animadver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *notice, observe; attend to, punish.*

anim-al, -ālis, n., *animal, living being.*

animus, ī, m., *soul, mind, heart, spirit, will; feelings; courage; character, disposition; consciousness; pride, ambition; pleasure, amusement.*

annōtinus, a, um, *of the year before.*

annus, ī, m., *year.*

annuus, a, um, *yearly, for a year.*

ānser, eris, m., *goose.*

ante, prep. w. acc., *before;* adv., *before, formerly, previously; above.*

anteā, adv., *before, formerly, previously; hitherto.*

ante-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *go before, go in advance, precede; outstrip, anticipate; surpass, excel.*

antecursor, ōris, m., *scout, vanguard, advance guard.*

ante-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *prefer, consider superior.*

antenna, ae, f., *sail-yard.*

ante-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *place before, regard of more importance than.*

antever-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *prefer.*

antīquitus, adv., *from early times, in olden times, of old, long ago.*

antīquus, a, um, *ancient, old, remote.*

Antistius, ī, m., *Caius Antistius Reginus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Antōnius, ī, m., *Marcus Antonius,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Ap., a contraction for **Appius.**

aper-iō, īre, uī, -tum, *open;* perf. part. pass. **apertus** as adj., *open, unprotected, uncovered, exposed; clear; unchecked.*

apertē, adv., *openly.*

Apoll-ō, -inis, m., *Apollo,* a Roman god.

apparō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prepare, make ready.*

appellō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call, name; address, call upon, accost.*

ap-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *bring in to shore, land, bring to land.*

ap-petō, ere, -petīvī, -petītum, *seek, aim at; approach.*

Appius, ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

applicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *apply;* with reflexive, *lean against.*

apportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring.*

approbō, āre, āvī, ātum, *approve of, commend.*

appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātum, *approach, draw near.*

appulsus, a, um, from **appello, ere.**

Aprīlis, e, adj., *of April.*

aptus, a, um, *suited, suitable, apt.*

apud, prep. w. acc., *at, with, among, near, in the presence of; in one's opinion.*

aqua, ae, f., *water.*

aquātiō, -ōnis, f., *getting water.*

aquila, ae, f., *eagle,* the ensign of a Roman legion.

Aquilēia, ae, f., a Roman colony at the head of the Adriatic.

aquilifer, erī, m., *eagle-bearer, standard-bearer.*

Aquītānia, ae, f., *Aquitania,* the southwestern part of Gaul, between the Garonne and the Pyrenees.

Aquītānus, ī, m., *an Aquitanian;* in plur., *the Aquitani,* a people akin to the Spaniards rather than to the Gauls, dwelling in the southwestern part of Gaul.

Ar-ar, -aris, m., *the Arar,* a river flowing south into the Rhone.

arbiter, trī, m., *arbitrator.*

arbitrium, ī, n., *pleasure, will, judgment.*

arbitror, ārī, ātus sum, *think, consider, judge.*

arbor, oris, f., *tree.*

arcess-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, *summon, send for; invite, call in,*

ardeō, ēre, arsī, arsum, *burn, be on fire, be inflamed.*

Arduenna, ae, f., a forest in the north-east of Gaul.

arduus, a, um, *difficult; steep.*

Arecomicī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Arecomici,* a tribe in the Province near the Pyrenees.

Arēmoricus, a, um, *Armorican;* Aremorica was a collective name given to many tribes in the north-west of Gaul.

argentum, ī, n., *silver.*

argilla, ae, f., *clay.*

āridus, a, um, *dry;* neut. as subst., *dry land.*

ari-ēs, -etis, m., *ram, battering-ram; buttress.*

Ariovistus, ī, m., a chief of the Germans.

Aristius, ī, m., *Marcus Aristius,* a military tribune with Caesar.

arma, ōrum, n. plur., *arms; tackling.*

armāmenta, ōrum, n. plur., *tackling, rigging.*

armātūra, ae, f., *armor, equipment.*

armō, āre, āvī, ātum, *arm, equip;* perf. part. in plur. as subst., *armed men.*

Armoricus, a, um, see **Aremoricus.**

Arpinēius, ī, m., *Caius Arpineius,* a Roman knight with Caesar.

ar-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *seize, lay hold of, secure.*

arroganter, adv., *with presumption, insolently.*

arrogantia, ae, f., *presumption, arrogance, insolence.*

ars, artis, f., *art.*

artē, adv., *closely, tightly, compactly.*

articulus, ī, m., *joint.*

artificium, ī, n., *handicraft; accomplishment, skill; artifice, craft.*

artus, a, um, *dense, thick.*

Arvernus, ī, m., *an Arvernian;* in plur., *the Arverni,* a tribe south of the centre of Gaul.

arx, arcis, f., *citadel, stronghold.*

a-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *climb, ascend, mount.*

ascēnsus, ūs, m., *ascent, ascending; means of ascent.*

aspectus, ūs, m., *appearance, sight.*

asper, era, erum, *severe, fierce, violent.*

assiduus, a, um, *constant, continued, incessant.*

assistō, ere, astitī, *stand near, appear.*

assuē-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, *accustom, train.*

assuē-scō, ere, -vī, -tum, *become accustomed.*

at, conj., *but; yet, at least.*

atque, conj., *and, and further;* in comparisons, *than, as.*

Atre-bas, -batis, m., *an Atrebatian;* in plur., *the Atrebates,* a tribe in the northern part of Gaul, near the straits of Dover.

Atrius, ī, m., *Quintus Atrius,* an officer of Caesar's.

at-texō, ere, -texuī, -textum, *weave on, weave.*

at-tingō, ere, -tigī, -tāctum, *touch, border on; reach.*

attrib-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *assign, give.*

attulī, from **affero.**

auctor, ōris, m., *adviser, approver, advocate, instigator.*

auctōri-tās, -tātis, f., *influence, weight, prestige; power.*

auctus, a, um, part. of **augeo,** *increased, advanced, strengthened.*

audācia, ae, f., *boldness.*

audācter, adv., *boldly, confidently, fearlessly.*

audeō, ēre, ausus sum, *dare, venture, attempt.*

audiō, īre, īvī, ītum, *hear, listen to, hear of;* pres. part., **audiēns, -entis,** *obedient.*

auditiō, -ōnis, f., *hearsay, rumor.*

augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum, *increase, strengthen, promote.*

Aulercī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Aulerci,* a race in the north-west of Gaul, divided into four tribes, the *Eburovices, Brannovices, Diablintes* and *Cenomani.*

Aulus, ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

aureus, a, um, *of gold, golden.*

auriga, ae, m., *charioteer.*

auris, is, f., *ear.*

Auruncul ēius, ī, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Auscī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Ausci,* a tribe near the Pyrenees.

ausus, a, um, from **audeo.**

aut, conj., *or, or else;* repeated, *either ..., or.*

autem, conj., *but, whereas, while; moreover, now.*

autumnus, ī, m., *autumn.*

auxī, from **augeo.**

auxiliāris, e, *auxiliary;* plur. as subst., *the auxiliaries.*

auxilior, ārī, ātus sum, *give aid, help, assist.*

auxilium, ī, n., *aid, help, assistance; resource, support;* in plur., *auxiliaries, reinforcements.*

Avaricēnsis, e, *of Avaricum.*

Avaricum, ī, n., a town in central Gaul, near the Loire.

avāritia, ae, f., *greed, covetousness.*

ā-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, *carry off.*

āver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *turn away, turn* or *put aside; alienate.*

avis, is, f., *bird.*

avus, ī, m., *grandfather.*

Axona, ae, f., a river in the north of Gaul, joining the Seine.

B.

Bacēnis, is, f., a forest in Germany.

Baculus, ī, m., *Publius Sextius Baculus,* a centurion in Caesar's army.

Baleāris, is, m., *Balearic, from the Balearic islands.*

balteus, ī, m., *belt, sword-belt.*

Balventius, ī, m., *Titus Balventius,* a centurion in Caesar's army.

barbarus, a, um, *foreign, uncivilized, rude, barbarian;* m. as subst., **barbarus, ī,** m., *a barbarian.*

Basilus, ī, m., *Lucius Minucius Basilus,* an officer with Caesar.

Batavī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Batavians,* a tribe at the mouth of the Rhine.

Belgae, ārum, m. plur., *the Belgians,* a people occupying the north-east of Gaul, and largely of German origin.

Belgium, ī, n., *Belgium,* the country of the *Belgae.*

bellicōsus, a, um, *warlike.*

bellicus, a, um, *of war, in war.*

bellō, āre, āvī, ātum, *make war, fight.*

Bellovacī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Bellovaci,* a tribe in the northern part of Gaul.

bellum, ī, n., *war.*

bene, adv., (**melius, optimē**), *well, successfully.*

beneficium, ī, n., *kindness, service, favor.*

benevolentia, ae, f., *good will; kindness.*

Bibracte, is, n., the chief town of the Aedui, in the central part of Gaul.

Bibrax, -actis, f., a town of the Remi, in the northern part of Gaul.

Bibrocī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Bibroci,* a tribe of Britain.

biduum, ī, n., *two days, space of two days.*

biennium, ī, n., *two years.*

Bigerriōnes, um, m. plur., *the Bigerriones,* a tribe near the Pyrenees.

bīnī, ae, a, *two each, two by two, two.*

bipartītō, adv., *in two divisions.*

bipedālis, e, *two feet (thick).*

bipertītō, see **bipartito.**

bis, adv., *twice.*

Biturīges, um, m. plur., *the Bituriges,* a tribe in the centre of Gaul, on the Loire.

Boduōgnātus, ī, m., a leader of the Nervii.

Boiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Boii, the Boians,* a nation originally living in Germany on the Danube.

bonitās, -tātis, f., *goodness, excellence, fertility.*

bonus, a, um (melior, optimus), *good;* n. as subst., **bonum, ī,** *advantage;* in plur., *goods, property.*

bōs, bovis, m., *ox.*

bracchium, ī, n., *arm.*

Brannovīces, um, m. plur., *the Brannovices,* a branch of the *Aulerci,* in the north-west of Gaul.

Brannoviī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Brannovii,* a tribe in Gaul.

Bratuspantium, ī, n., a town of the Bellovaci, in the north of Gaul.

brevis, e, *short;* as adv., **brevī,** *in a short time.*

brevitās, -tātis, f., *shortness; short, stature.*

breviter, adv., *briefly.*

Britannī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Britons.*

Britannia, ae, f., *Britain.*

Britannicus, a, um, *of Britain, of or with the Britons.*

brūma, ae, f., *the winter solstice.*

Brūtus, ī, m., *Decimus Brutus,* a lieutenant with Caesar.

C.

C., an abbreviation of **Gaius** (or **Caius**).

Cabillōnum, ī, n., a town of the Aedui, in the central part of Gaul.

Cabūrus, ī, m., *Caius Valerius Caburus,* a Romanized Gaul.

cacūmen, -minis, n., *top, point.*

cadāver, -eris, n., *dead body, corpse.*

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum, *fall, be slain.*

Cadurcus, ī, m., *one of the Cadurci;* in plur., *the Cadurci,* a tribe in Aquitania.

caedes, is, m., *slaughter, massacre, murder.*

caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesum, *cut down, fell.*

caelestis, e, *heavenly;* m. plur. as subst., *the gods.*

caerimōn'a, ae, f., *ceremony, sacred rite.*

Caeroesī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Caeroesi,* a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

caeruleus, a, um, *blue, dark blue.*

Caesar, aris, m., *Caius Julius Caesar,* a Roman general; also *Lucius Caesar,* a lieutenant with Caesar.

Caius, ī, m., see **Gaius.**

calamitās, -tātis, f., *disaster, defeat, loss.*

Calendae, ārum, f. plur., *the Calends,* the first day of each month.

Caletēs, um, and **Caletī, ōrum,** m. plur., *the Caletes* or *Caleti,* a tribe at the mouth of the Seine.

callidus, a, um, *shrewd, cunning.*

cālō, ōnis, m., *soldier's servant, camp-follower.*

campester, tris, tre, *of* or *on the plain; level.*

campus, ī, m., *field, plain.*

Camulogēnus, ī, m., a chief of the Aulerci.

Canīnius, ī, m., *Caius Caninius Rebilus,* a lieutenant of Caesar.

canō, ere, cecinī, cantum, *sing, sound.*

Cantabrī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Cantabrians,* a tribe in the north of Spain.

Cantium, ī, n., *Kent,* in the south-east of England.

caper, prī, m., *goat.*

capillus, ī, m., *hair.*

capiō, ere, cēpī, captum, *take, catch, seize; get, occupy, reach; captivate, overcome; take up, choose, adopt.*

capra, ae, f., *she-goat.*

captīvus, ī, m., *captive, prisoner.*

captus, ūs, m., *capacity, nature.*

cap-ut, -itis, n., *head; person; life; mouth* (of a river).

careō, ēre, uī, *be without, go without.*

carīna, ae, f., *keel.*

Carnūtēs, um, m. plur., *the Carnutes,* a tribe in central Gaul on the Loire.

carō, carnis, f., *flesh, meat.*

car-pō, ere, -psī, -ptum, *criticise, blame.*

carrus, ī, m., *cart, wagon.*

cārus, a, um, *dear, valuable.*

Carvilius, ī, m., a king ruling in Kent.

casa, ae, f., *hut.*

cāseus, ī, m., *cheese.*

Cassī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Cassi,* a tribe in Britain.

Cassiānus, a, um, *of* or *with Cassius.*

cassis, -idis, m., *helmet.*

Cassius, ī, m., *Lucius Cassius,* a Roman general, consul in B.C. 107.

Cassivellaunus, ī, m., a British chief.

castellum, ī, n., *fort, stronghold.*

Casticus, ī, m., a chief of the Sequani.

castra, ōrum, n. plur., *camp, encampment.*

cāsus, ūs, m., *happening, occurrence; accident, chance; fate, disaster; emergency.*

Catamantaloedes, is, m., a chief of the Sequani.

catēna, ae, f., *chain.*

Caturiges, um, m. plur., *the Caturiges,* a tribe in the Province, near the Alps.

Catuvolcus, ī, m., a chief of the Eburones.

causa, ae, f., *cause, reason; case; pretext, excuse; condition;* in abl. sing., *for the sake of, for the purpose of.*

cautē, adv., *cautiously, with caution.*

cautēs, is, m., *sharp rock, reef.*

Cavarillus, ī, m., a chief of the Aedui.

Cavarīnus, ī, m., king of the Senones.

caveō, ēre, cāvī, cautum, *be on one's guard; give security.*

cēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum, *retreat, give way, retire; yield; withdraw.*

celer, eris, ere, *swift, speedy, sudden.*

celeritās, -tātis, f., *swiftness, speed, rapidity.*

celeriter, adv., (**celerius, celerrimē**), *swiftly, quickly, rapidly.*

cēlō, āre, āvī, ātum, *conceal, hide.*

Celtae, ārum, m. plur., *the Celts,* or Gauls, one of the three great nations inhabiting Gaul.

Celtillus, ī, m., a chief of the Arverni.

Cēnabēnsis, is, m., *a man of Cenabum;* in plur., *the people of Cenabum.*

Cēnabum, ī, n., a town of central Gaul, on the Loire.

Cenimāgnī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Cenimagni,* a tribe of Britain.

Cenomānī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Cenomani,* a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.

cēns-eō, ēre, -uī, -um, *be of opinion, think; hold, decree; advise.*

cēnsus, ūs, m., *census, enumeration.*

centum, *a hundred.*

centuriō, -ōnis, m., *centurion* (an officer in the Roman army).

cēpī, from **capio.**

cernō, ere, crēvī, crētum, *perceive, see, make out.*

certāmen, -minis, n., *contest; engagement.*

certē, adv., *certainly, with certainty; at least.*

certus, a, um, *certain, fixed, specified, sure, definite; trustworthy;* **certiorem facere,** *to inform.*

cervus, ī, m., *stag; fork-shaped branch.*

cēs-pes, -pitis, m., *sod, turf.*

cēterī, ae, a, *the others, the rest.*

Ceutrōnes, um, m. plur., *the Ceutrones,* 1. a tribe in the Alps; 2. a tribe of the Belgae.

Cevenna, ae, f., *the Cevennes,* a mountain range in the south-east of Gaul, west of the Rhone.

Chēruscī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Cherusci,* a German tribe.

cibārius, a, um, *of food;* n. plur. as subst., *food, provisions.*

cibus, ī, m. *food.*

Cicerō, ōnis, m., *Quintus Tullius Cicero,* one of Caesar's lieutenants, and a brother of the orator.

Cimberius, ī, m., a chief of the Suebi.

Cimbrī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Cimbri,* a German tribe that invaded Gaul about 110 B.C.

Cingetorix, -igis, m., 1. a chief of the Treveri; 2. a king of Kent.

cin-gō, ere, -xī, -ctum, *surround, encircle; man.*

cippus, ī, m., *post, stake, palisade.*

circinus, ī, m., *pair of compasses.*

circiter, adv. and prep. w. acc., *about.*

circuitus, a, um, perf. part. of **circumeo.**

circuitus, ūs, m., *circumference, circuit; detour, circuitous route.*

circum, prep. w. acc., *around, about, near.*

circum-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut around, cut;* perf. part. pass., *isolated, steep.*

circumclū-dō, ere, -sī, -sum, *encircle, line, put a rim around.*

circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *put around; surround, encircle.*

circum-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead around; draw around.*

circum-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum or **circuitum,** *go around, surround; make the rounds of, visit.*

circum-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *pour around,* hence, in pass., *pour in from all sides, crowd around, surround.*

circum-iciō, ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *place around.*

circum-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send around.*

circummūniō, īre, īvī, ītum, *fortify all round, protect.*

circum-plector, ī, -plexus sum, *surround; embrace, include.*

circum-sistō, ere, -stetī, *surround, hem in, crowd around; rally around.*

circum-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *look about for, look carefully at; consider, examine carefully.*

circum-stō, -stāre, -stetī, *surround.*

circumvallō, āre, āvī, ātum, *surround with walls, invest, blockade.*

circum-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, *carry around;* in pass., *ride around.*

circum-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *surround, get round, outflank; outwit, betray, deceive, defraud.*

cis, prep. w. acc., *on this side of.*

Cisalpīnus, a, um, *Cisalpine, on this* (i.e. *the Italian*) *side of the Alps.*

Cisrhenānus, a, um, *on this* (i.e. *the western*) *side of the Rhine.*

Cita, ae, m., *Caius Fufius Cita,* a Roman knight.

citerior, ius, (comparative) *hither, nearer.*

citō, adv., (**citius, citissimē**), *quickly.*

citō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hasten;* perf. part., **citātus,** as adj., *swift.*

citrā, prep. w. acc., *on this side of.*

citrō, adv., *hither.*

cīvis, is, m., *citizen.*

cīvitās, -tātis, f., *state; citizenship.*

clam, adv., *secretly.*

clāmitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *cry out, keep shouting.*

clāmor, -ōris, m., *shout, shouting, cry.*

clandestīnus, a, um, *secret.*

clārus, a, um, *loud, distinct.*

classis, is, f., *fleet.*

Claudius, ī, m., *Appius Claudius,* consul in 51 B.C.

claudō, ere, clausī, clausum, *close;* w. **agmen,** *bring up the rear.*

clāvus, ī, m., *nail.*

clēmentia, ae, f., *mercifulness, moderation, forbearance.*

cliēns, -entis, m., *dependant, retainer, vassal.*

clientēla, ae, f., *dependency, vassalage; protection;* in plur., *dependants.*

clīvus, ī, m., *slope, ascent.*

Clōdius, ī, m., *Publius Clodius,* a bitter partisan of Caesar.

Cn., an abbrevation for **Gnaeus.**

coacervō, āre, āvī, ātum, *heap up, crowd together.*

coāctus, a, um, from **cogo.**

coāctus, ūs, m., *compulsion.*

coagmentō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fasten together.*

Cocosātes, um, m. plur., *the Cocosates,* a tribe of Aquitania.

coēgī, from **cogo.**

co-emō, ere, -ēmī, -emptum, *buy up.*

[illegible], -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *unite, join.*

coepī, isse, coeptus sum, *began, have begun.*

coerceō, ēre, uī, itum, *restrain, check.*

cōgitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *consider, think, reflect, have thoughts; take thought, plan.*

cōgnātiō, -ōnis, f., *kinship; kinsmen, clan, family connections.*

cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, *perceive, learn, find out, ascertain, become acquainted with; inquire into;* in perf. tenses, *know, be aware.*

cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum, *collect, gather, get together; compel, force, be urgent.*

co-hors, -hortis, f., *a cohort,* one tenth of a legion.

cohortātiō, -ōnis, f., *encouraging, address.*

cohortor, ārī, ātus sum, *encourage, address, urge.*

coīre, from **coeo.**

collātus, a, um, from **confero.**

collaudō, āre, āvī, ātum, *praise, extol, highly commend.*

colligō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fasten, pin together.*

col-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *gather, collect; acquire;* with **se,** *collect one's self, recover, rally.*

collis, is, m., *hill.*

collocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *place, station; arrange, stow; settle; give in marriage.*

colloquium, ī, n., *conversation, interview, conference.*

col-loquor, ī, -locūtus sum, *converse, confer, have an interview.*

colō, ere, coluī, cultum, *till, cultivate; worship.*

colōnia, ae, f., *colony, settlement.*

color, ōris, m., *color.*

com-būrō, ere, -bussī, -būstum, *burn up.*

com-es, -itis, m., *companion, attendant.*

comitia, -ōrum, n. plur., *comitia, election.*

comitor, ārī, ātus sum, *accompany.*

commeātus, ūs, m., *supplies, provisions; passage, trip.*

commemorō, āre, āvī, ātum, *mention, speak of, relate.*

commendō, āre, āvī, ātum, *commend.*

commeō, āre, āvī, ātum, *visit, resort, go to and fro.*

comminus, adv., *hand to hand, in close combat.*

commissūra, ae, f., *juncture, joining.*

com-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *join;* w. **proelium,** *begin; entrust, put trust in; allow, commit, do; leave it possible, allow to come about.*

Commius, ī, m., a king of the Atrebates.

commodē, adv., *easily, to advantage, effectively, conveniently.*

commodus, a, um, *fitting, suitable, advantageous, favorable;* neut. as subst., **commodum, ī,** *advantage, interest, convenience, blessing.*

commone-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, *remind.*

commoror, ārī, ātus sum, *stay, delay, linger.*

com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move; alarm, disturb; influence, impress.*

commūnicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *communicate, share, consult, impart; join, add.*

commūniō, īre, īvī, ītum, *strongly fortify, secure; build.*

commūnis, e, *common, general, joint, concerted.*

commūtātiō, -ōnis, f., *change; turn.*

commūtō, āre, āvī, ātum, *change, exchange.*

comparō, āre, āvī, ātum, *compare; prepare, provide, procure raise, get.*

com-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive, drive in, gather.*

compendium, ī, n., *gain, profit.*

com-periō, īre, -perī, -pertum, *learn, find out, discover;* perf. part. as adj., *certain.*

com-plector, ī, -plexus sum, *embrace; include, enclose.*

compl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *fill, fill up; man.*

complūrēs, a, *several, many, a great many.*

comportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring in, collect.*

compre-hendō, ere, -hendī, -hēnsum, *seize, grasp, catch, capture; take.*

comprobō, āre, āvī, ātum, *approve, justify, confirm.*

compulsus, a, um, from **compello.**

cōnātum, ī, n., *attempt, undertaking.*

cōnātus, ūs, m., *attempt.*

con-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *grant, allow, permit; yield, give in.*

concertō, āre, āvī, ātum, *contend, fight.*

concēssus, ūs, m., *permission.*

con-cidō, ere, -cidī, *fall, fall down.*

con-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut down, slay;* perf. part. as adj., *cut up, broken.*

conciliō, āre, āvī, ātum, *win over; gain, obtain.*

concilium, ī, n., *meeting, assembly, council.*

concīsus, a, um, from **concīdo.**

concitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *arouse, stir up, call out.*

conclāmō, āre, āvī, ātum, *cry out, call out, shout.*

con-clūdō, ēre, -clūsī, -clūsum, *shut up, enclose.*

Conconnetodumnus, ī, m., a leader of the Carnutes.

concrep-ō, āre, -uī, -itum, *clash, make a clashing noise.*

con-currō, ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursum, *run together, rally, rush up, hasten, flock.*

concursō, āre, āvī, ātum, *run to and fro.*

concursus, ūs, m., *running together, rally, crowd; rush, onset, charge; collision.*

condemnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *declare guilty.*

condiciō, -ōnis, f., *terms, agreement, condition; state.*

condōnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *give up, forgive for the sake of.*

Condrūsī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Condrusi,* a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

con-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *gather, assemble: hire.*

cōn-ferciō, īre, -fersī, -fertum, *pack closely;* perf. part. **cōnfertus, a, um,** *crowded, in close array, in close order.*

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum, *gather, collect, bring in, convey;* with **se,** *betake one's self; compare; put off, postpone; lay the blame on, ascribe.*

cōnfertus, a, um, from **conferciō.**

cōnfestim, adv., *immediately, at once.*

cōn-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *finish, carry out, complete, accomplish; make out, work up; exhaust, wear out.*

cōn-fīdō, ere, -fīsus sum, *trust, rely on, have confidence.*

cōn-figō, ere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *fasten.*

cōnfīnis, e, *adjacent, neighboring.*

cōnfīnium, ī, n., *neighborhood, borders.*

cōn-fīō, -fierī, irregular pass. of **conficio.**

cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, f., *assurance, assertion.*

cōnfirmō, āre, āvī, ātum, *strengthen; establish, fix; declare, give pledge; encourage, reassure, confirm, rouse.*

cōnfīsus, a, um, from **confīdo.**

cōn-fiteor, ērī, -fessus sum, *confess, acknowledge.*

cōnfīxus, a, um, from **configo.**

cōnflagrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *be on fire, be in flames.*

cōnflīctō, āre, āvī, ātum, *harass.*

cōnflīgō, ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, *contend, engage, fight.*

cōnfluēns, entis, m., *confluence, juncture.*

cōn-fluō, ere, -flūxī, *gather, flock.*

cōn-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, *flee for refuge, flee.*

cōn-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *mix, gather together.*

con-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *meet; engage, contend, fight.*

congressus, ūs, m., *engagement, conflict.*

conjectūra, ae, f., *conjecture, guess.*

con-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *hurl, cast, throw; drive; put, place;* w. **se,** *rush.*

conjunctim, adv., *jointly, together.*

con-jungō, ere, -junxī, -junctum, *join, connect, unite.*

con-junx, -jugis, m. and f., *husband; wife.*

conjūrātiō, -ōnis, f., *conspiracy, combination, league.*

conjūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *take a (joint) oath, conspire, combine.*

cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, *try, attempt, undertake, make an attempt.*

conqui-ēscō, ere, -ēvī, -ētum, *rest.*

con-quīrō, ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *search for, hunt up, collect.*

cōnsanguineus, ī, m., *kinsman.*

cōn-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *ascend, mount; embark on, go on board.*

cōnscientia, ae, f., *consciousness.*

cōn-scīscō, ere, -scīvī, -scītum, *resolve on;* w. **sibi mortem,** *commit suicide.*

cōnscius, a, um, *conscious.*

cōn-scrībō, ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *write; enlist, enroll, levy.*

cōnsecrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *consecrate.*

cōnsector, ārī, ātus sum, *follow up, pursue.*

cōnsecūtus, a, um, from **consequor.**

cōnsēdī, from **consido.**

cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *unanimity.*

cōnsēnsus, ūs, m., *agreement, consent.*

cōn-sentiō, īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *agree, combine, conspire.*

cōn-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, *follow, overtake; attain, obtain, secure; succeed.*

cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātum, *preserve, save, spare, protect; observe, maintain.*

Cōnsidius, ī, m., *Publius Considius,* one of Caesar's soldiers.

cōn-sīdō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *encamp, take up a position; settle; hold a session.*

cōnsilium, ī, n., *deliberation, consultation; plan, design, resolve, purpose; prudence, discretion; counsel, advice; council.*

cōnsimilis, e, *very similar, like.*

cōn-sistō, ere, -stitī, *take up position, stand, get a footing; halt, stop, make a stand; ground; settle; consist of, depend on.*

cōnsobrīnus, ī, m., *cousin.*

cōnsōlor, ārī, ātus sum, *console.*

cōnspectus, ūs, m., *sight, view, presence.*

cōn-spiciō, ere, -spexī, spectum, *catch sight of, observe, see.*

cōnspicor, ārī, ātus sum, *catch sight of, observe, see.*

cōnspīrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *combine, conspire.*

cōnstanter, adv., *uniformly; firmly, steadily.*

cōnstantia, ae, f., *firmness, steadfastness, constancy.*

cōnsternō, āre, āvī, ātum, *dismay, impress.*

cōn-sternō, ere, -strāvī, -strātum, *cover, floor.*

cōnstīpō, āre, āvī, ātum, *crowd, press.*

cōnstitī, from **consisto.**

cōnstit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *establish, arrange, appoint, fix; decide, resolve, determine; place, station, draw up.*

cōn-stō, āre, -stitī, -stātum, *cost; depend on; remain, be unchanged;* impersonal use, *it is certain, agreed, established, evident.*

cōn-suēscō, ere, -suēvī, -suētum, *become accustomed;* in perf. tenses, *be accustomed.*

cōnsuētū-dō, -dinis, f., *custom, habit.*

cōn-sul, -sulis, m., *consul,* the chief magistrate of Rome, of whom there were two, elected for a year.

cōnsulātus, ūs, m., *consulship.*

cōnsul-ō, ere, -uī, -tum, *consult, discuss, deliberate; provide for, take thought for, have regard for.*

cōnsultō, āre, āvī, ātum, *deliberate, take counsel.*

cōnsultō, adv., *designedly, on purpose.*

cōnsultum, ī, n., *decree.*

cōn-sūmō, ere, -sumpsī, -sumptum, *spend; consume, exhaust.*

cōn-surgō, ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, *rise up.*

contabulō, āre, āvī, ātum, *build up (by stories).*

contāgiō, -ōnis, f., *contact, contagion.*

contāminō, āre, āvī, ātum, *contaminate, stain.*

con-tegō, ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *cover up.*

con-temnō, ere, -tempsī, temptum, *despise.*

contemptiō, -ōnis, f., *contempt.*

contemptus, ūs, m., *scorn; object of contempt.*

conten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum, *hasten, make one's way, push on; strive, exert one's self; struggle, fight, contend; maintain, insist.*

contentiō, -ōnis, f., *struggle, contest.*

contentus, a, um, *content, satisfied.*

contestor, ārī, ātus sum, *call upon, invoke.*

contex-ō, ere, -uī, -tum, *weave, join, construct.*

contigī, from **contingo.**

continēns, entis, f., *the continent, mainland.*

continenter, adv., *continually, uninterruptedly, without stopping.*

continentia, ae, f., *self-control, self-restraint.*

con-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *hold together; contain, hem in, restrain, keep, hold; bound, surround, occupy;* pres. part. as adj., **continēns, -entis,** *continual, incessant, uninterrupted, unbroken, continuous.*

con-tingō, ere, -tigī, -tactum, *touch, reach, extend to; happen, fall to the lot of.*

continuātiō, -ōnis, f., *continuance, succession.*

continuō, adv., *at once, immediately.*

continuus, a, um, *successive, unbroken, continuous.*

contiō, -ōnis, f., *assembly, meeting.*

contiōnor, ārī, ātus sum, *address.*

contrā, 1. adv., *against; otherwise;* **contra atque,** *contrary to what;* 2. prep. w. acc., *opposite, over against; against.*

con-trahō, ere, -trāxī, -tractum, *make smaller, reduce; collect, gather together.*

contrārius, a, um, *opposite;* **ex contrario,** *on the contrary.*

contrōversia, ae, f., *quarrel, dispute, feud.*

contumēlia, ae, f., *disgrace, insult, affront; buffeting, violence.*

conval-ēscō, ere, -uī, *recover, regain health.*

convallis, is, f., *(enclosed) valley.*

con-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, *gather, bring in.*

con-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come together, meet, assemble, gather; come, arrive; be agreed upon; be fitting.*

conventus, ūs, m., *meeting, assembly; assizes.*

conver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *turn, turn about; change, alter;* w. **signa,** *wheel about.*

Convictolitāvis, is, m., an Aeduan of high rank.

con-vincō, ere, -vīcī, -victum, *prove, bring home.*

convocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call together, call, summon.*

co-orior, īrī, -ortus sum, *arise, spring up, break out.*

cōpia, ae, f., *supply, abundance, quantity; resources, wealth;* in plur., *forces, troops.*

cōpiōsus, a, um, *well-supplied, rich.*

cōpula, ae, f., *grappling hook.*

cor, cordis, n., *heart;* **cordi esse,** *be dear, be cherished.*

cōram, adv., *in person, face to face.*

corium, ī, n., *skin, hide.*

cornū, ūs, n., *horn; wing* (of an army).

corōna, ae, f., *garland; circle;* **sub corona,** *at auction.*

corp-us, -oris, n., *body, person; dead body, corpse; system.*

cor-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *destroy.*

cort-ex, -icis, m., *bark.*

Cōrus, ī, m., *the north-west wind.*

cotīdiānus, a, um, *daily; regular, usual.*

cotīdiē, adv., *daily, every day.*

Cotta, ae, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Cotus, ī, m., an Aeduan of high rank.

crassitū-dō, -dinis, f., *thickness.*

Crassus, ī, m., 1. *Marcus Licinius Crassus,* a Roman general, consul 55 B.C.; 2. his son, *Marcus Crassus,* quaestor in Caesar's army; 3. a younger son, *Publius Crassus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

crātēs, is, f., *hurdle, wickerwork.*

crēber, bra, brum, *frequent, numerous, crowded.*

crēbrō, adv., *frequently, at short intervals.*

crē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *believe; trust.*

cremō, āre, āvī, ātum, *burn.*

creō, āre, āvī, ātum, *appoint, elect.*

Crēs, Crētis, m., *a Cretan.*

crēscō, ere, crēvī, crētum, *grow, become powerful, rise.*

Critognātus, ī, m., a chief of the Arverni.

cruciātus, ūs, m., *torture, cruelty.*

crūdēlitās, -tātis, f., *cruelty.*

crudēliter, adv., *cruelly.*

crūs, crūris, n., *leg.*

cubīle, is, n., *bed, resting place.*

culmen, -minis, n., *height, summit.*

culpa, ae, f., *blame, fault.*

cultus, ūs, m., *refinement, civilization, style of life; care, habit.*

cum, prep. w. abl., *with, together with.*

cum, conj., *when, whenever, while; as, since; although;* **cum primum,** *as soon as;* **cum....tum,** *both....and, not only....but also.*

cunctātiō, -ōnis, f., *hesitation, delay.*

cunctor, ārī, ātus sum, *hesitate, delay.*

cūnctus, a, um, *all, all together.*

cuneātim, adv., *in the form of a wedge, in a compact mass.*

cuneus, ī, m., *wedge.*

cunīculus, ī, m., *burrow; mine.*

cupidē, adv., *eagerly.*

cupiditās, -tātis, f., *eagerness, eager desire.*

cupidus, a, um, *eager, desirous, fond, ambitious.*

cup-iō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, *be eager; be well disposed.*

cūr, adv., *why.*

cūra, ae, f., *care;* **curae esse,** *be one's care, be carefully attended to.*

Curiosolites, um, m., *the Curiosolites,* a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

cūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *attend to, take care;* with gerundive, *cause to be (done), have (done).*

currō, ere, cucurrī, cursum, *run.*

currus, ūs, m., *chariot.*

cursus, ūs, m., *running, speed, pace; course; voyage, passage.*

custōdia, ae, f., *guard, garrison.*

custōdiō, īre, īvī, ītum, *guard.*

cus-tōs, -tōdis, m., *guard; watch, spy.*

D.

D., an abbreviation for **Decimus.**

Dācī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Dacians,* a tribe of central Europe, living north of the Danube.

damnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *condemn, find guilty;* perf. part. as subst., **damnātus, ī,** m., *criminal, outlaw.*

damnum, ī, n., *loss.*

Dānuvius, ī, m., *the Danube.*

dē, prep. w. abl., *from, down from; in accordance with, for; of, out of; about, concerning, of.*

dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum, *owe; ought, should, cannot help;* in pass., *be due.*

dē-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *withdraw, depart; keep aloof, shun; die.*

decem, *ten.*

dēceptus, a, um, from **decipio.**

dē-cernō, ere, -crēvī, -crētum, *decide, determine; decree, order.*

dēcertō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight, fight a decisive battle, decide the issue.*

dēcēssī, from **decedo.**

dēcēssus, ūs, m., *departure; ebb.*

Decetia, ae, f., a town of the Aedui, on the Loire.

dē-cidō, ere, -cidī, *fall.*

decimus, a, um, *tenth.*

Decimus, ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

dē-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *deceive.*

dēclārō, āre, āvī, ātum, *declare, proclaim.*

dēclīvis, e, *sloping;* neut. as subst., *slope.*

dēclīvitās, -tātis, f., *downward slope.*

dēcrētum, ī, n., *decree, decision.*

dēcrētus, a, um, from **decerno.**

dēcrēvī, from **decerno.**

decumānus, a, um, w. **porta,** *the rear gate.*

decuriō, -ōnis, m., *decurion,* a cavalry officer.

dē-currō, ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursum, *run down.*

dēdec-us, -oris, n., *disgrace.*

dedī, from **do.**

dēdidī, from **dedo.**

dēditīcius, a, um, *surrendered;* m. as subst., *one who has surrendered, prisoner, subject.*

dēditiō, -ōnis, f., *surrender, submission, capitulation.*

dē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *surrender, give up; devote.*

dē-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, take away, withdraw, remove; bring; influence; launch; lead (home), marry.*

dēfatīgātiō, -ōnis, f., *exhaustion.*

dēfatīgō, āre, āvī, ātum, *weary, exhaust, wear out.*

dēfectiō, -ōnis, f., *revolt.*

dē-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *repel; defend, protect.*

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *defence, protection.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m., *defender.*

dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *carry, bring, convey;* in pass., *drift, fall, be turned aside; report; give, confer.*

dēfessus, a, um, *worn out, weary, exhausted.*

dē-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *fail, give out, be wanting; revolt, forsake.*

dē-fīgō, ere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *fix, set, fasten, plant firmly.*
dēfīniō, īre, īvī, ītum, *fix, assign.*
dē-fluō, ere, -fluxī, -fluctum, *flow off, divide.*
dēfore, fut. infin. of **dēsum.**
dēformis, e, *ill-shaped, unsightly, unattractive.*
dē-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *avoid, shun.*
deinceps, adv., *in turn, after that.*
deinde, adv., *then, thereupon, next.*
dējectus, ūs, m., *slope, abrupt side.*
dē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw down, cast down; carry down, overthrow; drive off, dislodge; disappoint.*
dēlātus, a, um, from **dēfero.**
dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātum, *delight;* in pass., *take pleasure in.*
dēlēctus, ūs, m., *levy.*
dēlēctus, a, um, and **dēlēgī** from **dēligo, ere.**
dēl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *destroy, overthrow; wipe out.*
dēlīberō, āre, āvī, ātum, *discuss, consider, deliberate.*
dēlībrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *strip of bark, peel.*
dēlictum, ī, n., *offence, fault.*
dēligō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fasten, tie, moor.*
dē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *pick out, choose, select.*
dēlit-ēscō, ere, -uī, *hide, lurk, lie concealed.*
dēmentia, ae, f., *madness, folly.*
dē-metō, ere, -messuī, -messum, *cut, reap.*
dēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *depart, move away, abandon.*
dēmin-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *diminish, lessen, take away, detract, abate.*
dē-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *let down, lower;* w. se, *descend, be disheartened;* perf. part., **dēmissus,** *bowed, drooping, lowlying.*
dēmō, ere, dēmpsī, dēmptum, *take down.*
dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *point out, explain, state, mention.*
dēmoror, ārī, ātus sum, *delay, retard.*
dēmum, adv., *at last, at length.*
dēnegō, āre, āvī, ātum, *refuse, deny.*
dēnī, ae, a, *ten each, in groups of ten.*
dēnique, adv., *at length, finally; at least.*
dēnsus, a, um, *dense, close, thick.*
dēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *announce, give notice, warn, threaten.*
dē-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive off,* or *away, dislodge.*
dēper-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *lose, forfeit.*
dēper-eō, -īre, -iī, *perish, be lost.*
dē-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *lay aside, give up; deposit, store, place.*
dēpopulor, ārī, ātus sum, *lay waste, ravage.*
dēportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry off, remove.*
dē-poscō, ere, -poposcī, *demand, call for.*
dēpositus, a, um, from **dēpono.**
dēprecātor, -tōris, m., *intercessor, advocate.*
dēprecor, ārī, ātus sum, *beg off, avert by prayer, petition against, request (not); pray for mercy.*
dēpre-hendō, ere, -hendī, -hēnsum, *catch, seize, surprise, come upon.*
dēpūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight desperately.*
dēpulsus, a, um, from **dēpello.**
dērīvō, āre, āvī, ātum, *divert, draw.*
dērogō, āre, āvī, ātum, *withdraw, take away.*
dē-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *descend, go down; resort, have recourse, yield.*
dēsec-ō, āre, -uī, -tum, *cut off.*

dēser-ō, ere, -uī, -tum, *desert, abandon, forsake;* perf. part. as adj., *solitary, lonely.*

dēsertor, -tōris, m., *deserter.*

dēsīderō, āre, āvī, ātum, *desire, wish for; lose, miss.*

dēsidia, ae, f., *idleness, indolence.*

dēsīgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *indicate, point at, aim at.*

dē-siliō, īre, -siluī, -sultum, *leap down.*

dē-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum, *stop, cease; abandon, give up, desist from.*

dēspectus, a, um, from **despicio.**

dēspectus, ūs, m., *view down, prospect* (from a height); *height.*

dēspērātiō, -ōnis, f., *despair.*

dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātum, *give up hope, despair;* perf. part. as adj., *desperate.*

dē-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *look down; look down upon, despise.*

dēspoliō, āre, āvī, ātum, *strip, deprive.*

dēstinō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fasten, make fast; appoint, set.*

dēstit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *abandon, desert.*

dē-stringō, ere, -strinxī, -strictum, *draw.*

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, *be lacking, be missing, be wanting, fail; neglect.*

dēsuper, adv., *from above.*

dēterior, ius, (comparative), *inferior, less valuable.*

dēterreō, ēre, uī, itum, *deter, discourage, prevent.*

dētestor, ārī, ātus sum, *curse, denounce.*

dē-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *detain, hinder, delay.*

dētractō, āre, āvī, ātum, *avoid, escape.*

dē-trahō, ere, -traxī, -tractum, *take from, withdraw, remove; snatch from.*

dētrectō, āre, see **detracto.**

dētrīmentōsus, a, um, *detrimental, disadvantageous, hurtful.*

dētrīmentum, ī, n., *loss, injury, damage; defeat.*

dē-trūdō, ere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *strip off, remove.*

dētulī, from **defero.**

dēturbō, āre, āvī, ātum, *drive off, dislodge.*

de-ūrō, ere, -ūssī, -ūstum, *burn down.*

deus, ī, m., *god.*

dē-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, *bring, convey.*

dē-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come (down).*

dēvexus, a, um, *sloping, descending;* neut. as subst., *descent, incline.*

dē-vincō, ere, -vīcī, -victum, *subdue, conquer (completely).*

dēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call; bring.*

dē-voveō, ēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, *vow, consecrate, devote;* perf. part. as subst., *devoted follower.*

dexter, tra, trum, *right, on the right;* fem. **dextra,** as subst., (sc. **manus**), *the right hand.*

dī, or **diī,** from **deus.**

Diablintes, um, m., *the Diablintes,* a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.

diciō, -ōnis, f., *sway, rule, power.*

dicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *consecrate, adjudge; give over.*

dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum, *say, state, mention; appoint, name; plead; adjudge, administer.*

dictiō, -ōnis, f., *pleading.*

dictum, ī, n., *word, order, command.*

dī-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *divide, separate.*

diēs, ēī, m. (rarely f.), *day; time;* **in dies,** *daily.*

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum, *differ, be different; spread, scatter; put off, postpone.*

difficilis, e, *difficult.*

difficultās, -tātis, f., *difficulty*.

dif-fīdō, ere, -fīsus sum, *distrust, lack confidence, despair*.

dif-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *spread out; extend*.

digitus, ī, m., *finger*.

dignitās, -tātis, f., *worth, esteem; reputation, rank, standing; dignity, honor*.

dignus, a, um, *worthy, worth*.

dijūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *decide*.

dīlēctus, a, um, from **diligo**.

dīligenter, adv., *carefully, exactly, punctually, scrupulously*.

dīligentia, ae, f., *carefulness, care, pains, zeal, attention*.

dī-ligō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *love*.

dī-mētior, īrī, -mēnsus sum, *measure out, proportion*.

dīmicātiō, -ōnis, f., *struggle, contest*.

dīmicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight, struggle, contend, engage*.

dīmidius, a, um, *half*; neut. as subst., *half*.

dī-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send out, despatch; dismiss, send away; lose, let slip; abandon, give up*.

dīrēctē, adv., *straight, exactly*.

dī-rigō, ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *form* (in straight line), *arrange*; perf. part. as adj., **dīrēctus, a, um**, *straight*.

dir-imō, ere, -ēmī, -emptum, *break up*.

dī-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *plunder, pillage, seize*.

Dīs, Dītis, m., *Pluto*, the god of the lower world.

dis-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *go away, withdraw, depart*; with **ab**, *leave; forsake, abandon; swerve from*.

disceptātor, -ōris, m., *judge, umpire*.

dis-cernō, ere, -crēvī, -crētum, *distinguish*.

discēssus, ūs, m., *departure, withdrawal*.

disciplīna, ae, f., *training, instruction, learning, system*.

dis-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *keep apart, separate*.

discō, ere, didicī, *learn, be instructed*.

discrīmen, -minis, n., *crisis, danger, critical condition*.

dis-cutiō, ere, -cussī, -cussum, *disperse, remove*.

dis-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *break up, scatter; tear off*.

dis-pār, -paris, *unequal; inferior*.

disparō, āre, āvī, ātum, *separate*.

di-spergō, ere, -spersī, -spersum, *scatter, disperse*.

dis-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *place at intervals, dispose, post, arrange, set, array*.

disputātiō, -ōnis, f., *discussion, debate*.

disputō, āre, āvī, ātum, *discuss, engage in discussion*.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *dissension, disagreement, dispute, strife*.

dis-sentiō, īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *dissent, differ, disagree*.

dis-serō, ere, -sēvī, -situm, *plant here and there, scatter about*.

dissimulō, āre, āvī, ātum, *conceal*.

dissipō, āre, āvī, ātum, *scatter, disperse, rout*.

dis-suādeō, ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *dissuade, oppose*.

dis-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *keep apart, separate; keep at a distance*.

di-stō, -stāre, *be apart, stand apart, be distant*.

dis-trahō, ere, -traxī, -tractum, *tear apart, wrench asunder*.

distrib-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *assign, allot, distribute, divide*.

distulī, from **differo**.

dītissimus, superlative of **dives**.

diū, adv., (**diūtius**, **diūtissimē**), *long, for a long time*; **quam diu**, *as long as*.

diurnus, a, um, *by day, during the day*.

diūtinus, a, um, *long, long-continued*.

diūturnitās, -tātis, f., *length, long duration*.

diūturnus, a, um, *long, prolonged*.

dīver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *separate*; perf. part. as adj., **diversus, a, um**, *distant, at a distance, remote; facing in a different direction; different; separate, apart*.

dīv-es, -itis, *rich*.

Divicō, -ōnis, m., a leader of the Helvetii.

dī-vidō, ere, -vīsī, -vīsum, *divide, separate, distribute*.

dīvīnus, a, um, *divine, sacred*.

Divitiacus, ī, m., 1. a leader of the Aedui; 2. a king of the Suessiones.

dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give, grant, allow, afford; cause*; **inter se dare**, *exchange*; w. **in fugam**, *put*; **operam dare**, *take pains, see to it*.

doc-eō, ēre, -uī, -tum, *teach, inform, show, state*.

documentum, ī, n., *evidence, lesson, example, warning*.

doleō, ēre, uī, *grieve, be pained, suffer*.

dolor, -ōris, m., *grief, pain, distress; annoyance, vexation, chagrin, resentment*.

dolus, ī, m., *deceit, guile, artifice*.

domesticus, a, um, *at home*; w. **bellum**, *intestine, civil*.

domicilium, ī, n., *home, house, dwelling-place*.

dominor, ārī, ātus sum, *rule, be master*.

dominus, ī, m., *master, lord*.

Domitius, ī, m., *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul 54 B.C.

domus, ūs, f., *home, house*; **domī**, locative, *at home*.

Donnotaurus, ī, m., *Caius Valerius Donnotaurus*, a Romanized Gaul.

dōnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *grant, give; present*.

dōnum, ī, n., *gift, present*.

dorsum, ī, n. or **dorsus, ī**, m., *ridge*.

dōs, dōtis, f., *dowry*.

druides, um, m., *the druids*, the priests of the Gauls.

Dūbis, is, m., a river of eastern Gaul, flowing into the Arar.

dubitātiō, -ōnis, f., *doubt, hesitation*.

dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hesitate; doubt, have doubts*.

dubius, a, um, *doubtful, uncertain*.

ducentī, ae, a, *two hundred*.

dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead, draw, bring; make, construct, run; marry; put off, prolong; reckon, regard, consider*.

ductus, ūs, m., *leadership*.

dum, conj., *while; until*.

Dumnorix, igis, m., a leader of the Aedui.

duo, ae, o, *two*.

duodecim, *twelve*.

duodecimus, a, um, *twelfth*.

duodēnī, ae, a, *twelve each, twelve*.

duodēvīgintī, indecl., *eighteen*.

dupl-ex, -icis, *twofold, double*.

duplicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *double*.

dūritia, ae, f., *hardship; hardiness, endurance*.

dūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *harden*.

Durocortorum, ī, n., a town of the Remi, in northern Gaul.

dūrus, a, um, *hard, difficult, severe; inclement*.

Dūrus, ī, m., *Quintus Laberius Durus*, a military tribune with Caesar.

dux, ducis, m., *leader, guide*

E.

ē, see **ex.**

Eburōnes, um, m. plur., *the Eburones*, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.

Eburovīces, um, m. plur., *the Eburovices*, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.

ē-discō, ere, -didicī, *learn by heart.*

ēditus, a, um, from **edo.**

ē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *put forth, exhibit, exercise;* perf. part. as adj., **ēditus, a, um,** *elevated, raised, rising, high.*

ēdoc-eō, ēre, -uī, -tum, *explain (fully), inform, show.*

ē-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead out, lead forth; draw.*

ef-farciō, īre, -farsī, -fartum, *fill up, stop up.*

effēminō, āre, āvī, ātum, *soften, weaken, enervate, make effeminate.*

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, *take away, take; disclose, divulge, publish; lift up; elate.*

ef-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *make, render, cause, produce; bring about, accomplish, bring to pass; complete, finish, cover; get together, furnish.*

ef-fodiō, ere, -fōdī, -fossum, *dig out, tear out.*

ef-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *escape.*

egeō, ēre, uī, *be in need, lack;* pres. part. as adj., **egēns, -entis,** *needy.*

egestās, -tātis, f., *need, poverty, destitution.*

egō, meī, *I.*

ē-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *go out, depart, leave, quit; sally out; land, disembark.*

ēgregiē, adv., *excellently, well, admirably.*

ēgregius, a, um, *eminent, marked, admirable, remarkable.*

ēgressus, a, um, from **egredior.**

ēgressus, ūs, m., *landing.*

ē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *fling out, drive out, cast up;* w. **se,** *rush.*

ējusmodī, *such, of such a nature, of that sort.*

ē-lābor, ī, -lāpsus sum, *slip away, escape.*

ēlātus, a, um, from **effero.**

Elaver, -eris, n., *the Elaver*, a river of Central Gaul, a tributary of the Loire.

ēlēctus, a, um, from **eligo.**

elephantus, ī, m., *elephant.*

Eleutetī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Eleuteti*, a tribe of southern Gaul.

ē-liciō, ere, -licuī, *entice, draw.*

ē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *choose, pick.*

Elusātes, um, m. plur., *the Elusates*, a tribe of Aquitania.

ēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *remove, emigrate.*

ēmineō, ēre, uī, *project, stand out.*

ēminus, adv., *from* or *at a distance.*

ē-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send out; hurl, cast; throw aside, drop.*

emō, ere, ēmī, emptum, *buy.*

ē-nāscor, ī, -nātus sum, *grow out.*

enim, conj., *for, now.*

ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *disclose, divulge, tell, reveal.*

eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum, *go, march, pass, proceed.*

eō, adv., *thither, there, to that place, to them (it, etc.); thereon, on or in them;* w. comparatives, *the, all the.*

eōdem, adv., *to the same place, in the same direction.*

ephippiātus, a, um, *equipped with saddle-cloths, using saddle-cloths.*

ephippium, ī, n., *saddle-cloth.*

epistola, ae, f., *letter.*

Eporedorix, -igis, m., the name of two chiefs of the Aedui.

epulum, ī, n., in plur., **epulae ārum,** f., *banquet.*

equ-es, -itis, m., *horseman, horse-soldier;* in plur., *cavalry; knight,* a Roman of rank next to a senator.

equester, tris, tre, *of cavalry, cavalry.*

equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry.*

equus, ī, m., *horse.*

Eratosthenēs, is, m., a Greek writer and scholar of Alexandria, who lived from 276 to 196 B.C.

ērēctus, a, um, from **erigo.**

ēreptus, a, um, from **eripio.**

ergā, prep. w. acc., *towards.*

ergō, adv., *then, therefore.*

ē-rigō, ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *raise;* perf. part. as adj., **ērēctus, a, um,** *upright, high.*

ē-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *take away, destroy; save, rescue.*

errō, āre, āvī, ātum, *be mistaken.*

ē-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *sally out.*

ēruptiō, -ōnis, f., *sally.*

essedārius, ī, m., *charioteer, chariot-fighter.*

essedum, ī, n., *chariot, war-chariot.*

Esubiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Esubii,* a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.

et, conj., *and;* **et....et,** *both.... and.*

etiam, conj., *also, further; even, still.*

etsī, conj., *even if, although.*

ē-vādō, ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *escape.*

ē-vellō, ere, -vellī, -vulsum, *pull out.*

ē-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *turn out, result.*

ēventus, ūs, m., *outcome, result; chance; experience.*

ēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call out, summon; challenge; call, invite;* perf. part. as subst., **ēvocātī, ōrum,** m., *veterans (who had re-entered service).*

ēvolō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rush out, burst out.*

ex, (sometimes ē before consonants), prep. w. abl., *from, out of; of; after, upon; in accordance with; in consequence of;* of direction, *on; above.*

exāctus, a, um, from **exigo.**

exagitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *harass.*

exāminō, āre, āvī, ātum, *weigh, test.*

exanimō, āre, āvī, ātum, *kill; weaken, exhaust;* perf. part. as adj., **exanimātus, a, um,** *out of breath, breathless.*

ex-ardēscō, ere, -arsī, -arsum, *blaze forth; become enraged, become incensed.*

exaudiō, īre, īvī, ītum, *hear clearly, hear.*

ex-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *go out, withdraw, leave, quit.*

ex-cellō, ere, -celluī, -celsum, *excel, be eminent;* perf. part. as adj., **excelsus, a, um,** *lofty, high.*

exceptō, āre, āvī, ātum, *catch up, take hold of.*

ex-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut down.*

ex-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *receive, meet; catch, come upon; take up, catch up, follow, succeed.*

excitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rouse, incite, stimulate; raise; kindle.*

ex-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *cut off, shut out, prevent.*

excōgitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *think of.*

excruciō, āre, āvī, ātum, *torture, torment.*

excubitor, -tōris, m., *picket, sentinel.*

excub-ō, āre, -uī, -itum, *watch by night, keep watch, be on the watch.*

exculcō, āre, āvī, ātum, *tread* or *trample down.*

excursiō, -ōnis, f., *sally.*

excūsātiō, -ōnis, f., *apology.*

excūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *excuse;* w. **se,** *apologize.*

exemplum, ī, n., *example, precedent; warning, punishment.*

ex-eō, -īre, -iī (**-īvī**), **-itum,** *go out, go forth, leave, remove, proceed.*

exerceō, ēre, uī, itum, *train, exercise, practise, drill, busy.*

exercitātiō, -ōnis, f., *training, exercise, practice.*

exercitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *train, practise.*

exercitus, ūs, m., *army.*

ex-hauriō, īre, -hausī, -haustum, *remove, carry off.*

exigō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *spend, end;* pass., *be over.*

exiguē, adv., *scantily; barely, scarcely.*

exiguitās, -tātis, f., *scantiness, smallness, small extent, shortness, meagreness.*

exiguus, a, um, *small, scanty.*

eximius, a, um, *remarkable, high.*

exīstimātiō, -ōnis, f., *opinion.*

exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātum, *think, believe, consider; estimate.*

exitus, ūs, m., *outlet, passage; departure; outcome, result; end.*

expediō, īre, īvī, ītum, *free; get ready, arrange;* perf. part. as adj., **expedītus, a, um,** *unincumbered, free; rapid, active; in light marching order, light-armed; easy.*

expedītiō, -ōnis, f., *expedition.*

ex-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive out, banish; remove, dispel.*

exper-ior, īrī, -tus sum, *try, make an attempt, test, experience; await.*

expiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *atone for, retrieve, repair.*

expl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *fill up; make up, make good; reach, attain.*

explōrātor, -tōris, m., *scout.*

explōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *examine, inquire, investigate, reconnoitre, try to find out;* perf. part. as adj., **explōrātus, a, um,** *certain, assured.*

ex-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *display; disembark, land; set forth, state.*

exportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry off, remove.*

ex-poscō, ere, -poposcī, *demand.*

ex-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum, *extort, elicit; raise.*

expūgnātiō, -ōnis, f., *storming, taking by storm.*

expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *storm, take by storm, capture; subdue, conquer.*

expulsus, a, um, from **expellō.**

ex-quīrō, ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *seek out; ask for.*

ex-sequor, ī, -secutus sum, *follow out, maintain, enforce.*

ex-serō, ere, -seruī, -sertum, *put out; bare, uncover.*

ex-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum, *stand out, project; spring up, arise.*

exspectō, āre, āvī, ātum, *look for, await, wait for, wait to see, wait; expect.*

exspoliō, āre, āvī, ātum, *deprive.*

ex-stinguō, ere, -stinxī, -stinctum, *extinguish, destroy.*

exstitī, from **exsistō.**

exstō, āre, *stand out, project.*

ex-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *pile up, raise, build.*

exsul, -sulis, m., *exile.*

exter, or **exterus, era, erum,** *outward, foreign;* compar., **exterior,** *outer;* superl., **extrēmus,** *farthest, most distant, last, extreme.*

exterreō, ēre, uī, itum, *frighten, terrify.*

ex-timēscō, ere, -timuī, *fear, dread.*

ex-torqueō, ēre, -torsī, -tortum, *force, extort.*

extrā, prep. w. acc., *outside of, beyond.*

ex-trahō, ere, -traxī, tractum, *drag out, waste by decay, fritter away.*

extrēmus, superl. of **exter.**

extrūdō, ere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *thrust out, force back, shut out.*

ex-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *deprive, strip, despoil.*

ex-ūrō, ere, -ūssī, -ūstum, *burn up, burn.*

F.

faber, brī, m., *workman, engineer.*

Fabius, ī, m., 1. *Quintus Fabius Maximus,* a Roman general, B.C. 121; 2. *Caius Fabius,* one of Caesar's lieutenants; 3. *Lucius Fabius,* a centurion in Caesar's army.

facile, adv., *easily, readily.*

facilis, e, *easy.*

facinus, -oris, n., *deed, crime.*

faciō, ere, fēcī, factum, pass., **fīō, fierī, factus sum,** *make; do, act; form, build, construct; render; bring about;* in passive, *take place, come to pass, happen, result.*

factiō, -ōnis, f., *party, faction.*

factum, ī, n., *deed, act, action.*

facultās, -tātis, f., *opportunity, chance, power; supply;* in plur., *resources, means.*

fāgus, ī, m., *beech.*

fallō, ere, fefellī, falsum, *deceive; disappoint.*

falsus, a, um, *false, empty.*

falx, falcis, f., *sickle, hook.*

fāma, ae, f., *rumor, report.*

famēs, is, f., *hunger, starvation, famine.*

familia, ae, f., *household, house, family.*

familiāris, e, *of a household;* masc. as subst., *intimate friend.*

familiāritās, -tātis, f., *intimacy, friendship.*

fās, n. indecl., *right* (by divine law).

fastīgātē, adv., *obliquely, sloping.*

fastīgium, ī, n., *slope, elevation, inclination.*

fastīgō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring to a point;* perf. part. as adj., *sloping, inclined.*

fātum, ī, n., *fate, lot.*

faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautum, *favor, be favorable to.*

fax, facis, f., *torch, brand.*

fēlīcitās, -tātis, f., *good fortune, success.*

fēlīciter, adv., *happily, prosperously, successfully.*

fēmina, ae, f., *woman; female.*

fem-ur, -inis, n., *thigh.*

fera, ae, f., *wild beast.*

ferāx, ācis, *fertile, fruitful.*

ferē, adv., *almost; about; generally, usually, for the most part;* w. negatives, *scarcely.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, bring, carry; endure, take, stand; experience, suffer, feel; receive, win; run, go; regard; call;* in pass., *rush;* **signa ferre,** *advance;* w. **auxilium,** *lend;* w. **condicionem,** *offer;* w. **injurias,** *commit.*

ferrāmentum, ī, n., *(iron) tool.*

ferrāria, ae, f., *iron mine.*

ferreus, a, um, *of iron, iron.*

ferrum, ī, n., *iron, iron point, sword.*

fertilis, e, *fertile, fruitful, rich.*

fertilitās, -tātis, f., *fertility, richness.*

ferus, a, um, *wild, fierce, ferocious.*

ferve-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, *heat, make red hot.*

fer-veō, ēre, -buī, *be glowing, be red hot.*

fībula, ae, f., *brace.*

fictus, a, um, from **fingo.**

fidēlis, e, *faithful.*



IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)

1.0 1.1 1.25 1.4 1.6 1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5 2.8 3.2 3.6 4.0

6"

fidēs, eī, f., *pledge, word; trustworthiness, honor; trust, faith, confidence; devotion, loyalty, fidelity; protection, dependence, allegiance, alliance;* **fidem facere,** *give a pledge, gain belief.*

fīdūcia, ae, f., *reliance, confidence.*

figūra, ae, f., *shape.*

filia, ae, f., *daughter.*

filius, ī, m., *son.*

fingō, ere, finxī, fictum, *make up, invent.*

fīniō, īre, īvī, ītum, *limit, bound; determine, measure, describe.*

fīnis, is, m., *end, limit;* in plur., *borders, territory, land, district.*

fīnitimus, a, um, *neighboring, adjacent, bordering;* masc. plur. as subst., *neighbors.*

fiō, fierī, factus sum, pass of **faciō,** *be made, be done; take place, come to pass, happen, result.*

firmiter, adv., *firmly, steadily.*

firmitū-dō, -dinis, f., *strength.*

firmō, āre, āvī, ātum, *strengthen, secure.*

firmus, a, um, *strong, powerful.*

fistūca, ae, f., *pile-driver, rammer.*

Flaccus, ī, m., *Caius Valerius Flaccus,* governor of Gaul in 83 B.C.

flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *demand.*

flamma, ae, f., *flame, fire.*

flectō, ere, flexī, flexum, *bend, turn.*

fleō, ere, flēvī, flētum, *weep, be in tears.*

flētus, ūs, m., *weeping.*

flō, āre, āvī, ātum, *blow.*

flōreō, ēre, uī, *bloom;* pres. part. as adj., *flourishing, prosperous, influential.*

flōs, flōris, m., *flower.*

fluctus, ūs, m., *wave.*

flūmen, -minis, n., *river.*

fluō, ere, fluxī, fluxum, *flow.*

fodiō, ere, fōdī, fossum, *dig.*

foedus, -eris, n., *treaty.*

fore, fut. infin. of **sum.**

foris, adv., *outdoor; without, outside.*

forma, ae, f., *shape, form; structure.*

fors, forte, f., (other cases wanting), *chance;* in abl., *perchance perhaps.*

fortis, e, *brave, courageous*

fortiter, adv., *bravely, gallantly, stoutly.*

fortitū-dō, -dinis, f., *bravery, courage.*

fortuītō, adv., *by chance, accidentally.*

fortūna, ae, f., *fortune, chance, lot, situation; good fortune, success;* in plur., *possessions, fortunes.*

fortūnātus, a, um, *fortunate.*

forum, ī, n., *market place.*

fossa, ae, f., *trench, ditch.*

fovea, ae, f., *pit, pitfall.*

frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctum, *break, shatter, wreck; crush.*

frāter, tris, m., *brother.*

frāternus, a, um, *brotherly, of a brother.*

fraus, fraudis, f., *deception, treachery.*

fremitus, ūs, m., *din, noise.*

frequēns, entis, *numerous, in large numbers.*

frētus, a, um, *relying on,* w. abl.

frīgidus, a, um, *cold.*

frīg-us, -oris, n., *cold, frost, cold weather.*

frōns, frontis, f., *forehead; front.*

fructuōsus, a, um, *fruitful, fertile.*

fructus, ūs, m., *fruit, crops; advantage; profit, income.*

frūgēs, um, see **frux.**

frūmentārius, a, um, *of grain; fertile, productive;* **res frumentaria,** *supply of corn, grain, provisions.*

frūmentātiō, -ōnis, f., *getting grain, foraging.*

frūmentor, ārī, ātus sum, *get grain, forage.*

frūmentum, ī, n., *grain, corn, crops, provisions.*

fruor, ī, fructus sum, *enjoy,* w. abl.

frūstrā, adv., *in vain, without effect.*

frux, frūgis, (sing. very rare in Latin), *crops.*

Fūfius, ī, m., *Caius Fufius Cita,* a Roman knight.

fuga, ae, f., *flight, rout;* **in fugam convertere, conjicere** or **dare,** *to put to flight.*

fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitum, *flee, escape; avoid, shun.*

fugitīvus, ī, m., *runaway slave.*

fugō, āre, āvī, ātum, *put to flight, rout.*

fūmō, āre, āvī, ātum, *smoke.*

fūmus, ī, m., *smoke.*

funda, ae, f., *sling.*

fundi-tor, -tōris, m., *slinger.*

fundō, ere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour; scatter, rout.*

fungor, ī, functus sum, *discharge, perform,* w. abl.

fūnis, is, m., *rope, cable.*

fūnus, -eris, n., *funeral.*

furor, -ōris, m., *madness, frenzy, rage.*

furtum, ī, n., *theft.*

fūsilis, e, *molten, softened.*

fūsus, a, um, from **fundo.**

futūrus, a, um, from **sum.**

G.

Gabalī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Gabali,* a tribe in the south of Gaul.

Gabinius, ī, m., *Aulus Gabinius,* consul 58 B.C.

gaesum, ī, n., *javelin, spear.*

Gāius, ī, or **Cāius, ī,** m., a Roman praenomen.

Galba, ae, m., 1. *Servius Galba,* one of Caesar's lieutenants; 2. a king of the Suessiones.

galea, ae, f., *helmet.*

Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul.* 1. The Roman provinces of Gaul, *Gallia Cisalpina* or *Citerior,* the northern part of Italy; and *Gallia Transalpina* or *Ulterior,* the south-eastern part of France. 2. The country west of the Rhine and the Alps and north of the Pyrenees, thus including France, Switzerland, Belgium and part of Holland and Germany. 3. The central and largest of the three parts into which Gaul in the previous sense is divided, the *Belgae* and the *Aquitani* holding the other two.

Gallicus, a, um, *of Gaul, of the Gauls, Gallic.*

gallīna, ae, f., *hen.*

Gallus, ī, m., 1. *a Gaul;* 2. *Marcus Trebius Gallus,* one of Caesar's officers.

Garumna, ae, m., *the Garonne,* a river of south-western Gaul.

Garumnī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Garumni,* a tribe near the Pyrenees.

Gates, um, m. plur., *the Gates,* a tribe in the south-west of Gaul.

gaudeō, ēre, gavīsus sum, *rejoice.*

Geidumnī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Geidumni,* a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

Genāva, ae, f., *Geneva,* a town of the Allobroges, at the extreme north-east of the Province.

gener, erī, m., *son-in-law.*

generātim, adv., *by tribes.*

gēns, gentis, f., *tribe, race, nation, clan.*

genus, -eris, n., *race, family; species; kind, sort, class.*

Gergovia, ae, f., *Gergovia,* a town of the Arverni, in the centre of Gaul.

Germānia, ae, f., *Germany,* the region east of the Rhine.

Germānicus, a, um, *German, of or with the Germans.*

Germānus, ī, m., *a German.*

gerō, ere, gessī, gestum, *manage; carry on, wage; hold; do;* in pass., *go on.*

gladius, ī, m., *sword.*

glaeba, ae, f., *clod, lump.*

glāns, glandis, f., *acorn; ball, bullet.*

glōria, ae, f., *glory, fame, reputation.*

glōrior, ārī, ātus sum, *boast of,* w. abl.

Gnaeus, ī, m., *Gnaeus,* or *Cneius,* a Roman praenomen.

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, m., a man of rank among the Arverni.

Gorgobina, ae, f., a town in the country of the Aedui, in central Gaul.

Graecus, a, um, *Greek, Grecian;* masc. as subst., *a Greek.*

Grāiocelī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Graioceli,* an Alpine tribe between Gaul and Italy.

grandis, e, *large.*

grātia, ae, f., *favor, good will; influence; gratitude, thanks;* **gratias agere,** *render thanks, thank;* **gratiam referre,** *make a grateful return, requite;* **gratiam habere,** *feel gratitude, be grateful;* **gratiam inire,** *win gratitude.*

grātulātiō, -ōnis, f., *congratulation; joy, rejoicing.*

grātulor, ārī, ātus sum, *congratulate, offer congratulations.*

grātus, a, um, *acceptable, pleasing;* neut. as subst., *a favor.*

gravis, e, *heavy; severe, bitter, serious; solemn;* w. **aetas,** *advanced.*

gravitās, -tātis, f., *weight; strength, importance.*

graviter, adv., *heavily, with effect; severely, bitterly, seriously;* **graviter ferre,** *be annoyed, feel keenly.*

gravor, ārī, ātus sum, *be reluctant, object.*

Grudiī, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Grudii,* a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.

gubernātor, -tōris, m., *pilot, helmsman.*

gustō, āre, āvī, ātum, *taste, eat.*

Gutruātus, ī, m., a leader of the Carnutes.

H.

habeō, ēre, uī, itum, *have, possess, occupy; keep; hold;* w. **orationem,** *deliver, make; treat, regard, consider;* **se habere,** *to be;* w. perf. part. pass., much like Eng. auxiliary verb *have.*

haesitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *stick fast, be caught.*

hāmus, ī, m., *hook.*

harpagō, -ōnis, m., *hook, grappling-iron.*

Harūdes, um, m. plur., *the Harudes,* a German tribe which had crossed into Gaul.

haud, adv., *not.*

Helvēticus, a, um, *Helvetian, of or with the Helvetii.*

Helvētius, a, um, *Helvetian, of the Helvetii;* masc. plur. as subst., *the Helvetii,* a tribe [illegible] dwelling in modern Switzerland.

Helviī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Helvii,* a tribe in the Province.

Hercynius, a, um, w. **silva,** *the Hercynian forest,* extending through southern and central Germany.

hērēditās, -tātis, f., *inheritance.*

hīberna, ōrum, n. plur., *winter camp, winter-quarters.*

hībernācula, ōrum, n. plur., *winter-quarters.*

Hibernia, ae, f., *Ireland.*

hīc, haec, hōc, *this; he; the following; the present; such;* often loosely, *that;* **hōc,** neut. abl. as adv., *in this way, on this account,* and w. comparatives, *the.*

hīc, adv., *here, herein.*

hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum, *winter, pass the winter.*

hiems, hiemis, f., *winter, stormy weather.*

hinc, adv., *from this point, hence.*

Hispānia, ae, f., *Spain.*

Hispānus, a, um, *Spanish.*

hom-ō, -inis, m. and f., *man, person:* in plur., *men, mankind, people.*

honestus, a, um, *honorable, of rank, distinguished.*

honor, -ōris, m., *honor, dignity, distinction; respect; high position.*

honōrificus, a, um, *honorable, complimentary.*

hōra, ae, f., *hour*, (one-twelfth of the daylight).

horreō, ēre, uī, *shudder at, dread.*

horribilis, e, *dreadful, formidable.*

horridus, a, um, *horrible, frightful.*

hortor, ārī, ātus sum, *urge, encourage, exhort, cheer on.*

hosp-es, -itis, m., *guest, friend.*

hospitium, ī, n., *friendship, hospitality.*

hostis, is, m., *enemy.*

hūc, adv., *to this, to this point, to this place, hither, here.*

hūjusmodī, *of this sort, to this effect.*

hūmānitās, -tātis, f., *refinement, accomplishments.*

hūmānus, a, um, *civilized, refined.*

humilis, e, *low, inferior, humble, of little importance, obscure.*

humilitās, -tātis, f., *lowness; weakness, insignificance.*

I.

ibi, adv., *there.*

Iccius, ī, m., a leader of the Remi.

ictus, ūs, m., *blow, stroke.*

idcircō, adv., *on that account, for this reason.*

idem, eadem, idem, *the same; also.*

identidem, adv., *again and again.*

idōneus, a, um, *suitable, fit.*

Īdūs, uum, f. plur., *the Ides* (the 13th of each month, but in March, May, July and October the 15th).

ignis, is, m., *fire; camp fire.*

ignōbilis, e, *unknown, obscure.*

ignōminia, ae, f., *disgrace.*

ignōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *not know, be unacquainted with.*

ignōscō, ere, ignōvī, ignōtum, *forgive, pardon*, w. dat.

ignōtus, a, um, *unknown.*

illātus, a, um, from **infero.**

ille, illa, illud, *that, he.*

illīc, adv., *there, in that place.*

illigō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bind, attach, fasten.*

illō, adv., *to that point, thither, there.*

illustris, e, *distinguished, remarkable.*

Illyricum, ī, n., a district along the eastern coast of the Adriatic.

imbēcillitās, -tātis, f., *weakness, feebleness.*

im-ber, -bris, m., *rain, rainstorm.*

imitor, ārī, ātus sum, *imitate.*

immānis, e, *huge, enormous.*

immineō, ēre, uī, *be near at hand; threaten.*

im-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send against, hurl; let down, sink, let in.*

immolō, āre, āvī, ātum, *sacrifice.*

immortālis, e, *immortal.*

immūnis, e, *free from taxation* or *tribute.*

immūnitās, -tātis, f., *freedom, exemption from public service.*

imparātus, a, um, *unprepared.*

impedīmentum, ī, n., *hindrance*, in plur., *baggage, baggage-train, baggage-horses.*

impediō, īre, īvī, ītum, *hinder, obstruct, entangle, embarrass;* perf. part. as adj., **impedītus, a, um,** *hampered, occupied, intricate, difficult, impassable.*

im-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *urge, instigate, incite.*

impendeō, ēre, *overhang.*

impēnsus, a, um, *expensive, high.*

imperātor, -tōris, m., *commander (in chief).*

imperātum, ī, n., *order, command.*

imperfectus, a, um, *unfinished, unaccomplished.*

imperītus, a, um, *inexperienced, unacquainted,* w. gen.

imperium, ī, n., *command, order; power, supreme power, control, rule, supremacy.*

imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *levy upon, demand, require, order to furnish; order, command, rule.*

impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *obtain, obtain one's request, accomplish, prevail on.*

impetus, ūs, m., *attack, charge; fury, rush, violence*

impius, a, um, *wicked, unholy.*

implic-ō, āre, āvī, ātum, or **-uī, -itum,** *interweave, interlace.*

implōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *beg, entreat, beseech.*

im-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *place on, put on, mount; levy, impose.*

importō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring in, introduce, import.*

imprīmīs, or **in prīmīs,** *especially, particularly.*

improbus, a, um, *wicked, unprincipled.*

imprōvīsus, a, um, *unforeseen;* abl., **imprōvīsō,** as adv., so **de improvīsō,** *unexpectedly, unawares.*

imprūdēns, -entis, *unsuspecting, off one's guard.*

imprūdentia, ae, f., *thoughtlessness, indiscretion.*

impūb-ēs, -eris, *chaste, unmarried.*

impūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *attack, fight.*

impulsus, a, um, from **impello.**

impulsus, ūs, m., *instigation.*

impūne, adv., *with impunity.*

impūnitās, -tātis, f., *impunity, exemption from punishment.*

īmus, a, um, superlative of **inferus.**

in, prep. (1) w. abl., *in, at, within, on; among, in the country of; over; considering, in view of; in the case of, in regard to;* (2) w. acc., *into, to; towards, against, upon, on; until; for, with a view to, according to; in.*

inānis, e, *empty, idle, mere.*

incautē, adv., *carelessly, incautiously.*

incautus, a, um, *careless, off one's guard.*

incendium, ī, n., *fire, burning.*

in-cendō, ere, -cendī, -cēnsum, *set on fire, burn; arouse, inflame.*

incertus, a, um, *uncertain, untrustworthy, confused.*

in-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cāsum, *fall in with, come upon; happen, occur.*

in-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut into.*

in-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *begin.*

incīsus, a, um, from **incīdo.**

incitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *urge on, impel, set in motion; arouse, excite;* w. **se,** *rush on, rush in;* perf. part. w. **equus,** *at full speed.*

incōgnitus, a, um, *unknown.*

incol-ō, ere, -uī, *inhabit, dwell, live.*

incolumis, e, *safe, unharmed, in safety, without loss.*

incommodē, adv., *disastrously, unfortunately, badly.*

incommodum, ī, n., *disadvantage, misfortune, disaster, loss, reverses.*

incrēdibilis, e, *incredible, extraordinary.*

increpitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *reproach, upbraid, taunt.*

in-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *apply* or *devote one's self.*

incursiō, -ōnis, f., *raid, inroad.*

incursus, ūs, m., *attack, incursion.*

incūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *blame, attack, censure.*

inde, adv., *from that place, thence; then, next.*

indicium, ī, n., *information.*

in-dīcō, ere, -dīxī, -dictum, *appoint, proclaim, call.*

indictus, a, um, (1) from **indīco;** (2) *unpleaded, unheard.*

indignē, adv., *unworthily, undeservedly.*

indignitās, -tātis, f., *indignity, disgrace.*

indignor, ārī, ātus sum, *be indignant.*

indignus, a, um, *unworthy, unbecoming.*

indīligēns, -entis, *careless, indifferent.*

indīligenter, adv., *carelessly.*

indīligentia, ae, f., *indifference, lack of energy.*

in-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead on, influence, induce; cover.*

indulgentia, ae, f., *indulgence, leniency.*

indul-geō, ēre, -sī, -tum, *favor,* w. dat.

ind-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *put on;* w. **se,** *fall upon, get entangled.*

industriē, adv., *actively, zealously.*

indūtiae, ārum, f. plur., *truce.*

Indutiomarus, ī, m., a chief of the Treveri.

in-eō, -īre, -iī(-īvī), -itum, *enter upon, adopt, form, make; estimate; begin; win.*

inermis, e, or **inermus, a, um,** *unarmed.*

in-ers, -ertis, *lazy, unmanly.*

infāmia, ae, f., *dishonor, disgrace, disrepute.*

infāns, -antis, m., *infant, child.*

infectus, a, um, *undone, unaccomplished.*

inferō, inferre, intulī, illātum, *bring in, put in* or *upon; introduce, import; cause, inflict, inspire;* w. **bellum,** *make, wage* (offensive); w. **signa,** *advance;* w. **causam,** *advance, allege.*

inferus, a, um, *low;* compar. **inferior,** *lower; inferior;* superl. **infimus,** *lowest, at the foot* or *base;* neut. as subst., *the bottom, the foot.*

infestus, a, um, *hostile.*

in-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *stain.*

infidēlis, e, *unfaithful.*

in-figō, ere, -fixī, -fixum, *fasten to, fix on.*

infimus, a, um, superl. of **inferus.**

infinitus, a, um, *endless, boundless, vast.*

infirmitās, -tātis, f., *weakness, fickleness, inconstancy.*

infirmus, a, um, *weak.*

infixus, a, um, from **infigo.**

in-flectō, ere, -flexī, -flexum, *bend.*

in-fluō, ere, -fluxī, -fluxum, *flow, empty.*

in-fodiō, ere, -fōdī, -fossum, *bury.*

infra, (1) adv., *below, farther down;* (2) prep. w. acc., *below, less than.*

ingēns, entis, *huge, very large.*

ingrātus, a, um, *displeasing, unacceptable.*

in-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *enter.*

inimīcitia, ae, f., *enmity, feud.*

inimīcus, a, um, *unfriendly, hostile;* masc. as subst., *enemy.*

inīquitās, -tātis, f., *injustice, unfairness; disadvantage, unfavorable nature* or *position.*

Iniquus, a, um, *uneven; unfavorable; unfair, unjust.*

Initium, ī, n., *beginning, first; edge, frontier, borders; elements.*

Initus, a, um, from **ineo.**

In-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *put on, lay on; inspire, infuse, cause.*

In-jungō, ere, -junxī, -junctum, *impose.*

Injūria, ae, f., *wrong, injustice, wrong-doing, injury, violence, outrage.*

Injūssū, abl. used as adv., *without one's orders.*

In-nāscor, ī, -nātus sum, *spring up in;* in perf., *be inborn, be innate.*

In-nītor, ī, -nīsus or **-nīxus sum,** *lean on.*

Innocēns, entis, *innocent, guiltless.*

Innocentia, ae, f., *innocence, integrity.*

Inopia, ae, f., *want, scarcity, lack, privation.*

Inopīnāns, -antis, *not expecting, unawares, unprepared, off one's guard.*

Inquam, inquit, defective verb, *say.*

Insciēns, entis, *not knowing, being unaware.*

Inscientia, ae, f., *ignorance, lack of acquaintance with.*

Inscius, a, um, *ignorant, unaware.*

In-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue.*

In-serō, ere, -seruī, -sertum, *insert.*

Insidiae, ārum, f. plur., *ambush, stratagem, treachery.*

Insidior, ārī, ātus sum, *lie in wait.*

Insignis, e, *marked, notable, signal;* n. as subst., **insigne, is,** *ensign, badge, token, decoration.*

In-siliō, īre, -siluī, -sultum, *leap at* or *on.*

Insimulō, āre, āvī, ātum, *charge, accuse.*

Insinuō, āre, āvī, ātum, *insinuate;* w. **se,** *work one's way in.*

In-sistō, ere, -stitī, *stand, keep one's footing; enter upon, pursue, adopt, devote one's self.*

Insolenter, adv., *insolently, haughtily, immoderately.*

Inspectō, āre, āvī, ātum, *look on.*

Instābilis, e, *unsteady, changeable.*

Instar, accus. as adv., *like,* w. gen.

Instigō, āre, āvī, ātum, *urge on, incite.*

Instit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *undertake, begin, set to; adopt, establish, settle; equip, get ready; train, teach; draw up.*

Institūtum, ī, n., *custom, practice.*

In-stō, āre, -stitī, -stātum, *press forward, press on; be at hand; threaten, impend.*

Instrūmentum, ī, n., *equipment, furniture.*

In-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *draw up, arrange; build, set up, equip.*

Insuē-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, *train.*

Insuētus, a, um, *unaccustomed.*

Insula, ae, f., *island.*

Insuper, adv., *above, on top.*

Integer, gra, grum, *unimpaired, fresh, untouched, complete.*

In-tegō, ere, -texī, -tectum, *cover over, cover.*

Intel-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *understand, be aware, perceive, see, know, learn.*

Inten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum, *stretch, strain;* perf. partic., *intent, occupied, engrossed, eager.*

Inter, prep. w. acc., *between, among, during;* **inter se,** *one another, to* or *with one another.*

Inter-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *come between, be between, intervene, elapse, exist between.*

Inter-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *intercept, cut off.*

Inter-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *cut off.*

inter-dīcō, ere, -dīxī, -dictum, *forbid, warn; prohibit, exclude.*

interdiū, adv., *by day, in the day-time.*

interdum, adv., *sometimes.*

intereā, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

inter-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *perish.*

interest, from **intersum.**

inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *slay, put to death, kill.*

interim, adv., *meanwhile.*

interior, comparative adj., *inner, interior;* plur., *those living in the interior.*

interitus, ūs, m., *death, destruction.*

inter-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *place between, interpose;* in pass., *be between, intervene, come at intervals.*

inter-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *leave off, interrupt, stop, break off, discontinue; cease, neglect; let pass,* in pass., *go by, intervene, elapse; separate; leave free, leave open.*

interneciō, -ōnis, f., *destruction, annihilation, extermination.*

interpellō, āre, āvī, ātum, *interrupt, disturb, interfere with.*

inter-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *interpose; allege; pledge; put forward;* in pass., *intervene.*

inter-pres, -pretis, m., *interpreter.*

interpretor, ārī, ātus sum, *interpret, explain.*

interrogō, āre, āvī, ātum, *question.*

inter-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break down, destroy.*

inter-scindō, ere, -scidī, -scissum, *cut down, break down, destroy.*

inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, *be between, be engaged in, take part in;* as impersonal verb, **interest,** *it is of importance, it concerns.*

intervallum, ī, n., *interval, distance.*

inter-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come up, appear.*

interventus, ūs, m., *intervention, coming on.*

intex-ō, ere, -uī, -tum, *weave together, plait.*

intoleranter, adv., *eagerly, recklessly.*

intrā, prep. w. acc., *within.*

intrītus, a, um, *unexhausted, fresh, not fatigued.*

intrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *enter.*

intrō-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead in, bring in.*

intro-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *come in, enter.*

introitus, ūs, m., *entrance, approach.*

intrō-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send in, let in, admit.*

intrōrsus, adv., *within, into the interior, inside.*

intrō-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break in, burst in.*

intueor, ērī, itus sum, *gaze on, look at.*

intulī, from **inferō.**

intus, adv., *within, inside.*

inūsitātus, a, um, *unusual, strange, novel, unfamiliar.*

inūtilis, e, *useless, unserviceable, unsuitable.*

in-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come upon, find; learn.*

inventor, -tōris, m., *inventor, discoverer.*

inveter-āscō, ere, -āvī, -ātum, *become established, settle.*

invicem, adv., *in turn.*

invictus, a, um, *unconquered, invincible.*

in-videō, ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *envy, be jealous of,* w. dat.

invidia, ae, f., *envy, jealousy.*

inviolātus, a, um, *inviolate.*

invītō, āre, āvī, ātum, *invite, induce, allure.*

invītus, a, um, *unwilling, against one's will.*

ipse, a, um, *himself, he himself, itself,* etc.; *very.*

īrācundia, ae, f., *wrath, anger, passion.*

īrācundus, a, um, *passionate.*

ir-rīdeō, ēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, *ridicule, jeer at.*

irrīdiculē, adv., *without humor.*

ir-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *burst in, break in, rush, dash.*

irruptiō, -ōnis, f., *attack, assault.*

is, ea, id, *that; he, she, it, they;* w rel., *the; such;* abl. **eō** as adv., *so much, the, on that account.*

iste, a, ud, *that of yours, that.*

ita, adv., *so, thus, in this way, as follows, accordingly.*

Italia, ae, f., *Italy.*

itaque, adv., *therefore, so, accordingly.*

item, adv., *likewise, also, in the same way.*

iter, itineris, n., *route, march, road, journey;* **magnum iter,** *a forced march;* **iter facere,** *to march.*

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*

Itius, adj. with **portus,** a harbor on the north-east coast of Gaul.

J.

jaceō, ēre, uī, itum, *lie, be fallen, be dead.*

jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum, *throw, cast, hurl; throw up.*

jactō, āre, āvī, ātum, *shake, toss, fling; discuss.*

jactūra, ae, f., *loss, sacrifice; offer.*

jaculum, ī, n., *javelin.*

jam, adv., *now, at length, already;* w. negatives, *any more, longer.*

juba, ae, f., *mane.*

jubeō, ēre, jūssī, jūssum, *order, bid, command.*

jūdicium, ī, n., *trial; judgment, decision, opinion;* abl. **jūdiciō,** *by design, purposely.*

jūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *judge, decide, consider, think, pronounce.*

jugum, ī, n., *yoke; ridge, summit, crest.*

jūmentum, ī, n., *beast of burden, horse.*

junctūra, ae, f., *joining.*

jungō, ere, junxī, junctum, *join, unite.*

jūnior, comparative of **juvenis.**

Jūnius, ī, m., *Quintus Junius,* one of Caesar's officers.

Juppiter, Jovis, m., *Jupiter,* the supreme god of the Romans.

Jūra, ae, m., a mountain range in Eastern Gaul.

jūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *swear, take an oath.*

jūs, jūris, n., *right, rights, law, justice.*

jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, n., *oath.*

jūssū, abl. used as adv., *by order.*

jūstitia, ae, f., *justice, fairness.*

jūstus, a, um, *just, rightful, lawful, fair; proper, regular, due.*

juvenis, e (comparative **jūnior**), *young;* m. as subst., *a young man.*

juven-tūs, -tūtis, f., *youth;* as collective, *youth, young men.*

juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum, *aid, help, assist.*

jūxtā, adv., *near, close by.*

K.

Kalendae, ārum, f. plur., *the Calends,* the first day of the month.

L.

L., an abbreviation for **Lucius.**

Laberius, ī, m., *Quintus Laberius Durus,* a military tribune with Caesar.

Labiēnus, ī, m., *Titus Labienus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

labor, -ōris, m., *toil, hardship, labor, exertion; endurance, hardiness.*

lābor, ī, lāpsus sum, *slip; err, do wrong, fall away; fail, be disappointed.*

labōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *toil, strive, be anxious; be in difficulty, be hard pressed.*

labrum, ī, n., *lip; edge, rim.*

lac, lactis, n., *milk.*

lacess-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, *provoke, harass, attack, assail.*

lacrima, ae, f., *tear.*

lacrimō, āre, āvī, ātum, *weep.*

lacus, ūs, m., *lake.*

laedō, ere, laesī, laesum, *injure; violate, break.*

laetātiō, -ōnis, f., *joy, rejoicing.*

laetitia, ae, f., *joy, gladness.*

laetus, a, um, *glad, joyful, rejoicing.*

languidē, adv., *with little energy.*

languidus, a, um, *weary, faint, listless, not active.*

languor, -ōris, m., *exhaustion, listlessness.*

lap-is, -idis, m., *stone.*

lāpsus, a, um, from **lābor.**

laqueus, ī, m., *noose.*

largior, īrī, ītus sum, *give bountifully; bribe; supply, afford.*

largiter, adv., *abundantly, greatly.*

largītiō, -ōnis, f., *lavishness, bounty, liberality.*

lassitū-dō, -dinis, f., *fatigue, exhaustion.*

lātē, adv., *widely, far.*

latebra, ae, f., *hiding-place.*

lateō, ēre, uī, *lurk, lie concealed; escape notice.*

lātitū-dō, -dinis, f., *width, breadth, extent.*

Latovicī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Latovici,* neighbors of the Helvetii.

latrō, -ōnis, m., *robber.*

latrōcinium, ī, n., *robbery, raid.*

lat-us, -eris, n., *side, flank.*

lātus, a, um, and **lātūrus, a, um,** from **fero.**

lātus, a, um, *broad, wide, extensive.*

laudō, āre, āvī, ātum, *praise, commend.*

laus, laudis, f., *praise, merit, glory, fame.*

lavō, āre, āvī, ātum, or **lāvī, lautum** or **lōtum,** *wash;* in pass., *bathe.*

laxō, āre, āvī, ātum, *loosen, extend, open out.*

lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., *embassy.*

lēgātus, ī, m., *ambassador, envoy; lieutenant,* an officer next in rank to the commander-in-chief.

legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion,* a body of soldiers of the nominal strength of 6000, divided into ten cohorts.

legiōnārius, a, um, *of a legion, legionary.*

Lemannus, ī, m., a lake now called *Geneva,* in eastern Gaul.

Lemovīces, um, m. plur., *the Lemovices,* a tribe in south-western Gaul.

lēnis, e, *gentle, light.*

lēnitās, -tātis, f., *gentleness, sluggishness.*

lēniter, adv., *gently, slightly, with little vigor.*

Lepontiī, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Lepontii,* an Alpine tribe.

lep-us, -oris, m., *hare.*

Leucī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Leuci,* a tribe in north-eastern Gaul.

Levacī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Levaci,* a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.

levis, e, *light; slight, trifling; weak, fickle.*

levitās, -tātis, f., *lightness; fickleness, thoughtlessness, inconstancy.*

levō, āre, āvī, ātum, *free, relieve.*

lēx, lēgis, f., *law.*

Lexoviī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Lexovii,* a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.

libenter, adv., *willingly, gladly, with pleasure.*

liber, era, erum, *free, independent; unrestricted, undisturbed, untrammelled, unincumbered.*

liberālitās, -tātis, f., *generosity, liberality.*

liberāliter, adv., *generously, graciously, kindly.*

liberē, adv., *freely, without check* or *restraint.*

liberī, ōrum, m. plur., *children.*

liberō, āre, āvī, ātum, *free, set free.*

libertās, -tātis, f., *liberty, freedom.*

librīlis, e, *of a pound weight.*

licentia, ae, f., *recklessness, lawlessness.*

liceor, ērī, itus sum, *bid* (at auction).

licet, ēre, licuit, *it is permitted, allowable;* freely, *may, might.*

Liger, -eris, m., the river *Loire,* in the central part of Gaul.

lignātiō, -ōnis, f., *getting wood.*

lignātor, -tōris, m., *wood-cutter, gatherer of wood.*

līlium, ī, n., *lily.*

līnea, ae, f., *line.*

Lingones, um, m. plur., *the Lingones,* a tribe in the eastern part of central Gaul.

lingua, ae, f., *tongue; language, speech.*

lingula, ae, f., *little tongue; tongue of land, headland.*

linter, -tris, f., *small boat, skiff.*

līnum, ī, n., *flax.*

līs, lītis, f., *lawsuit, dispute; damages.*

Liscus, ī, m., a leading man of the Aedui.

Litaviccus, ī, m., a leading man of the Aedui.

littera, ae, f., *letter, character;* in plur., *letter, despatch; documents, records.*

līt-us, -oris, n., *shore.*

locus, ī, m.; in plur., **loca, ōrum,** n.; *place, spot, point, position, ground, situation, country; rank; light, character; opportunity, chance;* in plur., *space, ground, district, region, country, place.*

locūtus, a, um, from **loquor.**

longē, adv., *far; long.*

longinquus, a, um, *distant, remote; long, long-continued, protracted.*

longitū-dō, -dinis, f., *length.*

longurius, ī, m., *long pole.*

longus, a, um, *long; distant; tedious;* **navis longa,** *war-ship, galley.*

loquor, ī, locūtus sum, *speak, say, converse.*

lōrīca, ae, f., *coat of mail; breastwork.*

Lucānius, ī, m., *Quintus Lucanius,* a centurion in Caesar's army.

Lūcius, ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

Lucterius, ī, m., a leading Gaul, belonging to the Cadurci.

Lugotor-ix, -igis, m., a Briton of rank.

lūna, ae, f., *moon.*

Lutētia, ae, f., a town of the Parisii, on the Seine.

lūx, lūcis, f., *light, dawn;* **prima lux,** *daybreak, dawn.*

luxuria, ae, f., *luxury, luxurious living.*

M.

M., an abbreviation for **Marcus.**

māceria, ae, f., *wall.*

māchinātiō, -ōnis, f., *machine, engine.*

maestus, a, um, *sad, sorrowful.*

magis, comparative adv., (see **magnopere**), *more, rather.*

magistrātus, ūs, m., *magistrate; office, magistracy.*

māgnificus, a, um, *splendid, grand.*

māgnitū-dō, -dinis, f., *greatness, vastness, great size; size, extent.*

māgnopere, adv. (**magis**, **māximē**), *greatly*, *very*, *strongly*, *earnestly*.

māgnus, **a**, **um** (**mājor**, **māximus**), *great*, *large*; *loud*; *serious*, *extensive*; **māgnī**, as adv., *highly*, *greatly*.

mājestās, **-tātis**, **f.**, *dignity*, *majesty*.

mājor, comparative of **māgnus**; in m. plur. as subst., *elders*, *ancestors*, *fathers*.

malacia, **ae**, **f.**, *calm*, *lull*.

male, adv. (**pējus**, **pessimē**), *badly*, *ill*, *unsuccessfully*.

maleficium, **ī**, n., *mischief*, *outrage*, *harm*.

Mallius, **ī**, m., *Lucius Mallius*, a Roman proconsul defeated by the Aquitani, B.C. 78.

mālō, **mālle**, **māluī**, *prefer*.

mālus, **ī**, m., *mast*, *(upright) beam*.

mandātum, **ī**, n., *order*, *commission*, *instruction*, *message*.

mandō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *order*, *instruct*; *entrust*, *give up*, *commit*, *betake*.

Mandubiī, **ōrum**, m. plur., *the Mandubii*, a tribe in central Gaul.

Mandubracius, **ī**, m., a Briton of high rank among the Trinobantes.

māne, adv., *in the morning*.

maneō, **ēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsum**, *stay*, *remain*; *abide by*, *stand by*.

manipulāris, **is**, m., *one belonging to a company* or *maniple*, *comrade*.

manipulus, **ī**, m., *maniple*, *company* (one-third of a cohort).

mānsuē-faciō, **ere**, **-fēcī**, **-factum**, *tame*.

mānsuēfīō, passive of **mansuefacio**.

mānsuētū-dō, **-dinis**, **f.**, *gentleness*, *clemency*.

manus, **ūs**, **f.**, *hand*; *band*, *force*; **manū**, *by art*, *by force*; **manūs dare**, *yield*, *give in*.

Marcomanī, **ōrum**, m. plur., *the Marcomani*, a German tribe.

Mārcus, **ī**, m., *Marcus*, a Roman praenomen.

mare, **maris**, n., *sea*.

maritimus, **a**, **um**, *on or of the sea*, *on the coast*, *maritime*, *naval*.

Marius, **ī**, m., *Caius Marius*, a famous Roman general and popular leader, who lived from B.C. 157 to 86.

Mars, **Martis**, m., *Mars*, the god of war.

mās, **maris**, m., *male*.

matara, **ae**, f., *(Celtic) javelin*, *pike*.

māter, **-tris**, f., *mother*; **mater familiae**, *matron*.

māteria, **ae**, f., *timber*, *wood*, *material*.

māteriēs, **ēī**, f., *timber*, *wood*, *material*.

māterior, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, *get timber*, *collect wood*.

Matisco, **-ōnis**, f., a town of the Aedui.

mātrimōnium, **ī**, n., *marriage*.

Mātrona, **ae**, f., the river *Marne*, in northern Gaul.

mātūrē, adv. (**mātūrius**, **mātūrrimē**), *early*, *soon*.

mātūr-ēscō, **ere**, **-uī**, *ripen*.

mātūrō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *hasten*, *make haste*.

mātūrus, **a**, **um**, *early*; *ripe*.

māximē, superlative adv. (see **magnopere**), *very greatly*, *very much*, *chiefly*, *most*, *especially*.

māximus, **a**, **um**, superlative of **magnus**.

Māximus, **ī**, m., *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, a Roman general, B.C. 121.

medeor, **ērī**, *remedy*, *relieve*.

mediocris, **e**, *moderate*, *ordinary*, *common*.

mediocriter, adv., *in a slight* or *small degree*.

Mediomatricī, **ōrum**, m. plur., *the Mediomatrici*, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

mediterrāneus, **a**, **um**, *inland*, *central*, *interior*.

medius, a, um, *middle, central; intermediate;* generally rendered by *middle* or *half-way.*

Meldi, ōrum, m. plur., *the Meldi,* a tribe in northern Gaul.

melior, comparative of **bonus.**

Melodūnum, ī, n., a town of the Senones in northern Gaul.

membrum, ī, n., *limb.*

meminī, isse, in perf. tenses only, *remember, recollect.*

memoria, ae, f., *memory, recollection, remembrance, tradition; time.*

Menapiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Menapii,* a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.

mendācium, ī, n., *lie, falsehood, false statement.*

mēns, mentis, f., *mind, intellect.*

mēnsis, is, m., *month.*

mēnsūra, ae, f., *measure.*

mentiō, -ōnis, f., *mention.*

mercātor, -tōris, m., *trader, merchant.*

mercatūra, ae, f., *trading, traffic, commerce.*

mer-cēs, -cēdis, f., *pay, hire.*

Mercurius, ī, m., *Mercury,* one of the Roman gods.

mereō, ēre, uī, itum, and **mereor, ērī, itus sum,** *deserve, win, earn; serve.*

meridiānus, a, um, *of midday, of noon.*

meridiēs, ēī, m., *midday, noon; the south.*

meritum, ī, n., *service, merit, desert; fault.*

Messāla, ae, m., *Marcus Valerius Messala,* consul B.C. 61.

mētior, īrī, mēnsus sum, *measure, measure out, distribute.*

Metiosedum, ī, n., a town in northern Gaul.

Mētius, ī, m., an envoy of Cæsar's.

metō, ere, messuī, messum, *reap, cut grain.*

metus, ūs, m., *fear.*

meus, a, um, *my, mine.*

mīl-es, -itis, m., *soldier, man;* as collective, *the soldiers, soldiery.*

mīlitāris, e, *military, of war.*

mīlitia, ae, f., *(military) service.*

mīlle, indeclinable adj.; in plur., **mīllia, ium,** n.; *thousand.*

Minerva, ae, f., *Minerva,* a Roman goddess.

minimē, adv., superlative of **parum,** *by no means, very little, least.*

minimus, superlative of **parvus.**

minor, comparative of **parvus.**

Minucius, ī, m., *Lucius Minucius Basilus,* one of Caesar's officers.

min-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *lessen, diminish, decrease; settle; ebb.*

minus, adv., comparative of **parum,** *less; not; not very, not so well.*

mīror, ārī, ātus sum, *wonder at, wonder.*

mīrus, a, um, *wonderful, strange, surprising.*

miser, era, erum, *wretched, poor, miserable.*

misericordia, ae, f., *pity, mercy, clemency.*

miseror, ārī, ātus sum, *bewail, deplore, lament.*

missus, ūs, m., *sending, despatch.*

mītis, e, *gentle;* superl. adv., **mītissimē,** *gently, mildly.*

mittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *send, despatch; hurl, throw.*

mōbilis, e, *fickle, changeable.*

mōbilitās, -tātis, f., *fickleness; quickness, activity.*

mōbiliter, adv., *easily.*

moderor, ārī, ātus sum, *manage, check, control, restrain.*

modestia, ae, f., *self-control, moderation.*

modo, adv., *only, but, merely; just, but now, but recently.*

modus, ī, m., *measure, amount; fashion, style, manner, kind, sort.*

moenia, ium, n. plur., *walls, fortifications.*

mōlēs, is, f., *mass; dyke, dam.*

molestē, adv., *grievously;* **moleste ferre,** *to be annoyed, be vexed.*

mōlīmentum, ī, n., *trouble, difficulty.*

molitus, a, um, from **molo.**

molliō, īre, īvī, ītum, *soften, lessen; make easy.*

mollis, e, *weak, yielding, changeable, not firm; smooth, level.*

mollitia, ae, f., *weakness, feebleness.*

mollitiēs, ēī, f., *weakness, lack of endurance.*

mol-ō, ere, -uī, -itum, *grind.*

mōmentum, ī, n., *weight, influence, importance.*

Mona, ae, f., an island in the Irish channel.

moneō, ēre, uī, itum, *warn, advise, remind, urge.*

mōns, montis, m., *mountain; mountain range; hill.*

mora, ae, f., *delay.*

morbus, ī, m., *disease, sickness.*

Morinī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Morini,* a tribe in the north of Gaul.

morior, morī, mortuus sum, *die.*

Moritasgus, ī, m., a chief of the Senones.

moror, ārī, ātus sum, *delay, wait, stay, linger; hinder, retard.*

mors, mortis, f., *death.*

mortuus, a, um, from **morior.**

mōs, mōris, m., *manner, custom, way;* in plur., *habits, character.*

Mosa, ae, m., *the Meuse,* a river in north-eastern Gaul.

mōtus, ūs, m., *movement, motion, change; uprising, disturbance, revolt.*

moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move; influence.*

muli-er, -eris, f., *woman.*

mūliō, -ōnis, m., *muleteer, muledriver.*

multitū-dō, -dinis, f., *large number, great number, large body, multitude; number, amount; the common people.*

multō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fine; deprive.*

multum, adv. (**plūs, plūrimum**), *much, often, very.*

multus, a, um (**plūs, plūrimus**), *much;* in plur., *many;* w. **dies** or **nox,** *far advanced;* **multo** as adv., *much, far.*

mūlus, ī, m., *mule.*

Mūnātius, ī, m., *Lucius Munatius Plancus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

mundus, ī, m., *wo[illegible], universe.*

mūnīmentum, ī, n., *fortification, defence.*

mūniō, īre, īvī, ītum, *fortify, protect, defend, secure;* w. **iter,** *build, make.*

mūnītiō, -ōnis, f., *fortification, construction; fortified works, defences.*

mūn-us, -eris, n., *duty, task, service; gift, present.*

mūrālis, e, *of a wall, used for* or *from walls, mural.*

mūrus, ī, m., *wall.*

mūsculus, ī, m., *shed, penthouse, covered hut.*

mutilus, a, um, *maimed, broken.*

mūtō, āre, āvī, ātum, *change.*

N.

nactus, a, um, from **nanciscor.**

nam, conj., *for, now.*

Namměius, ī, m., a leading man of the Helvetii.

Namnētes, um, m. plur., *the Namnetes,* a tribe at the mouth of the Loire.

namque, conj., *for.*

nanciscor, ī, nactus or **nanctus sum,** *find, get, come upon, obtain, secure.*

Nantuātes, um, m. plur., *the Nantuates*, a tribe in the Alps, between the province and Italy.

Narbō, ōnis, f., a town in the southern part of the province.

nāscor, ī, nātus sum, *be born, be sprung from, arise, be bred;* of metals, *be found.*

Nasua, ae, m., a leader of the Suebi.

nātālis, e, *of birth;* **dies natalis,** *birthday.*

nātiō, -ōnis, f., *race, people, tribe, nation.*

nātīvus, a, um, *natural.*

nātūra, ae, f., *nature, character.*

nātus, a, um, from **nascor.**

nātus, ūs, m., *birth.*

nauta, ae, m., *sailor.*

nauticus, a, um, *naval, nautical.*

nāvālis, e, *naval, of ships.*

nāvicula, ae, f., *small boat, skiff.*

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, f., *sailing, navigation, voyage.*

nāvigium, ī, n., *ship, vessel.*

nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātum, *sail.*

nāvis, is, f., *ship, boat, vessel;* **navis longa,** *warship;* **navis oneraria,** *transport.*

nāvō, āre, āvī, ātum, *do energetically;* **operam navare,** *do one's best* or *utmost.*

nē, conj., *that not, lest;* w. verbs of urging, asking, etc., *not to;* w. verbs of hindering, *from;* w. verbs of fearing, *that, lest;* w. subj. standing for imperative, *not.*

nē, adv., *not;* **ne..quidem,** *not even.*

-ne, enclitic interrogative particle, in direct questions untranslated; in indirect questions, *whether;* **necne,** *or not.*

nec, see **neque.**

necessārius, a, um, *necessary, urgent, pressing; critical;* m. as subst., *connection, intimate friend, relative;* **necessāriō,** abl. as adv., *of necessity, unavoidably.*

necesse, indecl. adj., *necessary, inevitable;* **necesse est,** often to be rendered by *must, can but.*

necessitās, -tātis, f., *necessity, need; urgency, exigency; interest.*

necessitū-dō, -dinis, f., *intimacy, close friendship.*

necne, conj., *or not.*

necō, āre, āvī, ātum, *kill, put to death.*

necubi, conj., *that nowhere.*

nefārius, a, um, *wicked, atrocious, infamous.*

nefās, n. indecl., *wrong, crime.*

neg-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lectum, *neglect, slight, disregard; overlook, be indifferent to.*

negō, āre, āvī, ātum, *deny, say ..not; refuse.*

negōtior, ārī, ātus sum, *do business, carry on business.*

negōtium, ī, n., *business, enterprise; task, trouble, difficulty;* **dare negotium,** *instruct.*

Nemetes, um, m. plur., *the Nemetes*, a German tribe on the Rhine.

nēmō (nēminis), m., gen. and abl. not in use, *no one, nobody.*

nēquāquam, adv., *by no means.*

neque, or sometimes **nec** before consonants, adv. and conj., *and not, nor;* when repeated, *neither ..nor.*

nēquīquam or **nēquidquam,** adv., *in vain, to no purpose.*

Nervicus, a, um, *of* or *with the Nervii.*

Nervius, a, um, *Nervian, of the Nervii.*

Nervii, ōrum, m. plur., *the Nervii*, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

nervus, ī, m., *sinew; strength, vigor, power.*

neu, see **neve.**

neuter, tra, trum, *neither;* in plur., *neither side.*

nēve or **neu,** *or not, and that not, and not so, nor.*

nex, necis, f., *death.*

nihil, n. indecl. *nothing;* acc. as adv., *not at all.*

nihilum, ī, n., *nothing;* **nihilo,** abl. as adv., *none, no,* w. comparatives.

nimis, adv., *too.*

nimius, a, um, *excessive, too great.*

nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except.*

Nitiobroges, um, m. plur., *the Nitiobroges,* a tribe on the Garonne.

nitor, ī, nīsus and **nīxus sum,** *rely on,* w. abl.; *strive, endeavor.*

nix, nivis, f., *snow.*

nōbilis, e, *noble, of high birth; well-known;* m. as subst., *a noble.*

nōbilitās, -tātis, f., *high birth; the nobility, the nobles.*

noceō, ēre, uī, itum, *harm, injure, do harm to, molest,* w. dat.; part. **nocēns, -entis,** *guilty.*

noctū, abl. as adv., *by night.*

nocturnus, a, um, *by night, in the night, nightly.*

nōdus, ī, m., *joint.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling, not wish;* in imperative, *do not.*

nōmen, -minis, n., *name; reputation, prestige;* in abl., *under the name* or *pretence of, as, on account.*

nōminātim, adv., *by name.*

nōminō, āre, āvī, ātum, *name, call, mention.*

nōn, adv., *not, no.*

nōnāgintā, *ninety.*

nōndum, adv., *not yet.*

nōnnihil, adv., *somewhat.*

nōnnūllus, a, um, *some.*

nōnnunquam, adv., *sometimes.*

nōnus, a, um, *ninth.*

Nōrēia, ae, f., chief town of the Norici.

Nōricus, a, um, *Norican, of the Norici,* a tribe living inland north of the Adriatic.

nōs, plur. of **ego.**

nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtum, *learn, become acquainted with;* in perf., *know;* part. **nōtus, a, um,** *known, well-known, familiar.*

noster, tra, trum, *our;* m. plur. as subst., *our men, troops* or *forces.*

nōtitia, ae, f., *knowledge, acquaintance with.*

novem, *nine.*

Noviodūnum, ī, n., (1) a town of the Suessiones; (2) a town of the Aedui; (3) a town of the Bituriges.

novitās, -tātis, f., *novelty, strangeness.*

novus, a, um, *new, fresh;* in superlative, *latest, last, rear;* **novae res,** *political change, change of government, revolution.*

nox, noctis, f., *night.*

noxa, ae, f., *crime, offense.*

nūbō, ere, nūpsī, nūptum, *marry.*

nūdō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bare, expose; strip, clear.*

nūdus, a, um, *uncovered, naked, unprotected, bare.*

nūllus, a, um, *no, none;* in gen. dat. and abl. supplies cases of **nemo,** *no one.*

num, interrogative particle expecting negative answer, not translated.

nūmen, -minis, n., *divinity, divine power.*

numerus, ī, m., *number; amount; account;* **in numero,** *in the light, as.*

Numida, ae, m., *Numidian,* from the north coast of Africa.

nummus, ī, m., *coin, money.*

numquam, adv., *never*

nunc, adv., *now.*

nunquam, adv., *never.*

nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *announce, report, bring word, tell.*

nūntius, ī, m., *messenger; news, report, message, tidings.*

nūper, adv., *lately, recently.*

nusquam, adv., *nowhere.*

nūtus, ūs, m., *nod, beck; gestures, signs.*

O.

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of, because of, for;* **quam ob rem,** *why.*

obaerātus, a, um, *indebted;* m. as subst., *debtor.*

ob-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *throw out, carry.*

ob-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *attend to.*

obitus, ūs, m., *destruction.*

ob-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *place in the way, throw up, set, oppose; expose;* pass., *lie opposite, be in the way.*

oblātus, a, um, from **offero.**

oblīquē, adv., *obliquely.*

oblīquus, a, um, *slanting, oblique.*

ob-līviscor, ī, -lītus sum, *forget,* w. gen.

obsecrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *entreat, beseech.*

obsequentia, ae, f., *compliance, regard.*

observo, āre, āvī, ātum, *keep, observe, regard, follow; watch, note.*

ob-ses, -sidis, m., *hostage.*

obsessiō, -ōnis, f., *siege, blockade.*

ob-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *besiege, blockade, beset.*

obsidiō, -ōnis, f., *siege, blockade; pressure.*

obsīgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *seal.*

ob-sistō, ere, -stitī, *resist, withstand,* w. dat.

obstinātē, adv., *steadily, firmly, persistently.*

ob-stringō, ere, -strinxī, -strictum, *bind, put under obligation.*

ob-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *barricade, close.*

obtemperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *submit to, obey,* w. dat.

obtestor, ārī, ātus sum, *implore, call upon.*

ob-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *hold, possess, occupy, maintain.*

obtulī, from **offero.**

ob-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *fall to, be assigned to; encounter.*

obviam, adv., *in the way, to meet,* w. dat.

occāsiō, -ōnis, f., *opportunity, time; surprise.*

occāsus, ūs, m., *setting;* **solis occasus,** *sunset, the west.*

oc-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cāsum, *set; fall, be slain.*

oc-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *slay, kill.*

occultātiō, -ōnis, f., *concealment.*

occultē, adv., *secretly.*

occultō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hide, conceal.*

occultus, a, um, *concealed, hidden, secret;* **in** or **ex occulto,** *in secret.*

occupātiō, -ōnis, f., *engagement, occupation.*

occupō, āre, āvī, ātum, *seize, get possession of; occupy, engage; cover.*

oc-currō, ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursum, *fall in with, meet, come upon, find; resist; provide for; occur.*

occursō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rush upon, charge.*

Ōceanus, ī, m., (often with **mare**), *the Ocean.*

Ocelum, ī, n., a town on the eastern side of the Alps.

ōcius, adv., *quickly, swiftly.*

octāvus, a, um, *eighth.*

octingentī, ae, a, *eight hundred.*

octo, *eight.*

octōdecim, *eighteen.*

Octodūrus, ī, m., a town of the Veragri, in the Alps.

octōgintā, *eighty.*

octōnī, ae, a, *eight at a time, eight each, eight.*

oculus, ī, m., *eye.*

ōdī, isse, perf. w. pres. meaning, *hate.*

odium, ī, n., *hatred.*

of-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *hurt, wound; cause harm* or *mishap.*

offēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *wounding, hurting.*

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, *present, offer, hold out, give, afford, render; put in one's way* or *power.*

officium, ī, n., *service, duty, allegiance.*

Ollovicō, -ōnis, m., a king of the Nitiobroges.

o-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *neglect, give up, leave; throw away.*

omnīnō, adv., *altogether, in all;* w. negatives, *at all;* w. numerals, *only.*

omnis, e, *all, every, whole.*

onerārius, a, um, *for burdens;* **navis oneraria,** *a transport.*

onerō, āre, āvī, ātum, *load.*

on-us, -eris, n., *burden, weight, bulk; cargo, freight.*

opera, ae, f., *work, exertion; pains, attention; services, aid, agency;* **operam dare,** *take pains, see to it.*

opīniō, -ōnis, f., *opinion, impression, idea; expectation, anticipation; reputation.*

oportet, ēre, oportuit, impersonal verb, *it behoves, it is necessary;* render freely by *ought.*

oppidānus, a, um, *of a town;* m. plur. as subst., *townspeople.*

oppidum, ī, n., *town.*

op-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *oppose;* pass., *lie in the way.*

opportūnē, *opportunely, conveniently.*

opportūnitās, -tātis, f., *fitness; convenience, suitable* or *favorable nature, convenient opportunity, advantage.*

opportūnus, a, um, *opportune, convenient, advantageous.*

op-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum, *overwhelm, crush, surprise; burden, weigh down.*

oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, f., *assault, attack; mode of attack.*

oppūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *attack, assault, storm.*

(ops), opis, f., *help, aid;* in plur., *resources, power, strength.*

optimē, adv., superlative of **bene,** *well, excellently.*

optimus, a, um, superlative of **bonus,** *best, very good, most excellent.*

optō, āre, āvī, ātum, *desire;* perf. part. as adj., **optātus, a, um,** *desirable, acceptable.*

op-us, -eris, n., *work, fortification, fortifying, structure; trade, handicraft;* **opere** w. **munitus,** *by art;* **quanto opere,** *how much, how greatly, as much as;* **tanto opere,** *so much, so earnestly, so vigorously;* **magno opere,** see **magnopere.**

opus, n. indecl., *need, necessity;* **opus est,** *it is necessary, there is need.*

ōra, ae, f., *shore, coast.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech, address, words, statement, appeal.*

ōrātor, -tōris, m., *ambassador.*

orbis, is, f., *circle;* **orbis terrarum,** *the whole world.*

Orcynia, ae, f., a name given by Greek writers to the Hercynian forest.

ōr-dō, -dinis, m., *rank, row, course, tier; grade, class; arrangement, order.*

Orgetor-ix, -igis, m., a leading man of the Helvetii.

orior, īrī, ortus sum, *rise, arise, spring, be born; spring up, begin, start;* part. **oriēns, -entis,** as adj., *rising;* **oriens sol,** *sunrise, the east.*

ornāmentum, ī, n., *ornament, honor.*

ornō, āre, āvī, ātum, *adorn, distinguish; supply, equip, furnish.*

ōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *pray, beg, entreat.*

ortus, a, um, from **orior.**

ortus, ūs, m., *rising.*

ōs, ōris, n., *face, mouth.*

Osismī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Osismi,* a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

osten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum, *show, point out, explain, declare, state; reveal, unmask, display.*

ostentātiō, -ōnis, f., *show, display; boastfulness, pride; pretence, deception.*

ostentō, āre, āvī, ātum, *show, display, exhibit, parade.*

ōtium, ī, n., *rest, leisure, quiet.*

ōvum, ī, n., *egg.*

P.

P., an abbreviation for **Publius.**

pābulātiō, -ōnis, f., *foraging.*

pābulātor, -tōris, m., *forager.*

pābulor, ārī, ātus sum, *forage.*

pābulum, ī, n., *fodder, forage.*

pācō, āre, āvī, ātum, *subdue, reduce;* part. **pācātus, a, um,** as adj., *peaceful, quiet.*

pactum, ī, n., *manner, way;* **quo pacto,** *how.*

Padus, ī, m., *the Po,* a river in Cisalpine Gaul (northern Italy).

Paemānī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Paemani,* a tribe in north-eastern Gaul.

paene, adv., *almost.*

paenit-et, ēre, -uit, impersonal, w. acc. of person and gen. of thing, render by *be sorry, regret.*

pāgus, ī, m., *district, canton.*

palam, adv., *openly, publicly.*

palma, ae, f., *palm, hand.*

pal-ūs, -ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp, fen.*

palūster, tris, tre, *marshy.*

pandō, ere, pandī, passum, *spread out, outstretch;* in pass. w. **capillus,** *be dishevelled.*

pār, paris, *equal, like, the same:* *a match.*

parcē, adv., *sparingly.*

parcō, ere, pepercī, parsum or **parcitum,** *spare,* w. dat.; *be economical.*

parēns, -entis, m. and f., *parent.*

parentō, āre, āvī, ātum, *avenge,* w. dat.

pareō, ēre, uī, itum, *obey, submit,* w. dat.

pariō, ere, peperī, partum, *get, acquire, secure, win.*

Parisiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Parisii,* a tribe in northern Gaul on the Seine.

parō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prepare, get ready, arrange; procure, get, acquire;* part. **parātus, a, um,** as adj., *ready, prepared.*

pars, partis, f., *part, portion, share; quarter, direction, side; party; way, point, respect.*

partim, adv., *partly;* when repeated, often rendered by *some... others.*

partior, īrī, ītus sum, *divide.*

partus, a, um, from **pario.**

parum, adv., (**minus, minimē**), *little, too little, not much.*

parvulus, a, um, *very small, slight, trifling, insignificant;* **ab parvulis,** *from early childhood.*

parvus, a, um, (**minor, minimus**), *small, trifling.*

passim, adv., *in all directions.*

passus, a, um, from **pando** or from **patior.**

passus, ūs, m., *pace* (five feet); one thousand paces make one mile.

pate-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, *open, throw open.*

pate-fīō, -fierī, -factus sum, pass. of **patefacio.**

pateō, ēre, uī, *extend, spread out; be open, stand open;* part. **patēns, -entis,** as adj., *open, exposed.*

pater, -tris, m., *father;* in plur., *forefathers, ancestors.*

patienter, adv., *patiently.*

patientia, ae, f., *endurance, patience, forbearance.*

patior, I, passus sum, *suffer. allow, permit; bear, endure, withstand.*

patrius, a, um, *of one's fathers, ancestral.*

patrōnus, I, m., *patron, lord.*

patruus, I, m., *uncle (on father's side).*

paucI, ae, a (sing. not in Caesar), *few, but few.*

paucitās, -tātis, f., *small number.*

paulātim, adv., *gradually, by degrees; gently.*

paulisper, adv., *for a short time.*

paulō, adv., *a little, slightly, somewhat.*

paululum, adv., *very slightly, a very little.*

paulum, adv., *a little.*

pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*

peccō, āre, āvI, ātum, *do wrong, commit a wrong.*

pect-us, -oris, n., *breast.*

pecūnia, ae, f., *money.*

pec-us, -oris, n., *cattle; flesh, meat.*

pedālis, e, *measuring a foot, a foot thick.*

ped-es, -itis, m., *foot-soldier;* in plur., *infantry.*

pedester, tris, tre, *on foot, on* or *by land; of infantry.*

peditātus, ūs, m., *infantry.*

Pedius, I, m., *Quintus Pedius,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

pējor, pējus, (comparative of **malus**), *worse.*

pellis, is, f., *skin, hide;* **sub pellibus,** *in tents.*

pellō, ere, pepulI, pulsum, *drive, dislodge, repulse, defeat, rout.*

pendō, ere, pependI, pēnsum, *weigh; pay.*

penes, prep. w. acc., *in the power* or *hands of.*

penitus, adv., *completely, utterly.*

per, prep. w. acc., *through; by means of, by; by way of, over, along; by reason of;* **per se,** *by* or *in one's self, so far as (he was) concerned.*

per-agō, ere, -ēgI, -āctum, *finish, bring to an end.*

perangustus, a, um, *very narrow.*

per-cipiō, ere, -cēpI, -ceptum, *get, acquire; hear, hear of, learn; gain, reap.*

percontātiō, -ōnis, f., *inquiry.*

per-currō, ere, -currI (-cucurrI), -cursum, *run along.*

per-cutiō, ere, -cussI, -cussum, *hit, strike down.*

per-discō, ere, -didicI, *learn thoroughly, master.*

per-dō, ere, -didI, -ditum, *ruin;* part. **perditus, a, um,** as adj., *abandoned, desperate.*

per-dūcō, ere, -dūxI, -ductum, *carry* or *bring over, bring; prolong; carry, make.*

perendinus, a, um, *after tomorrow.*

per-eō, -Ire, -iI (-IvI,) -itum *perish, be killed.*

perequitō, āre, āvI, ātum, *ride through, ride about.*

perexiguus, a, um, *very small.*

perfacilis, e, *very easy.*

per-ferō, -ferre, -tulI, -lātum, *endure, bear, submit to; carry, convey, report.*

per-ficiō, ere, -fēcI, -fectum, *carry out, finish, accomplish, bring about; build, make.*

perfidia, ae, f., *faithlessness, treachery.*

per-fringō, ere, -frēgI, -frāctum, *break through.*

perfuga, ae, m., *deserter.*

per-fugiō, ere, -fūgI, *flee, escape; desert.*

perfugium, I, n., *refuge, place of refuge.*

per-gō, ere, -rēxI, -rēctum, *proceed, advance.*

periclitor, ārī, ātus sum, *run risk, be exposed to danger; try, make a test.*

perīculōsus, a, um, *dangerous.*

perīculum, ī, n., *danger, risk; test, trial, attempt.*

perītus, a, um, *skilled, experienced, familiar,* w. gen.

perlātus, a, um, from **perfero.**

per-legō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *read through.*

per-luō, ere, -luī, -lūtum, *wash;* in pass., *bathe.*

permāgnus, a, um, *very large.*

per-maneō, ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *continue, remain, persist, abide.*

per-misceō, ēre, -miscuī, -mixtum (-mistum), *mix, mingle.*

per-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *give up, yield, entrust, leave; allow, grant permission, permit.*

per-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move, influence, induce; arouse, alarm, excite.*

per-mulceō, ēre, -mulsī, -mulsum, *soothe, calm, quiet.*

perniciēs, ēī, f., *destruction.*

perpaucī, ae, a, *very few.*

perpendiculum, ī, n., *plumb-line.*

per-petior, ī, -pessus sum, *endure, suffer.*

perpetuus, a, um, *continuous, unbroken, solid; perpetual, lasting; whole, entire; incessant;* **in perpetuum,** *for ever;* abl. as adv., **perpetuō,** *for ever, constantly, uninterruptedly.*

per-quīrō, ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *inquire into* or *about.*

per-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break through, break, force a way* or *passage* or *entrance.*

per-scrībō, ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *write out, report, describe fully.*

per-sequor, ī, -secutus sum, *pursue, follow up; avenge; attack.*

persevērō, āre, āvī, ātum, *persist.*

per-solvō, ere, -solvī, -solūtum, *pay.*

per-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *see, see through; perceive, understand; observe, examine, inspect, survey; learn, ascertain, find out, become acquainted with.*

per-stō, āre, -stitī, -stātum, *persist, abide, be firm.*

per-suādeō, ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *persuade, induce, prevail on, convince,* w. dat.

perterreō, ēre, uī, itum, *terrify, frighten, alarm;* in pass., *be panic-stricken; dismay, demoralize.*

per-timēscō, ere, -timuī, *fear greatly, be much afraid.*

pertinācia, ae, f., *obstinacy.*

per-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *extend, reach, stretch; lead, tend, have a tendency; concern, relate, belong to.*

pertulī, from **perfero.**

perturbātiō, -ōnis, f., *alarm, confusion, panic.*

perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum, *throw into confusion, disconcert, disturb, alarm;* in pass., *be at a loss.*

pervagor, ārī, ātus sum, *roam about.*

per-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come, reach, arrive.*

pēs, pedis, m., *foot;* **pedibus,** *on foot, by land;* **pedem referre,** *to fall back, retire, retreat.*

pet-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, *ask, request; seek, ask for, beg, sue for; make for, aim at, attack.*

Petrocoriī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Petrocorii,* a tribe in south-western Gaul on the Garonne.

Petrōnius, ī, m., *Marcus Petronius,* a centurion in Caesar's army.

Petrosidius, ī, m., *Lucius Petrosidius,* the standard-bearer of one of Caesar's legions.

phal-anx, -angis, f., *phalanx, column, compact body.*

Pictones, um, m. plur., *the Pictones,* a Gallic tribe at the mouth of the Loire.

pietās, -tātis, f., *duty* or *devotion (to country), patriotism.*

pīlum, ī, n., *javelin, spear.*

pīlus, ī, m., a *maniple* or *division* of a Roman legion; the senior centurion of the first maniple was *chief centurion* of the legion.

pinna, ae, f., *parapet, battlement.*

Pirustae, ārum, m. plur., *the Pirustae*, a tribe in Illyricum.

piscis, is, m., *fish.*

Pisō, -ōnis, m., 1. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso*, a Roman *legatus*, slain by the Tigurini, B.C. 107; 2. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso*, grandson of the above, consul B.C. 58, and Caesar's father-in-law; 3. *Marcus Piso*, consul B.C. 61; 4. an Aquitanian of rank.

pix, picis, f., *pitch.*

placeō, ēre, uī, itum, *please,* w. dat.; **placet,** impersonal, *it is decided, (one) resolves.*

placidē, adv., *calmly, quietly.*

plācō, āre, āvī, ātum, *appease.*

Plancus, ī, m., *Lucius Munatius Plancus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

plānē, adv., *clearly; quite, altogether.*

plāniciēs, ēī, f., *plain, level ground.*

plānus, a, um, *level, flat.*

plēbēs, or **plēbs, plēbis,** f., *the common people.*

plēnē, adv., *entirely, completely.*

plēnus, a, um, *full, complete.*

plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque, *the most, the majority, the greater number.*

plērumque, adv., *generally, usually, in most cases.*

Pleumoxiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Pleumoxii*, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

plumbum, ī, n., *lead;* **plumbum album,** *tin.*

plūrimum, adv., *most, very much.*

plūrimus, a, um, superlative of **multus,** *most, very much, very many.*

plūs, plūris, comparative of **multus,** *more;* in plur., *several, many.*

pluteus, ī, m., *screen, moveable breastwork, defence.*

pōculum, ī, n., *drinking-cup.*

poena, ae, f., *penalty, punishment; satisfaction.*

poenitet, see **paenitet.**

poll-ex, -icis, m., *thumb.*

polliceor, ērī, itus sum, *promise, make a promise.*

pollicitātiō, -ōnis, f., *promise, offer.*

Pompēius, ī, m., *Pompey*, 1. *Cneius Pompeius*, consul B.C. 55, proconsul of Spain B.C. 54-50. 2. *Cneius Pompeius*, an interpreter with the Roman army.

pond-us, -eris, n., *weight.*

pōnō, ere, posuī, positum, *place, set, station;* w. **castra,** *pitch; rest, base, make dependent; lay down;* in pass., *be situated, be dependent.*

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*

poposcī, from **posco.**

populātiō, -ōnis, f., *ravaging, raid.*

populor, ārī, ātus sum, *ravage, lay waste, devastate.*

populus, ī, m., *people, nation.*

por-rigō, ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *stretch forward;* part. **porrēctus, a, um,** as adj., *extended.*

porrō, adv., *further, moreover.*

porta, ae, f., *gate.*

portō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry, bring, convey.*

portōrium, ī, n., *customs duty, toll, tax.*

portus, ūs, m., *harbor, port.*

poscō, ere, poposcī, *ask for, demand.*

positus, a, um, from **pono.**

possessiō, -ōnis, f., *possession, occupation;* in plur. *lands.*

pos-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *possess, hold.*

pos-sīdō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *seize, occupy.*

possum, posse, potuī, *be able, can, be possible; be powerful* or *strong, have weight* or *influence.*

post, 1. adv., *afterwards, after;* 2. prep. w. acc., *after, behind.*

posteā, adv., *afterwards; hereafter.*

posteāquam, conj., *after, when.*

posterus, a, um, *next, following;* m. plur. as subst., *descendants, posterity.*

post-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *postpone, set aside, disregard.*

postquam, conj., *after, when.*

postrēmō, adv., *finally, lastly, at last.*

postrīdiē, adv., *the next day, on the morrow.*

postulātum, ī, n., *demand.*

postulō, āre, āvī, ātum, *ask, ask for, demand, require.*

potēns, entis, partic. of **possum,** *powerful, influential.*

potentātus, ūs, m., *supremacy, chief power, leading position.*

potentia, ae, f., *power.*

potestās, -tātis, f., *power, control; opportunity, chance, permission.*

potior, īrī, ītus sum, *get control* or *possession of, gain, obtain,* w. abl. or gen.

potius, comparative adv., *rather, sooner, more.*

potuī, from **possum.**

prae, prep. w. abl., *in comparison with; on account of, for.*

praeacūtus, a, um, *sharpened at the end, pointed.*

praebeō, ēre, uī, itum, *furnish, afford, give, cause.*

prae-caveō, ēre, -cāvī, -cautum, *take precautions, be on one's guard.*

prae-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *excel, surpass.*

prae-ceps, -cipitis, *headlong; abrupt, steep.*

praeceptum, ī, n., *order, instructions, injunction.*

prae-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *order, instruct, give instructions; anticipate.*

praecipitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fling, hurl.*

praecipuē, adv., *especially.*

praecipuus, a, um, *special, particular.*

prae-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *close, barricade.*

praecō, -ōnis, m., *herald.*

Praecōnīnus, ī, m., *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

prae-currō, ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursum, *hasten on before; anticipate.*

praeda, ae, f., *plunder, booty.*

praedicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *announce, declare, assert, boast.*

praedor, ārī, ātus sum, *plunder, get plunder, pillage.*

prae-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *construct in front, carry out.*

praefectus, a, um, from **praeficio.**

praefectus, ī, m., *officer, commander* (especially of cavalry), *prefect.*

prae-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *place before, prefer, esteem more highly;* **se praeferre,** *to surpass, outdo.*

prae-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *put* or *set over, place in command of, give charge of,* w. acc. and dat.

prae-figō, ere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *fix before, place at the edge.*

praemet-uō, ere, -uī, *be anxious, fear.*

prae-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send in advance, send on before, send forward.*

praemium, ī, n., *reward, prize.*

praeoccupō, āre, āvī, ātum, *seize beforehand, seize, take possession of.*

praeoptō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prefer.*

praeparō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prepare* or *get ready beforehand.*

prae-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *place* or *set over, put in command of*, w. acc. and dat.

prae-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break off, snap*; part. **praeruptus, a, um,** as adj., *abrupt, precipitous.*

prae-saepiō, īre, -saepsī, -saeptum, *block up, barricade.*

prae-scrībō, ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *prescribe, direct, dictate.*

praescrīptum, ī, n., *bidding, dictation.*

praesēns, -entis, partic. of **praesum,** *present, instant, in person.*

praesentia, ae, f., *the present; presence*; **in praesentia,** *for the moment, at the time.*

prae-sentiō, īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *learn of* or *find out beforehand, have foresight.*

praesertim, adv., *especially, particularly.*

praesidium, ī, n., *guard, garrison, (protecting) force; protection, support, escort.*

praestō, adv., *at hand*; **praesto esse,** *to meet.*

prae-stō, āre, -stitī, -stitum or **-stātum,** *exhibit, show, display; discharge, do; excel, be superior*, w. dat.; **praestat,** impersonal, *it is better.*

prae-sum, esse, -fuī, *be over, be at head of, have command of; be in charge of, hold*; w. dat.

praeter, prep. w. acc., *beyond, past; except, besides; contrary to.*

praetereā, adv., *besides, moreover.*

praeter-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *pass over, pass by*; part. as adj., **praeteritus, a, um,** *past*; n. plur. as subst., *the past.*

praeter-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *let go by, let pass, lose; pass over, neglect.*

praeterquam, adv., *except.*

praetor, -tōris, m., *commander; praetor*, a Roman magistrate.

praetōrius, a, um, *of a commander* or *praetor*; **praetoria cohors,** *body-guard.*

prae-ūrō, ere, -ūssī, -ūstum, *burn at the end* or *point.*

prae-vertō, ere, -vertī, -versum, *anticipate, prevent*, w. dat.

prāvus, a, um, *poor, wretched; wicked, vicious, perverse.*

precēs, um, f. (sing. defective and not found in Caesar), *prayers, entreaties.*

premō, ere, pressī, pressum, *press, press hard; crowd; harass, oppress.*

prendō, ere, prendī, prēnsum, *seize, grasp.*

pretium, ī, n., *price.*

(prex), precis, f., see **preces.**

prīdiē, adv., *the day before, on the previous day.*

prīmipīlus, ī, m., *chief centurion*; see **pīlus.**

prīmō, adv., *at first.*

prīmum, adv., *first, in the first place*; **cum** or **ubi prīmum,** *as soon as*; **quam prīmum,** *as soon as possible.*

prīmus, a, um, superlative of **prior,** *first, foremost, in the van*; **in prīmīs,** *especially.*

prīn-ceps, -cipis, *first, chief, leading*; m. as subst., *leading man, leader, chief.*

prīncipātus, ūs, m., *leadership, chief position, first place, lead.*

prior, ius, comparative, *former, earlier; in front; first* (of two).

prīstinus, a, um, *former, previous; of former days, old-time.*

prius, comparative adv., *earlier, sooner*; **prius . . . quam,** *before*, w. negatives *until.*

priusquam, conj., *before.*

prīvātim, adv., *privately, as individuals, as private persons.*

prīvātus, a, um, *private, individual, personal*; m. as subst., *a private person, individual.*

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in front of; on behalf of, for; instead of, in place of, as; in return for; in accordance with, according to; in proportion to, in comparison with; considering, in view of; as far as concerned.*

probō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prove; test, put to the test; approve of, favor, recognize, think highly of.*

prō-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *go forward, advance.*

Procillus, ī, m., *Caius Valerius Procillus*, a Romanized Gaul of rank.

prōclīnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bend forward;* **res proclinata,** *a falling cause.*

prōcōn-sul, -sulis, m., *proconsul*, an ex-consul in charge of a province.

procul, adv., *at a distance.*

prō-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, *bend* or *slope forward, incline; lie down, fall, sink, lodge.*

prōcūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *attend to, have charge of.*

prō-currō, ere, -cucurrī (-currī), -cursum, *run* or *rush forward, rush out, charge.*

prōd-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *go forth, come out, advance.*

prōdesse, from **prosum.**

prōditiō, -ōnis, f., *treachery, treason.*

prōditor, -tōris, m., *traitor.*

prō-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *give forth, publish, report; hand down, bequeath, transmit; betray.*

prō-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead forth* or *out, bring out; prolong, protract.*

proelior, ārī, ātus sum, *fight.*

proelium, ī, n., *battle, engagement, fighting, fight.*

profectiō, -ōnis, f., *departure.*

profectus, a, um, from **proficiscor.**

prōfectus, a, um, from **proficio.**

prō-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *bring forth, bring out.*

prō-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *gain advantage, gain, effect; advance.*

pro-ficiscor, ī, -fectus sum, *set out, depart, start, go, proceed.*

pro-fiteor, ērī, -fessus sum, *declare, state openly, offer, profess, avow.*

prōflīgō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rout, put to flight.*

prō-fluō, ere, -flūxī, *flow forth, rise.*

pro-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *flee, escape.*

prōgnātus, a, um, *sprung, descended;* m. as subst., *descendant.*

prō-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *go forward, come forth, advance, proceed, go.*

prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum, *restrain, keep, prevent, hold, hinder, cut off; protect.*

proinde, adv., *therefore.*

prō-iciō, ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw down* or *away, hurl, fling; abandon, renounce.*

prōlātus, a, um, from **profero.**

prōmineō, ere, uī, *lean forward.*

prōmiscuē, adv., *promiscuously, indiscriminately.*

prō-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *let grow;* part. **prōmissus, a, um,** as adj., *long, flowing.*

prōmontōrium, ī, n., *headland, promontory.*

prō-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move forward, advance.*

prōmptus, a, um, *ready, alert.*

prōnē, adv., *bending forward.*

prōnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *state publicly, declare, tell, announce; give notice, give orders, make proclamation.*

prope, adv. (**propius, proxime**), *near; nearly, almost;* also as prep. w. acc., *near.*

prō-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive off, repel, dislodge, defeat.*

properō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hasten.*

propinquitās, -tātis, f., *neighborhood, vicinity, nearness, proximity; relationship, kinship.*

propinquus, a, um, *near, close; related;* m. as subst., *relative, kinsman.*

propior, ius, comparative, *nearer;* see **proximus.**

propius, adv., see **prope.**

prō-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *place or set before; display; set forth, explain, state, disclose; offer, present; promise, propose.*

proprius, a, um, *one's own, private, particular; belonging to, peculiar to;* n. as subst., *a mark, a sign.*

propter, prep. w. acc., *on account of, because of.*

propterea, adv., *on this account, for this reason;* **propterea quod,** *because.*

prōpūgnātor, -tōris, m., *defender.*

prōpūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *defend, rush out to fight.*

prōpulsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *drive off, repel.*

prōra, ae, f., *prow, bow.*

prō-ruō, ere, -ruī, -rutum, *pull down, demolish.*

prō-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, *pursue, follow; accompany, escort; dismiss, address.*

prōspectus, ūs, m., *view, outlook, sight.*

prō-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *provide for, take precautions, take care.*

prō-sternō, ere, -strāvī, -strātum, *cast down, destroy.*

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, *prove an advantage, be of service.*

prō-tegō, ere, -texī, -tectum, *cover, protect.*

prōterreō, ēre, uī, itum, *frighten away, drive off.*

prōtinus, adv., *at once, immediately.*

prōturbō, āre, āvī, ātum, *drive off (in confusion), dislodge.*

prō-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, *carry forward;* in pass., *be carried, be driven, sail.*

prō-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *grow up, come up, yield.*

prōventus, ūs, m., *outcome, issue, result.*

prō-videō, ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *foresee, have foresight; provide for, secure, procure, make provision; take care, see, arrange.*

prōvincia, ae, f., *province;* especially *'the province'* of Gallia Transalpina.

prōvinciālis, e, *of the province.*

prōvolō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rush forth, rush out.*

proximē, adv., superlative of **prope,** *last, most recently, very lately.*

proximus, a, um, *nearest, next; last, recent;* see **propior.**

prūdentia, ae, f., *foresight, prudence, discretion.*

Ptianiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Ptianii,* a tribe of Aquitania.

pūb-ēs, -eris, *adult, full-grown;* m. as subst., *adult, full-grown man.*

pūblicē, adv., *publicly, officially, in the name of the state, as a state.*

pūblicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *confiscate.*

pūblicus, a, um, *public, official, of the state* or *people;* **in publicum** or **in publico,** *in public;* **res publica,** see **respublica.**

Pūblius, ī, m., *Publius,* a Roman praenomen.

pudet, ēre, puduit, *it shames,* w. acc. of person; render freely, *(one) is ashamed.*

pudor, -ōris, m., *shame, sense of shame.*

puer, erī, m., *boy, child;* **a pueris,** *from childhood.*

puerīlis, e, *of a child, of boyhood.*

pūgna, ae, f., *fight, fighting, battle.*

pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight;* in pass., **pugnātur,** impersonally, *the battle goes on,* freely *(they) fight.*

pulcher, chra, chrum, *beautiful, fine.*

Puliō, -ōnis, m., *Titus Pulio,* a centurion in Caesar's army.

pulsus, a, um, from **pello.**

pulsus, ūs, m., *stroke, propulsion.*

pulv-is, -eris, m., *dust, cloud of dust.*

puppis, is, f., *stern.*

pūrgō, āre, āvī, ātum, *excuse, clear, free from blame.*

putō, āre, āvī, ātum, *think, believe, hold, consider, suppose.*

Pyrēnaeus, a, um, w. **montes,** *the Pyrenees,* between Gaul and Spain.

Q.

Q., an abbreviation for **Quintus.**

quā, adv., *where, at which point, by which road.*

quadrāgēnī, ae, a, *forty each, forty.*

quadrāgintā, *forty.*

quadringentī, ae, a, *four hundred.*

quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *ask, enquire, make enquiry; seek, look for.*

quaestiō, -ōnis, f., *investigation, enquiry, examination.*

quaestor, -tōris, m., *quaestor,* the officer in charge of the finances of a province or army.

quaestus, ūs, m., *gain, gaining, acquisition.*

quālis, e, *of what sort, what.*

quam, adv., *how;* w. comparatives, *than;* w. superlatives, *as....as possible.*

quamdiū, adv., *as long as.*

quamobrem, adv., *why, wherefore.*

quamvīs, adv., *however.*

quandō, adv., *at any time, at times, ever.*

quantus, a, um, *how great, how much; as great as, as much as, as;* **quanto...tanto,** *by how much...by so much, the...the.*

quan-tusvīs, -tavīs, -tumvīs, *however great, no matter how great.*

quārē, adv., *wherefore, why, for which, on account of which.*

quartus, a, um, *fourth*

quasī, conj., *as if.*

quattuor or **quatuor,** *four.*

quattuordecim, *fourteen.*

-que, enclitic conjunction, *and.*

quemadmodum, adv., *how, as.*

queror, ī, questus sum, *complain, complain of; lament, bewail.*

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that; he who;* as coordinating relative, *this, he;* after **idem,** *as.*

quī, quae, quod, interrogative adj., *what, which.*

quī, qua, quod, indefinite adj. or rarely pron., *some, any; anyone.*

quicquam, from **quisquam.**

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever, whichever.*

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or **quoddam,** *a certain one, a certain, one, a sort of.*

quidem, adv., *certainly, at least;* **ne...quidem,** *not even.*

qui-ēs, -ētis, f., *rest.*

quiētus, a, um, *quiet, at rest, settled, peaceable.*

quīn, conj., *but that, that, so that not, as not;* often best rendered by *from,* w. verbal in *-ing.*

quīn, adv., *nay, in fact.*

quīnam, quaenam, quodnam, *who, which, what.*

quīnc-unx, -uncis, f., *quincunx;* **in quincuncem,** *in the form of a quincunx.*

quīndecim, *fifteen.*

quīngentī, ae, a, *five hundred.*

quīnī, ae, a, *five each, five at a time, five.*

quīnquāgintā, *fifty.*

quīnque, *five.*

quīntus, a, um, *fifth.*

Quīntus, ī, m., *Quintus,* a Roman praenomen.

quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron., *who, what;* n. **quid** as adv., *why.*

quis, qua, quid, indefinite pron., *any one, anything;* n. **quid** as adv., *in any respect, at all.*

quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam or **quidpiam,** *any one, any.*

quisquam, quidquam or **quicquam,** *any one, anything, any.*

quisque, quaeque, quidque or **quodque,** *each, each one;* w. superlatives freely rendered by *all.*

quisquis (quaeque), quidquid or **quicquid,** *whoever, whatever.*

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs or **quodvīs,** *any one, any, any whatever.*

quō, abl. of **quī,** as conj., *that, in order that; because.*

quō, abl. of **quī,** as adv., *by how much,* w. comparatives *the;* for **quo minus** see **quominus.**

quō, adv., 1. interrog., *whither, where.* 2. relative, *whither, where, to, at* or *into which.* 3. indefinite, *somewhere, anywhere.*

quoad, conj., *until, as long as.*

quod, conj., *because, that, in that; as for the fact that, as to, as for; the fact that;* **quod sī,** *but if, if therefore.*

quōminus or **quō minus,** conj., *so that not;* freely rendered by *from;* w. **recuso,** *to.*

quoniam, conj., *since, as, whereas.*

quoque, conj., *also, too, as well.*

quōqueversus (um), or **quōquoversus (um),** adv., *in every direction.*

quot, indeclin., *how many.*

quotannīs, adv., *yearly, every year.*

quotīdiānus, a, um, see **cotidianus.**

quotīdiē, see **cotidie.**

quotiēs, adv., *how often; as often as.*

quum, conj., see **cum.**

R.

rād-īx, -īcis, m., *root* (of tree); *spur, base, foot* (of mountain).

rā-dō, ere, -sī, -sum, *shave.*

rāmus, ī, m., *branch, bough.*

rapiditās, -tātis, f., *swiftness.*

rapīna, ae, f., *plundering.*

rārus, a, um, *scattered, few, in detached groups, in small bodies.*

rāsus, a, um, from **rado.**

ratiō, -ōnis, f., *calculation, account, list; method, system, plan, way; theory, science; regard, consideration, thought; reason.*

ratis, is, f., *raft.*

Rauricī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Rauraci,* a tribe on the Rhine near Switzerland.

rebelliō, -ōnis, f., *renewal of war.*

Rebilus, ī, m., *Caius Caninius Rebilus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

re-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *withdraw, retire.*

recēns, -entis, *new, recent, late; fresh.*

re-cēnseō, ēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsum, *muster, review.*

receptāculum, ī, n., *refuge, retreat.*

receptus, ūs, m., *retreat.*

recēssus, ūs, m., *retreat, opportunity to retreat.*

re-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cāsum, *fall back, recoil, befall.*

reciperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *recover, regain.*

re-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *regain, get back; receive, admit;* **se recipere,** (1) *recover one's self, recover,* (2) *retreat, fall back, betake one's self, return.*

recitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *read out*

reclīnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *make to lean;* **se reclinare,** *to lean;* pass. part., **reclīnātus,** *leaning.*

rēctē, adv., *properly, rightly.*

rēctus, a, um, *straight.*

recuperō. āre, āvī, ātum, *regain, recover.*

recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *refuse, object to, decline, spurn, repudiate.*

rēda, ae, f., *wagon.*

redāctus, a, um, from **redigo.**

red-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *give back, return, restore, render, grant, pay.*

redemptus, a, um, from **redimo.**

red-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *go back, come back, return; decline; be reduced; depend on, be referred to.*

red-igō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *reduce, render, make, bring.*

red-imō, ere, -ēmī, -emptum, *buy, purchase, obtain; lease, farm.*

redintegrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *renew, restore, revive.*

reditiō, -ōnis, f., *return, returning.*

reditus, ūs, m., *return, returning.*

Redones, um, m. plur., *the Redones,* a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.

re-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead back, bring back, move back.*

referō, referre, rettulī (or **retulī**), **relātum,** *bring back, carry back, bring; report, announce, tell; refer;* **pedem referre,** *retreat, fall back;* **gratiam referre,** *show gratitude, make return.*

re-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *repair; refresh, recruit.*

re-fringō, ere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *break in, break open, break.*

re-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *retreat, flee back, escape.*

Rēginus, ī, m., *Caius Antistius Reginus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

regiō, -ōnis, f., *region, district, part, country; direction, line.*

rēgius, a, um, *royal.*

rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rule, reign.*

rēgnum, ī, n., *royal power, sovereignty, kingdom.*

regō, ere, rēxī, rēctum, *rule; direct, control, manage.*

re-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *retreat.*

re-iciō, ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw* or *hurl back, drive back, throw aside; cast off, reject.*

re-languēscō, ere, -languī, *become weak, lose energy.*

relātus, a, um, from **refero.**

relēgō, āre, āvī, ātum, *remove, banish.*

relictus, a, um, from **relinquo.**

religiō, -ōnis, f., *religious rite, observance* or *scruple; religion, religious matter; superstitious beliefs* or *fancies.*

re-linquō, ere, -līquī, -lictum, *leave, leave behind; abandon, give up; give; allow;* in pass., *remain.*

reliquus, a, um, *remaining, other, left, else, further, future;* generally to be rendered by *the rest of.*

re-maneō, ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *remain, remain behind, stay.*

rēm-ex, -igis, m., *rower, oarsman.*

Rēmī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Remi,* a tribe in northern Gaul.

rēmigō, āre, āvī, ātum, *row.*

remigrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *move back, return.*

reminīscor, ī, *call to mind, remember.*

re-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send back, hurl back, give back; relax, weaken, give up, lose;* part. **remissus, a, um,** as adj., *mild, not severe.*

remollēscō, ere, *become weak* or *enervated.*

re-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *remove, send away; withdraw, draw away;* part. as adj., **remōtus, a, um,** *distant, remote.*

remūneror, ārī, ātus sum, *reward.*

Rēmus, ī, m., *a Reman, one of the Remi.*

rēmus, ī, m., *oar.*

renovō, āre, āvī, ātum, *renew.*

renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *report, bring back word; declare elected.*

re-pellō, ere, reppulī (or **repulī**), **-pulsum,** *drive back, defeat;* **ab spe repellī,** *to be disappointed in a hope.*

repente, adv., *suddenly.*

repentīnus, a, um, *sudden, hasty;* abl. **repentīnō** as adv., *suddenly.*

re-periō, ere, repperī, -pertum, *find, find out, discover; originate.*

re-petō, ere, -petīvī, -petītum, *demand, demand back.*

repl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *amply supply.*

reportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry back.*

reposcō, ere, *demand, require.*

repraesentō, āre, āvī, ātum, *do at once.*

repre-hendō, ere, -hendī, -hēnsum, *blame, censure, find fault with.*

re-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, *check, stop.*

repudiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *reject.*

repūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *resist, defend one's self; be an obstacle.*

repulsus, a, um, from **repello.**

re-quīrō, ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *require, demand; miss.*

rēs, reī, f., *thing, matter, affair, circumstance, fact, object, interest, situation;* the context will generally suggest a more exact rendering.

resar-ciō, īre, -tum, *repair, make good.*

re-scindō, ere, -scidī, -scissum, *break down, tear down, destroy.*

re-scīscō, ere, -scīvī, -scītum, *learn, find out.*

re-scrībō, ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *transfer, promote, enroll.*

reservō, āre, āvī, ātum, *keep back, reserve, keep.*

re-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, *remain.*

re-sīdō, ere, -sēdī, *settle down, become calm.*

re-sistō, ere, -stitī, *resist, withstand, hold one's ground, make resistance,* w. dat.; part. **resistēns, -entis,** as adj., *firm, steadfast.*

re-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *look back* or *behind; consider, have regard to.*

re-spondeō, ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *answer, make answer, reply.*

respōnsum, ī, n., *answer, reply.*

rēspūblica, reīpūblicae, f., *state, public affairs* or *interests;* often written as two words.

re-spuō, ere, -spuī, *reject, spurn.*

re-stinguō, ere, -stinxī, -stinctum, *extinguish.*

restit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *restore, replace, rebuild, re-establish, renew.*

re-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *detain, hold, restrain; keep, maintain, preserve; keep back.*

re-trahō, ere, -traxī, -tractum, *bring back (by force).*

re-vellō, ere, -vellī, -vulsum, *tear* or *wrest away, pull up.*

rever-tō, ere, -tī, -sum (chiefly in perf. tenses), *return, come back; turn back.*

rever-tor, ī, -sus sum (chiefly in pres. tenses), *return, come back.*

re-vinciō, īre, -vinxī, -vinctum, *bind fast, fasten, make fast, brace.*

revocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *recall, call back; call away, entice.*

rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*

rhēnō, -ōnis, m., *reindeer.*

Rhēnus, ī, m., *the Rhine.*

Rhodanus, ī, m., *the Rhone.*

rīpa, ae, f., *bank.*

rīvus, ī, m., *brook, stream.*

rōb-ur, -oris, n., *oak.*

rogō, āre, āvī, ātum, *ask, ask for, request;* w. **sacramento** *enlist.*

Rōma, ae, f., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman;* m. as subst., *a Roman.*

Roscius, ī, m., *Lucius Roscius,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

rostrum, ī, n., *beak.*

rota, ae, f., *wheel.*

rubus, ī, m., *bramble.*

Rūfus, ī, m., *Publius Sulpicius Rufus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

rūmor, -ōris, n., *rumor, report.*

rūpēs, is, f., *rock, cliff.*

rūrsus, adv., *again, back again, in turn.*

Rutēnī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Ruteni,* a tribe in southern Gaul.

Rutilus, ī, m., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus,* one of Caesar's officers.

S.

Sabīnus, ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Sabis, is, m., *the Sabis,* now *Sambre,* a river in north-eastern Gaul.

sacer-dōs, -dōtis, m., *priest.*

sacrāmentum, ī, n., *military oath.*

sacrificium, ī, n., *sacrifice.*

saepe, adv. (**saepius, saepissimē**), *often.*

saepenumerō, adv., *often, frequently.*

saepēs, is, f., *hedge.*

saeviō, īre, īvī, ītum, *rage, be violent.*

sagitta, ae, f., *arrow.*

sagittārius, ī, m., *archer.*

sagulum, ī, n., *(military) cloak.*

saltus, ūs, m., *defile, glen, pass.*

sal-ūs, -ūtis, f., *safety, welfare, protection.*

Samarobrīva, ae, f., a town of the Ambiani, in northern Gaul.

sanciō, īre, sanxī, sanctum, *make a solemn agreement, ratify, enact;* part. **sanctus, a, um,** as adj., *sacred, holy, inviolable.*

sangu-is, -inis, m., *blood.*

sānitās, -tātis, f., *sound mind, sober mind, good sense.*

sānō, āre, āvī, ātum, *remedy, make good.*

Santones, um, or **Santoni, ōrum,** m. plur., *the Santones,* a tribe on the west coast of Gaul.

sānus, a, um, *sound, sane;* pro **sano,** *like a discreet man, sensibly, prudently.*

sap-iō, ere, -īvī, *be wise.*

sarcina, ae, f., in Caesar always in plur., *pack, (personal) baggage.*

sar-ciō, īre, -sī, -tum, *repair, make good.*

sarmentum, ī, n., *fagot.*

satis, adv., *enough, sufficiently; tolerably, quite, considerably;* often as subst., *enough, sufficient.*

satis-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, *do enough, do one's duty; make amends, satisfy, apologize.*

satisfactiō, -ōnis, f., *apology, excuse.*

saucius, a, um, *wounded.*

saxum, ī, n., *stone, rock.*

scāla, ae, f., *ladder.*

Scaldis, is, m., *the Scaldis,* now *Scheldt,* a river in north-eastern Gaul.

scapha, ae, f., *skiff, small boat.*

scelerātus, a, um, *wicked, villainous.*

scel-us, -eris, n., *crime.*

scienter, adv. (compar. **scientius**), *skilfully, cleverly.*

scientia, ae, f., *knowledge, acquaintance.*

scindō, ere, scidī, scissum, *tear down, break down.*

sciō, īre, īvī, ītum, *know.*

scorpiō, -ōnis, m., *scorpion,* a machine for hurling missiles.

scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *write, state.*

scrobis, is, m., *ditch, trench.*

scūtum, ī, n., *shield.*

sēcius, see **secus.**

sec-ō, āre, -uī, -tum, *cut, reap.*

sēcrētō, adv., *privately.*

sectiō, -ōnis, f., *booty.*

sector, ārī, ātus sum, *pursue, follow after.*

sectūra, ae, f., *mine.*

secundum, prep. w. acc., *along, according to; besides; next to.*

secundus, a, um, *second; favorable, successful, prosperous;* **secundo flumine,** *down stream.*

secūris, is, f., *axe,* borne by lictors as a symbol of authority.

secus, adv. (compar. **sēcius**), *otherwise;* **nihilo secius,** *none the less.*

secūtus, a, um, from **sequor.**

sed, conj., *but.*

sēdecim, *sixteen.*

sēdēs, is, f., *seat, abode, settlement.*

sēditiō, -ōnis, f., *insurrection, rising, revolt.*

sēditiōsus, a, um, *seditious.*

Sedulius, ī, m., a leader of the Lemovices.

Sedūnī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Seduni,* a tribe in the Alps, between the province and Italy.

Sedusiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Sedusii,* a German tribe.

seg-es, -etis, f., *crop; field of grain, corn field.*

Sēgnī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Segni,* a German tribe in north-eastern Gaul.

Segontiacī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Segontiaci,* a tribe in Britain.

Segov-ax, -actis, m., a king ruling in Kent.

Segusiāvī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Segusiavi,* a tribe in central Gaul.

semel, adv., *once;* **semel atque iterum,** *more than once.*

sēmentis, is, f., *sowing of grain.*

sēmita, ae, f., *path, by-path.*

semper, adv., *always.*

Semprōnius, ī, m., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus,* one of Caesar's officers.

senātor, -tōris, m., *senator.*

senātus, ūs, m., *senate.*

sen-ex, -is, m., *old man.*

sēnī, ae, a, *six each, six.*

Senones, um, m. plur., *the Senones,* a tribe in central Gaul on the Seine.

sententia, ae, f., *opinion, view, idea; scheme, purpose; sentence, judgment.*

sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *feel, be aware, know, perceive, learn; think, have an idea, hold an opinion.*

sentis, is, m., *thorn, briar.*

sēparātim, adv., *separately, by themselves, privately.*

sēparō, āre, āvī, ātum, *separate;* part. as adj., **sēparātus, a, um,** *separate.*

septem, *seven.*

septentriō, -ōnis, m. (chiefly in plur.), *the seven stars of the constellation of the Great Bear;* hence *the north.*

septimus, a, um, *seventh.*

septingentī, ae, a, *seven hundred.*

septuāgintā, *seventy.*

sepultūra, ae, f., *burial.*

Sēquana, ae, f., *the Sequana,* now *Seine,* a river in northern Gaul.

Sēquanus, a, um, *Sequanian, of the Sequani;* m. as subst., *a Sequanian,* in plur., *the Sequani,* a tribe in Gaul north of the province.

sequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow, pursue; accompany, attend, attach one's self to; result, ensue.*

sermō, -ōnis, m., *conversation, intercourse, discussion.*

serō, ere, sēvī, satum, *sow.*

sērō, adv., *too late.*

Sertōrius, ī, m., *Quintus Sertorius,* a Roman general, who in a time of civil war, held Spain from 80 to 72 B.C.

servīlis, e, *of slaves, slavish.*

serviō, īre, īvī, ītum, *be a slave, follow blindly, devote one's self to.*

servitūs, -tūtis, f., *slavery, bondage, subjection.*

Servius, I, m., a Roman praenomen.

servō, āre, āvī, ātum, *keep, hold, maintain; watch; save, preserve.*

servus, I, m., *slave.*

sescentI, ae, a, *six hundred.*

sēsē, for **se,** from **sui.**

sēsquipedālis, e, *a foot and a half.*

seu, see **sive.**

sevēritās, -tātis, f., *strictness, severity, rigor.*

sēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call aside.*

sēvum, I, n., *tallow.*

sex, *six.*

sexāgintā, *sixty.*

sexcentI, ae, a, see **sescenti.**

Sextius, I, m., 1. *Titus Sextius,* one of Caesar's lieutenants; 2. *Publius Sextius Baculus,* a centurion in Caesar's army.

sI, conj., *if, even if; whether, to see whether.*

Sibuzātes, um, m. plur., *the Sibuzates,* a tribe in Aquitania.

sic, adv., *thus, in this way; so, in such a way; as follows.*

siccitās, -tātis, f., *drying up, dryness, drought.*

sIcubI, conj., *if anywhere.*

sIcut, conj., *just as, just like.*

sIcuti, conj., *just as, just as if.*

sId-us, -eris, n., *star, constellation, heavenly body.*

signifer, erI, m., *standard-bearer.*

significātiō, -ōnis, f., *signal, announcement, intimation.*

significō, āre, āvI, ātum, *indicate, announce, make known, intimate, show.*

signum, I, n., *signal; standard;* **signa convertere,** *to wheel about;* **signa ferre** or **inferre,** *to advance.*

Silānus, I, m., *Marcus Silanus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

silentium, I, n., *silence;* abl. **silentio** as adv., *in silence, silently.*

Silius, I, m., *Titus Silius,* one of Caesar's officers.

silva, ae, f., *wood, forest.*

silvestris, e, *wooded.*

similis, e, *like, similar,* w. dat. or gen.

similitū-dō, -dinis, f., *resemblance, similarity.*

simul, adv., *at the same time; repeated, both..and;* **simul atque** or sometimes **simul** alone, *as soon as.*

simulācrum, I, n., *image, figure.*

simulātiō, -ōnis, f., *pretence, show, deceit, insincerity.*

simulō, āre, āvI, ātum, *pretend, feign.*

simultās, -tātis, f., *rivalry, feud.*

sIn, conj., *but if.*

sincērē, adv., *honestly, truthfully.*

sine, prep. w. abl., *without.*

singillātim, adv., *singly, individually, one by one.*

singulāris, e, *single, one by one, by one's self; extraordinary, unparalleled, admirable, distinguished.*

singulI, ae, a, *one each, one at a time, one by one, singly, several, one.*

sinister, tra, trum, *left;* fem. **sinistra** as subst., *left hand* (sc. **manus**).

sinistrōrsus, adv., *to the left.*

sinō, ere, sIvI, situm, *allow, permit.*

sIquidem, conj., *since.*

situs, ūs, m., *position, situation.*

sIve or **seu,** conj., *or if;* repeated, *whether...or, either...or.*

socer, erI, m., *father-in-law.*

societās, -tātis, f., *alliance.*

socius, I, m., *ally.*

sōl, sōlis, m., *sun;* **oriens sol,** *the east;* **occidens sol,** *the west.*

sōlācium, I, n., *consolation.*

soldurius, I, m., an Aquitanian word for a retainer sworn to die with his leader.

soleō, ēre, solitus sum, *be wont;* often best rendered by *usually.*

solicitō, āre, see **sollicito.**

sōlitū-dō, -dinis, f., *solitude, wilderness, desert.*

sollertia, ae, f., *skill, shrewdness, ability.*

sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *stir up, instigate, urge, tempt, try to bribe, try to win over.*

sollicitū-dō, -dinis, f., *anxiety.*

solum, ī, n., *soil, ground; bottom.*

sōlum, adv., *only, alone.*

sōlus, a, um, *alone, only.*

solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, *loose;* with or without **naves,** *weigh anchor, set sail.*

sonitus, ūs, m., *sound, noise.*

Sontiātes, um, m. plur., *the Sontiates,* a tribe of Aquitania.

sonus, ī, m., *sound.*

soror, -ōris, f., *sister.*

sors, sortis, f., *lot.*

spatium, ī, n., *space, extent; distance, interval; pause, time.*

speciēs, ēī, f., *appearance, form; show, semblance.*

spectō, āre, āvī, ātum, *look, face, slope, lie; look at, consider, regard.*

speculātor, -tōris, m., *spy.*

speculātōrius, a, um, *of a spy, for spying, reconnoitring.*

speculor, ārī, ātus sum, *spy, act as spy.*

spērō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hope; hope for, expect.*

spēs, eī, f., *hope;* **in spem venire,** *begin to have hope, entertain a hope.*

spīritus, ūs, m., *pride, airs.*

spoliō, āre, āvī, ātum, *strip, deprive, despoil.*

spontis (gen.), **sponte** (abl.), defective noun f.; in abl., *of one's own accord, by one's self.*

stabiliō, īre, īvī, ītum, *make steady* or *firm.*

stabilitās, -tātis, f., *steadiness, firmness.*

statim, adv., *at once.*

statiō, -ōnis, f., *guard, sentry, outpost, picket.*

stat-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *set up, fix; decide, determine, resolve; take measures, punish.*

statūra, ae, f., *stature, size.*

status, ūs, m., *position, condition, state.*

stimulus, ī, m., *goad, spur, prick.*

stīpendiārius, a, um, *tributary;* m. as subst., *a tributary, vassal.*

stīpendium, ī, n., *tribute.*

stīp-es, -itis, m., *stake, post.*

stirps, stirpis, f., *stock, race.*

stō, āre, stetī, statum, *stand; abide by.*

strāmentum, ī, n., *straw, thatch; covering, saddle.*

strepitus, ūs, m., *noise, din, clatter, confusion.*

strūctūra, ae, f., *gallery, mine.*

studeō, ēre, uī, *strive, be eager for, be bent upon; be devoted to, pay attention to.*

studiōsē, adv., *eagerly, zealously.*

studium, ī, n., *eagerness, zeal, devotion, energy, enthusiasm; pursuit.*

stultitia, ae, f., *folly.*

sub, prep. (1) w. abl., *under, beneath; at the foot of, close by, near to;* (2) w. acc., *under, close to;* of time, *towards, just before.*

subāctus, a, um, from **subigo.**

subdolus, a, um, *crafty, cunning, deceitful.*

sub-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *draw off, lead off; draw up, haul up, beach.*

subductiō, -ōnis, f., *hauling on shore, beaching.*

sub-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *come up, approach; enter; undergo, submit to.*

sub-fodiō, ere, -fōdī, -fossum, *stab from beneath* or *in the belly.*

sub-igo, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *force, compel, constrain.*

subitō, adv., *suddenly*.

subitus, a, um, *sudden, hasty.*

sub-iiciō, ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw from beneath; place below; bring under, subject, expose, force to submit;* in pass., *lie near, be subject.*

sublātus, a, um, from **tollo.**

sublevō, āre, āvī, ātum, *support, raise up; assist, relieve, help.*

sublica, ae, f., *pile, stake.*

sub-luō, ere, -lūtum, *wash.*

subministrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *supply, furnish.*

sub-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send (to aid), send to one's aid*

sub-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *remove, drive off, dislodge.*

sub-ruō, ere, -ruī, -rutum, *dig under, dig out, undermine.*

sub-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, *follow (closely), follow up, succeed.*

subsidium, ī, n., *aid, assistance; support; reserves, reinforcement.*

sub-sīdō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *remain.*

sub-sistō, ere, -stitī, *halt, make a stand; hold.*

sub-sum, -esse, -fuī, *be near, be close at hand.*

sub-trahō, ere, -traxī, -tractum, *remove, take away, withdraw.*

subvectiō, -ōnis, f., *transportation, conveyance.*

sub-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, *bring up.*

sub-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come to the support of, come to help, aid.*

suc-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *succeed, take the place of, relieve,* w. dat.; *come close to; come up, advance; be successful.*

suc-cendō, ere, -cendī, -cēnsum, *set on fire.*

succēssus, ūs, m., *approach, advance.*

suc-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut down.*

suc-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *give way, succumb, give up under.*

suc-currō, ere, -currī, -cursum, *run to aid, run up.*

sudis, is, f., *stake.*

sūdor, -ōris, m., *sweat; toil, exertion.*

Suēbī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Suebi,* a German tribe on the Rhine.

Suessiōnes, um, m. plur., *the Suessiones,* a tribe in northern Gaul.

suf-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *be sufficient, hold out.*

suffrāgium, ī, n., *vote.*

Sugambrī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Sugambri,* a German tribe on the Rhine.

suggestus, ūs, m., *platform, tribune.*

suī, sibi, sē or **sēsē,** reflex. pron., *himself, itself, themselves; him, it, them;* **inter se** *(to, with, from,* etc.) *one another;* **per se,** *of or by one's self, as far as one is concerned.*

Sulla, ae, m., a great Roman general and political leader, living from 138 to 78 B.C.

Sulpicius, ī, m., *Publius Sulpicius Rufus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

sum, esse, fuī, *be, exist;* w. gen., *belong to, be a part* or *mark of.*

summa, ae, f., *total, sum; chief part, main body; chief control, command, management, control.*

summus, a, um, superlative of **superus,** *highest, greatest, chief, supreme, very great, very high, extreme, most important, perfect, entire.*

sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take, assume; inflict; spend.*

sūmptuōsus, a, um, *costly.*

sūmptus, ūs, m., *expense.*

superbē, adv., *haughtily, arrogantly, arbitrarily.*

superior, ius, comparative of **superus,** *higher, upper; former, previous; superior, more successful.*

superō, āre, āvī, ātum, *conquer, defeat, overcome, be victorious, prevail; be superior, surpass, overtop; survive.*

super-sedeō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *abstain, refrain.*

super-sum, -esse, -fuī, *remain, survive.*

suppet-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, *be at hand, be at one's service; hold out.*

supplēmentum, ī, n., *reinforcements.*

suppl-ex, -icis, *suppliant.*

supplicātiō, -ōnis, f., *thanksgiving.*

suppliciter, adv., *as suppliants.*

supplicium, ī, n., *punishment, penalty.*

supportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring up.*

suprā, adv. or prep. w. acc., *above, before.*

sus-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *undertake, take on one's self.*

su-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *suspect;* in pass., *be an object of suspicion.*

suspiciō, -ōnis, f., *suspicion.*

suspicor, ārī, ātus sum, *suspect.*

sustentō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hold out, maintain one's self, sustain, bear up against.*

sus-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *sustain, withstand, hold out, bear; check; hold up, rein in, endure, undertake.*

sustulī, from **tollo.**

suus, a, um, *his, her, its, their; his own,* etc.; m. plur. as subst., **suī, ōrum,** *his (their) friends, comrades, men, countrymen;* n. plur. as subst., **sua, ōrum,** *his (their) possessions, property.*

T.

T., an abbreviation for **Titus.**

tabernāculum, ī, n., *tent.*

tabula, ae, f., *list, document.*

tabulātum, ī, n., *story.*

taceō, ēre, uī, itum, *be silent, be silent about;* part. as adj., **tacitus, a, um,** *silent.*

tālea, ae, f., *bar, rod.*

tālis, e, *such, of such a sort.*

tam, adv., *so.*

tamen, adv., *still, however, yet; at least.*

Tamesis, is, m., *the Thames.*

tametsī, conj., *although.*

tandem, adv., *at least;* in questions, *pray.*

tangō, ere, tetigī, tactum, *touch, border on.*

tantopere, adv., *so much, so earnestly.*

tantulus, a, um, *so trifling, so small.*

tantum, adv., *only.*

tantummodo, adv., *only, merely.*

tantundem, adv., *just so far, just as much.*

tantus, a, um, *so great, so much, such; as great, as much;* n. **tantum** as adv., *so much, so far;* **tantī,** locative, *of such value.*

Tarbellī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Tarbelli,* a tribe in Aquitania.

tardē, adv., *slowly.*

tardō, āre, āvī, ātum, *retard, check, delay, hinder.*

tardus, a, um, *slow, inactive, dispirited.*

Tarusātes, um, m. plur., *the Tarusates,* a tribe of Aquitania.

Tasgetius, ī, m., a man of high rank among the Carnutes.

taurus, ī, m., *bull.*

Taximagulus, ī, m., a king ruling in Kent.

taxus, ī, m., *yew.*

Tectosages, um, m. plur., *the Tectosages,* a branch of the *Volcae,* a Gallic tribe in the province, which had penetrated into Germany.

tectum, ī, n., *roof, house.*

tectus, a, um, from **tego.**

tegimentum, ī, n., *covering.*

tegō, ere, texī, tectum, *cover, hide, protect.*

tēlum, ī, n., *weapon, missile, dart.*

temerārius, a, um, *reckless, rash.*

temerē, adv., *rashly, hastily; without cause, without good reason.*

temeritās, -tātis, f., *recklessness, rashness, thoughtlessness.*

tēmō, -ōnis, m., *pole* (of chariot).

temperantia, ae, f., *moderation.*

temperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *control, restrain, refrain;* part. as adj., **temperātus, a, um,** *temperate, mild.*

tempestās, -tātis, f., *weather; storm.*

temptō or **tentō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *try; try to force, make an attempt on; tempt.*

temp-us, -oris, n., *time, season; occasion, crisis, emergency;* **reliquum tempus,** *the future.*

Tenctērī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Tencteri,* a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.

tendō, ere, tetendī, tēnsum or **tentum,** *stretch, stretch out; pitch a tent, encamp.*

tenebrae, ārum, f. plur., *darkness.*

teneō, ere, uī, tentum, *hold, have, keep, maintain; occupy, comprise; restrain, bind, detain.*

tener, era, erum, *tender, young.*

tentō, see **tempto.**

tenuis, e, *slight, trifling, insignificant; feeble, delicate.*

tenuitās, -tātis, f., *feebleness, poverty.*

tenuiter, adv., *thinly, thin.*

ter, adv., *three times.*

ter-es, -etis, *round, rounded.*

tergum, ī, n., *back, rear;* **tergum vertere,** *to flee, take to flight.*

ternī, ae, a, *three at a time, three each, three.*

terra, ae, f., *earth, land; ground; country;* **in terris,** *in the world.*

Terrasidius, ī, m., *Titus Terrasidius,* an officer with Caesar.

terrēnus, a, um, *of earth.*

terreō, ēre, uī, itum, *frighten, alarm, terrify.*

territō, āre, *frighten, terrify.*

terror, ōris, m., *alarm, panic, terror.*

tertius, a, um, *third.*

testāmentum, ī, n., *will.*

testimōnium, ī, n., *proof, evidence, testimony.*

testis, is, m., *witness.*

testū-dō, -dinis, f., *testudo, shelter of overlapping shields; shelter, covered gallery.*

Teutomatus, ī, m., king of the Nitiobroges.

Teutonī, ōrum, or **Teutones, um,** *the Teutones,* a German tribe that invaded Gaul about 110 B.C.

tignum, ī, n., *beam.*

Tigurīnus, a, um, *Tigurine;* m. plur. as subst., **Tigurīnī, orum,** *the Tigurini,* one of the four divisions or cantons of the Helvetii.

timeō, ere, uī, *fear, feel* or *have fear, be anxious, be afraid.*

timidē, adv., *timidly;* **non timide,** *fearlessly.*

timidus, a, um, *full of fear, frightened, cowardly.*

timor, -ōris, m., *fear, alarm, dread, panic, cowardice.*

Titurius, ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Titus, ī, m., *Titus,* a Roman praenomen.

tolerō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bear, endure, hold out, sustain.*

tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum, *raise; take away, remove, destroy, do away with, put an end to;* in pass., *be elated.*

Tolōsa, ae, f., *Toulouse,* a city in the southern part of the province.

Tolōsātes, um, m. plur., *the people of Toulouse.*

tormentum, ī, n., *torture; engine (for throwing missiles*

torreō, ēre, uī, tostum, *scorch,*

tot, indeclinable, *so many*.

totidem, indeclinable, *as many, the same number*.

tōtus, a, um, *whole, entire, all*; often rendered freely by *entirely, altogether*.

trabs, trabis, f., *beam*.

trā-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *hand over, give up, surrender; pass on; hand down; entrust, recommend; teach, impart*.

trā-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead across, bring over, lead; win over; transfer, promote*.

trāgula, ae, f., *javelin, lance*.

trahō, ere, traxī, tractum, *drag along, draw*.

trājectus, ūs, m., *crossing, passage*.

trā-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *pierce, strike*.

trānō, āre, āvī, ātum, *swim across*.

tranquillitās, -tātis, f., *stillness, calm*.

trāns, prep. w. acc., *across, over, beyond, on the other side of*.

Trānsalpīnus, a, um, *Transalpine, beyond the Alps* (from Rome).

trān-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *climb over; cross over, board*.

trānsdūcō, see **trādūcō**.

trāns-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *cross, cross over, pass through, go* or *come over; migrate; pass, go by*.

trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *bring over, transfer*.

trāns-figō, ere, -fixī, -fixum, *pierce*.

trāns-fodiō, ere, -fōdī, -fossum, *pierce through*.

trāns-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *step over* or *across; cross*.

trānsitus, ūs, m., *crossing, passage*.

trānsjiciō, see **trajicio**.

trānsmarīnus, a, um, *beyond the sea, foreign*.

trānsmissus, ūs, m., *passage across*.

trāns-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *transport, take across*.

trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry, lead, bring* or *take over*.

Trānsrhēnānus, a, um, *living across the Rhine* (from Gaul); m. plur. as subst., *those across the Rhine*.

trānstrum, ī, n., *cross-beam, thwart*.

trānversus, a, um, *cross, transverse, oblique*.

Trebius, ī, m., *Marcus Trebius Gallus*, one of Caesar's officers.

Trebōnius, ī, m., *Caius Trebonius*, 1. one of Caesar's lieutenants; 2. a Roman knight.

trecentī, ae, a, *three hundred*.

trepidō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hurry, be in a hurry, be in confusion, be alarmed*.

trēs, tria, *three*.

Trēverī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Treveri*, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul, on the Rhine.

Tribōces, um, or **Tribōcī, ōrum**, *the Triboci*, a German tribe on the Rhine.

tribūnus, ī, m., *tribune*, (an officer in the Roman army).

trib-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *grant, give, bestow; have regard, give credit, do for the sake of*.

tribūtum, ī, n., *tribute, tax*.

trīduum, ī, n., *space of three days, three days*.

triennium, ī, n., *three years*.

trīgintā, *thirty*.

trīnī, ae, a, *three at a time, three, triple*.

Trinobantes, um, *the Trinobantes*, a tribe in Britain.

tripertītō, adv., *in three divisions*.

tripl-ex, -icis, *triple, threefold*.

triquetrus, a, um, *triangular*.

tristis, e, *sad, dejected*.

tristitia, ae, f., *sadness, dejection*.

truncus, ī, m., *trunk.*

tū, tuī, *thou, you.*

tuba, ae, f., *trumpet.*

tueor, ērī, tūtus (or **tuitus**) **sum,** *protect, guard, keep safe, maintain.*

Tulingī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Tulingi,* a German tribe near the Helvetians.

Tullius, ī, m., *Quintus Tullius Cicero,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Tullus, ī, m., *Caius Volcatius Tullus,* one of Caesar's officers.

tum, adv., *then, at that time;* **cum ...tum,** *both...and, not only... but also.*

tumultuor, ārī, ātus sum, *make an uproar* or *noise.*

tumultuōsē, adv., *noisily, with much disorder.*

tumultus, ūs, m., *noise, uproar, commotion, disorder; uprising, rebellion.*

tumulus, ī, m., *mound, rising ground.*

tunc, adv., *then, at that juncture.*

turma, ae, f., *squadron.*

Turones, um, or **Turonī, ōrum,** m. plur., *the Turones,* a tribe in north-western Gaul.

turpis, e, *disgraceful, base.*

turpiter, adv., *disgracefully, basely, shamefully.*

turpitū-dō, -dinis, f., *disgrace.*

turris, is, f., *tower.*

tūtus, a, um, *safe, secure;* abl. as adv., **tūtō** (compar. **tūtius**), *safely, in* or *with safety.*

tuus, a, um, *thy, your.*

U.

ubi, adv., *where; when;* **ubi prīmum,** *as soon as.*

ubicumque, adv., *wherever.*

Ubiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Ubii,* a tribe in Germany on the Rhine.

ubīque, adv., *anywhere.*

ulcīscor, ī, ultus sum, *punish, avenge.*

ūllus, a, um, *any;* as subst., *any one.*

ulterior, ius, comparative, *further, more remote.*

ultimus, a, um, superlative, *farthest, most remote, last.*

ultrā, prep. w. acc., *beyond.*

ultrō, adv., *beyond; besides, even; of one's own accord, voluntarily, without provocation;* **ultro citroque,** *to and fro, hither and thither.*

ultus, a, um, from **ulcīscor.**

ululātus, ūs, m., *howling, yell.*

umerus, ī, m., *shoulder.*

umquam, adv., *ever.*

ūnā, adv., *at the same time, together, along, jointly.*

unde, adv., *whence, from which* or *whom.*

undecim, *eleven.*

undecimus, a, um, *eleventh.*

undique, adv., *from all sides, on all sides.*

ūniversus, a, um, *all, the whole, entire, in a body;* as subst., *all together, the whole body.*

unquam, adv., *ever.*

ūnus, a, um, *one, a single; alone, only; one and the same;* **ad unum,** *to a man.*

urbānus, a, um, *of* or *in the city* (*i.e.* at Rome).

urbs, urbis, f., *city.*

urgeō, ēre, ursī, *press hard.*

ūrus, ī, m., *bison, wild ox.*

Usipetes, um, m. plur., *the Usipetes,* a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.

ūsitātus, a, um, *customary, common, familiar.*

usque, adv., *quite up to, until, even to such a degree.*

ūsus, a, um, from **utor.**

ūsus, ūs, m., *experience, use, employment, practice, management, enjoyment; advantage, service; need, necessity*; **ex usu**, *of advantage, advantageous*; **usu venire**, *to happen, turn out.*

ut, or **utI**, *that, in order that*, generally best rendered by infin. w. *to*; w. verbs of fearing, *that not; even if; as; when; seeing that, since; how.*

uter, utra, utrum, *which (of two).*

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each (of two), both*; m. plur., *both sides.*

utI, see **ut.**

ūtilis, e, *useful, of use, serviceable.*

ūtilitās, -tātis, f., *advantage.*

ūtor, I, ūsus sum, *use, employ, make use of, adopt, show, display, practise, exercise, maintain, avail one's self of, enjoy, have*, w. abl.

utrimque, adv., *on both sides.*

utrum, conj., *whether.*

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife.*

V.

Vacalus, I, m., a branch of the Rhine near its mouth.

vacātiō, -ōnis, f., *freedom, exemption.*

vacō, āre, āvI, ātum, *be unoccupied, lie waste.*

vacuus, a, um, *empty.*

vadum, I, n., *ford; shoal, shallow.*

vāgina, ae, f., *scabbard.*

vagor, ārI, ātus sum, *wander, roam about.*

valeō, ēre, uI, *be strong, be powerful, have weight or influence; avail, be effective.*

Valerius, I, m., *Valerius*, 1. *Caius Valerius Flaccus*, governor of Gaul in 83 B.C.; 2. *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus*, a Roman lieutenant, slain in Aquitania about 78 B.C.; 3. *Caius Valerius Caburus*, with his two sons *Procillus* and *Donnotaurus*, Gauls who became Roman citizens.

Valetiacus, I, m., an Aeduan of rank.

valetū-dō, -dinis, f., *health.*

vallēs or **vallis, is**, f., *valley.*

vallum, I, n., *rampart, wall.*

vallus, I, m., *stake.*

Vangiones, um, m. plur., *the Vangiones*, a German tribe on the Rhine.

varietās, -tātis, f., *variety, diversity.*

varius, a, um, *various, diverse, different.*

vastō, āre, āvI, ātum, *lay waste, ravage.*

vastus, a, um, *vast, boundless, immense.*

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, f., *divination, prophecy.*

vectig-al, -ālis, n., *tax, tribute; revenue.*

vectigālis, e, *tributary.*

vectōrius, a, um, *for carrying*; **vectorium navigium**, *a transport-ship.*

vehementer, adv., *severely, strongly, vigorously, desperately, exceedingly.*

vehō, ere, vexI, vectum, *carry, bring.*

vel, 1. conj., *or*; **vel...vel**, *either ...or*; 2. adv., *even.*

Velānius, I, m., *Quintus Velanius*, one of Caesar's officers.

Veliocasses, um, or **VeliocassI, ōrum**, m. plur., *the Veliocasses*, a tribe in northern Gaul, near the mouth of the Seine.

Vellaunodūnum, I, n., a town of the Senones, in central Gaul.

VellāvI, ōrum, m. plur., *the Vellavi*, a tribe in southern Gaul, near the province.

vēlōcitās, -tātis, f., *speed, swiftness.*

vēlōciter, adv., (**vēlōcius, vēlōcissimē**), *swiftly, quickly.*

vēlōx, -ōcis, *swift, active.*

vēlum, I, n., *sail.*

velut, adv., *just as.*

vēnātiō, -ōnis, f., *hunting, hunt, the chase.*

vēnātor, -tōris, m., *hunter, huntsman.*

vēn-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *sell.*

Venellī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Venelli,* a tribe in the extreme northwest of Gaul.

Venetī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Veneti,* a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

Venetia, ae, f., *the country of the Veneti.*

Veneticus, a, um, *of* or *with the Veneti.*

venia, ae, f., *pardon, favor.*

veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come.*

ventitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *come often, resort, visit.*

ventus, ī, m., *wind.*

vēr, vēris, n., *spring.*

Veragrī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Veragri,* a tribe in the Alps, between the province and Italy.

Verbigēnus, ī, m., one of the four cantons or divisions of the Helvetii.

verbum, ī, n., *word;* **verba facere,** *speak.*

Vercassivellaunus, ī, m., a leading man among the Arverni.

Vercingetor-ix, -igis, m., a leader of the Arverni.

vereor, ērī, itus sum, *fear, be afraid.*

vergō, ere, *incline, lie, face.*

vergobretus, ī, m., the title of the chief magistrate among the Aedui.

vērisimilis, e, *probable, likely.*

veritus, a, um, from **vereor.**

vērō, *indeed, in fact; but;* often untranslated.

versō, āre, āvī, ātum, *turn about, change;* in pass. as dep., *engage in, be occupied* or *busied, remain, be.*

versus, ūs, m., *line, verse.*

versus, adv., and prep. w. acc. preceding, *towards.*

Verticō, ōnis, m., a Nervian.

ver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *turn;* **terga vertere,** *to flee, take to flight.*

Verucloetius, ī, m., an Helvetian of rank.

vērus, a, um, *true; right, fair.*

verūtum, ī, n., *dart, javelin.*

Vesontiō, -ōnis, f., a town of the Sequani in eastern Gaul.

vesper, erī, m., *evening.*

vester, tra, trum, *your, yours.*

vestigium, ī, n., *footprint, track; spot; moment.*

vestiō, īre, īvī, ītum, *clothe, cover.*

vestis, is, f., *clothing, garments.*

vestītus, ūs, m., *clothing, dress.*

veterānus, a, um, *veteran.*

vet-ō, āre, -uī, -itum, *forbid, order not.*

vet-us, -eris, *old, former, long-standing, veteran.*

vexillum, ī, n., *flag.*

vexō, āre, āvī, ātum, *harass, annoy; ravage, overrun.*

via, ae, f., *way, road, street, route, journey.*

viātor, -tōris, m., *traveller.*

vīcēnī, ae, a, *twenty each, twenty.*

vīcēsimus, a, um, *twentieth.*

vīciēs, adv., *twenty times.*

vīcīnitās, -tātis, f., *neighborhood;* as collective, *the neighbors.*

vicis, gen. (nom. not found), f., *change;* **in vicem,** *in turn.*

victima, ae, f., *victim.*

victor, -tōris, m., *victor;* as adj., *victorious, triumphant.*

victōria, ae, f., *victory, success.*

victus, a, um, from **vinco.**

vīctus, ūs, m., *living, mode of living, life; food.*

vīcus, ī, m., *village.*

videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see;* in pass., *be seen, seem, appear, seem good* or *best.*

Vienna, ae, f., a town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone.

vigilia, ae, f., *watch, watching* (a watch was one-fourth of the night time).

vīgintī, *twenty.*

vīmen, -minis, n., *twig, willow, osier, wickerwork.*

vinciō, īre, vinxī, vinctum, *bind.*

vinclum, ī, a shortened form of **vinculum.**

vincō, ere, vīcī, victum, *conquer, defeat; overcome, exceed; gain a victory, prevail, carry one's point.*

vinculum, ī, n., *chain;* often in plur., *prison.*

vindicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *claim, assert, defend;* **in libertatem vindicare,** *assert the liberty of;* **vindicare in** w. acc., *punish.*

vīnea, ae, f., *vine-arbor; covered shed, movable shed, vinea.*

vīnum, ī, n., *wine.*

violō, āre, āvī, ātum, *do violence to, harm, injure.*

vir, virī, m., *man; husband.*

vīrēs, ium, from **vīs.**

vir-gō, -ginis, f., *maiden.*

virgultum, ī, n. (only in plur.), *brushwood, bushes.*

Viridomarus, ī, m., a leading man of the Aedui.

Viridovix, -icis, m., a leader of the Venelli.

virītim, adv., *man by man, to each.*

Viromanduī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Viromandui,* a tribe in north-eastern Gaul.

vir-tūs, -tūtis, f., *manliness, valor, bravery, courage; vigor, energy; merit, excellence, good quality.*

vīs, vim, vī, plur. **vīres, ium,** f., *force, strength, power; fury, violence, furious attack; vigor, energy, influence; number, quantity;* plur., *strength, powers.*

vīsus, a, um, from **video.**

vīta, ae, f., *life, course of life.*

vītō, āre, āvī, ātum, *avoid, escape.*

vitrum, ī, n., *woad.*

vīvō, ere, vīxī, victum, *live;* w. abl., *live on.*

vīvus, a, um, *alive, living.*

vix, adv., *scarcely, hardly, with difficulty.*

Vocātes, um, m. plur., *the Vocates,* a tribe in Aquitania.

Vocciō, -ōnis, m., a king of the Norici.

vocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call, summon, invite.*

Vocontiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Vocontii,* a tribe in the province, near the Alps.

Volcae, ārum, m. plur., *the Volcae,* a tribe in the southern part of the province, with two branches, the *V. Tectosages* and the *V. Arecomici;* a branch of the former of these settled in central Germany.

Volcātius, ī, m., *Caius Volcatius Tullus,* one of Caesar's officers.

volō, velle, voluī, *wish, be willing, desire, want;* **sibi velle,** *to want, to mean.*

voluntārius, a, um, *voluntary;* m. as subst., *volunteer.*

voluntās, -tātis, f., *wish, will, desire, inclination; willingness, consent, approval, good will.*

voluptās, -tātis, f., *pleasure.*

Volusēnus, ī, m., *Caius Volusenus,* a military tribune with Caesar.

Vorēnus, ī, m., *Lucius Vorenus,* a centurion with Caesar.

vōs, plur. of **tū.**

Vosegus, ī, m., *the Vosges Mountains,* in eastern Gaul.

voveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtum, *vow.*

vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, utterance, statement, cry, shout, word.*

Vulcānus, ī, m., *Vulcan,* the Roman god of fire and metallurgy.

vulgō, adv., *commonly, generally, everywhere.*

vulgus, ī, n., *the common people, the public, general body.*

vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātum, *wound.*

vuln-us, -eris, m., *wound.*

vultus, ūs, m., *countenance, expression, look.*

APPENDIX I.

HINTS AND SUGGESTIONS FOR THE TRANSLATION OF CÆSAR'S LATIN.

THE CASES.

1. Nominative; always the subject (or in agreement with the subject) of an indicative or subjunctive, [rarely of historical infinitive, 36.] N.B.—Occasionally the subject may be placed after the verb in Eng., and 'there' prefixed to the verb; e.g. *erat difficultas*, 'there was difficulty.'

2. Genitive; (*a*) may generally be translated by *of;*

(*b*) Often by the Eng. possessive forms;

(*c*) Where these do not yield satisfactory sense, translate by *as regards*, for which some preposition, *in, for, from,* etc., may generally be substituted; e.g. *opinio virtutis*, 'reputation as regards (*i.e.* for) valor'; *usus belli*, 'experience as regards (*i.e.* in) war.'

(*d*) With a few words, chiefly neuters used substantively, such as *quid, nihil, tantum, quantum, satis, aliquid, millia,* translate without *of* as though the words were in agreement; e.g. *aliquid consilii*, 'some prudence,' lit. 'something of prudence.'

3. Dative; (*a*) translated generally by *to*, sometimes by *for*.

(*b*) Sometimes the verb with which the dative is connected is translated freely, not literally, into Eng., and the Eng. verb requires the omission of *to* or *for;* e.g. *provinciae imperat*, 'he orders the province,' lit. 'he gives orders to the province'; *nocet navibus*, 'it harms the ships,' lit. 'it is harmful to the ships.'

(*c*) In a few cases, especially with the words *usus, auxilium* and *praesidium*, the dative (which tells the purpose something serves) is to be translated by the Eng. predicate nominative (*i.e.* without a preposition), or by *as*, (or sometimes by infin. with *to*.)

(*d*) With the gerundive [41] by *by*.

4. Accusative; (*a*) the object of transitive verbs, translate without any preposition.

(*b*) The subject of an infin. [34], translate as if it were the nominative.

(*c*) With words or phrases referring to time, translate with or without *for* (telling how long some action has taken).

(*d*) With words or phrases referring to distance or measurement, translate with or without *for*, (telling how far some one has gone, is distant, or something extends).

5. Ablative; (*a*) If connected with a perfect participle also in the ablative and of the same gender and number, these words are without close grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence, and this 'ablative absolute construction' may be translated in a variety of ways; e.g. *magno eorum numero interfecto, domum reverterunt* (lit. 'a large number of them having been slain, they returned home'), 'having slain, (or) after slaying, (or) on slaying, (or) when they had slain, (or) after they had slain, etc.'; *magnis copiis coactis, castra oppugnant* (lit. 'a large force having been collected, they attack the camp'), 'collecting a large force, they attack, etc., (or) they collect a large force and attack, etc.'

A literal translation (into the rare Eng. nomin. absolute) is scarcely ever a good rendering. Translate generally by one of the three following ways:

i. By the Eng. active participle in *ing*, or the Eng. gerund (verbal noun) in *ing* with a preposition, *after, on*, sometimes *by*.

ii. By a conjunction, generally *when, as, after*, sometimes *if, although, since*; the verb which follows may often be well turned from Lat. passive to Eng. active voice [23].

iii. By a clause (in the indicative or infinitive as the case may be) of the same grammatical value as the clause with which the ablative absolute phrase is connected; to couple these similar or coördinate clauses, insert *and*, sometimes *but*; here also a change to the active voice is often advisable [23].

NOTE.—This ablative absolute construction occurs less frequently with the present participle, or with an adjective or noun in place of a participle. With the present participle, trans. generally by a clause beginning with *while*, sometimes *although*, *as*, *if*, and containing a verb in the progressive form. Where there is no participle, supply *being* between the two ablatives, and this will give the meaning of the phrase and suggest a suitable translation. If a negative occurs in the ablative absolute phrase, translate by *without*.

(*b*) In most other cases translate by a preposition, *by* or *with*, less frequently *in* or *from*. The sense of the context will generally indicate which to choose.

(*c*) With words or phrases relating to time, translate by *in*, *on*, *at* (telling either the time when, or the period within which something has happened); sometimes the Eng. preposition may be omitted altogether. With the adverbs *post* or *ante*, the ablative tells how long before or after.

(*d*) With words denoting a quality, or in some way describing a person or thing just mentioned, translate by *of*. This ablative is connected with a noun not with a verb, and does not occur without some modifier in the ablative.

6. THE PREPOSITIONS.

(The order of frequency in Cæsar is *ad*, *in* with abl., *in* with acc., *ex*, *ab*, *cum*, *de*, *per*, *inter*, *pro*, *propter*, *apud*, *sine*, *post*, *trans*, *ante*.)

A, ab: (*a*) *by* (so only with passive verbs, to express the personal doer of the act.)

(*b*) *from.*

(*c*) *at*, *on*, *in*, (with *pars*, *latus*, *agmen*, *cornu*, *frons*, denoting direction).

Ad: (*a*) *to*, *towards*, or of movement with hostile intent, sometimes *against*.

(*b*) *with a view to*, for which *for* or *to* may generally be substituted (especially with gerund or gerundive [39, 40]).

(*c*) *near*, *by*.

Ante: *before*, (generally of time not place).

Apud: *among*, *with*.

Contra: (*a*) *against*. (*b*) *over against*, *opposite*.

Cum : *with* [see note to 31].

De : (*a*) *about, concerning.*
(*b*) *from*; especially with *causa*, where it is better to substitute *for*.

Ex, (rarely **e**) : (*a*) *from.*
(*b*) *of*, (in speaking of part of a larger number, or of a material)
(*c*) *in, on, at*, (with *pars* denoting direction).

In, with the Accus.: (*a*) *into, to.*
(*b*) *against, at, on*, (of a hostile act or movement).
(*c*) *into the country of*, (with names of native tribes).

In, with the Abl.: (*a*) *in*, sometimes *on.*
(*b*) *among, in the country of.*

Inter : (*a*) *among.* [1] *Inter se=one another*, generally with a preposition suggested by the context.
(*b*) *between.*

Per : *through, by means of, by.*

Post : *after, behind.*

Pro : (*a*) *before*, (of place).
(*b*) *in place of, as, in return for, in accordance with.*

Propter : *on account of, because of.*

Sine : *without.*

Trans : *across, beyond.*

ADJECTIVES.

7. As the adjective (while agreeing in case, gender and number with the word to which in sense it belongs), is often separated from that word (either for emphasis or euphony), it is necessary to be watchful of the indications of agreement afforded by the ending.

8. Sometimes the adjective does not agree with any word, but is used substantively, in the masculine referring to persons, in the neuter to things; e.g. *omnes*, all; *reliqui*, the rest; *alii*, others; *omnia*, all things, everything; *multa*, many things, much.

9. In many cases what seems to be an adjective is really an adverb, (the acc. and abl. cases being often used adverbially); e.g. *multum, multo, plurimum, facile, facilius, subito, certo, necessario, primum, una.*

10. The comparative and superlative forms are often used when no comparison is being made. The superlative is often to be translated by *very (exceedingly, fully)* with the positive form, and often the positive alone is a sufficient rendering. The comparative is sometimes to be translated by *too, rather, unusually,* or *considerably,* with the positive form. This applies to abverbs also, as well as adjectives.

THE PRONOUNS.

(These are arranged in the order of frequency of occurrence.)

11. Qui, quae, quod; the relative pronoun; regularly the first word in the clause, often preceding conjunctions or prepositions, though coming after them in the Eng. translation.

(*a*) *who, which, whom, whose,* limiting or defining a noun or pronoun (especially *is* and *hic*), which is called the antecedent.

(*b*) After a pause (even after a period, and at the beginning of a new chapter), used to carry on the narration; translate by *this, he,* if singular, by *these, they,* if plural. [*Cujus=his, quorum=their.*] Sometimes a conjunction, *and, but, for,* may be used to introduce the sentence. In a few cases, when the pause is a comma, it will be good Eng. to translate by *which.*

(*c*) With *mitto, praemitto,* and occasionally other verbs, followed by a subjunctive expressing purpose. Translate by infinitive with *to* [29].

(*d*) Difficulty is sometimes caused by certain peculiarities of the antecedent.

i. The antecedent is often not expressed; *qui* (plur.)—*those who, quod* or *quae* (neuter)—*what,* or sometimes *as.*

ii. The antecedent is often repeated with the relative (especially *pars, res, locus, dies*). Omit in translating.

iii. The antecedent (generally *hic,* sometimes *is*) comes after the whole relative clause. In the Eng. it should precede, sometimes being repeated after the relative clause.

iv. The antecedent is often transferred to the relative clause and takes its case from the relative. (This is generally when the relative clause precedes the words it depends on, or when

the relative refers to words in apposition). Translate by putting the antecedent before the relative clause; e.g. *quam nacti erant praedam, relinquunt*, (lit. 'what plunder they had got, they leave')—'they leave the plunder which they had got.' Where, however, the relative refers to words in apposition, a literal translation is often good Eng.

12. Is, ea, id; (*a*) in agreement with a noun, *that, those.* Where a relative clause follows, *the* is often a good rendering. Sometimes where Latin uses the word for *that,* Eng. would prefer to use *this.*

(*b*) When not in agreement with a noun; in sing. *he, him,* if masc., *that, it,* if neut.; in plur. *they, them,* or if the antecedent of a relative, *those.* N.B.—*Ejus=his, eorum=their, ea quae* (neut. plur.)=*what, id quod=what* or *as.*

13. Hic, haec, hoc; *this, these.* N.B.—*Haec* (neut. plur), or *hic* in agreement with *res, rerum, rebus=this* (lit. 'these things'). Often *hic* is well rendered by *the following.* Occasionally *hic* in sing. without a noun=*he, him.* Sometimes where Latin uses the word for *this,* Eng. would prefer to use *that.*

14. Se, sese, sui, sibi; (*a*) referring to the subject of the verb with which it is connected: translate by *himself, itself,* if that subject is sing.; by *themselves,* if plural.

(*b*) But when the verb it is connected with depends closely on a verb or phrase meaning 'to say, order, think, ask, wish, point out, etc.', it will refer to the subject of this latter verb; translate by *him, it,* if that subject is sing.; by *them,* if plural.

(*c*) When *se, sese,* is the subj. of an infin. [34], trans. by *he* or *they,* referring to the subj. of the verb on which the infin. depends.

(*d*) In long passages of reported speech, the translation of *se* must be settled by the sense required, though as a rule *se* refers to the speaker. Exceptions to the above rules are chiefly of two classes: i. in common reflexive expressions such as *se colligere, se recipere,* to be translated as in (*a*), or in the phrase *inter se*= one another; and ii. where the verb with which *se* is connected only indirectly depends on one of the verbs mentioned in (*b*). In all such cases the translation may easily be decided by the context.

15. Suus, a, um; (*a*) *his, his own,* or *their, their own,* according as the word it refers to (not the word it agrees with) is sing. or

plur. The word *suus* refers to is determined in the same way as with *se* [14, *a*, *b*, *d.*].

(*b*) Where not needed for clearness' sake, *suus* is used for emphasis, especially in contrast; trans. by *his*, *their*, emphasized, or by *his own*, *their own*.

(*c*) In the plural without agreeing with any noun; *sui* (masc.) =*his* or *their troops*, *friends*, *comrades*, *people*, *family*; *sua* (neut.)=*his* or *their possessions*, *property*.

16. Noster, -tra, -trum; *our*, in Cæsar='of the Romans.' The plural *nostri* without any noun in agreement=*our troops*, *forces*, *men*.

17. Ipse, a, um; (*a*) if not in agreement with any noun; translate by *he himself*, *they themselves*, or sometimes *he*, *they*, emphasized.

(*b*) If agreeing with a noun or pronoun; translate by *himself*, *themselves*.

18. Ille, a, ud; (*a*) contrasted with other persons, just mentioned; translate by *he*, *they*, emphasized.

(*b*) Referring to persons just mentioned, who are not the subject of the last sentence; *he*, *they*, often well rendered by *the others*, *the enemy*, *the latter*. (Generally in the plural and at the beginning of a new sentence, to mark a change of subject.)

(*c*) In agreement with a noun, *that*.

19. Idem, eadem, idem; *the same*.

20. Quis, quid (substantival); **qui, quae, quod** (adjectival); the interrogative pronoun: *who*, *what*.

21. Quis, quid (substantival); **qui, qua, quod** (adjectival); indefinite pronoun: (*a*) in agreement with a noun, *any*.

(*b*) Not in agreement with any noun, *anyone*, *anything*. N.B.—*Quis*, the indefinite, occurs only after *si* and *ne* in Cæsar.

22. Quisque; *each* (of several). **Uterque;** *each* (of two), *both*, *either*. **Aliquis,** or **aliqui;** *some one*, *some*, *something*. **Quisquam;** *anyone*, *anything*. **Ullus;** *any*. **Quidam;** *a certain one*, *one*, *certain*. **Quicumque;** *whoever*, *whatever*.

THE VOICES.

23. While the Active and the Passive forms of the verb are to be carefully distinguished, it should be noticed that the two voices are merely two ways of viewing the same action, and therefore what Latin expresses in one voice may often be well rendered into Eng. by the other voice. This change is especially frequent in the abl. absol. [5. a.], the impersonal passive construction [24] and the gerundive [40. 41.] Often the subject of the Eng. active must be gathered from the context.

24. With a transitive verb, an act may be expressed by either the active or the passive voice; e.g. 'they sent ambassadors' or 'ambassadors were sent by them.' But with an intransitive verb only the active voice may be used in Eng.; e.g. 'they hesitate.' But in Latin even with intransitive verbs (*i.e.* such as do not govern an accus.) the passive voice also may be used, expressing e.g. the idea of hesitating, coming, fighting, without mentioning necessarily *who* hesitated, etc.; e.g. *pugnatum est*, 'there was fighting' or 'fighting took place'; *non dubitandum est*, 'there ought not to be hesitating.' Translate such phrases by using the Eng. active, supplying the subject which the context suggests (or which with a gerundive is expressed often by a dative [3. d]); e.g. 'they fought,' 'he must not hesitate.'

THE MOODS AND TENSES.

THE INDICATIVE.

25. Present: translate by the Eng. present tense. Often the present is used for the past, to represent an act more vividly, and as this is commoner in Latin than in Eng. the Latin present may often be translated by the Eng. past.

26. Imperfect: (*a*) translate in most cases by Eng. past tense, or with negatives by *did.* This will be a correct rendering where our past tense expresses i. thoughts or feelings (the habitual way of thinking, or the thoughts which influence one in thinking over plans, or considering a situation, but not a thought expressing the decision one has come to); ii. a situation, or condition of affairs; iii. an action in progress (going on); iv. an habitual action, a usual state of things, an act often repeated or persisted in.

(*b*) To express more clearly an action in progress [*a.* iii], translate by *was, were,* with the verbal form in *-ing*, (Eng. past progressive).

(*c*) To express more clearly an habitual or repeated action [*a.* iv.], translate by *used to, would,* or *kept.*

(*d*) Occasionally, to express an attempted action, translate by *tried to* or *began to.*

27. Perfect: (*a*) translate generally by Eng. past tense;

(*b*) Occasionally by Eng. perfect with *have*, (generally where Cæsar is referring to something he has already mentioned).

28. Pluperfect: translate by Eng. past perfect, with *had.* (But with *cum* = whenever, translate by Eng. past tense.)

THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

29. A clause introduced by *ut* (*uti*), *ne, quo,* or the relative pronoun [11. c.], and expressing purpose or the end in view: (*a*) translate by *that, in order that,* followed by *may* or *might.*

(*b*) More frequently, and especially after verbs meaning 'to urge, ask, command, advise, persuade,' translate by Eng. infin. with *to.*

30. A clause introduced by *ut* (*uti*), and expressing result; (*a*) translate by *that*, sometimes *so that*, followed by the Eng. rendering of the *indicative* of the same tense [25-28]. This includes *ut* and subj. after verbs of 'happening.'

(*b*) By *so as to*, with the Eng. infin.

31. A clause introduced by *cum**, *quod*, the relative pronoun (except as in [29]), a relative adverb, or by any interrogative word: translate by the Eng. rendering of the *indicative* of the same tense [25-28], with the following variations:

Often in quoting the words or thoughts of another, the present is best rendered by the Eng. past, and the perfect, by the Eng. past perfect, with *had.*

The imperfect subj. is more frequently to be translated by the Eng. past progressive (*was* or *were* with the verbal form in *-ing*), than the imperfect indic. is.

The pluperfect, especially with *cum*, is often best rendered by the Eng. past tense. The pluperfect with *cum* may generally

* *Cum* the conjunction = *when, since,* and *cum* the preposition = *with* are to be carefully distinguished. The latter will be followed always by an ablative. Hence where an abl. does not follow with which *cum* could go, it will be the conj.; if an abl. does follow, it will probably be the prep., but *may* be the conj.

also be rendered by the same translations as are given for the perfect participle [37. *a*]; e.g. *cum vidisset*, = 'having seen, seeing, on seeing,' as well as 'when he saw.'

32. A clause introduced by *si*, *nisi*: translate as though the subj. were an indicative [25-28], but the present is sometimes, and the pluperfect generally, best rendered by Eng. past tense: the imperfect translate by Eng. past tense, or sometimes by *were to*, *should*.

THE INFINITIVE.

33. (*a*) The present inf., active or passive, completing the meaning of a verb; translate by Eng. infin. with *to*, except after *possum* (*can*, *could*), where *to* is omitted. The verbs after which this use of the inf. is most often found are: *possum*, *jubeo* and *coepi*; *consuesco*, *volo*, *conor*, *audeo* and *cogo* also are frequent.

(*b*) After the passive of *dico*, *existimo* and *video*, translate a present infin. by Eng. infin. with *to*, a perfect infin. by *to have*.

34. (*a*) Often the present infin., and regularly the perfect infin., the future infin. and the gerundive with *esse*, are to be translated by a clause introduced by *that* with its verb in the indicative. In such a case the subject of the infin. will be in the accus. case and is to be translated as if it were the nomin.

(*b*) This 'accus. and infin. construction' is found after verbs or phrases meaning 'to state, think, learn, know, perceive, etc.,' of which those most commonly occurring are *dico*, *video*, *existimo*, *arbitror*, *intelligo*, *cognosco*, *certiorem facio* and *demonstro*.

(*c*) Repeatedly with the future infin. act., the gerundive with *esse*, and sometimes with the perfect infin. pass., *esse* is omitted and the infin. appears to be a participle. A future participle in *-rus* in the accus., or a gerundive in the accus. without a preposition, is in Cæsar to be regarded regularly as an infin.

(*d*) Translate the various tenses as follows: the present by *was*, *were*, with the verbal form in *-ing* (Eng. past progressive); the perfect by *had* (Eng. past perfect) or by Eng. past tense; the future by *would*; the gerundive by *should*, *ought*, *must* [41]. [But if the verb of stating, etc. be in the present tense, *was* or *were* should be changed to *is*, *are*; *had* to *have* and *would* to *will*.] N.B.—*posse* = *could*, *esse* = *was*, *were*.

35. (*a*) Sometimes the infin. (generally the present) is used as a substantive serving as the subject of some verb. This verb is

generally to be translated with the subject *it*, and the infin. by the Eng. infin. with *to*. If a subject of the infin. is given it should be placed before the Eng. infin. and be preceded by *for*.

(*b*) This same use of the infin. is with *licet* and *oportet* better translated more freely; e.g. *licet eis venire* = 'they may come'; *oportet eos venire* = 'they ought to (or should) come.'

36. The present infin. sometimes in spirited narrative does not depend on any verb, and is to be translated by the Eng. present or past indicative; or if it indicates repeated (incessant) action it may be well rendered by *kept* followed by the verbal form in *-ing*. [The subject of this 'historical infin.' is in the nominative.]

THE PARTICIPLES.

37. The perfect partic. (*a*) in the nom. case, or in the accus. referring to the subject of an infin., is to be translated, if in the passive voice, by *having been, on being, after being*, or *being* (e.g. sent); if a deponent, by *having* (e.g. set out) or *on, after*, with the verbal form in *-ing* (e.g. setting out), or sometimes, especially with verbs expressing a thought or feeling, by the Eng. partic. in *-ing* (e.g. suspecting).

N.B.—It will sometimes be advisable to translate the partic. in this case by a clause of the same grammatical value as that with which the partic. is connected, joining the two clauses by *and* (or *but*): e.g. *repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt*, 'they were driven back by the cavalry and concealed themselves in the woods,' lit. 'having been driven back .....they concealed.......'

(*b*) In the abl. case in agreement with a noun, the perfect partic. will be translated as in [5. *a.*].

(*c*) In other cases translate the perfect partic., if in agreement with a noun or pronoun, by the Eng. past partic. passive or by a clause in the indic. (generally the past perfect with *had*) beginning with *who, which*; if not in agreement with a noun or pronoun, by a clause beginning *those who had*.

38. The **present** partic. may generally be translated, if in agreement with a noun or pronoun, by *while*, followed either by the Eng. partic. in *-ing*, or by *was, were* with the verbal form in *-ing* (Eng. past progressive); if not in agreement with a noun or pronoun, by a clause beginning with *those who were* followed by the verbal form in *-ing*.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

39. The Latin **gerund** in *-ndi, -ndo, -ndum,* is to be translated by the Eng. gerund or verbal noun in *-ing*. The gen. is the case most frequently occurring, (especially with *causā*='for the purpose'), and is to be translated according to [2. *a.* and *c.*] The accusative often occurs with *ad*=*for* ('with a view to').

(*b*) *Causā* with the gen., and *ad* with the accus. of the gerund express purpose and may often be best rendered by the Eng. infin. with *to.*

40. The **gerundive** in *-ndus, a, um,* in the gen., the accus. with *ad*, and sometimes the dat. or the abl., is found in agreement with nouns (or rarely pronouns). Although really passive and in agreement, it is to be translated by the active gerund or verbal noun in *-ing*, governing the word with which in Latin it really agrees. For the translation of the gen. and of the accus. with *ad* see [39]. The dat. is to be translated by *for.* The abl. is either used with a prep., especially *in,* or expresses 'means,' to be translated by *by.*

41. The **gerundive** in *-ndus, a, um* in the nom., or in the accus. without a prep. is used with the verb *sum,* though after verbs of *thinking* and *deciding* the infin. *esse* is generally omitted. Thus used, the gerundive and *sum* are to be translated by *should, ought, must,* or *had to.* A literal rendering would be in the passive voice, but it is generally better to use the active in Eng. The subject of this active verb will either be found in a dative connected with the gerundive [3. *d.*], or will more often be readily supplied from the context.

APPENDIX II.

TRANSLATION FROM ENGLISH TO LATIN.

I.—SUGGESTIONS AND GENERAL REMARKS.*

1. Case of Nouns and Pronouns without Prepositions.

(*a*) **subject** of a verb: **nom.**; but **acc.** if Latin verb is infin., and **dat.** with *ought*, *must*, expressed by the gerundive (as in § 8. *b*.)

(*b*) **object** of a verb: **acc.**; but **abl.** after *utor*, and **dat.** after *impero*, *praesum*, *persuadeo*, *resisto*, etc.

(*c*) indicating **time**: **abl.**, time when, or within which; **acc.**, time how long.

(*d*) indicating **distance** or **extent**: **acc.**; but **abl.** with idea of surpassing or separation.

(*e*) after verb **to be**; **nom.**; but **acc.** if Latin verb is infin. w. subject accus., and **dat.** of nouns meaning *aid*, *advantage*, *hindrance*.

(*f*) after verbs **to be made, be chosen, become, seem, be thought**: **nom.**; but **acc.** if Latin verb is infin. with subject accus.

(*g*) words in **apposition**: in the same case.

(*h*) nom. of **address**: the **voc.**

(*i*) phrase used **absolutely**: **abl. absol.**, or **cum** clause.

---

* These suggestions deal entirely with usages commonly occurring in Caesar's Latin, and are intended either for help in the translation of sentences or passages based on Caesar, or for the purpose of rapid review. Being largely rules of thumb, they will not of course take the place of a systematic or complete statement of the rules of syntax.

2. Case of Nouns and Pronouns with Prepositions.

NOTE.—Latin avoids joining two nouns by a preposition. In such a case, if *as regards* can be fairly substituted for the preposition, use the **gen.**; otherwise a clause (chiefly relative).

about,	=concerning,	**de.**
against,	w. verbs of motion,	**in** w. acc.
	=in opposition to,	**contra.**
at,	telling time when,	**abl.**
	expressing hostile act,	**in** w. acc.
	=near (of place),	**ad.**
by,	personal agent, w. pass.,	**a, ab**; but **dat.** w. gerundive.
	=by means of,	**abl**; but **per** of persons.
	telling time when,	**abl.**
for,	telling time how long,	**acc.**
	telling extent of space,	**acc.**
	=with a view to,	**ad**; but **in** w. acc. with words of time.
	of motion towards,	**ad.**
	w. 'reason' *(causa)*,	**de.**
	telling purpose to be served or persons concerned,	**dat.**
from,		**a, ab**; but **ex**, if=out of.
	w. verbs of taking away.	**dat.**
in,	telling time when,	**abl.**
	telling place where,	**in** w. abl.
	telling direction in which,	**a, ab.**
	telling direction to which,	**in** w. acc.
	=in regard to,	**abl.**
	telling manner,	**abl.**; but **cum** if noun has no modifier.
into,		**in** w. acc.
of,	denoting a part,	**gen.**; or **ex** with numerals and adjectives of number, but **de** w. *pauci.*
	=concerning,	**de.**
	giving qualities, characteristics,	**abl.** or **gen.**; (always gen. of number).
	=belonging to, or w. verbal nouns,	**gen.**
on,	telling time when,	**abl.**
	telling place where,	**in** w. abl.
	telling direction in which,	**a, ab.**
through,		**per.**
to,	w. verbs of motion,	**ad**; but **in** w. acc. of motion so as to be in a place.
	=with reference to,	**dat.**
	of the person concerned, or the indirect object,	**dat.**
with,	=together with,	**cum.**
	=by means of,	**abl.**
	telling manner,	**abl.**; but **cum** if the noun has no modifier

3. Pronouns.

(*a*) **who, what, which, whose, whom:**

i. after verbs=*ask, learn, find out, know, tell, point out, see decide*, **quis, quae, quid, w. subjunctive.** [what (substantive)=*quid* or *quae*; which (of two)=*uter*.]

ii. **Referring to an antecedent expressed or necessarily understood, qui, quae, quod, w. indic.**; but **w. subj.** if expressing another's words or thoughts. [what (substantive)=*ea quae* or *id quod*.]

(*b*) **he, him; they, them,**—i. In a clause depending on a verb=*say, order, think, ask, wish, point out*, if referring to the same person as the subject of that verb, **sui, sibi, se (sese).**

ii. In other cases, **is**, or if emphatic by contrast **ille**; where there is no contrast and the same persons have been prominently referred to in the preceding sentence, **qui**, beginning the clause.

(*c*) **his, their,**—i. unless emphatic, not expressed if the omission would cause no obscurity.

ii. otherwise **suus** in such cases as *b*. i. above, and **ejus, eorum** in other cases.

(*d*) **that,**—**is**; or if emphatic by contrast **ille.**

(*e*) **this,**—**hic**; or referring to something prominently mentioned in the preceding sentence, **qui.**

(*f*) **himself, themselves,**—**ipse**, if purely for emphasis sake; **se**, if used reflexively.

(*g*) **his own, their own,**—**suus**, referring to persons already mentioned.

(*h*) **any,**—i. after *si, ne, nisi, num*; **quis, quid** (substantival), **qui, qua, quod** (adjectival).

ii. =even one, in negative sentences or with *vix, sine*, **quisquam, quicquam** (substantival), **ullus, a, um** (adjectival).

iii. =every one, **quivis.**

(*i*) **each,**—**quisque**, of several; **uterque**, of two.

(*k*) **some,**—**aliquis**=some or other; **nonnulli**=a few; **quidam**=a certain; **alii..alii**=some..others.

4. Infinitive with To.

(*a*) expressing **purpose**, or the end in view;—
ut (or **ne** for negative clauses) w. **subj.**,
or **qui** w. **subj.** after verbs of sending,
or for short phrases **ad** or **causa** w. **gerund** or **gerundive.**

N.B.—After *urge*, *ask*, *command* (except *jubeo*), *advise*, *persuade*, *try* (except *conor*), use **ut** (or **ne** for negative clauses) w. **subj.** of purpose.

(*b*) **completing** the meaning of a verb, especially after *order* (if *jubeo*) *begin*, *be accustomed*, *wish*, *try* (if *conor*), *venture*, *compel*, *resolve*, *seem*;—**pres. infin.**

(*c*) after verbs=*promise*, *hope*;—**accus.** w. **fut. infin.**

(*d*) after *such as* or *so as*;—**ut** w. **subj.**

5. Subordinate Conjunctions.

(*a*) **that**,—indicating purpose, **ut**, **ne**, **quo**, w. **subj.**
indicating result and w. verbs=*happen*, **ut** w. **subj.**
after verbs=*state*, *think*, *learn*, *know*, *perceive*, **accus.** w. **infin.**
after verbs=*fear*, **ne** (or **ut**=that not) w. **subj.**

(*b*) **when, after, as, since, if, although**,—i. in a *short* clause referring to a time *previous* to that of the clause on which it depends:
(i) if Eng. is act. and Latin verb is transitive,* **abl. absol.** (in passive voice).
(ii) if Eng. is act. and Latin verb is deponent, **perf. part.** in agreement.
(iii) if Eng. is pass. and Latin verb is transitive,* **perf. part.** in agreement.

ii. otherwise: *when*, *after*, **cum** w. **subj.** (rarely **ubi** or **postquam** w. **ind.**)
as, *since*, **cum** w. **subj.**; (sometimes **quod** w. **ind.**)
if, **si**; *if not*, **nisi.**
although, **etsi.**

(*c*) **because**,—**quod** w. **ind.**; but w. **subj.** if expressing another's statement or thought.

(*d*) **while**,—**dum** (w. **pres. ind.** in ordinary narrative).

(*e*) **until**,—**dum** w. **ind.**; but w. **subj.** if one's purpose or object is involved.

(*g*) **lest**,—**ne** w. **subj.**

(*h*) **whenever**,—**cum** w. **ind.** (perf. or pluperf. § 6. *a.*)

---

* A transitive verb in Latin is one which in the active voice takes an object in the accus. case.

6. **Tenses,** where the mood has already been decided.

[Latin is far more logically correct than English in its tenses, especially in indicating the relation of a principal and a dependent clause.]

(*a*) **Indicative.**

i. English **progressive past** tense = Latin **imperf.**; (but w. *dum*, see 5. *d.*)

ii. English **simple past** tense = Latin **perfect**; but **imperfect** w. verbs = *think, know, feel*, or when indicating a condition of things, a situation, or an habitual action; and **pluperf.** w. *whenever* or *whoever*.

iii. English **present** tense in clauses w. *whenever* or *whoever*, = Latin **perfect.**

(*b*) **Subjunctive.**

i. Clauses of **purpose, present** if depending on verb in *pres.*, *fut.*, or *perf.* (= English perf. w. *have*); **imperf.** if depending on verb in *imperf.*, *pluperf.*, or *perf.* (= Eng. simple past).

[Note.—After the *historical present* either pres. or imperf. may be used.]

ii. Clauses of **result**, the same tense as in English, except that Latin **imperfect** is generally used for Eng. *past* tense.

iii. In all other cases (*e.g.* w. **cum, si, quod,** or **pronouns**), the *same* tense as in English, except that the English *simple past* is the Latin **imperfect**, unless it refers to a time *previous* to that of the clause on which it depends, when the **pluperf.** is used; in the same case the **perf.** is used for Eng. *simple pres.* (Test by substituting *had* or *have*.)

(*c*) **Infinitive** (in accus. w. infin. construction).

Change the Eng. words so as to get what was actually said or thought, and take the corresponding tense of the infin.; that is :—

If referring to the *same* time as verb of stating, thinking, etc., **present.**

If referring to time *before* that of verb of stating, thinking, etc., **perfect.**

If referring to time *after* that of verb of stating, thinking, etc., **future.**

For *would have* use *fuisse* w. partic. in *-urus*

7. Participles and Gerund (or Verbal in -ing).

(*a*) The **past** partic. with *having*,
or the **present** part. if = past part. with *having*, or a clause with *since*, *after*, or *as*,
or the **gerund** (or verbal in *-ing*) preceded by **on**, **after**, are to be translated as follows:
If the Latin verb is *intransitive*, by **cum w. subj.**
If the Latin verb is *transitive*,
i. Eng. *passive* voice, by Latin **perf. part. pass.** in agreement.
ii. Eng. *active* voice in *long* clauses, by **cum w. subj**
iii. Eng. *active* voice in *short* clauses, by **perf. part. pass.** in abl. absol., or by **perf. part. deponent** in agreement.

(*b*) The **present** partic. is almost invariably to be translated as in *a* above; in other cases by
pres. part. in agreement, in *short* phrases,
qui or **dum** clause, in *long* phrases.

(*c*) The **gerund** (or verbal in *-ing*).
i. after **of** or other prepositions replaceable by *as regards*, gen. of gerund or gerundive construction.
ii. after **for** (*=with a view to*) by *ad* w. acc. of gerund or gerundive construction.
iii. after **on, after,** see *a* above.

8. Miscellaneous.

(*a*) It is often of advantage to translate by a different voice.

(*b*) **Ought, must,** and equivalent phrases are generally to be translated by the **gerundive** with **sum**, the Latin verb being always *passive*, and, if intransitive, used impersonally. The person who *ought to* or *must* do something will be in the **dative**. [*Debeo*, *oportet* and *necesse est* w. the infin. are much rarer.]

(*c*) **Can, could,** = **possum** w. pres. infin.

(*d*) **As,** w. words = *aid, garrison, guard*, etc., implying the purpose served, expressed by the **dat.**
after *the same* = **qui** or **ac.**
where *as* is repeated, by *correlatives*, *e.g.* as great as, *tantus quantus.*
in phrases like 'as great as possible' by **quam** w. **superlative.**

(*e*) **Treat clauses with where, why, how,** etc., as in § 3. *a.*

(*f*) It with the verb *to be* where the real subj. follows, and there as an introductory adverb, are not expressed in Latin.

(*g*) Where a verb is compounded with a preposition (*e.g. ad, ab, ex*), this preposition cannot at the same time govern a noun.

(*h*) The adjectives **more, any, enough, no,** and **thousand** (except *one* thousand) agreeing with a noun are expressed by the neuters *plus, quicquam, satis, nihil* and *millia* followed by the noun in the **genitive.**

(*i*) Where English has a number of co-ordinate clauses, translate those which lead up to some final result, or which state previous or attendant circumstances, by participles, or if of some length by subordinate clauses. In other words *reduce* the number of verbs connected by *and, but, so,* etc. [*e.g.* He gives orders to collect a large force and to attack the camp, = *imperat ut magnis copiis coactis castra oppugnent.* They had sent ambassadors and sued for peace, but yet made war on Caesar = *cum missis legatis pacem petissent, bellum Caesari intulerunt.*

II.—LIST OF WORDS MOST COMMONLY OCCURRING IN CAESAR.

(Arranged in Order of Frequency.)

qui	magnus	legio	cognosco	equitatus
in	facio	dies	oppidum	dico
sum	non	civitas	finis	numerus
is	possum	habeo	consilium	sed
-que	quod	reliquus	legatus	per
et	neque, nec	si	proelium	flumen
ad	cum (*conj.*)	bellum	ille	do
hic	hostis	miles	eques	etiam
se	locus	mitto	mille	tantus
a, ab	castra	ne	navis	constituo
omnis	cum (*prep.*)	copia	unus	homo
e, ex	pars	causa	idem	alius
ut, uti	noster	video	quam	quis (*interrog.*)
atque	de	appello (*are*)	iter	summus
res	ac	venio	jubeo	interficio
suus	ipse	exercitus	tempus	

longus
multitudo
populus
prope
inter
arma
pro
proficiscor
existimo
relinquo
duo
recipio
tamen
contendo
munitio
auxilium
obses
fuga
multus
virtus
gero
cogo
eo (*adv.*)
impero
jam
animus
fero
peto
quis (*indef.*)
volo
ante
celeriter
longe
ager
capio
coepi
praesidium
superior
transeo
totus
passus
primus
convenio
accipio
pervenio
propter
pugno
ubi
circiter
imperium
nullus
alter
frumentum
periculum
nihil
silva
contineo
contra
annus
spes
utor
ibi
discedo
teneo
impetus
instituo
conficio
impedimentum
murus
salus
tum
manus
provincia
adventus
certus
consisto
hiberna
nam
nox
opus
prohibeo
signum
cohors
fere
intelligo
quisque
pes
vis
absum
accido
apud
pono
quidem
spatium
acies
aut
ita
quo (*adv.*)
adduco
post
ratio
regio
sine
arbitror
finitimus
quantus
telum
complures
facile
fortuna
impedio
princeps
ago
consuesco
pauci
sustineo
demonstro
duco
munio
collis
conjicio
dimitto
tres
uterque
committo
concilium
fides
vallum
colloco
exspecto
novus
nuntius
porta
pugna
revertor
singuli
tertius
timor
usus
agmen
conor
domus
genus
intermitto
minus
mons
paro
perterreo
confirmo
efficio
injuria
pons
transduco
at
barbarus
communis
consuetudo
deduco
interim
labor
sequor
una
amicitia
audio
natura
priusquam
subito
auctoritas
autem
itaque
medius
posterus
sic
turris
audeo
celeritas
defendo
equus
item
magnitudo
nuntio
occupo
reduco
trado
accedo
circumvenio
dum
dux
egredior
eo (*verb*)
exterus
facultas
fossa
frater
ordo
pax
potestas
progredior
publicus
reperio
subsidium
aliquis
confero
defero
deligo
frumentarius
modus
polliceor
praeficio
praesum
quisquam
supero
supra
undique
agger
centurio
cohortor
lătus
obtineo
opinio
quin
ullus
vereor

magnitudo
nuntio
occupo
reduco
trado
accedo
circumvenio
dum
dux
egredior
eo (*verb*)
exterus
facultas
fossa
frater
ordo
pax
potestas
progredior
publicus
reperio
subsidium
aliquis
confero
defero
deligo
frumentarius
modus
polliceor
praeficio
praesum
quisquam
supero
supra
undique
agger
centurio
cohortor
lătus
obtineo
opinio
quin
ullus
vereor

APPENDIX III.

EXERCISES BASED ON BOOK II.

PART I.—CHAPTERS I—III. SIMPLIFIED AS A PRELIMINARY EXERCISE FOR BEGINNERS.

CHAP. I.

1.—Caesar erat in citeriore Gallia in hibernis, uti supra demonstravimus. Cum esset[2] Caesar in citeriore Gallia, crebri ad eum rumores afferebantur[3]. Litteris certior fiebat[4] omnes Belgas conjurare.[5] Belgae tertia sunt Galliae pars. Belgae contra populum Romanum conjurant, obsidesque inter se[6] dant.

2.—Conjurandi[7] hae erant causae. Primum[8] verebantur[9] ne[10] ad se exercitus noster adduceretur. Omni pacata[11] Gallia ad Belgas exercitus Romanus adducetur.

3.—Deinde conjurabant quod ab nonnullis Gallis sollicitabantur. Galli Germanos diutius in Gallia versari[12] noluerant. Populi Romani[13] exercitum hiemare[12] in Gallia moleste ferebant. Exercitus hiemat atque inveterascit in Gallia. Galli, mobilitate[14] et levitate animi, novis imperiis[15] student.

4.—In Gallia a potentioribus[16] vulgo regna occupantur. Hi ad conducendos[17] homines facultates habent. Hi minus facile imperio[18] nostro regna occupant. Hi minus facile eam rem consequi poterant.

NOTES.

1. *Ut* followed by the indic. has generally the meaning of 'as,' never of 'that.'
2. The subj. after *cum* (=when, since, as) is as a rule to be translated exactly like the corresponding tense of the indicative.
3. The imperf. tense is used because the act was repeated. The English simple past tense will have the same force here.
4. *Certior fio*, lit. 'I become (*or* am made) more certain,' *i.e.* 'I am informed.' Notice the predicate nominative.

5. Accus. and infin. construction; translate by a clause beginning with 'that', of which *Belgas* furnishes the subject. App.31.*a.d.* Notice the translation of the pres. infin. by the English past progressive.
6. Lit. 'among themselves'; *i.e.* 'to one another.'
7. The gerund. App.39.*a.* Trans. the gen. here by 'for', not 'of.' App.2.*c.*
8. The adverb not the adj.
9. A deponent verb, *i.e.* passive in form but with active force.
10. *Ne* with the imperf. subj. after a verb of fearing means 'lest... should,' or 'that...might.'
11. The ablative absolute construction, App.5.*a.* Translate as in App.5. *a* ii., using 'after' or 'when.'
12. The accus. with infin. construction. Translate by 'that...should,' the subject being furnished by the accus.
13. As there was but one Roman people or nation, this must be singular.
14. The abl. expressing cause. Trans. by 'because of their,' etc.
15. 'New rules' means 'a change of rule *or* of government.'
16. The comparative adjective is here used as a substantive.
17. The gerundive construction; App.40. Translate by 'for hiring,' etc.
18. The abl. of time when; translate by 'under.'

CHAP. II.

1.—His litteris commotus,[1] Caesar duas legiones novas conscripsit. Duae legiones inita[2] aestate in interiorem Galliam deductae sunt. Quintum Pedium legatum misit, qui[3] legiones in Galliam deduceret.

2.—Pabuli copia esse incipit[4]. Ipse,[5] cum[6] primum pabuli copia esset,[4] ad exercitum venit.

3.—Senones finitimi Belgis[7] sunt. Dat negotium[8] Senonibus reliquisque[9] Gallis uti[10] omnia[11] cognoscant. Ea,[11] quae[12] apud eos geruntur, cognoscunt. Caesarem de his rebus certiorem[13] faciunt.

4.—Hi constanter omnes nuntiaverunt manus[14] cogi. Nuntiaverunt manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum conduci[14].

5.—Tum dubitandum[15] non existimavit. Non dubitabat quin[16] ad eos proficisceretur.

6.—Re frumentaria comparata,[17] castra movet. Diebus[18] circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

NOTES.

1. The perfect participle passive. App.37.*a.*
2. From *ineo.* The abl. absolute construction; lit. 'the summer having been entered on, *i.e.* having begun'; freely, 'at the beginning of summer.'

3. Translate *qui* and subjunctive here by infin. with 'to'; lit. 'who was to,' etc. App.29.*b*.
4. Use the introductory adverb 'there' (which has no equivalent in Latin.) App.1.N.B.
5. For the translation of *ipse*, see App.17.*a*.
6. For the translation of *cum primum* see Vocabulary under *primum*. Translate the subjunctive as in chap.1. note 2.
7. Lit. 'adjacent to the B.'; freely, 'neighbors of the B.'
8. Here translate 'instructions.'
9. *Reliquisque* is two words; *reliquis*, really an adjective, to be translated 'the rest of.'
10. *Uti* (=*ut*) and the subjunctive, after verbs or phrases of commanding, are to be translated by the infin. with 'to.' App. 29.*b*.
11. Do not use 'things' in the English. App.8.
12. Translate as in App.12.*b*.N.B.
13. *Certiorem facere* is the active phrase corresponding to *certior fio* (see chap.1. note 4.) and therefore meaning 'to inform.' Notice the factitive accusative.
14. The accus. and infin. construction. See chap. 1. note 5.
15. *Dubitandum* for *dubitandum esse*. App.34.*c*. The gerundive is to be translated as in App.41. For the translation of the impersonal passive, see App.24. Freely, 'that he must not hesitate.'
16. *Quin proficisceretur*, lit 'so that he should not set out'; freely, 'to set out.'
17. The ablative absolute construction.
18 The time *within* which. Translate by 'in.'

CHAP. III.

1.—Eo[1] de improviso celeriusque omni opinione[2] venit.

2.—Remi proximi Galliae[3] ex Belgis sunt. Remi ad eum legatos, primos[4] civitatis, miserunt. Legatos miserunt qui[5] dicerent, se[6] suaque omnia in potestatem populi Romani permittere. Legati dixerunt neque[7] se cum Belgis reliquis consensisse, neque contra populum Romanum conjurasse.

3.—Parati sumus et[8] obsides dare et imperata facere[9] et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus juvare.

4.—Reliqui omnes Belgae in armis sunt. Germani, qui cis Rhenum incolunt, sese[10] cum his conjunxerunt.

5.—Tantus est eorum[11] omnium furor ut[12] ne Suessiones quidem deterrere possimus quin[13] cum his consentiant. Suessiones, fratres consanguineique nostri, eodem[14] jure et eisdem legibus utuntur. Suessiones unum imperium unumque magistratum cum Remis habent.

NOTES.

1. The adverb, not the pronoun.
2. The ablative is used after comparatives (*celerius* is the comparative of *celeriter*) to express the idea 'than.' Lit. 'than all expectation'; freely, 'than anyone had expected.'
3. The dative. *Ex Belgis* (of the B.') should be translated before *Galliae*.
4. In apposition with *legatos*, and used as a substantive; 'the foremost men.'
5. Translate as in chap. 2 note 3.
6. *Se* and *sua* are objects of *permittere*, with which *se* is to be understood as subj. App.14.*a*.c.; 15.c.
7. *Neque...neque*, 'neither...nor' or 'not...nor.' *Se* is subject of both infinitives.
8. *Et...et*, 'both...and.'
9. *Imperata*, lit. 'the things ordered'; freely, 'your bidding.'
10. *Sese* is another form for *se*. English would not use so many words here.
11. *Eorum omnium* is literally 'of them all' not 'of all of them.'
12. *Ut* with the subjunctive expressing result, to be translated as in App. 30.*a*.
13. *Quin* and the subjunctive are here to be translated by 'from' with the gerund in *-ing*. For the literal translation see chap. 2. note 16.
14. Translate the abl. without any preposition; *utor* takes an abl. where we might expect an object in the accus.

PART II.—EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION FROM LATIN AT SIGHT.

1.—Hac parte Galliae pacata, in (*against*) Morinos, qui inter se conjuraverant, exercitum adduxit. 2. Crebriores litterae ad Caesarem mittebantur (*send*). His litteris allatis, Caesar suos (*his men*) facit certiores. 3. Gallia est omnis divisa (*divide*) in partes tres, quarum unam (*one*) incolunt (*inhabit*) Belgae, aliam (*another*) Aquitani, tertiam Galli. 4. Imperio populi Romani, de (*of*) regno occupando desperat (*despair*).

2.—1. Duas legiones, quas proxime (*last*) conscripserat, in castris relinquit (*leave*). 2. Omnes Belgarum copiae, in unum locum coactae, ad Caesarem veniunt. 3. His rebus gestis, cum Caesar pacatam (1.2.)* Galliam existimaret, inita hieme (*winter*) in Illyricum profectus est. 4. Caesar cognovit Helvetios inopia (*through lack*) pabuli castra movisse. 5. Unam legionem quam proxime (*recently*) conscripserat, in Eburones, quorum pars

*The figures indicate in what chapter and section the word *pacatam*, which is not found in this chapter, has previously occurred.

maxima (*largest*) sub (*under*) imperio (1.4.) Catuvolci erat, misit. 6. His rebus gestis, Labienum cum tribus legionibus reliquit (*leave*), ut rem frumentariam provideret (*procure*), quaeque in Gallia gererentur cognosceret. 7. Crassus, quod in his locis inopia (*lack*) rei frumentariae erat, legiones in finitimas civitates (*state*) misit. 8. Caesar, una aestate duobus bellis (*war*) confectis (*finish*), in hiberna (1.1.) exercitum deduxit; ipse in citeriorem Galliam profectus est.

3.—1. Celeriter contraque (*contrary to*) omnium opinionem ad proximas civitates pervenit. (2.6.) 2. Belgae Germanos finibus (2.6.) suis receperant, seque cum his conjunxerant. 3. Certior factus est (2.3.) Suebos omnes in unum locum copias (*forces*) cogere (2.4.), atque eos qui sub (*under*) eorum sunt imperio auxilia (*aid*) mittere. 4. His cognitis (3.3.) rebus, rem frumentariam (2.6.) providet (*procure*) crebrosque (1.1.) exploratores (*scouts*) in Suebos mittit qui cognoscant quae apud eos gerantur. (2.3.) 5. Eo cum pervenisset (2.6.), ad reliquas legiones (2.1.) mittit omnesque in unum locum cogit. (2.4.) 6. His rebus gestis (2.3.), omni Gallia pacata (1.2.) ab Germanis mittuntur legati ad Caesarem, qui se obsides daturos, imperata facturos pollicerentur (*deponent verb, promise*). 7. His rebus Caesar commotus (2.1.) maturandum (*hasten*) esse existimavit, ne nova (2.1.) manus (2.4.) Sueborum cum copiis (*forces*) Ariovisti se conjungeret. 8. Quattuor coactis (2.4.) legionibus, de improviso in fines (2.6.) Nerviorum contendit (*hasten*) et obsides sibi dare coegit (*compel*).

4.—1. Quibus in locis sit Caesar ex captivis (*prisoner*) quaerunt. 2. Ariovistus rex Germanorum in eorum finibus consedit, tertiamque (1.1.) partem agri occupavit. (1.4.) 3. Auctoritas ejus inter finitimos plurimum valet. 4. Dumnorix dicit sibi a Caesare regnum (1.4.) civitatis deferri. 5. Mandubracium in civitatem mittit qui imperium obtineat. 6. Quid quisque eorum de quaque re cognoverit, quaerunt. 7. Equitum (*of cavalry*) millia erant sex, totidem numero pedites (*infantry*). 8. Haec civitas plurimum totius Galliae equitatu (*cavalry*) valet, magnasque habet copias (*forces*) peditum (*of infantry*). 9. Indutiomarus, ad quem a Treveris imperium defertur, finitimos Germanos sollicitare (1.3.) et pecuniam (*money*) polliceri non desistit (*cease*). 10. Minus (1.4.) multitudine armatorum valebat. 11. De natura (*character*) Nerviorum Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiebat: esse homines feros; confirmare (*declare*) sese legatos (3.2.) non missuros.

5.—1. Obsidibus adductis, Remos in fidem (3.2.) recepit. (3.3.) 2. Helvetii jam per fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant, et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant (2.6.), eorumque agros popula-

bantur. 3. Cujus adventu (*approach*) ab hostibus cognito, magnae ex finitimis (2.3.) civitatibus copiae convenerunt. 4. Effecto ponte, Romani copias traducebant. 5. Commius reliquique, quibus summa imperii (4.7.) permissa est (3.2.), cum omnibus copiis ad Alesiam perveniunt. (2.6.) 6. Magnopere interesse arbitrabatur (4.10.) ejus auctoritatem (4.5.) inter Belgas plurimum valere. (4.5.) 7. In ponte turrim (*tower*) constituit (*place*), praesidiumque cohortium duodecim ad pontem tuendum ponit. 8. Treveri, magnis coactis copiis, jam ab Labieno non longe aberant, cum duas venisse legiones cognoscunt. Positis castris Germanos exspectare (*await*) constituunt (*decide*). 9. Diligentius eam rem cognoscere volunt (*wish*). 10. Munitis castris, duas ibi legiones reliquit, quattuor reliquas in castra majora reduxit (*lead back*). 11. Caesar, cognito consilio (*plan*) eorum, ad flumen Tamesim (*Thames*) in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit (*lead*). Eo (3.1.) cum venisset, vidit ad (*along*) alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas (*draw up*).

6.—1. Ariovistus partem (1.1.) suarum copiarum (5.4.), quae castra (5.4.) oppugnaret, misit. 2. Illi aegre ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent. 3. Hostes postero (*next*) die majoribus coactis (5.4.) copiis castra oppugnant, fossamque complent (*fill up*). 4. Milites legionis septimae (*seventh*) testudine facta locum (5.4.) ceperunt (*take*), eosque expulerunt. (4.1.) 5. Caesar, cum nuntiatum esset (*announce*) copias Ariovisti ad nostros (*our men*) adequitare (*ride up*), lapides ac tela in nostros conjicere, finem loquendi (*speak*) fecit. 6. Copias traduxerant ut castellum (*fort*), cui praeerat Q. Titurius legatus, oppugnarent et agros Remorum popularentur. (5.3.) 7. Ab Roscio, qui legioni decimae (*tenth*) praeerat, certior factus est (2.3.) magnas Gallorum copias earum civitatum (5.5.) quae Aremoricae appellantur (4.10.) non longe (5.4.) ab hibernis (1.1.) suis afuisse.

7.—1. Dum (*while*) in his locis (5.4.) Caesar moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati (6.4.) venerunt. 2. De tertia (1.1.) vigilia (*watch*) Labienus cum duabus legionibus, et iis ducibus qui iter (*road*) cognoverant (4.4.), subsidio Caesari venit. 3. Hostes ex eo loco ad flumen (5.4.) Axonam contenderunt, quod esse post (5.5.) castra Caesaris demonstravimus. (1.1.) 4. Caesar in fines (5.4.) Suessionum, qui proximi (3.2.) Remis erant, exercitum (5.4.) duxit (*lead*), et ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare (6.1.) conatus est (*deponent verb, attempt*), sed (*but*) propter (4.7.) latitudinem fossae (*trench*), murique (6.3.) altitudinem (5.6.) expugnare (*take by storm*) non potuit (6.4.) 5. Fines Helvetiorum in latitudinem millia passuum centum et sexaginta (2.5.) patent. 6. Caesar, effectis (5.5.)

pontibus (5.6), omnia ejus vici aedificia incendit, magnoque hominum (6.2.) numero (4.7.) potitur. 7. Ii, qui in praesidio (5.6.) erant relicti, subsidio suis (6.4.) venerunt, neque (*but not*) hostium impetum (6.1.) sustinere (6.4.) potuerunt. 8. Caesar legiones portis (6.2.) incensis intromittit (*send in*), atque oppido potitur.

8.—1. Proximo (*next*) die Caesar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit, aciemque instruxit. 2. Fit (5.3. *is fought*) equestre proelium in ea planicie, quam tria millia passuum in longitudinem (*length*) patere (7.4.) supra demonstravimus. (1.1.) 3. Ab altera (5.6.) parte Bellovaci, quae civitas (5.5.) in Gallia maximam (2.8.) habet opinionem virtutis, instabant (*threaten*). 4. Romani intellegent quid Veneti navibus (*vessel*) possint. 5. In extremo ponte (5.6.) turrim (*tower*) constituit unde (*from which*) tormentis tela conjiciuntur. (6.3.) 6. Caesar in Italiam contendit, duasque ibi (5.6.) legiones conscribit, et tres, quae circum (*near*) Aquileiam hiemabant (1.3.), ex hibernis (1.1.) educit. 7. Copiae, quas Aedui subsidio Biturigibus miserant (7.1.), cum ad flumen Ligerim (*Loire*), quod Bituriges ab Aeduis dividit (*separate*), venissent, paucos (*a few*) dies ibi morati (7.3.), neque (*and not*) flumen transire (*cross*) ausi, domum (*home*) redeunt. 8. Ubi (6.2.) hoc Caesar intellexit, castris idoneum locum delegit (*choose*), acieque instructa ad eum locum venit. 9. Oppidum Alesia erat in colle, admodum (*exceedingly*) edito loco; quem collem duabus ex partibus flumina subluebant (*wash*).

9.—1. Germani eo consilio Rhenum (*Rhine*) transierant ut Ambiorigis fines (5.4.) depopularentur. (7.3.) 2. Dixerunt (4.4.) omnem esse in armis (4.1.) Galliam; Germanos Rhenum transiisse; Caesaris reliquorumque (8.5.) hiberna (1.1.) oppugnari. (7.2.) 3. Ab his cognoscit (5.4.) non longe (5.4.) ex eo loco oppidum abesse (6.1.), silvis (*wood*) paludibusque munitum. (5.5.) 4. Caesar aciem instruxit (8.5.), ut, si vellet (*wish*) Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas (6.3.) non deesset (*be lacking, from desum*). 5. Ne (8.4.) diutius (6.4.) commeatu prohiberetur, bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit (*decide*). 6. Omnia vada ejus paludis obtinebant (*hold*), ut, si eam paludem Romani perrumpere (*force one's way through*) conarentur, premerent (*overwhelm*). 7. Quod flumen uno loco pedibus (*on foot*), atque hoc aegre (6.1.), transiri potest. 8. Ubi Caesar certior factus est (1.1.) tres partes copiarum id flumen traductas, de (7.1.) tertia vigilia (*watch*) cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus (2.5.), ad eam partem pervenit (2.6.), quae nondum (*not yet*) flumen transierat. Eos impeditos in flumine aggressus, magnam partem eorum occidit (*slay*).

10.—1. Ipsi transire flumen non dubitaverunt (*hesitate*), et in locum iniquum progressi sunt. 2. Proxima (*next*) nocte (7.1.), Sabinus ex castris exercitum educit (8.5.), et ad Caesarem auxilii ferendi causa proficiscitur. (2.5.) 3. Nostri acriter in eos impetu (6.1.) facto, reppulerunt, neque finem (6.4.) sequendi (*pursue*) fecerunt, quoad (*until*) castris appropinquaverunt. 4. Principibus (5.1.) ad concilium convocatis, sententias exquirere (*ask*) coepit. 5. Cum Caesar quaereret (4.1.) quamobrem (*why*) Ariovistus proelio non decertaret, hanc reperiebat (9.4.) causam. 6. Ab hac spe repulsus, re frumentaria provisa (*procure*), in Sontiatum fines exercitum introduxit. 7. In eo itinere (*journey*) persuadet Castico, cujus pater (*father*) regnum (1.4.) in Sequanis diu obtinuerat (*hold*), ut regnum in civitate (5.5.) sua occuparet (1.4.), quod pater ante (*before*) habuerat. (8.3.)

11.—1. Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris continuit, equestri (9.2.) proelio cotidie (8.2.) contendit. 2. Hostes, ubi (9.2.) nostros equites conspexerunt (*see*), impetu facto, celeriter (3.1.) nostros perturbaverunt. 3. Dumnorix cum equitibus (9.2.) Aeduorum a castris domum discedere coepit. (10.4.) Qua re cognita Caesar magnam partem equitatus ad eum consequendum mittit. 4. Equitatum fugientes Caesar prosequi vetuit (*forbid*), quod verebatur ne (*lest*) per insidias ab eis circumveniretur. (10.3.) 5. His rebus cognitis, Labienus, cum omnes ad eum Treverorum copiae (9.4.) venissent, veritus est, si (9.4.) ex hibernis (1.1.) fugae similem profectionem fecisset, ut (*lest... not*) hostium impetum sustinere posset. 6. Si hostes nondum finibus suis egressi sunt, nullo cum periculo nostri ad proximam (3.2.) legionem pervenient; si Gallia omnis cum Germanis consentit (3.5.), una (*only*) est in virtute (8.2.) posita salus. (5.2.)

12.—1. Ubi (10.4.) vineis actis, aggere exstructo (*raise*), turrim procul (*at a distance*) constitui viderunt, nova (1.3.) specie (*sight*) commoti (2.1.), legatos ad Caesarem de pace (*peace*) miserunt. 2. Quorum magno numero interfecto (11.6.), Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sontiatum oppugnare coepit. Quibus fortiter (11.4.) resistentibus (*resist*), vineas turresque egit. 3. Omnibus rebus ad profectionem (11.1.) comparatis, omnes ad ripam (5.5.) Rhodani (*Rhone*) conveniunt. 4. Itaque (7.3.) re frumentaria (10.4.) comparata, eodem die cum legionibus in Senones proficiscitur (2.5.), magnisque itineribus eo pervenit. (11.1.) 5. Caesar nuntios (7.1.) ad Aeduos misit, qui suo beneficio (*kindness*) conservatos docerent. (5.2.) 6. Omnibus precibus (*entreaty*) petere contendit ut in Gallia relinqueretur. (8.5).

13.—1. Legatos ad Caesarem mittunt seque in deditionem ut accipiat petunt. Qua re impetrata (12.5.), arma tradere jussi

sunt (11.3.) 2. Obsidibus traditis, armisque ex oppido collatis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervenit (11.1.), qui se suaque omnia statim dediderunt (*surrender*). 3. Quorum cum magna multitudo venisset, mulieres more Gallorum manus tendere et deditionem significare coeperunt. 4. Caesar de improviso (3.1.) in fines Nerviorum contendit (12.1.), et priusquam (12.1.) illi convenire (12.4.) possent, vastatis (*lay waste*) agris, in deditionem eos venire et obsides sibi dare (1.1.) coegit (*compel*). 5. Obsides ab iis principum (5.1.) filios acceperunt, et partem finitimi (4.6.) agri per vim (*force*) occupatam (1.4.) possident. (4.6.)

14.—1. Gallia, multis contumeliis acceptis (13.1.), sub (*under*) populi Romani imperium (1.4.) redacta erat. 2. Dixerunt, si reliquam (8.5.) partem hiemis (*winter*) uno loco legiones continere (11.2) omnem Galliam ab amicitia Romanorum defecturam. 3. Bituriges eorum discessu statim (11.2.) se cum Arvernis conjungunt. (3.4.) 4. His rebus fiebat (4.3.) ut minus facile (1.4.) finitimis (8.3.) bellum inferre possent. 5. His rebus impulsi, Galli, qui ante (12.5.) se populi Romani servitutem perferre dolebant (*grieve*), audacius (10.3.) bellum gerere (9.5) incipiunt. (2.2.) 6. Hoc unum petebant, ut pro (*in accordance with*) sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent (12.5.) statueret (*determine*) Aduatucos esse conservandos. 7. Cimbri, magna illata calamitate, ex finibus nostris excesserunt (*withdraw*).

15.—1. Eo postquam (5.4.) Caesar pervenit, obsides et arma poposcit. 2. Ad eos mercatores saepe (*often*) commeant (*pay visit*), atque ea quae ad effeminandos (*enervate*) animos pertinent, important (*introduce*). 3. Tertio die missis ex oppido legatis de deditione (12.5.), arma conferri, sescentos obsides dari jubet. (11.3.) 4. Germanos Galli virtute superabant (*excel*), bella inferebant (14.3.), propter (12.2.) hominum multitudinem agrique inopiam (*lack*) trans Rhenum colonias (*colony*) mittebant. 5. Petunt ut Caesar se patiatur eos agros tenere (*hold*) quos armis possederint (*win*). 6. Ubii reliquis sunt humaniores (*civilized*), quod Rhenum attingunt, mercatoresque ad eos ventitant (*go often*). 7. Caesar respondit (*answer*) se consuetudine (*custom*) sua civitatem conservaturum si se dedidissent; sed (14.5.) deditionis nullum esse conditionem nisi (*unless*) arma tradidissent.

16.—1. Qui aetate ad bellum inutiles videbantur, omnia experti, se hostibus tradiderunt. (15.2.) 2. Tridui viam (*journey*) progressi (10.4.), equites, qui aberant, reverterunt. (14.1.) 3. Caesar paucos (12.2.) dies in eorum finibus moratus (10.5.), omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis (7.3.), se in fines Ubiorum recepit (11.6.), atque iis auxilium (10.5.) suum pollicitus (4.4), haec ab iis cognovit: Suebos more suo (13.3.) sua omnia in silvis (*woods*)

deposuisse (*place*), atque omnes, qui arma ferre (*bear*) possent unum in locum convenire (10.4); ibi Romanorum adventum exspectare constituisse (*decide*).

17.—1. Loci natura (15.3.) erat haec, quem nostri castris delegerant. 2. Praemisso equitatu, iter eorum moratur (11.3.) atque impedit. 3. Omissis omnibus rebus, huic bello student. 4. Caesar, equitatu praemisso, subsequebatur (11.3.) omnibus copiis; post (9.3.) legiones totius exercitus impedimenta collocaverat. (8.4.) 5. Ejus adventu Bituriges ad Aeduos, quorum erant in fide (14.2.), legatos mittunt, qui subsidium (6.4.) rogarent (*ask for*), quo facilius hostium copias sustinere (11.4.) possent. 6. Non hostem verebantur (11.2.), sed magnitudinem (12.5.) silvarum quae intercedebant inter ipsos et Ariovistum. 7. Si Romani sese recipere (11.6.) coeperint, impeditos in agmine et sub sarcinis adoriemur. 8. Nihil est negotii subito (*suddenly*) legionem, quae cum Cicerone hiemat (1.3.), opprimere (*crush*). 9. Cujus adventu cognito, Sontiates, magnis copiis coactis (5.4.) equitatuque quo plurimum (4.5.) valebant, in itinere agmen nostrum adorti sunt.

18.—1. Collis erat leniter (*gently*) ab infimo acclivis. 2. Copias omnes in loco edito (*high*) atque aperto instruxerunt. (8.5.) 3. Superiorem partem collis castris compleverant (*cover*). 4. Hostes collocatis (8.4.) insidiis (11.2.) in silvis opportuno (8.3.) atque occulto loco, Romanorum adventum exspectabant. 5. Itaque (7.3.) silvestri loco castris positis (7.3.), postero (*next*) die cum duabus legionibus in occulto restitit (*halt*); reliquas copias cum omnibus impedimentis, ut (17.2.) consueverat, mittit.

19.—1. Interim milites legionum duarum, quae in novissimo (11.3.) agmine praesidio impedimentis fuerant, in colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur (*see*). 2. Commisso proelio, nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre (*endure*) non potuerunt. 3. Totius exercitus impedimenta ad Labienum mittit duasque legiones ad eum proficisci (2.5.) jubet (11.3.); ipse cum legionibus expeditis quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. 4. Nostri longius novissimum (11.3.) agmen insecuti, iniquo (10.4.) loco cum equitatu hostium proelium committunt. 5. Hostes, nostris occupatis in munitione (*fortification*) castrorum, subito ex omnibus partibus silvae evolaverunt, impetuque in eos facto, acriter (10.2) pugnaverunt. 6. Equestris (9.2.) proelii ratio et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum (11.6.) inferebat (*bring*). 7. Praesidio impedimentis legionem tertiam reliquit, unam ex his tribus, quas proxime conscriptas ex Italia traduxerat. (10.1.) 8. Sed ea (*such*) celeritate atque eo impetu (6.1.) milites ierunt (*rush*), ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere (11.4.) non

possent. 9. Neque aliter si faciat, ullam (15.6.) inter suos auc-
toritatem (14.6.) habeat. 10. Quinque cohortes (5.6.) castris
praesidio relinquit; quinque ejusdem legionis reliquas de media
nocte (7.1) cum omnibus impedimentis adverso flumine magno
tumultu (11.1.) proficisci (2.5.) jubet. (11.3.)

20.—1. Milites cohortatus, quod hostes non longe aberant,
proelium committendi (19.4) signum dedit. 2. Celeriter (12.5.)
effecto (*finish*) opere, legionibusque traductis (10.1.), et loco cas-
tris idoneo delecto (17.1.), reliquas copias revocavit. 3. Prin-
cipes ad se convenire (12.4.) jubet, si quid (14.6.) administrandum
videretur. 4. Cum existimaret (15.4.) exspectari diutius (10.5.)
non oportere, cohortatus suos ad hostium castra contendit. (19.8.)
5. Cognito ejus consilio (14.4.) celeriter ad arma concurritur.
6. Eodem tempore clamore exaudito (11.5.) dat tuba signum suis
atque ex oppido educit. (8.5.) Nostri ut (19.6.) superioribus
diebus suus cuique (15.1.) locus attributus erat (*assign*), ad
murum (17.4.) accedunt. (13.3.) 7. Reliqui, qui ex urbe (*city*)
amicitiae (14.2.) causa Caesarem secuti erant (17.2.), non magnum
in re militari (4.3.) usum habebant. 8. Sese non longius milli-
bus passuum quattuor processurum eo die dixit. 9. Hostes ex
omnibus partibus signo dato decurrunt. (19.7.) 10. Factum est
(4.3.) virtute militum et superiorum pugnarum (*battle*) exercita-
tione, ut ne unum quidem (17.4.) nostrorum impetum hostes
ferrent (*endure*). 11. Non virtute neque in acie nostros vice-
runt (*conquer*), sed scientia oppugnationis. (6.2.)

21.—1. Labienus milites cohortatus ut pristinam virtutem
retinerent atque ipsum Caesarem adesse (*be present*) existimarent,
dat signum proelii. 2. Ut temporis exiguitas postulabat (*de-
mand*), scuta ex cortice (*bark*) fecerant. 3. Legio decima se ad
bellum gerendum (9.5.) paratissimam confirmavit. (15.6.) 4.
His rebus etiam ii, qui magnum in castris usum (20.3.) habebant,
milites perturbabantur. 5. Sub (11.6.) vesperum (*evening*) con-
cilio convocato (10.4.) cohortatus est ut ea, quae imperavisset,
diligenter (5.1.) administrarent. 6. Cum sese legiones conjunx-
issent (3.4.), audacius (10.3.) resistere (*resist*) ac fortius pugnare
coeperunt. 7. Ad extremam (8.3.) orationem confirmatis (19.6.)
militibus ne animo permoverentur (12.5.), legiones ex castris
eduxit (8.5.), aciemque idoneo (17.1) loco instruxit. 8. Nostri,
propter gravitatem (*weight*) armorum, neque insequi cedentes
(19.5.) poterant neque ab signis discedere (20.3.) audebant.
(19.5.)

22.—1. Continebat (11.2.) ad signa milites, ut consuetudo
(19.2.) exercitus Romani postulabat. 2. Ipse paulum (*a little*)
ex eo loco cum legione progressus (10.4.), eventum pugnae (*battle*)

exspectabat. 3. Equites cum se in castra reciperent (19.5.), hostibus occurrunt (21.4.), aliique aliam in partem feruntur (*rush*). 4. Propter longitudinem (*length*) agminis (17.5.), minus facile (1.4.) quid quoque loco faciendum esset providere poterat.

23.—1. Magno cursu ad castra contenderunt, exanimatique pervenerunt. 2. Helvii, cum finitimis (17.4.) proelio congressi, pelluntur (17.3.) et compluribus (17.2.) interfectis in oppida compelluntur. 3. Item equites Ariovisti pari (18.2.) intervallo constiterunt. 4. Ad dextrum cornu profectus, vidit (10.4.) signis in unum locum collatis (15.2.) duodecimae legionis confertos esse milites. 5. Ita (*so*) nostri acriter (10.2.) in hostes signo dato (21.3.) impetum fecerunt, ut rejectis (*throw away*) pilis gladiis pugnarent. 6. Celeriter (12.5.) nostri pila in hostes immittunt (*hurl*). Illi primo impetu in fugam conjecti proximas (3.2.) silvas petierunt. 7. Summa imperii traditur (*give*) Camulogeno, qui, prope (*nearly*) confectus aetate (16.5.), tamen (8.2.) singularem (*wonderful*) scientiam (20.3.) rei militaris (22.1.) habebat. 8. Multis vulneribus acceptis (13.1.), veriti (1.2.) ne ab latere aperto ab superioribus castris circumvenirentur, se ad suos receperunt. (19.5.) 9. Horum adventu tanta (21.5.) commutatio (*change*) est facta, ut etiam (21.5.) qui vulneribus confecti essent, proelium redintegrarent.

24.—1. Hostes undique (10.4.) circumventi (23.5.), desperatis omnibus rebus, fuga salutem (*safety*) petere coeperunt. 2. Caesari renuntiatur Aeduorum fuga reliquum esse equitatum perterritum. 3. Ut quaeque (22.1.) pars castrorum, nudata defensoribus (6.2.), premi videtur, eo auxilium ferunt. 4. Illa pars equitatus, quam supra (18.1.) demonstravimus (22.1.) praedandi causa Mosam transisse, post (14.1.) fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sugambrorum receperat, seque cum his conjunxerat. (3.4.) 5. Nostri impetu facto eos reppulerunt (10.3.) neque finem (6.4.) sequendi (*pursue*) fecerunt quoad (*until*) praecipites hostes egerunt (*drive*). 6. Legati qua (21.6.) ex parte nostros premi intellexerant (10.4.), his auxilio equites submittebant. (6.4.) 7. Equites Crasso renuntiaverunt non eadem esse diligentia (*care*) ab decumana porta hostium castra munita. 8. Cum omnia fere (23.4.) superiora (23.1.) loca multitudine hostium completa conspicerentur, paene desperata salute (*safety*), omnes perterriti sunt. 9. Tum vero (2.5.) ex omnibus oppidi partibus orto clamore, qui longius aberant repentino (*sudden*) tumultu (11.1.) perterriti sunt.

25.—1. Caesar septimam legionem, quae juxta (*near*) constiterat (21.6.), item (21.4.) urgeri ab hoste vidit. 2. Legionem, detractis cohortibus duabus, angustiora castra munire (20.3.)

jussit, quo facilius repentinos (*sudden*) hostium impetus sustinerent. 3. Nostri cum undique (10.4.) premerentur, sex centurionibus amissis, dejecti (*dislodge*) sunt. 4. Cum hostes acrius (10.2.) instarent, P. Sextius Baculus, primi pili centurio, quem Nervico proelio compluribus (17.2.) confectum vulneribus diximus, ad Galbam accurrit (*run up*). 5. Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento quod scuta pilis (23.1.) transfixa (*pierce*) erant. 6. In iis locis erat bellum gerendum (9.5.), unde (*from which*) Lucius Mallius, exercitu pulso (24.1.), impedimentis amissis, profugerat. (14.4.) 7. Si qua (14.6.) in parte nostri premi videbantur, eo signa inferri Caesar jubebat; quae res et hostes ad insequendum (23.1.) tardabat, et nostros spe auxilii confirmabat. (19.6.) 8. Ab tanta multitudine conjecta (6.3.) tela milites conferti vitare non poterant.

26.—1. Simul (24.3.) signa ad hostem converti jubet, et paucos (18.3.) equites praesidio ad impedimenta mittit. 2. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit quae apud (4.7.) eos gerantur, quantoque in periculo res sit. 3. Hostes, incitatis equis (*horse*), impeditos nostros adoriebantur (17.2.), alii ab latere aperto tela conjiciebant. (6.3.) 4. Boii, qui agmen hostium claudebant (19.3.) et novissimis praesidio erant, nostros a latere aperto aggressi (10.2.) circumvenire conati sunt. Id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus (23.2.) instare (25.1.) et proelium redintegrare (23.2.) coeperunt. Romani conversa signa intulerunt. Diu (10.5.) atque acriter pugnatum est. Nam (19.2.) hoc toto proelio, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. 5. Monuit legatos ut omnes res ab iis celeriter (12.5.) administrarentur (20.4.), ut (*as*) rei militaris ratio (22.1.) postularet.

27.—1. Cum omnem spem salutis in virtute ponerent (11.5.), ab ea parte magnus numerus hostium cecidit. 2. Eodem tempore L. Fabius centurio quique una (24.1.) summum jugum (24.2.) collis ascenderant, circumventi interfectique sunt. 3. Adventu Caesaris facta commutatione rerum, obsides Aeduis redditi sunt (*return*). 4. Erat inter Labienum et hostem difficili transitu (*passage*) flumen ripisque altissimis. 5. Nocte Caesar ex castris egressus (13.2.), priusquam (12.1.) hostes subsidio (26.4.) ex oppido venire possent, dejecto praesidio (5.6.), potitus (24.5.) loco, duas ibi legiones collocavit (19.3.), fossamque a majoribus castris ad minora (*smaller*) perduxit (*construct*).

28.—1. Is locus ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen capit (*receive*). 2. His imperat ut omnes, qui per aetatem (16.5.) arma ferre possint, ad bellum cogant. (2.4.) 3. Obsides inter se (1.1.) dant, Sequani ne itinere (16.1.) Helvetios prohiberent, Helvetii ut sine (15.2.) maleficio et injuria transeant.

4. Caesar respondit (*answer*) se finitimis imperaturum ne quam (14.6.) injuriam eis inferrent. (14.4.) 5. Postridie (12.1.) ejus diei Germani, eadem perfidia (*treachery*) usi, omnibus principibus majoribusque natu adhibitis (*bring along*) ad Caesarem in castra venerunt.

29.—1. Vercingetorix locum castris delegit, paludibus (16.5.) silvisque munitum, ab Avarico longe (5.4.) millia passuum duodecim. 2. Primo (8.1.) incendendum (7.3.) oppidum, postea (17.2.) deserendum existimaverant. 3. Germani, desperata (24.4.) expugnatione (*capture*) castrorum, cum ea praeda (*plunder*) quam in silvis deposuerant, trans Rhenum sese receperunt. 4. Ariovistus dixit se bellum non intulisse sed defendisse. 5. Quibus rebus cognitis, Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat maximum munitissimumque in finibus Biturigum, profectus est. 6. Eo consilio (9.4.) domos suas Helvetii reliquerant, ut toti Galliae bellum inferrent, imperioque (1.4.) potirentur (24.5.), locumque domicilio ex omni Gallia deligerent. 7. Aggerem (12.5.) praeacuta materia (*timber*) et magni ponderis saxis morabantur (11.3.), moenibusque (6.2.) appropinquare (10.5.) prohibebant. (4 2.) 8. Causa (1.2.) transeundi fuit quod ab Suebis complures (17.2.) annos exagitati, bello premebantur. (24.4.) 9. Cum bellum civitas aut (25.1.) illatum defendit aut infert, magistratus (3.5.) qui ei bello praesint (6.4.) deliguntur.

30.—1. Eo die parvulis equestribus (9.2.) proeliis factis, utrique (16.3.) sese suo loco continent; Galli, quod ampliores (*larger*) copias, quae nondum (11.2.) convenerant, exspectabant; Caesar, ut exploratis (*examine*) itineribus, minore (*less*) cum periculo (26.5.) flumen transiret. 2. Nostros exercitus propter frumenti (3.3.) inopiam (*lack*) diutius apud se morari (10.5.) non posse confidebant. 3. Quae res staturam viresque alit (*increase*), et immani (*huge*) corporum magnitudine homines efficit (*make*). 4. Cum suos pugna (16.5.) superiores (*superior*) esse Galli confiderent, et nostros multitudine premi (24.4.) viderent, omnibus ex partibus, et ii qui munitionibus (*fortification*) continebantur, et ii qui ad auxilium convenerant, clamore (11.5.) animos (21.5.) suorum confirmant. (19.6.)

31.—1. Aedui cum se suaque ab iis armis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt. 2. Praestat Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia (1.3.) perferre. 3. Milites in summum (*greatest*) periculum deduxerat. 4. Sequanis, quorum oppida omnia in potestate ejus sunt, omnes (14.3.) cruciatus sunt perferendi. 5. Priusquam (12.1.) id effici (*do*) posset, appropinquare Romanos nuntiatur. (29.1.) Itaque (22.2.) legatos deprecandi causa ad Caesarem mittunt. 6. Naves (*ship*) ad quamvis vim

(*violence*) perferendam factae sunt. 7. Naves (*ship*), quarum species erat Britannis, inusitatior, ad latus apertum constitui (8.5.) jussit.

32.—1. Legati venerunt qui ea quae imperavisset facturos pollicerentur. (4.5.) 2. Deditione facta, cum his armis quae retinuerant et celaverant, tertia vigilia (*watch*) omnibus copiis ex oppido eruptionem (*sally*) fecerunt. 3. Ipse hora (*hour*) diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus (*ship*) Britanniam attigit. 4. Hoc facto proelio Caesar neque sibi legatos audiendos (*listen to*) neque condiciones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab iis qui petita pace ultro (*without provocation*) bellum intulissent. 5. Spe salutis inducti (*influence*), quod in tanta multitudine dediticiorum suam fugam occultari (*conceal*) posse existimabant, prima nocte e castris egressi sunt. 6. Milites occupatos in opere adoriutur (17.2.) et nostrarum turrium altitudinem suis turribus adaequant. 7. Eruptionem (*sally*) facere conati, et repulsi in oppidum, tamen ut eadem deditionis condicione uterentur a Crasso impetraverunt. 8. Neque unquam (*ever*) alia condicione bella Romani gesserunt.

33.—1. Senatu (5.1.) suo interfecto, portas clauserunt, seque cum Viridovice conjunxerunt. 2. Consilia de bello inire incipiunt (2.2.), civitatesque reliquas legationibus (*embassy*) sollicitant. (1.3.) 3. Tum Caesar omnibus portis eruptione facta celeriter hostes in fugam conjicit (23.2.) magnumque ex iis numerum occidit. 4. Mercatoribus est aditus (15.4.) ad Suebos, ut quae bello ceperint (*take*), vendant. 5. Eodem tempore toto muro clamore sublato (*raise*), duabus portis ab utroque latere (8.3.) turrium eruptio fiebat. 6. Parte jam obsidum tradita, centurionibus et paucis militibus intromissis, equitatus hostium procul (30.3.) visus est. Quem ubi oppidani conspexerunt, atque in spem auxilii venerunt, arma capere (*take up*), portas claudere, murum complere (*man*) coeperunt. Centuriones in oppido cum ex significatione Gallorum novi aliquid (*something, freely some*) ab iis iniri consilii intellexissent, gladiis destrictis (*draw*) portas occupaverunt. (1.4.)

34. 35.—1. Hoc flumen multarum gentium (28.1.) fines propter magnitudinem attingit. 2. Belgae proximi sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter (*continually*) bellum gerunt. 3. Aeduos in servitute (14.3.) atque in dicione videbat Germanorum teneri. (24.4.) 4. Interim consilio ejus cognito et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus (17.2.) civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur se obsides daturos. 5. Cujus fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit (*separate*), quod appellatur (4.10.) Tamesis, a mari (*sea*) circiter millia passuum octoginta. 6. Persuadent Boiis qui trans Rhe-

num incoluerant, et in agrum Noricum transierant, ut una cum iis proficiscantur. 7. His rebus gestis, ex litteris Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a senatu decreta est. 8. Dispositis (*station*) praesidiis ne effecto ponte Romani copias traducerent, erat in magnis Caesari difficultatibus res, ne majorem aestatis partem flumine impediretur.

Part III.—Exercises in Re-translation into Latin.

1.—(§1.) 1. The report is brought to the winter quarters. 2. Labienus informs Caesar. 3. This is a third part of Gaul. 4. They have exchanged hostages. 5. It has been shown above that Caesar was being informed. 6. Caesar is afraid lest they be annoyed. 7. He is unwilling that the army should be led against these Belgians. 8. They were afraid that we would be unwilling. 9. They are annoyed that Gaul is being subdued. (§§ 1.-4.) 10. The most powerful Belgians can more easily instigate the Germans. 11. After hostages had been given, some were unwilling to seize the royal power. 12. We have stated that the more powerful have means for seizing the royal power. 13. Having taken men into their pay, they very easily attain that object.

2.—(§§ 1. 2.) 1. Alarmed by this news, the legions came to Gaul. 2. After leading the army into Gaul, he came to Caesar. 3. He sends Pedius himself to enlist a legion. 4. Two legions were enrolled. (§§ 1.-4.) 5. He instructs the lieutenants to gather the rest of the Belgians. 6. They announced that they had found out all that was being done in the army. 7. After all the bands have been collected, the army will be led to this place. (§§ 1.-6.) 8. Within about two days there will be plenty of provisions. 9. Alarmed by the things which had been ascertained, the Belgians moved their camp. 10. There must be no delay. 11. After finding out these things they will inform the Belgians. 12. He sent the lieutenants themselves to gather the legions to the camp. 13. The Belgians are neighbors of central Gaul. 14. After enlisting two legions Caesar will set out. 15. It was announced that they had reached the camp.

3.—(§§ 1. 2.) 1. Ambassadors of all the states have come. 2. After sending ambassadors, they combine with the nearest states. 3. They said they would combine. 4. Ambassadors were sent to hand over the sta[illegible] to [illegible] protection. 5. After combining with him, they sent ambassadors to Gaul. (§§ 1.-5.)

6. They have neither done his bidding nor supplied him with corn. 7. All of them enjoy these laws. 8. Having formed a conspiracy against the rest of the states, and given hostages, they received him into their town. 9. They say that they have not joined their brothers and kinsmen. 10. They who dwell on this side of the Rhine do not possess even the same magistrates. 11. Even the ambassadors said that those who were nearest to the Suessiones were not in arms.

4.—(§§ 1.–3.) 1. He asked who were driving out the Germans. 2. The result is that they are entering the territories of the Belgians. 3. Most of the states are in arms. 4. We found out that he had led the Germans across the Rhine. 5. After being driven out by the Belgae, they settle in this country. 6. They prevent the Germans from settling there. 7. They drove out the Gauls who inhabited that country. (§§ 1.–6.) 8. We know what strength they have. 9. After devastating the lands of the Remi, they had entered the country of the Suessiones. 10. He asks what is the number of those who inhabit the district. 11. He said that they had demanded the control of the whole war because they possessed the most extensive territory. 12. He had learned to whom the Suessiones were neighbors. 13. They assume an air of importance because they can put in the field a large number of men. (§§ 1.–10.) 14. On account of their great number they have greater influence. 15. He asked on whom the control of the war had been conferred. 16. Those are fiercer who are farther distant. 17. The lands are regarded as not only the most extensive in all Gaul but the most fertile.

5.—1. Caesar ordered the camp to be pitched on the other bank of the river. 2. After fortifying the camp, he led the rest of the forces across the river which was in his rear. 3. It is of importance to Caesar to encourage the leading men. 4. Everything had to be done punctually. 5. If he leaves six cohorts in the camp, he will not be able to engage with the enemy without danger. 6. The forces began to assemble. 7. He gathered in the camp all the leading men. 8. He has made one side of the camp safe. 9. This cannot be done if they engage all the bands of the Remi at once. 10. That supplies may not be brought up to them, he orders the rest of the army to be led across the river. 11. All the forces of the enemy are coming against him and are now no great distance from the river. 12. The forces of the Belgians must be kept apart, that they may not be able to gather in one place.

6.—1. They began to make a *testudo*. 2. The town had begun to be besieged. 3. We cannot come close up to the fortifications.

4. Unless stones and weapons are hurled the wall will not be cleared of men. 5. The camp was a mile distant from Bibrax. 6. They are attacking the town of which Iccius is governor. 7. Since aid had not been sent him, he was unable to hold out. 8. The whole of the fortifications were with the greatest difficulty cleared of defenders. 9. After hurling stones and weapons, they began to undermine the walls. 10. They send word that no one has any chance of coming. 11. Whenever night puts an end to their hurling weapons, they throw a large number of men about the town.

7.—1. He sent the same guides that the Remi had used as messengers. 2. On his arrival all the buildings will be set on fire. 3. The camp had been pitched at the distance of a mile. 4. For these reasons the Numidians and Cretans are departing. 5. We cannot approach all the villages. 6. The camp extends for two miles. 7. The messenger that Iccius had sent, waited before the camp till (*ad*) midnight. 8. With the desire of coming to the aid of Iccius, there came to Caesar also the hope of gaining possession of the camp.

8.—1. On account of the nature of the ground, he refrains from a cavalry battle. 2. After leading out his troops he drew up the line of battle on the hill. 3. He led the enemy into the plain that we might perceive that they could not be surrounded. 4. At first the legion was inferior in numbers. 5. He made a trench from the hill to the camp. 6. After enrolling the legion, he stationed all the forces in that place. 7. This he did that we might not perceive that two legions had been left on either side of the camp. 8. Our men are surrounded. 9. Perceiving that the place was suitable, he pitched his camp at the end of the plain. 10. He leads to the rescue the two legions which had been left on that side of the fort.

9.—1. When the enemy crossed the marsh, the cavalry were led back to the camp of which Titurius was in charge. 2. After breaking down the bridges they attacked the cavalry. 3. The bridge was of great service to Caesar in crossing the marsh. 4. The enemy were waiting to see whether Caesar would attempt to wage war. 5. As the cavalry battles turned out more successfully for the Remi, they attempted to find a ford. 6. If they can cross the river they will lay waste our lands, if they cannot, they will break down the bridges. 7. Crossing the river, they attempted to attack the Remi. 8. After taking the camp by storm, they cross the two rivers. 9. On attempting to break down the bridge so as to cut off our men from supplies, they were unable to do so.

10.—1. Having slain a large number of the cavalry, and routed the army, they returned each to his home. 2. The rest of the Numidians, while boldly crossing the river, were driven back by the light-armed enemy. 3. It is best to use the provisions. 4. He was persuaded to advance into their territory. 5. He informed Caesar that the enemy had assembled from every quarter to repel the army which was attempting to take the town. 6. The cavalry fought most fiercely. 7. Perceiving that supplies were lacking, and being surrounded on every side, they attempted to induce our men to advance to unfavorable ground. 8. They will be disappointed in the matter of surrounding the cavalry. 9. They are unable to bring aid to those whose territories Caesar is approaching. 10. After waiting for a long time, they returned home.

11.—1. At sunset they leave camp. 2. They seem to be throwing into confusion the legion over which he had placed Cotta. 3. Having thus slain a large number of the scouts, they attacked our column. 4. Three legions were sent in advance to attack Labienus. 5. He ordered the cavalry to leave the camp. 6. From sunset to daybreak they held out with the utmost bravery against the attacks of the three legions. 7. For this reason they had determined to depart at once. 8. He sends Labienus in advance to follow up the retreating Belgians. 9. They leave the place with greater tumult because they are restrained by no authority. 10. We have not yet learned why the enemy are betaking themselves to the camp.

12.—1. They saw that a mound was being thrown up and towers built. 2. The ambassadors asked to be defended. 3. Leading his army into their country, he fortifies a camp. 4. Before they could assemble in the town, he began to attack it. 5. On account of the number and swiftness of the enemy, they were unable to rally from their flight. 6. On Caesar's asking that ambassadors be sent, they began to assemble from all the towns. 7. The Gauls began to be alarmed, because the camp was empty of defenders. 8. Hearing that but few were defending the town he attempts to take it by storm. 9. We shall neither send ambassadors nor ask to be spared. 10. On the next day they began to gather to defend their territories.

13.—1. Having received all the elders as hostages, he approached the wall. 2. While they were approaching the camp the hostages were holding out their hands. 3. The two women according to the custom of the Bellovaci betook themselves to the king. 4. When they had come into Caesar's power, they surrendered all their arms. 5. When they sought peace from

Caesar he accepted their surrender. 6. While they were betaking themselves to the town, Caesar was about a mile distant. 7. The children themselves will take up arms against the king.

14.—1. The leading men, instigated by Divitiacus, who said that the Aedui were revolting, make war on Caesar. 2. If any war arises, they flee to this state. 3. If he flees to Britain, the Aedui will be reduced to slavery. 4. Caesar asked that Divitiacus should return to him. 5. He says that he will make war on the Belgians. 6. Understanding how great a war they are bringing on Britain, they return to their own state. 7. They are accustomed to dismiss all their troops after a disaster. 8. He was wont to show mercy to those whom he had reduced to subjection. 9. Caesar's influence among them will be increased, if he displays clemency to the ring-leaders in making war.

15.—1. They declare that they will not surrender their arms. 2. On reaching that state he found that the Belgians had sent ambassadors to the Roman people. 3. They do not allow wine to be imported, because they think it tends to relax their courage. 4. Those whose territories adjoin the Belgians excel in valor. 5. He was a man of great influence and of great valor. 6. Having surrendered themselves and all their possessions they were taken under Caesar's protection. 7. He declares that the traders would reach these territories without any delay. 8. He attacked the Aedui for asking why (*qua de causa*) he had suffered that state to be received into alliance with the Roman people.

16.—1. He persuaded the women to await the army's approach. 2. When he was distant a three days' march, they encamped in the marshes. 3. Both captives seem useless for war. 4. He found that the forces which were on the march could not approach the marshes. 5. He found that they had marched through the territories of the Nervii and were encamping across the same river. 6. The camp is not more than a mile distant from that river.

17.—1. Coming to the army, he reported that the Nervii were plundering the baggage. 2. If the march is hindered by these hedges, the army will easily be routed by our cavalry. 3. All the baggage was between the cavalry, which Caesar had sent in advance, and the first legion. 4. It was afterwards learned that a certain centurion had brought the report. 5. The more easily to attack the rest of the cavalry, they bent down many trees. 6. The cavalry had come for the purpose of choosing a suitable spot for a camp. 7. Those who were following Caesar thought that the Nervii had routed our army. 8. The legions, which

marched bearing their packs, were a great distance from the spot which had been chosen for a camp. 9. He sends the first legion in advance to attack the infantry forces of the enemy. 10. If we give up this plan, they will easily make a stand. 11. The infantry forces after making an attack on the legion had not ventured to plunder the camp. 12. There is no difficulty in following Caesar's column.

18.—1. The upper part of the hill was clear. 2. The hill rises from wooded ground. 3. The cavalry could not be seen on the sloping ground. 4. This river was of equal depth. 5. Having chosen a place for the camp, the cavalry kept themselves in concealment on the wooded hill.

19.—1. They make an attack on our men while busied at their work. 2. Having engaged in battle with the cavalry, they suddenly began to yield. 3. They ventured to cross the river and measure out the work. 4. The legion which was guarding the camp was easily routed. 5. This is the time for making the attack. 6. They are following the enemy's cavalry too far. 7. The cavalry were the first to retreat to the camp. 8. Caesar followed after the cavalry with two legions in light marching order. 9. When they had run down from the open ground, the battle was begun. 10. Fortifying a camp, he sent the cavalry in advance up stream. 11. When the whole of the line was in sight, they did not venture to make an attack. 12. As the baggage had been placed behind the two legions which Caesar had recently enrolled, the enemy easily routed our army.

20.—1. The soldiers had to seek materials in order to fortify the camp. 2. After drawing up the line of battle and encouraging the soldiers he gave the signal. 3. On the signal being given they ran to arms. 4. Caesar informs the several lieutenants what they must do. 5. Those who have left the camp are advancing too far. 6. In the former battle he had displayed the flag. 7. The legions, on account of their experience of former times, had not waited for Caesar. 8. The lieutenants forbid the soldiers to advance for the purpose of summoning the legions. 9. These difficulties cannot hinder Caesar. 10. The nearness of the camp was a help to the soldiers. 11. He decided for himself what he must carry out.

21.—1. He exhorts the soldiers to fight more bravely. 2. There is not sufficient time to seek their comrades. 3. He was unable to take the covering from his helmet. 4. He urges the legion to remember the orders he had given and not to lose time in putting on their badges. 5. They met Caesar running

down to the soldiers. 6. So short is the time that they cannot hurl their weapons. 7. Remember your ancient valor and bravely resist the enemy. 8. He runs down to give these orders. 9. The soldiers having been thrown into confusion by the enemy's assault, Caesar urges them to join battle bravely. 10. Not only time but spirit was lacking.

22.—1. He was unable to draw up the army on account of (*propter*) the nature of the ground. 2. As the hedges obstructed the view, reserves could not be posted. 3. He places the reserves on different hills.

23.—1. As a large part of the enemy was spent with wounds, our men did not hesitate to advance. 2. Having put the Atrebates to flight, they cross the river. 3. Under his leadership they do not hesitate to engage a legion in close order. 4. Driving the soldiers out of the camp, they engage the two legions which had crossed the river. 5. They surround and slay the right wing. 6. They began to fight in the very river. 7. Those who had taken up their position on the higher ground, when the enemy resist renew the battle. 8. On the left wing the camp was almost entirely exposed. 9. As the enemy were advancing to more unfavorable ground, our men hastened to the right wing. 10. They attempt to pursue the legion, while it is making for the higher ground, and to slay the soldiers while crossing the rivers.

24.—1. They repel the enemy and return home. 2. Having fallen in with the enemy, they were surrounded and conquered. 3. The Numidians whom Caesar had sent, cross the river for the purpose of surrounding the legion. 4. Alarmed by the shouts and uproar the camp follower betook himself to headlong flight. 5. He reports that the cavalry have fled and that the enemy are crossing the river. 6. He said that the light-armed Treveri had a wonderful reputation for valor. 7. Despairing of flight, he betakes himself to the camp of which the enemy had got possession. 8. As the legions were being hard pressed, they sought aid from Caesar. 9. The Treveri who had defeated our men, met another legion which was crossing the river. 10. Raising a shout they flee in different directions.

25.—1. Having advanced to the first rank and taken a sword from a centurion, he inspired the legion with hope. 2. The standard was lost in sight of the soldiers. 3. On the right wing all the centurions were deserting the field. 4. And there are no cohorts which can be sent to their aid. 5. When they had advanced, they easily checked the assault of the enemy. 6.

Many brave centurions have been lost. 7. He saw that the enemy were coming up in sight of the rest of the legion. 8. After ordering the standards to be gathered in one place, he encouraged each of the standard-bearers. 9. They cannot use either shields or swords. 10. They were anxious to set out that they might more easily collect the standards.

26.—1. He advises the soldiers to resist boldly. 2. They were afraid that the enemy would get possession of the baggage. 3. The legions which had been sent to protect the rear guard, wheel around against the cavalry. 4. He advised the commander to take up his position at the top of the hill. 5. Learning that the cavalry had joined the enemy, he ordered (*jubeo*) to advance. 6. Perceiving the position of the rear guard, and fearing that the tenth legion would be sent to the top of the hill, he announced that the camp was surrounded. 7. The legions are a protection one to another. 8. He sent the cavalry to find out what the enemy were doing. 9. He sends all the cavalry to reinforce the two legions.

27. 1. In order to display their valor, they crossed over to more unfavorable ground. 2. It is very easy to hurl weapons at those who are lying exhausted with wounds. 3. The wound was so great that he leaned upon his shield. 4. They were men of such valor that they ventured to dislodge the soldiers of the legion. 5. So (*ita*) terrified were those who survived that they cannot wipe out the disgrace. 6. Although they had crossed the river, they did not venture to approach the mound. 7. Renewing the battle, the foremost fall. 8. Seeing that even though unarmed he crossed the river, they deemed him to be a man of great valor. 9. The disgrace of flight ought to be wiped out.

28.—1. He orders the Senators to surrender. 2. By consent of the whole (*totus*) state, the elders were sent as ambassadors. 3. That he might scrupulously spare the elders, he ordered the senators to show them mercy. 4. He ordered all who survived to be surrendered to him. 5. In announcing these things he stated that all who had been placed in the marshes, were incapable of bearing arms. 6. They thought that there was no safety for those who had been preserved by Caesar and sent to their own territories.

29.—1. Having left six thousand men to guard the fort, they return to Italy to aid the Cimbri. 2. After choosing a home, they made peace with all their neighbors. 3. Being unable to carry all their baggage with them, they left a guard of six thousand Nervii. 4. The town, which was protected on all

sides by high rocks, they had deserted. 5. For two hundred years they had waged war—now defensive, now offensive. 6. One thousand two hundred Nervii were left in the town. 7. Abandoning the province, they marched to the Rhine. 8. While they were returning home, it was announced that the Nervii had betaken themselves and all their belongings to a stronghold. 9. After choosing this place, they place huge stones on the gently sloping approach. 10. This town was defended by a six-foot wall.

30. 1. They mock our men for raising a mound at a distance. 2. Making a sally they engage in battle with our army. 3. They cannot build a tower of such great size with such small hands. 4. They saw that the mound had been raised and that the tower was being moved. 5. The Gauls are men of such stature that the small size of our men was despised by them. 6. When they saw that the *vineae* were being brought up, they kept themselves within the tower.

31.—1. They asked that they might not be tortured to death. 2. We will rather (*potius*) do anything than surrender our arms. 3. He said that he was accustomed to spare those who sent ambassadors to treat for peace. 4. If you determine to deprive them of their arms they will not be able to kill their neighbors. 5. He determined that all who had waged war were to be put to death. 6. It is better to surrender our arms than to be reduced to that extremity. 7. They said that if they were deprived of their arms, their neighbors would put them to death. 8. Ambassadors were sent to ask that if the Aduatuci were spared, Caesar should protect them from their enemies.

32.—1. I will spare them if they surrender. 2. They will surrender before the battering ram touches the wall. 3. He answers that he will do whatever the Romans have commanded. 4. Retaining their arms, they throw open the gates. 5. He ordered the state not to conceal anything. 6. If they do not wrong the neighboring state, we shall make peace with them. 7. When the Nervii had been spared, they threw a third of their arms into the trenches. 8. He orders the Nervii to report these matters to their neighbors. 9. On the third day the battering ram will touch the wall, unless they surrender.

33.—1. Three thousand townspeople ought to have been put to death. 2. Making a sally by night, they fought most fiercely. 3. He ordered the gates to be broken in, that no sally might be made. 4. As Caesar was withdrawing the garrison, they formed this plan. 5. They ran together from the nearest

tower. 6. Lest the soldiers should leave the town, they closed the gates. 7. All hope depends on the valor of these brave men. 8. Our men drive the townspeople back to the fort and slay four thousand. 9. They defend themselves carelessly. 10. They hurl weapons from their fortifications. 11. He orders the soldiers to be sent in. Hurling their weapons, they ran to the nearest gate. 12. Since the ascent seems steep, he believes that he must form this plan. 13. One thousand and fifty-three soldiers leave the fortifications. 14. It was perceived that as the garrison had been withdrawn, no one was any longer defending the place.

34, 35.—1. In the same manner the embassy returned. 2. Caesar informs the hostages that the legions have set out for the place where the Veneti were waging war. 3. Sending a legion into the nearest state, he sets out himself against the nations which dwell across the Rhine. 4. He orders Crassus to lead the legion into the states bordering on the sea. 5. An embassy was sent by the barbarians to promise to set out on the next day. 6. After they had given hostages, they were ordered to set out before the next summer. 7. So great was Caesar's reputation, that all states on the sea were brought under his power. 8. So great was the war that Caesar returned from Italy.

APPENDIX IV.

CONTINUOUS EXERCISES BASED ON BOOKS II., III. AND IV.

PART I.—EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION FROM LATIN AT SIGHT.

[TAKEN FROM CAESAR'S HISTORY OF THE CIVIL WAR BETWEEN CAESAR AND POMPEY.]

(Based on the Vocabulary of Book II.)

1.—Dum haec parat atque administrat, C. Fabium legatum cum legionibus tribus, quas circum ea loca hiemandi causa disposuerat, in Hispaniam praemittit, celeriterque saltus Pyrenaeos occupari jubet, qui eo tempore ab hostibus tenebantur. Reliquas legiones, quae longius hiemabant, subsequi jubet. Fabius, ut erat imperatum, adhibita celeritate praesidium ex saltu dejecit, magnisque itineribus ad exercitum Afranii contendit.

adhibeo....*use, display.*	Hispania ...*Spain.*
circum ....*around.*	Pyrenaeus...*of the Pyrenees.*
dispono....*post, dispose.*	saltus ......*pass.*

2.—Interim Caesari nuntiatur Sulmonenses, quod oppidum a Corfinio septem millium intervallo abest, cupere ea facere quae vellet, sed a Lucretio et Attio prohiberi, qui id oppidum octo cohortium praesidio tenebant. Mittit eo M. Antonium cum legionis decimae cohortibus quinque. Sulmonenses, simul atque signa nostra viderunt, portas aperuerunt universique, et oppidani et milites, obviam Antonio exierunt. Lucretius et Attius de muro se dejecerunt. Altius ad Antonium deductus petit ut ad Caesarem mittatur. Antonius cum cohortibus et Attio eodem die, quo profectus erat, revertitur. Caesar eas cohortes cum exercitu suo conjunxit Attiumque incolumem dimisit.

aperio .... *open.*	obviam (with dat.)..*to meet.*
dejicio (with *se*)...*leap down.*	simul atque.......*as soon as.*
incolumis........*unharmed.*	Sulmonenses. *the people of Sulmo.*

3.—Scipio biduum in castris moratus ad flumen, quod inter eum et Domitii castra fluebat, tertio die prima luce exercitum vado traducit et castris positis postero die copias ante frontem castrorum instruit. Domitius tum quoque sibi dubitandum non putavit quin productis legionibus proelio decertaret. Sed cum esset inter bina castra campus circiter millium passuum sex, Domitius castris Scipionis aciem suam subjecit; ille a vallo non discedere perseveravit. Qui cum nostrorum studium pugnandi cognovisset, ne postero die invitus dimicare cogeretur, noctu flumen Scipio transiit, atque in eandem partem, ex qua venerat, rediit, ibique prope flumen edito natura loco castra posuit.

biduum . . *two days.*	persevero . . . . *persist.*
bini . . . . . *two.*	produco . . . . . *lead forth.*
campus . . *plain.*	prope. . . . . *near.*
fluo . . . . . *flow.*	redeo . . . . *return.*
invitus . . *against his will.*	subjicio . . . . . . *lead up to.*

(Based on the Vocabulary of Book II. and Book III. c. 1–6.)

4.—Cujus adventu nuntiato L. Plancus, qui legionibus praeerat, necessaria re coactus locum capit superiorem, diversamque aciem in duas partes constituit, ne ab equitatu circumveniri posset. Ita congressus impari numero magnos impetus legionum equitatusque sustinet. Commisso ab equitibus proelio signa legionum duarum procul ab utrisque conspiciuntur, quas C. Fabius subsidio nostris miserat, suspicatus fore id, quod accidit, ut hostes occasione ad nostros opprimendos uterentur. Quarum adventu proelium dirimitur ac suas uterque legiones reducit in castra.

cogo . . . . . *compel.*	necessaria res . . *necessity.*
dirimo . . . . *interrupt.*	occasio . . . . *opportunity.*
impar . . . . *unequal.*	suspicor . . . . *suspect.*

5.—Erat vallis inter duas acies, ut supra demonstratum est, non ita magna, at difficili et arduo ascensu. Hanc uterque, si hostium copiae transire conarentur, exspectabat, quo aequiore loco proelium committeret. Simul ab sinistro cornu P. Attii equitatus omnis et una levis armaturae complures cernebantur. Ad eos Curio equitatum et duas cohortes mittit. Quorum primum impetum equites hostium non tulerunt, sed admissis equis ad suos refugerunt; relicti ab his, qui una procurrerant levis armaturae, circumveniebantur atque interficiebantur ab nostris. Huc tota hostium conversa acies suos fugere et concidi videbat.

admitto . . *give the rein to.*
aequus . . . *favorable.*
cerno . . . . *see.*
converto . . in pass., *face.*
fero . . . . . . *endure.*
huc . . . . . . *in this direction.*
procurro . . *run forward.*
refugio . . . *flee back.*

6.—Quibus rebus perterritis animis hostium Caesar, ne semper magno circuitu per pontem equitatus esset mittendus, nactus idoneum locum fossas pedum triginta in latitudinem complures facere instituit, quibus partem aliquam fluminis averteret vadumque efficeret. His paene effectis magnum in timorem hostes perveniunt, ne omnino frumento pabuloque intercluderentur, quod plurimum Caesar equitatu valebat. Itaque constituunt ipsi locis iis excedere et in Celtiberiam bellum transferre. Hoc inito consilio toto flumine Hibero naves conquiri et Octogesam adduci jubent. Ad eum locum fluminis navibus junctis pontem imperant fieri, legionesque duas flumen traducunt.

averto . . . . . *divert.*
circuitus . . . *detour.*
conquiro . . . *search for, collect.*
intercludo . *cut off.*
jungo . . . . . . *join.*
semper . . . . . *always.*
timor . . . . . . *fear.*
transfero . . . *transfer.*

(Based on the Vocabulary of Book II. and Book III., c. 1–16.)

7.—Eo biduo Caesar cum equitibus nongentis, quos sibi praesidio reliquerat, in castra pervenit. Pons, qui fuerat tempestate interruptus, paene erat refectus: hunc noctu perfici jussit. Ipse cognita locorum natura ponti castrisque praesidio sex cohortes relinquit atque omnia impedimenta, et postero die omnibus copiis, instructa acie, ad Ilerdam proficiscitur, et sub castris Afranii consistit, et ibi paulisper sub armis moratus, facit aequo loco pugnandi potestatem. Potestate facta Afranius copias educit et in medio colle sub castris constituit.

aequus . . . . . *fair.*
biduum . . . . . *two days.*
interrumpo . . *break down.*
potestas . . . . . *opportunity.*
reficio . . . . . . *repair.*
sub . . . . *below, under.*

8.—Dum haec in Hispania geruntur, C. Trebonius legatus, qui ad oppugnationem Massiliae relictus erat, duabus ex partibus aggerem vineas turresque ad oppidum agere instituit. Massilia enim fere tribus ex oppidi partibus mari alluitur; reliqua quarta est, quae aditum habeat ab terra. Hujus quoque spatii pars ea, quae ad arcem pertinet, loci natura et valle altissima munita, longam et difficilem habet oppugnationem. Ad ea perficienda opera C. Trebonius magnam jumentorum atque hominum multitudinem ex omni provincia vocat; materiamque comportari jubet. Quibus comparatis rebus aggerem in altitudinem pedum

octoginta exstruit. Sed tanti erant antiquitus in oppido omnium rerum ad bellum apparatus, tantaque multitudo tormentorum, ut eorum vim multae vineae sustinere non possent.

alluo........*wash.*	Hispania....*Spain.*
altus........*deep.*	jumentum...*beast of burden.*
apparatus....*equipment.*	materia......*timber.*
arx..........*citadel.*	voco....... *summon, call for.*

9.—Repperit consules Dyrrhachium profectos cum magna parte exercitus, Pompeium remanere cum cohortibus viginti; neque certum inveniri poterat, obtinendine Brundisii causa ibi remansisset, quo facilius omne Hadriaticum mare in potestate haberet, an inopia navium ibi restitisset; veritusque ne ille Italiam dimittendam non existimaret, exitus portus impedire instituit. Quorum operum haec erat ratio. Qua fauces erant angustissimae portus, moles atque aggerem ab utraque parte litoris jaciebat, quod his locis erat vadosum mare.

angustus....*narrow.*	litus........*shore.*
dimitto.....*give up.*	obtineo......*hold.*
exitus......*outlet, entrance.*	remaneo....*remain.*
fauces......*mouth.*	resisto......*stay behind.*
jacio. ......*throw in.*	vadosus.... *shallow.*

10.—Sic omnibus rebus instructa classe Massilienses ad nostras naves procedunt, quibus praeerat D. Brutus. Erat multo inferior numero navium Brutus; sed electos ex omnibus legionibus fortissimos viros Caesar ei classi attribuerat. Ita cognito hostium adventu suas naves ex portu educunt, cum Massiliensibus confligunt. Pugnatum est utrimque fortissime atque acerrime. Massilienses, et celeritate navium et scientia gubernatorum confisi, nostros eludebant impetusque eorum non excipiebant, et producta longius acie circumvenire nostros aut pluribus navibus adoriri singulas contendebant. Nostri singulas binis navibus objiciebant atque in hostium naves transcendebant et magno numero interfecto partem navium deprimunt, nonnullas cum hominibus capiunt, reliquas in portum compellunt.

deprimo......*sink.*	objicio.......*oppose.*
eludo........*elude.*	produco......*extend.*
instruo.......*equip, fit out.*	utrimque.....*on both sides.*

(Based on the Vocabulary of Books II. and III.)

11.—Pompeius erat eo tempore in Candavia, iterque ex Macedonia in hiberna Apolloniam faciebat. Sed re nova perturbatus majoribus itineribus Apolloniam petere coepit, ne Caesar orae

maritimae civitates occuparet. At ille expositis militibus eodem die Oricum proficiscitur. Quo cum venisset, L. Torquatus, qui oppido praeerat praesidiumque ibi Graecorum habebat, conatus portis clausis oppidum defendere, cum Graecos murum ascendere atque arma capere juberet, illi autem se contra imperium populi Romani pugnaturos negarent, oppidani autem etiam sua sponte Caesarem recipere conarentur, desperatis omnibus auxiliis portas aperuit, et se atque oppidum Caesari dedidit, incolumisque ab eo conservatus est.

aperio . . . . . . *open.*	major (with *iter*) . *forced.*
expono . . . . . . *land.*	nego . . . . *say . . not, refuse.*
Graecus . . . . . *Greek.*	sua sponte . . . . *of their own accord.*

12.—Haec dum inter eos aguntur, Domitius navibus Massiliam pervenit, atque ab iis receptus urbi praeficitur: summa ei belli administrandi permittitur. Ejus imperio classem quoquoversum dimittunt; onerarias naves, quas ubique possunt, deprehendunt atque in portum deducunt; eis quae armamentis parum erant instructae ad reliquas armandas utuntur. Quibus rebus permotus Caesar legiones tres Massiliam adducit; turres vineasque ad oppugnationem urbis agere, naves numero duodecim facere instituit. Quibus effectis armatisque diebus triginta, a qua die materia caesa est, adductisque Massiliam, iis D. Brutum praeficit; C. Trebonium legatum ad oppugnationem Massiliae relinquit.

ago . . . . *discuss.*	instruo . . . . *fit.*
deprehendo . . . . *seize.*	onerarius . . . . . *of burden.*

13.—Libo profectus ab Orico cum classe, cui praeerat, navium quinquaginta Brundisium venit, insulamque, quae contra portum est, occupavit, quod praestare arbitrabatur unum locum, quam omnia litora ac portus custodia clausos tenere. Hic repentino adventu naves onerarias quasdam nactus incendit, magnumque nostris terrorem injecit, et noctu militibus ac sagittariis in terra expositis praesidium equitum dejecit, et adeo loci opportunitate profecit, uti ad Pompeium litteras mitteret, naves reliquas, si vellet, refici juberet; sua classe auxilia sese Caesaris prohibiturum.

adeo . . . . *to such an extent, so.*	litus . . . . . . *shore.*
expono . . *disembark.*	nanciscor . . *find, get.*
hic . . . . . *here.*	onerarius . . *of burden.*
injicio . . *inspire.*	proficio . . . *gain an advantage.*
insula . . . *island.*	reficio . . . . *repair.*

14.—Pompeius neque a mari Dyrrhachioque discedere volebat, quod omnia tela, arma tormenta ibi collocaverat, frumentumque

exercitui navibus supportabat, neque munitiones Caesaris prohibere poterat, nisi proelio decertare vellet ; quod eo tempore faciendum non esse statuerat. Relinquebatur ut quam plurimos colles occuparet et quam latissimas regiones praesidiis teneret, Caesarisque copias, quam maxime posset, distineret. In occupandis praesidiis magna vi uterque nitebatur ; Caesar ut quam angustissime Pompeium contineret ; Pompeius, ut quam plurimos colles occuparet ; crebaque ob eam causam proelia fiebant.

anguste........*closely*. nitor...........*strive*.

15.—De his rebus cum ageretur apud Caesarem, subito exercitus Achillae equitatusque omnis venire Alexandriam nuntiatur. Caesaris copiae nequaquam erant tantae, ut iis, extra oppidum si esset dimicandum, confideret. Relinquebatur, ut se suis locis oppido teneret, consiliumque Achillae cognosceret. Milites tamen omnes in armis esse jussit, regemque hortatus est ut legatos ad Achillam mitteret et, quid vellet, ostenderet. A quo missi Dioscorides et Serapion, qui magnam auctoritatem habebant, ad Achillam pervenerunt. Quos ille, cum in conspectum ejus venissent, priusquam audiret aut, cujus rei causa missi essent, cognosceret, interfici jussit.

ago ....*discuss*. nequaquam....*by no means*.
extra ....*without*.

(Based on the Vocabulary of Books II. and III., and Book IV. c. 1–19.)

16.—At Pompeius cognitis his rebus, quae erant in his locis gestae, Dyrrhachio timens, magnis eo itineribus contendit. Simul Caesar appropinquare dicebatur, tantusque terror incidit ejus exercitui, quod properans noctem diei conjunxerat, neque iter intermiserat, ut paene omnes ex Epiro finitimisque regionibus signa relinquerent, complures arma projicerent ac fugae simile iter videretur. Sed cum prope Dyrrhachium Pompeius constitisset castraque muniri jussisset, perterrito etiam tum exercitu princeps Labienus procedit juratque se eum non deserturum eundemque casum subiturum, quemcumque ei fortuna tribuisset. Hoc idem reliqui jurant legati ; hos tribuni militum centurionesque sequuntur, atque idem omnis exercitus jurat.

incido.......*fall upon*. principes ....*foremost, first*.
intermitto....*interrupt*. projicio......*throw away*.
juro ....*swear, take an oath*. subeo ....*endure*.
magnus .....*forced*. tribuo.. ....*allot*.

17.—Recepto Caesar Orico nulla interposita mora Apolloniam proficiscitur. Ejus adventu audito L. Staberius, qui ibi prae-



erat, aquam comportare in arcem atque eam munire obsidesque ab Apolloniatibus exigere coepit. Illi vero daturos se negare neque portas consuli praeclusuros, neque sibi judicium sumpturos contra atque omnis Italia populusque Romanus judicavisset. Quorum cognita voluntate clam profugit Apollonia Staberius. Illi ad Caesarem legatos mittunt oppidoque recipiunt. Hos sequuntur finitimae civitates totaque Epirus, et legatis ad Caesarem missis quae imperaret, facturos pollicentur.

exigo .....*require.*	praecludo...*close, bar against.*
judicium ..*opinion.*	sumo ......*presume to have.*
nego ......*say..not, refuse.*	

18.—Antonius virtute militum confisus scaphas navium magnarum circiter sexaginta cratibus contexit, eoque milites delectos imposuit, atque eas in litore pluribus locis disposuit, navesque duas quas faciendas curaverat, per causam exercendorum remigum ad fauces portus procedere jussit. Has cum audacius progressas Libo vidisset, sperans intercipi posse, naves quinque ad eas misit. Quae cum nostris navibus appropinquassent, nostri in portum refugiebant; illi studio incitati incautius sequebantur. Jam ex omnibus partibus subito scaphae signo dato se in hostes incitaverunt, primoque impetu unam ex his navem cum remigibus ceperunt, reliquas turpiter refugere coegerunt.

causa ......*pretence.*	intercipio.....*cut off.*
contego ....*cover.*	litus ....*shore.*
exerceo ....*drill.*	refugio.......*flee back.*
fauces......*mouth.*	scapha........*small boat.*
impono.....*put on board.*	turpiter......*shamefully.*
incaute.....*incautiously.*	

19.—Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar consilium capit ex loci natura. Erant enim circum castra Pompei permulti editi atque asperi colles. Hos primum praesidiis tenuit, castellaque ibi communiit. Inde, ut loci cujusque natura ferebat, ex castello in castellum perducta munitione circumvallare Pompeium instituit, eo consilio, quod Pompeius multitudine equitum valebat, quo minore periculo undique frumentum commeatumque exercitui supportare posset, simul uti pabulatione Pompeium prohiberet, atque ut auctoritatem ejus minueret, cum fama per terras percrebuisset, illum a Caesare obsideri neque audere proelio dimicare.

asper........*rugged.*	fero.........*require, admit.*
circum ......*around.*	pabulatio ...*foraging.*
circumvallo..*surround.*	percrebesco..*spread abroad.*
communio ...*fortify.*	perduco.....*extend.*
fama ....*report.*	permulti ....*very many.*

20.—Curio, ubi perterritis omnibus neque cohortationes suas neque preces audiri intellegit, unam spem reliquam salutis esse arbitratus, proximos colles capere universos atque eo signa inferri jubet. Hos quoque praeoccupat missus a Saburra equitatus. Tum vero ad summam desperationem nostri perveniunt et partim fugientes ab equitatu interficiuntur, partim vulneribus confecti procumbunt. Hortatur Curionem Cn. Domitius, praefectus equitum, cum paucis equitibus circumsistens, ut fuga salutem petat atque in castra contendat, et se ab eo non discessurum pollicetur. At Curio numquam se amisso exercitu in Caesaris conspectum reversurum confirmat, atque ita proelians interficiuntur. Equites ex proelio perpauci se recipiunt; milites ad unum omnes interficiuntur.

desperatio.....*despair.*
numquam.....*never.*
praeoccupo...*seize beforehand.*
preces ......*entreaties.*

21.—Interim M. Octavius cum iis, quas habebat, navibus Salonas pervenit, atque oppidum oppugnare instituit. Est autem oppidum et loci natura et colle munitum. Et celeriter cives effectis turribus, his quoque sese munierunt, et cum essent infirmi ad resistendum propter paucitatem hominum crebris confecti vulneribus, ad extremum auxilium descenderunt servosque omnes liberaverunt. Quorum cogniti sententia Octavius quinis castris oppidum circumdedit, atque uno tempore obsidione et oppugnationibus eos premere coepit. Illi omnia perpeti parati maxime a re frumentaria laborabant. Quare missis ad Caesarem legatis auxilium ab eo petebant.

circumdo..*surround.*
descendo..*have recourse to.*
laboro.....*suffer.*
obsidio....*blockade.*
perpetior ....*endure.*
quare ....*wherefore.*
quini........*five.*
servus.......*slave.*

22.—Pompeius, qui castra in colle habebat, ad infimas radices montis aciem instruebat, semper, ut videbatur, exspectans si iniquis locis Caesar se subjiceret. Caesar nulla ratione ad pugnam elici posse Pompeium existimans, hanc sibi commodissimam belli rationem judicavit, uti castra ex eo loco moveret, semperque esset in itineribus, ut in itinere aliquam occasionem dimicandi nancisceretur et insolitum ad laborem Pompei exercitum cotidianis itineribus defatigaret. His constitutis rebus, signo jam profectionis dato, animadversum est paulo ante extra cotidianam consuetudinem longius a vallo esse aciem Pompei progressam, ut non iniquo loco posse dimicari videretur. Tum vero Caesar suos cohortatus, confestim expeditas copias educit.

commodus... *advantageous.*
confestim ... *immediately.*
defatigo..... *weary, wear out.*
elicio........ *entice.*
extra...... *contrary to.*
insolitus ... *unaccustomed.*
radix...... *root, spur.*
subjicio.... *expose.*

(Based on the Vocabulary of Books II., III. and IV.)

23.—Pompeius, operibus Caesaris permotus, adventu navium profectionem parare incipit, et quo facilius impetum Caesaris tardaret, portas obstruit, fossas tranversas viis praeducit, atque ibi sudes praeacutas defigit. His paratis rebus milites silentio naves conscendere jubet, expeditos autem ex sagittariis funditoribusque raros in muro turribusque disponit. Hos certo signo revocare constituit, cum omnes milites naves conscendissent. Pompeius sub noctem naves solvit. Qui erant in muro custodiae causa collocati, eo signo, quod convenerat, revocantur notisque itineribus ad naves decurrunt.

obstruo ... *barricade.*
praeduco.. *make (as an obstacle).*
silentium....... *silence.*
sudes .... *stake.*

24.—Eodem Brutus contendit aucto navium numero. Nam ad eas quas Caesar faciendas curaverat, captivae Massiliensium accesserant sex. Has superioribus diebus refecerat atque omnibus rebus instruxerat. Itaque suos cohortatus ut victos contemnerent, plenus spei bonae atque animi adversus eos proficiscitur. Facile erat ex castris C. Trebonii atque omnibus superioribus locis prospicere in urbem, ut omnis juventus, quae in oppido remanserat, omnesque superioris aetatis cum liberis atque uxoribus aut muro ad caelum manus tenderent [illegible] templa deorum immortalium adirent et victoriam ab di[illegible]oscerent. Neque erat quisquam quin in ejus diei casu omnium suarum fortunarum eventum consistere existimaret.

bonus..... *good.*
caelum .... *heaven.*
contemno... *despise.*
exposco.... *implore.*
instruo.... *equip, fit out.*
prospicio.. *see, have a view.*
superior .. *more advanced.*
templum.. *temple.*
urbs...... *city.*
ut........ *how.*

25.—His rebus gestis Curio postero die exercitum Uticam ducit et prope oppidum castra ponit. Nondum opere castrorum perfecto equites ex statione nuntiant magna auxilia equitum peditumque ab rege missa Uticam venire; eodemque tempore vis magna pulveris cernebatur, et vestigio temporis primum agmen erat in conspectu. Novitate rei Curio permotus praemittit equites, qui primum impetum sustineant ac morentur;

ipse celeriter ab opere deductis legionibus aciem instruit. Equites committunt proelium et, priusquam plane legiones explicari et consistere possent, tota auxilia regis impedita ac perturbata, quod nullo ordine et sine timore iter fecerant, in fugam conjiciunt, equitatuque omni fere incolumi, quod se per litora celeriter in oppidum recipit, magnum peditum numerum interficiunt.

cerno.....*see.*
explico...*extend, form in line.*
vestigium......*moment.*
vis........*quantity.*

26.—His rebus cognitis Marcius Rufus quaestor, in castris relictus a Curione, cohortatur suos ne animo deficiant. Illi orant atque obsecrant ut in Siciliam navibus reportentur. Pollicetur, magistrisque imperat navium, ut primo vespere omnes scaphas ad litus appulsas habeant. Sed tantus fuit omnium terror ut alii adesse copias Jubae dicerent, alii cum legionibus instare Varum jamque se pulverem venientium cernere (quarum rerum nihil omnino acciderat), alii classem hostium celeriter advolaturam suspicarentur. Itaque perterritis omnibus sibi quisque consulebat. Qui in classe erant, proficisci properabant.

adsum....*be near.*
advolo....*swoop down.*
cerno.....*see.*
consulo...*take thought.*
deficio....*be wanting.*
insto.....*be close upon.*
magister..*master, captain.*
obsecro...*beseech.*

27.—His rebus perfectis ab urbe proficiscitur Brundisiumque pervenit. Eo legiones duodecim equitatum omnem venire jusserat. Sed tantum navium repperit ut vix quindecim millia legionariorum militum, sescentos equites transportare possent. Hoc unum Caesari ad celeritatem conficiendi belli defuit. Milites expeditos naves conscendere jubet, quo major numerus militum posset imponi, atque postridie naves solvit. Pompeius, annuum spatium ad comparandas copias nactus, magnam ex Asia Syria Aegypto classem coegerat, magnam omnibus locis aedificandam curaverat. Hiemare omnibus oppidis maritimis constituerat ut mare transire Caesarem prohiberet, ejusque rei causa omni ora maritima classem disposuerat.

annuus....*of a year.*
impono....*put on board.*
tantum....*only so much.*
urbs......*city.*

28.—Expositis militibus naves eadem nocte Brundisium a Caesare remittuntur ut reliquae legiones equitatusque transportari possent. Fufio Caleno legato, qui huic negotio praefectus erat, mandat ut celeritatem in transportandis legionibus adhiberet. Sed serius a terra provectae naves offenderunt. Bibulus enim certior factus de adventu Caesaris, sperans alicui se parti

onustarum navium occurrere posse, inanibus occurrit, et nactus circiter triginta, omnes eas incendit eodemque igni nautas interfecit, magnitudine poenae reliquos terreri sperans. Hoc confecto negotio litora omnia longe lateque classibus occupavit, custodiasque diligentius disposuit.

inanis.....*empty.*	poena......*punishment.*
negotium..*task, business.*	proveho....in pass., *sail.*
offendo....*be unfortunate.*	sero.......*late.*
onustus...*laden.*	terreo.....*terrify.*

29.—Calenus legionibus equitibusque Brundisii in naves impositis, ut erat praeceptum a Caesare, quantum navium facultatem habebat, naves solvit paulumque a portu progressus litteras a Caesare accipit, quibus est certior factus, portus litoraque omnia classibus hostium teneri. Quo cognito se in portum recipit navesque omnes revocat. Una ex his, quae perseveravit neque imperio Caleni obtemperavit, delata Oricum atque a Bibulo expugnata est; qui de servis liberisque omnibus supplicium sumit et ad unum interficit. Ita exiguo tempore magnoque casu totius exercitus salus consistit.

impono....*place on board.*	servus..............*slave.*
liber......*free.*	suppicium sumo de..*inflict punishment on.*
persevero..*persist, hold on.*	
praescribo..*direct.*	

30.—Genus erat pugnae militum illorum, ut magno impetu primo procurrerent, audacter locum caperent, ordines suos non magnopere servarent, rari dispersique pugnarent; si premerentur, pedem referre et loco excedere non turpe existimabant, cum Lusitanis reliquisque barbaris barbaro genere quodam pugnae assuefacti; quod fere fit, quibus quisque in locis miles inveteravit, ut multum earum regionum consuetudine moveatur. Haec tum ratio nostros perturbavit insuetos hujus generis pugnae; circumveniri enim sese ab aperto latere, procurrentibus singulis, arbitrabantur; ipsi autem suos ordines servare neque ab signis discedere, neque sine gravi causa eum locum, quem ceperant, dimittere consuerant.

dimitto...*give up.*	inveterasco..*become established.*
fere......*generally.*	procurro....*run forward.*
gravis....*strong, grave.*	rarus.......*scattered, in small groups.*

Part II.—Exercises in Re-translation into Latin.

(Based on the Vocabulary of Book II.)

1.—Caesar accordingly places Marcus Antonius the quaestor in command of his own winter camp; he himself with an escort (*lit. guard*) of horsemen sets out for the thirteenth legion, which he had stationed not far from the Aeduan country among the Bituriges, and joins (*adjungo*) with it the eleventh legion which was nearest. Leaving two cohorts to guard the baggage, he leads the rest of his troops into the district of the Bituriges, who had extensive territories and many towns, and so could not be prevented by the winter camp of a single legion from forming conspiracies. Through Caesar's sudden (*repentinus*) approach, many are surprised (*opprimo*) by the cavalry before they can flee for refuge (*confugio*) to their towns.

(Based on the Vocabulary of Book II. and Book III., c. 1–6.)

2.—Caesar put a lieutenant in charge of each legion, that each man might have them as witnesses (*testis, is*) of his own valor; he himself began the battle on the right wing, because he had noticed that that part was the weakest in the enemy's line. So fiercely did our men, on the signal being given, make their attack on the enemy, and so suddenly and quickly did they run forward (*procurro*), that time was not given them to hurl their javelins at the enemy. Throwing the javelins aside they fought hand to hand (*comminus*) with their swords. While the enemy's line had been routed and put to flight on the left wing, on the right they were pressing our line hard by reason of the numbers of their men. Noticing this, P. Crassus, who was in command of the cavalry, sent the third to aid our men.

3.—The tenth legion he sends to Italy to protect the garrisons from which the fifth legion was being withdrawn. He himself assigns winter quarters to the army; Caius Trebonius he stations with four legions among the Belgae, Caius Fabius with as many he leads into the country of the Aedui. For he thought that in this way Gaul would be most secure, if the Belgae, who had the greatest courage, and the Aedui, who had the greatest influence, were restrained by armies. He himself set out for Italy, and on coming there learned through the consul Marcellus that the two legions sent back by him had been handed over to Pompey.

4.—While Caesar was in winter quarters, the Bituriges send envoys to him to ask his help against the Carnutes, who they

complained (*queror, i*) had made war on them. When, after he had stayed not more than eighteen days in winter quarters, he was told of this, he led out of their winter camp the sixth and the fourteenth legion, which, as has been stated, had been posted across the Arar to make it easier to bring up supplies. Thus with two legions he sets out to attack (*persequor*) the Carnutes, who, moved by the disasters of the other Gauls, leave the villages and towns which they were inhabiting and betake themselves to flight.

(Based on the Vocabulary of Book II. and Book III., c. 1–19.)

5.—The town wall was nearly a mile and quarter from the plain. From about half way up the hill the Gauls had made a wall six feet high, of large stones, to retard our onset. All the space at the foot they had left empty, but the upper portion of the hill they had filled with their camps right up to the wall of the town. The soldiers, on getting the signal, quickly reach the fortifications and crossing them gain possession of the camps. And such was their swiftness in seizing the camps that Tentomatus king of the Nitiobriges was surprised in his tent (*tabernaculum*); his horse was wounded, and he himself with difficulty saved (*eripio*) himself from the hands of the pillaging soldiers.

6.—Noviodunum was a town belonging to the Aedui, situated advantageously on the banks of this river. To this point Caesar had collected all the hostages given by the Gauls, the corn and supplies, and a considerable part of his own and the enemy's baggage, and had also sent a great many horses which he had purchased (*coemo*) in Italy because of this war. Eporedorix, on his arrival here, learned of the position of public affairs, how that the Aedui had received Litaviccus into Bibrax, which is a town of great importance among them, that a large part of the senate had come together to meet him, and that envoys had been sent to treat with Vercingetorix for peace and friendship. Accordingly they slew the garrison and not thinking themselves able te hold the town, burned it down, that it might be of no use to the Romans.

7.—When Caesar had conquered the whole of Gaul, and was now anxious that the soldiers should rest themselves after their great toils, several states at one and the same time were reported to him as reviving (*renovo*) plans for war, and forming conspiracies. The probable reason for this was that all the Gauls had learned that the Romans could not be resisted by massing any large body in one place, while if several states began different

wars at the same time, the army of the Roman people would not have sufficient time or strength to attend to (*persequor*) everything.

8. At daybreak all our men had been taken across and the enemy's line was in sight. Labienus called on the soldiers not to forget their old-time valor and their great successes, and told them to imagine that Caesar himself was with them, under whose leadership they had repeatedly defeated the foe. He then gives the signal for battle. At the first shock, the enemy on the right wing, where the seventh legion was stationed, were driven back and put to flight; on the left, the side occupied by the twelfth legion, though the foremost ranks of the enemy had fallen, yet the survivors offered a most stubborn resistance. While the issue was as yet uncertain, the tribunes of the seventh legion were told what was going on on the left wing, and advanced against the rear of the enemy. Yet even then no one left his post, but all were surrounded and slain.

(Based on the Vocabulary of Books II. and III.)

9.—In the meantime, with the aid of the legion which he had with him and the soldiers who had gathered from the province, he makes (*perduco*) a wall sixteen feet high and a trench, extending nineteen miles from lake (*lacus, us*) Lemannus, which flows into the river Rhone (*Rhodanus*), to mount Jura, which separates the country of the Sequani from the Helvetians. When he had finished this work, he posts (*dispono*) garrisons and fortifies redoubts, that he may more easily prevent them, if they should attempt to cross. There was left one road, (that) through the country of the Sequani, by which they could not go if the Sequani were unwilling. As they were unable by themselves to persuade these, they send envoys to Dumnorix the Aeduan, who had great influence among the Sequani and was friendly (*amicus*) to the Helvetians, that by his intercession (use *peto*) they might obtain their request from the Sequani.

10.—The same day he was told by scouts that the enemy had encamped at the foot of (*sub*) a mountain, eight miles from his camp. He sent out scouts to find out what was the character of the mountain and of its ascent. Word was brought back that it was easy. In the third watch he orders Labienus to take two legions and those as guides who had become acquainted with the road, and climb the highest point of the mountain. He himself in the fourth watch, taking the road by which the enemy had gone, hastened towards them and sends all the cavalry before him. Publius Considius, who was considered the most skilled

in the art of war, and who had been in the army of Lucius Sulla and afterwards in that of Marcus Crassus, is sent in advance with scouts.

11.—At dawn, when the summit of the mountain was occupied by Labienus, and Caesar himself was not more than a mile and a half from the enemy's camp, and when, as he afterwards learned from prisoners, neither his own nor Labienus' approach had been discovered, Considius rides up to him and tells him that the mountain which he had wished Labienus to seize, was held by the enemy; that he had recognized this from the Gallic arms and badges. Caesar withdraws (*subduco*) his men to the nearest hill, and draws up his line; while Labienus, in accordance with Caesar's instructions not to begin battle unless his forces were seen near the enemy's camp, that an attack might be made from every side at once, had seized the mountain and was waiting for our men.

12.—At first he sends some cohorts under the younger Brutus, then others with the lieutenant Fabius. Finally (*postremo*), when the battle was raging more fiercely, he himself brings up reinforcements of fresh troops. Having thus repulsed the enemy he made all haste to the point to which he had despatched Labienus; he withdraws four cohorts from the nearest fort, and orders part of the cavalry to follow him, while the others are to go around the fortifications and take the enemy in the rear. Labienus finding neither embankments nor trenches capable of withstanding the enemy's attack, gathered together forty cohorts, and informs Caesar by a messenger, what he thinks should be done.

13.—The envoys whom the Helvetians had sent to Caesar to treat of a surrender met him (*convenio*) while he was on the march. Throwing (*projicio*) themselves at (*ad*) his feet they begged for peace. Caesar commanded that the Helvetii should await his coming in the spot where they were, which they did. On his arrival he demanded hostages, their arms, and the slaves (*servus*) who had deserted (*perfugio*) to them. Meanwhile about six thousand men, thinking that their flight could be concealed (*occulto, are*), set out at nightfall from the Helvetian camp and made for the Rhine and the German territories. Caesar, learning of this, ordered those through whose district they had gone to seek them out (*conquiro*) and bring them back, if they wished to enjoy peace. When brought back, he put them to death. All the rest he allowed to capitulate, after they had handed over to him the hostages, arms and deserters.

(Based on the Vocabulary of Bks. II., III., and Bk. IV., 1-19.)

14.—While Caesar was wintering in the Belgian country, he strove to keep the states in friendly alliance, and to give no one hope or cause of war. For he desired nothing less than that on the eve of (*sub w. abl.*) his departure some necessity should be laid (*impono*) on him of waging war, lest when he was about to withdraw his army, some war should remain which the Gauls would gladly undertake without any immediate danger. Accordingly by addressing the states in complimentary terms (*honorifice*) and promising great rewards to the chief men, he easily kept in a state of peace this country which was exhausted by so many reverses (*use adversus, unsuccessful*).

15.—When word was brought to Caesar in Italy about these occurrences, he went to Gaul and on reaching that country experienced (*use afficio, afflict, visit*) great difficulty [in deciding] by what means he could reach his army. For he perceived that if he summoned the army to the province, they would be engaged in conflicts on their march without his presence; while if he were to make his way to the army, he saw that he would not be justified (*use recte, rightly*) in entrusting his safety even to those who seemed peaceful at the time.

16.—News of this is soon brought to Vercingetorix; in terror all the Arverni crowd around him and beseech him to take thought (*consulo*) for them, that they may not be plundered by the enemy, especially when he sees that the entire war has been shifted (*transfero*) against them. Influenced by their entreaties (*preces*) he moves his camp from the country of the Bituriges towards the Arverni. But Caesar, after two days' stay in this vicinity, left his army to gather reinforcements of cavalry, leaving Brutus the younger in charge of his troops. He advises him to have the cavalry roam about as widely as possible; and tells him that he will take care (*operam do*) not to be more than three days absent from the camp.

17.—He sent out either the legions or the auxiliaries into all parts of Ambiorix' district, and laid waste the whole country with fire and sword; then after slaying or taking captive large numbers of the inhabitants, he sends Labienus and two legions against the Treveri. Meanwhile the lieutenant Caninius learns by despatches and messengers from Duratius (who had remained friendly to [lit. in the friendship of] the Romans, although a large portion of his state had revolted) that a great body of the enemy had gathered together in the country of the Pictones,

hastened towards the town Lemonum. As he drew near, he was informed by captives that Duratius had been shut up (*claudo*) in the town, and was being besieged by many thousands of the enemy.

18.—At the same time representatives of both the Aedui and the Treveri came to Caesar; the former to complain because the Harudes, who had lately been brought across into Gaul, were laying waste their land; they had not, they said, been able to purchase (*redimo*) peace even by giving hostages; the latter to state that a hundred cantons of the Suebi had encamped on the bank of the Rhine, and were attempting to cross it; that they were under the leadership of the brothers Nasua and Cimberius. Deeply moved by these tidings, Caesar decided that he must make haste, lest, if the new band of the Suebi should combine with the old forces of Ariovistus, resistance might be less easy.

19.—The next night Fabius sends the cavalry in advance to engage the enemy and delay their column, till he himself should overtake it (*consequor*). That everything might be done as Caesar had instructed, Quintus Varus, the prefect of the cavalry, a man of wonderful courage and discretion, cheers on his soldiers, and overtaking the enemy's army places some of his horsemen in suitable positions, and with the rest of his force engages battle. The enemy's horse fought the more bravely, as they were supported by their infantry, who halting (*subsisto*) along the whole line brought aid to their comrades against our men. A fierce conflict ensued; for our men, despising the foe they had defeated the day before, and remembering that the legions were coming up behind them, resisted the infantry bravely, partly through shame (*pudor*) of giving way, partly from the desire to finish the battle by themselves; while the enemy expected that no further troops would come up, and believed they had got a chance to annihilate (*deleo*) our cavalry.

20.—Caesar arranged his whole force on each side of the fortifications, so that, if need should arise, each man might keep and know his own place, and then ordered the cavalry to be led out of camp and the battle to be begun. From the whole camp (which occupied the highest point of the ridge) there was a [good] view and all the soldiers were eagerly awaiting the issue of the fight. The Gauls had placed at great intervals among the cavalry, archers and light armed troops, to run to the aid of their comrades when they retreated, and to withstand the onset of our troops. Some of the latter unexpectedly wounded by these were withdrawing from the field. When the Gauls were sure that their side was succeeding in the fight, and saw that

our forces were being hard pressed by their great host, they began to shout on every side and encourage the hearts of their friends.

(Based on the Vocabulary of Books II., III. and IV.)

21.—The Gauls, twice defeated with great loss, take counsel what they should do; they bring in people acquainted with the country, from whom they learn the position and defences of the upper camp. Towards the north there was a hill which our men had been unable to surround with fortifications on account of the extent of the circuit. They had thus been compelled to pitch their camp on uneven and gently sloping ground. This camp was held by Reginus and Rebilus with two legions. The enemy, after reconnoitering the neighborhood, place Vercingetorix, one of their four leaders, in charge of all their forces. Early in the evening he left camp, and finished his march just before dawn. He then concealed himself behind a mountain and ordered the soldiers to take some rest after their night's work.

22.—Although Caesar thought it a disadvantage (*detrimentum*) to abandon the war and the enemy, he still was not unaware (*ignoro*) what great disasters usually arise when one part of the state engages in conflict with another. Accordingly, lest this great state, which he had always fostered (*alo*), should have recourse (*descendo*) to violence and arms, and the side which had the less confidence in him send to Vercingetorix for reinforcements, he resolved to go himself to the Aedui (for according to their laws, those who hold the chief magistracy are not allowed to leave the country), and summoned the whole senate to come to him at Decetia.

23.—When the towers had at length drawn near the wall, Caesar ascertained from prisoners that, as his fodder was all spent, Vercingetorix had shifted his camp nearer Avaricum, and had gone in person with his cavalry and the light-armed troops that were accustomed to fight among the cavalry, in order to set an ambush (*insidior, deponent*) at the point to which our men would next day come to get fodder (*pabulor, deponent*). On receiving this information he started at midnight, and in the morning came to the enemy's encampment. The latter were quickly apprised by scouts of Caesar's approach, and concealed their carts and baggage in denser forests. They then drew up all their troops on rising ground clear of trees.

24.—Thrown into a panic by the new turn of affairs, the enemy were dislodged from the wall and the towers, but made a

stand in an open space, with the intention, in case they should be attacked from any quarter, of drawing up their line and defending themselves. When they found that no one came to meet them on the level ground, but that our men were surrounding the entire wall on every side, they became afraid that hope of flight would be completely taken (*tollo*) from them, and throwing away their arms made for the most distant parts of the town, and there some were slain by the soldiers, as they crowded together (*use premo and reflexive*) in the narrow gateway, while others who had already passed out of the gates were cut down by the cavalry. Nor was there any one who was bent upon plunder.

25.—This favorable opportunity led those who had already before this been full of grief that they had been brought under Roman dominion, to begin to form plans for war more freely and boldly. The leading men called a council in a thickly wooded and distant (*remotus*) part of the country. Here they complained of the death of Acco; bewailed (*miseror*) the general fortunes of Gaul, and declare that before their plans are disclosed (*effero*), Caesar must be cut off from his army. This, they held, was easy to do, because the legions in the absence of their commander would not venture from their winter quarters, nor could the commander reach the army without a guard. Finally (*postremo*) it was better to be slain on the field of battle, than fail to recover their ancient glory in war and the freedom which they had received from their forefathers.

26.—From that place Caesar comes to Gergovia in five days. After a trifling skirmish of the cavalry, he makes a reconnaisance of the position of the town. This showed it to be situated on a very lofty mountain, and all its approaches were difficult, so that he despaired of being able to take it by storm. As for blockading it he determined to do nothing until he had secured his corn-supplies. There was a hill at the foot of (*sub*) the mountain, that was well fortified; if our men could seize this, it seemed likely that they would cut off the enemy to a considerable extent from water and from foraging. But this place was occupied by a garrison. In the dead (*silentium*) of night Caesar issued from the camp and before aid could come from the town, drove out the garrison, took possession of the place, and stationed in it two legions. He also constructed (*perduco*) a double trench ten feet wide from the larger to the smaller camp, so that even individuals could go to and fro (*commeo*) safe from any sudden attack on the part of the enemy.

27.—After this battle had been fought, that he might be able to follow up the forces of the Helvetians, he has a bridge built over the Arar and thus leads his army across. The Helvetii were dismayed by his sudden approach, when they found that what they had with the greatest difficulty accomplished in twenty days, he had done in one, and send ambassadors to him. The leader of this embassy was Divico, who had been the Helvetian leader in the former war. He stated that if the Roman people would make peace with the Helvetians, they would go wherever Caeser determined and desired them to go and would remain there; but if he harassed them with war, he should remember the ancient valor of the Helvetians. To this Caesar made answer, that if they would give him hostages, that he might be sure they would do what they were promising, and if they would make reparation (*satisfa*·) to the Aedui for the wrongs they had inflicted on them themselves and on their allies, he would make peace with them.

THE FOLLOWING EXERCISES

ARE REPRINTED FROM THE EDITION OF

CÆSAR, BOOKS III. AND IV.

PUBLISHED IN 1892.

PA

flu
leg
sex
tat
rel
4.
cob
(*he*

2
mu
2.
ten
dim
non
opp
fact

3
tion
Lab
imp
mul
vidi
(*hom*
(*kind*

4.
conj

APPENDIX II.

EXERCISES BASED ON BOOK III.

PART I.—EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION FROM LATIN AT SIGHT.

1.—1. Labienum legatum in Treveros, qui proximi (*next*) flumini Rheno (*Rhine*) sunt, cum equitatu mittit. 2. Quatuor legiones in Parisios Labieno ducendas (*to be led*) dedit (*he gave*), sex ipse in Arvernos secundum (*along*) flumen duxit (*led*); equitatus partem illi (*to him*) attribuit, partem sibi (*for himself*) reliquit. 3. Hoc proelio facto, legatos ad Cæsarem miserunt. 4. In (*on*) altera parte (*side*) fluminis Sabinum legatum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra (*camp*) vallo fossaque muniri jubet (*he orders*).

2.—1. His initis (*having been adopted*) consiliis, oppida (*towns*) muniunt, frumentumque ex agris (*fields*) in oppida comportant. 2. Per exploratores Cæsar cognovit (*learned*) montem a nostris teneri. 3. Consilium capit, omnem ab se equitatum noctu dimittere (*to send away*). 4. Cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non possent, se in montem receperunt (*they betook*). 5. Menapios oppresserunt, qui, per exploratores Germanos discessisse certiores facti, in suos vicos remigraverant (*had returned*).

3.—1. Frumentum his in locis non provisum erat. 2. Eruptione facta, extremum auxilium (*resource*) experiuntur. 3. Labienus de suo ac legionis periculo nihil timebat. 4. Ibi (*there*) impedimenta, obsides fumentumque omne relinquebat. 5. Cum multitudine hostium (*of the enemy*) castra compleri nostra (*our*) vidissent (*they saw*), desperatis nostris rebus (*success*), domum (*home*) contenderunt. 6. His rebus perfectis, ejusdem generis (*kind*) munitiones perfecit.

4.—1. Nostros ab hostibus premi et ex omnibus partibus tela conjici animadvertit (*he noticed*). 2. Alii, multis (*many*) telis

conjectis, defensores vallo depellebant (*were driving*), telaque ex loco superiore missa non frustra accidebant (*were falling*). 3. His rebus constitutis, dat signum proelii. 4. Animadvertit (*noticed*) Cæsar Sequanos nihil earum rerum facere, quas ceteri (*the others*) facerent. 5. In hostem tela conjiciunt neque dant progrediendi (*of advancing*) facultatem. 6. Undique (=*ex omnibus partibus*) in murum (*wall*) lapides jacti sunt (*were hurled*), murusque defensoribus nudatus est.

5.—1. Acriter ab hostibus pugnatum est, cum in una (*alone*) virtute omnis spes salutis consisteret (*rested*). 2. Cum iis Commium, cujus et virtutem et consilium probabat (*he recognized*), mittit (*he sends*). 3. Pugnatum est diu (*long*) atque acriter, cum hostes in sua (*their*) virtute totius Aquitaniae (*of all Aquitania*) salutem positam esse putarent (*thought*); tandem (*at length*) confecti vulneribus hostes terga verterunt (*lit., turned their backs, i.e. fled*).

6.—1. Quibus in fugam conjectis, reliqui circumventi interfectique sunt. 2. Nostri (4. 2.)*, impetu (*attack*) subito facto magnoque (*great*) eorum numero interfecto, neque sui colligendi neque consistendi facultatem dederunt (*gave*). 3. Perterritis nostris (4. 2.), barbari se inde incolumes receperunt. 4. Quibus rebus omnibus permoti, equites (*cavalry*) castris hostes potitos esse renuntiaverunt (*reported*). 5. Tum (*then*) Cæsar omnibus portis eruptione facta celeriter (3. 1.) hostes in fugam dat (=*conjicit*), magnumque (*great*) ex eis numerum occidit (=*interfecit*), atque omnes armis exuit.

7.—1. Frumenti inopiam veritus (*fearing*), Plancum cum legione in Carnutes proficisci jubet (*he orders*), ibique (*there*) hiemare. 2. Dum (*while*) haec in his locis geruntur, magna (*great*) tempestas (*storm*) subito (2. 1.) coorta est. 3. His rebus gestis, omni Gallia pacata, ab omnibus his nationibus legati (*ambassadors*) ad Cæsarem missi sunt; quos, quod in Illyricum proficisci volebat, inita proxima aestate (*summer*) ad se reverti (*to return*) jussit (*he ordered*).

8.—1. Obsides accipere non dare consueverunt. 2. Magnam auctoritatem in his regionibus habent, et Ubios vectigales sibi fecerunt (*have made*). 3. Principes civitatum solicitare cœpit (*he began*) ut in ea sententia permanerent. 4. His rebus adducti, legatos dimittere (7. 3.), conjurare, obsides inter se dare cœperunt (*they began*). 5. Navibus humilioribus (*lower*) in nostro (*our*)

* These figures indicate in what chapter and section the word *nostri*, which is not found in this chapter, has previously occurred.

mari uti consuevimus. 6. Recuperare communem libertatem volunt. 7. Quem (*what*) usum belli (7. 1.) habent ?

9.—1. Celeriter contraque omnium opinionem ad Ligerem venit (*he came*). 2. Haec civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae (*of all Gaul*) potest. 3. Ubi (*when*) ejus adventu certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt (*they send*). 4. Reliqua, quae ad oppugnationem (*attack*) pertinebant oppidi, administrare instituit. 5. Cum intelligeret in iis locis sibi bellum gerendum esse ubi exercitus noster pulsus esset (*had been defeated*) auxilia comparari jussit. 6. Re frumentaria (=*frumento*) quam celerrime comparata, ad Oceanum contendit. 7. Qua spe adductus (8. 3.), legatos jubet quam plurimas possent naves aedificare.

10.—1. Deditione facta, omnes praedae (*plunder*) studebant. 2. Summa (*very great*) erat difficultas navigandi (8. 1.). 3. Partito exercitu, Labienum cum reliquis legionibus in civitates quae rebellionem fecerant, misit (*he sent*). 4. Anni tempore confisae (9. 2. 3.), hoc facere (*to do*) neglexerunt.

11.—1. Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur. Eo naves ex finitimis (7. 3.) regionibus classemque convenire jubet. 2. Ei munitioni (6. 3.), quam fecerat (*he had made*) ut, si Helvetii transire conarentur, prohibere posset, Labienum praeficit; ipse in Italiam contendit. 3. Equitatui non student (10. 3), sed plurimum (9. 6.) pedestribus copiis possunt. 4. Huic mandat, quas possit, adeat civitates, horteturque (*urge*) ut in officio maneant (*continue*).

12.—1. Facile se loci natura (9. 3.) defendent, quod unum (*but one*) habet aditum. 2. Aedui cum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, victoria (*victory*) desperata, se in oppidum receperunt. Omnium rerum summa erat in eo oppido facultas. 3. Erat summa difficultas quod naves, quas propter (9. 5). magnitudinem in alto constituerat (*he had stationed*), aestus complebat (5. 1.) et tempestas afflictabat. 4. Cæsar, perspecto (*inspect*) oppidi situ, quod positum in altissimo monte (1. 5.) omnes aditus difficiles (*difficult*) habebat, de oppugnatione desperavit.

13.—1. Quo facilius vim hostium sustinere possent, se in oppidum receperunt (12. 3.), quo (*to which*) naves appelli (12. 3.) jusserant (11. 5.). 2. Tanta tempestas coorta est (7. 1.), ut neque ancorae funesque subsisterent (*held*), neque nautae gubernatoresque (9. 1.) vim tempestatis pati (=*sustinere*) possent. 3. Tanta erat altitudo puppium ut tela minus commode adigi possent. 4. Cujus loci haec erat natura, ut ex locis superioribus (4. 2.) in litus (*on the shore*) telum adigi posset. 5. Nihil

timentibus nostris, propter navium inopiam, impetum subito (*suddenly*) fecerunt.

14.—1. Compluribus navibus fractis (*shatter*), reliquae funibus, ancoris (13. 5.) reliquisque armamentis amissis (*lose*) erant inutiles (*useless*). 2. Cum tela ex superiore (4. 1.) loco missa non frustra acciderent, turres excitari jussit (11. 5.). 3. Quod in conspectu omnium res gerebatur, nullum recte (*honorably*) aut turpiter (*disgracefully*) factum celari (*be concealed*) poterat. 4. Cum frustra classem exspectavisset, naves remis incitari et in alto (12. 1.) constitui; quae res magno usui nostris fuit. 5. Cum Germanos Galli virtute superabant, omnem spem in celeritate (13. 7.) ponebant.

15.—1. Hoc negotio confecto, cum omnibus navibus ad Cæsarem pervenit. 2. Aliam (4. 3.) in partem fugam petebant. 3. Cum a meridie (*noon*) prope (=*fere*) ad solis occasum pugnaretur, barbari eruptionem (6. 1.) summa vi facere contenderunt. 4. Acriter (5. 1.) usque ad vesperum (*evening*) pugnatum est. Solis occasu hostes in naves se receperunt (12. 3.)

16.—1. Bello Helvetiorum confecto, legati ad Cæsarem convenerunt. 2. Navibus coactis, in fines (*land*) Remorum pervenit qui se suaque omnia dediderunt. 3. Quod navium longarum (*ships of war*) habebat, reliquis attribuit (1. 6.)

17.—1. His rebus gestis, jubet portas claudi, ut in summam (12. 5.) contemptionem hostibus veniat. 2. Cæsar loco castri idoneo capto (*take*), cognoverat (14. 4.) quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent. 3. Certior factus est (9. 1.) reliquas (16. 3.) omnes civitates defecisse, seque cum Germanis conjunxisse. 4. Cum multos menses (*months*) castris se ac paludibus (*marshes*) tenuisset, neque Gallis dimicandi potestatem fecisset, haec opinio timoris confirmata est (*strengthen*). 5. Interea (*meanwhile*) Commius, cui summa imperii permissa erat (*give*), cum omnibus copiis ad Alesiam pervenit, et mill passus ab nostris munitionibus (6. 3.) considit.

18.—1. Defensores (4. 2) oppido (14. 1) idonei deliguntur quos Cæsar edocet quae dici (15. 1.) vellet. 2. His persuaderi ne suis (8, 5.) auxilium ferrent non poterat. 3. Hostes postero (=*proximo*) die majoribus copiis coactis (17. 2.) castra oppugnant (*assault*), fossam complent. 4. Superiore die Cæsar e castris copiis eductis hostibus pugnandi potestatem fecit (17. 5.). 5. Crassus, cum sua cunctatione atque opinione timoris hostes alacriores (*more eager*) effecisset (*make*), ad hostium castra contendit.

19.—1. Copias omnes in loco edito atque aperto (12. 5.) instruxerant (*draw up*). 2. Cohortatus (=*hortatus*) suos, omnibus cupientibus, ad hostium castra contendit. 3. Nostri acriter (5. 1.) in hostes signo dato impetum fecerunt, ut spatium tela in hostes conjiciendi (2. 4.) non daretur. 4. Omnes hostes terga verterunt neque prius (18. 7.) fuga destiterunt (*cease*) quam ad castra pervenerunt.

20.—1. Hostes, collocatis insidiis in silvis (*woods*) opportuno (15. 4.) loco, Romanorum adventum exspectabant (14. 1.), et cum major pars agminis in magnam convallem descendisset (*descend*), ex utraque (12. 2) parte ejus vallis (=*convallis*) subito se ostenderunt atque proelium committere coeperunt (13. 9.). 2. Hac oratione (*speech*) cognita, nuntios (*messengers*) mittit ad finitimas civitates, equitesque undique (17. 4.) evocat. 3. Dum haec a Cæsare geruntur (17. 1.), Treveri, magnis coactis peditatus (=*pedestrium copiarum*) equitatusque copiis Labienum adoriri parabant (14. 1.). 4. Cum propter inopiam (13. 6.) rei frumentariae Romani se in provinciam recipere (12. 3.) coepissent (13. 9.), impeditos in agmine adoriuntur.

21.—1. Hoc oppidum ex itinere oppugnare conatus (11. 2.), quod vacuum (1. 6.) ab defensoribus (4. 2.) esse audiebat (18. 5.), propter latitudinem (*breadth*) fossae (18. 8.) murique (*wall*) altitudinem (14. 4.) expugnare (1. 3.) non potuit. Castris munitis (9. 8.) vineas agere coepit. 2. Celeriter (9. 2.) vineis ad oppidum actis, aggere jacto (*throw up*) turribusque constructis (*build*), magnitudine operum (12. 3.) et celeritate (13. 7.) Romanorum permoti (*dismay*), legatos ad Cæsarem de deditione mittunt, et petentibus Remis ut conservarentur (*spare*), impetrant. 3. Hostes cursu exanimatos (19. 1.) vulneribusque confectos ex loco superiore in flumen compulerunt (*drive*), et gladiis (*sword*) insecuti magnam partem eorum interfecerunt.

22.—1. Eodem tempore clamore sublato duabus portis ab utroque (*each*) latere (*side*) turrium eruptio fiebat. Nostri, cognito eorum consilio, celeriter ad arma concurrunt. 2. Quod cum animadvertissent, clamore sublato arma capere, portas claudere, cœperunt. Cæsar ex castris equitatum educi jubet, proelium equestre committit. 3. Respondit (*answered*) non esse consuetudinem (*custom*) populi (*people*) Romani accipere ab hoste conditionem; si arma tradere velint, legatosque ad Cæsarem mittant, quae petierint impetraturos.

23.—Dum haec apud eos geruntur, Labienus duabus legionibus quas a Cæsare acceperat relictis, ut essent impedimentis praesidio, cum quattuor reliquis legionibus Lutetiam proficiscitur

Id est oppidum Parisiorum, quod positum est in insula (*island*) fluminis Sequanae. Cujus adventu ab hostibus cognito magnae ex finitimis civitatibus copiae convenerunt. Summa imperii traditur (*give*) Camulogeno, qui prope confectus aetate tamen propter singularem (*marvellous*) scientiam rei militaris ad eum est honorem (*position*) evectus (*raise*).

24.—Labienus, cum et loci natura et manu munitis castris sese teneret, de suo ac legionis periculo nihil timebat. Interim prope quotidie cum omni equitatu Indutiomarus sub (*below*) castris ejus vagabatur, ut situm castrorum cognosceret; equites tela intra (*within*) vallum conjiciebant. Labienus suos intra munitionem continebat, timorisque opinionem augebat. Cum majore in dies contemptione hostes ad castra accederent, nocte una intromissis (*let in*) equitibus omnium finitimorum civitatum, quos arcessiverat, subito Labienus duabus portis cum omni equitatu eruptionem facit.

25.—Prima luce hostium equitatus ad castra accedit proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Cæsar consulto (*purposely*) equites cedere (*yield*) seque in castra recipere jubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiore vallo muniri portasque obstrui (*barricade*) caespitibus jubet. Quibus omnibus rebus hostes adducti propius accedunt et tela intra (*within*) munitionem ex omnibus partibus conjiciunt: ac sic (*so*) nostros contempserunt (*despised*), ut alii vallum manu scindere, alii fossas complere inciperent (*begin*).

26.—Tum vero ex omnibus oppidi partibus orto (*rise, v. deponent*) clamore, qui (*those who*) longius aberant repentino tumultu (*uproar*) perterriti, cum hostem intra (*within*) portas esse existimarent, sese ex oppido ejecerunt (*throw out*). Interim ii qui ad alteram partem oppidi convenerant, primo audito clamore, magno cursu eo contenderunt. Romani et cursu et diuturnitate pugnae defessi non facile integros sustinebant.

27.—Cum acerrime pugnaretur, hostes loco et numero, nostri virtute confiderent, subito sunt Aedui visi, quos Cæsar ab dextra (*right*) parte manus distinendae causa miserat.

28.—Qua re nuntiata (*announce*), Cæsar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt atque amplius horis quatuor fortissime pugnaverunt, et paucis vulneribus acceptis complures ex his occiderunt. Postquam vero equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abjectis (*throw away*) armis terga verterunt magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

29.—Hoc inito consilio totius exercitus impedimenta ad Labienum in Treveros mittit duasque legiones ad eum proficisci jubet; ipse cum legionibus quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. Illi nulla coacta manu loci natura freti in silvas paludesque confugiunt (*flee*) suaque eodem conferunt. Cæsar partitis copiis aedificia vicosque incendit, magno pecoris atque hominum numero potitur. Quibus rebus coacti (*force*) Menapii legatos ad eum pacis petendae causa mittunt.

Part II.—Exercises in Re-translation into Latin.

1.—(§ 1.) 1. He had sent the twelfth legion. 2. He sends part of the twelfth legion and the cavalry. 3. The legion was sent into the territories of the Veragri. 4. They extend from Italy to the river Rhone. 5. He set out; he was setting out. (§§ 2, 3.) 6. He gave permission to the legion to winter. 7. He gave permission to the traders to go into this region. 8. They are accustomed to winter in Italy. 9. He wishes to set out. (§§ 4, 5, 6.) 10. After fighting this battle he made peace. 11. After the strongholds had been fortified, they decided to make peace. 12. There were several reasons. 13. Two cohorts of the other legion had wintered in this village.

2.—(§ 1.) 1. He ordered the Gauls to depart from that village. 2. After the corn had been brought into the winterquarters they were informed that the Gauls were departing. 3. He gave the (*is*) village from which the Gauls had departed to the Seduni. (§§ 2, 3.) 4. It happened that they were renewing the war. 5. It happened that two cohorts had been removed. 6. Two cohorts had been sent to seek supplies. 7. They were sent to destroy the legion. (§§ 4, 5.) 8. They thought that the legion could be destroyed. 9. They cannot seize the summit. 10. The Romans had not attempted to carry off even the children. 11. They despised the Gauls because they had not withstood the attacks of even two cohorts, and those not very complete.

3.—(§§ 1, 2.) 1. They cannot finish the work. 2. They thought that a surrender should be made. 3. On finishing the fortifications they began to make provision for supplies. 4. Having filled all the higher ground with armed men, they began to block the roads. (§§ 3, 4.) 5. Since the majority had decided to surrender, they could not make a sally. 6. They think the

camp can be defended. 7. They hastened to the winterquarters by the same road as they had come. 8. On reaching that place they abandoned their baggage. 9. They had abandoned their baggage and begun to make a sally.

4.—(§§ 1, 2.) 1. After carrying out these plans (*res*), they will bring aid to our men. 2. The matters agreed on have not been carried out. 3. Seeing that our men were hard pressed they had rushed down at a given signal from the higher ground. 4. When the enemy saw that that part of the camp had been cleared of defenders, they rushed down. (§§ 3, 4.) 5. After hurling stones and weapons in vain against the camp, they had betaken themselves (*use se recipere*) to the higher ground. 6. Nothing can be done; they can do nothing. 7. On account of the length of the battle our men were being hard pressed. 8. They do not give to our men an opportunity of hurling weapons. 9. Our men had left the field and the camp had been stripped of defenders.

5.—(§§ 1, 2.) 1. They inform Volusenus that the enemy's strength was now failing. 2. After filling up the trenches they began to fight most vigorously. 3. There had been continuous fighting for over three hours. 4. They inform the centurion that Volusenus, a tribune of the soldiers, was spent with wounds. 5. The centurion, who, as we have said, was a man of great valor, had been spent with wounds. (§ 3.) 6. Giving up the battle for a short time they refreshed themslves. 7. On the centurions and tribunes of the soldiers being called together, our men give over fighting for a short time. 8. He give the signal for (*use genitive*) rushing out of the camp. 9. While the enemy were filling up the trenches, our men were resting themselves.

6.—(§§ 1, 2.) 1. He has found out what we are doing; they had found out what he was doing. 2. More than thirty thousand of the enemy were slain, the rest put to flight. 3. They did not allow the enemy to find out what had been done. 4. Fortune changes; the enemy rallies. 5. The barbarians were left no opportunity of making a stand or of doing what they been ordered. 6. It is agreed that more than a third were ordered to be put to death. (§§ 3, 4, 5.) 7. He is unwilling to winter among the Allobroges. 8. Induced by the want of arms and the flight of the third legion they withdrew to higher ground. 9. After leading the legion in safety to the village, he burned all the buildings. 10. Without fighting any battle, they return to the camp because they see that the enemy are obstructing the march. 11. They remember that the forces have been routed and stripped of their arms.

7.—1. He wished to set out for Gaul for the following reasons. 2. Thinking that the Belgians had been conquered, they had set out for this district. 3. After sending out several tribunes of the soldiers, he will winter among the Veneti. 4. He thought that a sudden war had broken out in the neighboring states. 5. As all Gaul had been subjugated, and he wished to become acquainted with all these things, he sent the seventh legion into the neighboring regions.

8.—1. After detaining the Romans, they incite the rest of the Gauls to send ambassadors to this state. 2. In influence they used to surpass all the sea coast. 3. On the hostages being restored they quickly send ambassadors to the neighboring states. 4. After giving up hostages, they take an oath to endure the bondage of the Romans. 5. They had rather recover the hostages they have given to Crassus than bring over their neighbors to their opinion. 6. They thought that because they had very many ships and held almost all the harbors, they surpassed the Romans in skill and experience. 7. They were accustomed for that reason to do nothing by common agreement.

9.—1. He informed Cæsar that they were far distant, and lingering among the Morini. 2. Because everything is turning out contrary to expectation, they understand how great the danger is. 3. On account of the greatness of the danger, he hastened to the river Loire. 4. It is agreed that Venetia is situated opposite to Britain. 5. They adopt these plans chiefly because they are very strong in ships. 6. On learning of these things, he orders the town to be fortified, ships to be collected and auxiliaries summoned from the other states. 7. He was confident that on account of the small number of ships these plans (*res*) could not be quickly carried out. 8. As our army had been unable to build the ships, he ordered Crassus to raise as many sailors as possible.

10.—1. He thought that if the army were divided, the other states would not give hostages. 2. All men hate slavery. 3. He had pointed out these difficulties in dividing the army. 4. The knights must be detained, and the states roused to war. 5. Understanding that the army had been widely distributed, they were anxious for a charge. 6. If the war were renewed, he thought that more states would join the conspiracy.

11.—1. The Belgians, who were nearest to these regions, attempted to cross the river. 2. He himself sent Brutus with the fleet to keep the bands of the enemy apart. 3. As soon as

he can he sets out for that place. 4. Labienus, whom he has placed in command of the cavalry, will visit the Belgians. 5. After subduing Gaul, he hastened with all his forces against the Germans. 6. The fleet, over which he had placed Brutus, he sent to Aquitania. 7. After attempting to cross the river by force they had summoned aid from the Veneti themselves.

12.—1. This happens twice in the summer. 2. The tides were of such a sort that there was great difficulty in sailing. 3. If at any time the ships were detained by a storm, there was the greatest difficulty in doing this. 4. The towns are inaccessible either by land or sea. 5. They betook themselves to the nearest ships, the more easily because the sea had been kept back by dams. 6. The tide rushed up to the walls of the town which was situated on the end of a promontory. 7. For most of the summer they had defended themselves by these works. 8. If at any time they were hindered by the tide, they would bring up a large number of ships.

13.—1. Our ships were superior in strength and size. 2. On account of the violence of the storm, they began to fear the shoals. 3. They can not very well run before the wind. 4. That they might the more easily injure our fleet, they had built the ships entirely of oak. 5. Besides this they could withstand any violence of the wind. 6. On account of the strength of the ships, they had no fear of storms. 7. They thought they could injure our ships with the beaks. 8. On account of the speed of the ships, which had been equipped with both sails and oars, they thought they could more easily hurl their weapons. 9. Such was the scarcity of ships, that their attacks could not be withstood.

14.—1. Two hundred and twenty towns had been taken by storm in sight of the fleet. 2. He set out as soon as he learned that all the higher ground was held by the enemy. 3. The towers were a great aid to our men because weapons could be thrown with greater force. 4. The sterns of the vessels surpassed the towers in height. 5. The centurions who were in command of the army learned that several towns had been taken by storm. 6. Cæsar was not quite certain who was in command of the ship. 7. The ships can be the more easily injured that all hope depends on the oars. 8. Perceiving that the ships had set out from the harbors, they decided that all this labor must not be undertaken in vain.

15.—1. When this affair was finished, they turned the ships about. 2. We cannot move; this was being done at the fourth

hour. 3. The battle had lasted for four hours. 4. At sunset a very few reached the ship. 5. The wind is blowing in all directions. 6. When they perceived in what direction the wind was blowing, they sought safety by flight. 7. This circumstance is favorable for taking the vessels. 8. With the utmost vigor they pursue the ship right to the shore. 9. Three ships would surround one.

16.—1. After this war had been finished, he decided that the right of ambassadors must be carefully observed. 2. Not only the Veneti, but the whole coast had surrendered to Cæsar. 3. They had no place to which to gather the rest of their ships. 4. That he might the more severely punish the barbarians, he decided that all the senate must be put to death. 5. After all the youth had been lost, the rest had no means of defending themselves. 6. After the ships had been gathered to one place, the rest betook themselves thither.

17.—1. They had joined Cæsar, thinking that the Veneti would not dare to revolt. 2. While the enemy were coming up to the camp, Cæsar was leading out his forces. 3. After doing this they had ventured to put to death Viridovix, who had approved of the war. 4. After closing the gates, they had put the senate to death. 5. As he thought he should encamp only on favorable ground, he was unwilling to do this. 6. Collecting large forces from all parts of Gaul, he daily gave the enemy an opportunity of fighting. 7. As the enemy were keeping themselves in the camp, and creating an impression of fear, they were beginning to be despised by our army. 8. So great was the number of the enemy, that the lieutenant was unwilling to fight in Cæsar's absence.

18.—1. They inform the Gauls that Cæsar has with him certain deserters. 2. They persuade Cæsar to lend aid. 3. On hearing that this deserter had on the previous night crossed over to the enemy, they took arms and hastened to the camp. 4. He informed them that Cæsar would lead his army out of the camp the next day. 5. They wished to set out for the camp, for the purpose of filling the trench. 6. Influenced by the want of arms, they all cry out that Cæsar must lead the army out of the camp. 7. After pointing out what an opportunity had been lost, he persuaded them to set out with him. 8. Choosing a suitable man to persuade them, he told [him] what he wished done. 9. Permission has been given them to go to the camp.

19.—1. As all were eager, he ordered the signal to be given. 2. On a sally being made, the Gauls at once turned their backs.

3. The result was that few had been left. 4. They made an attack so (*tam*) suddenly that time was not given our men for arming. 5. They were informed that our men, hampered because of the burdens they were bearing, had not withstood the enemy's attacks. 6. He ordered his men to pursue the enemy. 7. On account of the load which he was carrying, the soldier reached the camp out of breath. 8. He is bearing burdens as large as possible. 9. When our soldiers, who had been ordered to pursue those who had escaped, reached the camp, they were informed of the two wars.

20.—1. On reaching Gaul they had procured supplies. 2. They slay the lieutenant, gather large forces and renew the war. 3. He perceived that an ambush had been set. 4. On learning of their arrival, he perceived that he must join battle. 5. On a cavalry fight being begun, our men were scattered and all the baggage was lost. 6. In the third year of the war the troops were led into the province of Gaul. 7. The enemy are especially strong in infantry. 8. He led his army into the country where war had been waged three years before. 9. When our cavalry had been scattered and the enemy were renewing the battle, suddenly the auxiliaries attack our column on the march.

21.—1. Relying on the former victory, he ordered the town to be attacked and towers brought up. 2. The safety of the whole legion depends on his watchfulness. 3. After the battle had lasted for a long time, he saw that nothing could be accomplished. 4. They did what they had been ordered. 5. On their sending ambassadors and giving up their arms, he accepted their surrender. 6. Under Cæsar's leadership they had accomplished nothing. 7. They are anxious to see what can be accomplished by this means.

22.—1. Making a sally, they fought fiercely. 2. On the death of Adiatunnus, all who had pledged themselves, committed suicide. 3. On the soldiers being driven back, a shout was raised at another part of the fortifications. 4. They obtained permission to rush to arms. 5. While attempting to drive back the enemy to the town, they were slain. 6. This is the agreement that if any sally is made, all are to die.

23.—1. According to their custom they exchanged hostages and took an oath that they would all agree. 2. Perceiving that the roads had been blocked, and that the enemy would very easily keep our men from supplies, he fortified the camp. 3. Leaving a garrison for the camp he set out for hither Spain.

4. They proceeded to summon allies and wage war. 5. War had been waged for a few years. 6. As the number of the enemy was daily increasing he thought he should lay this matter before the generals. 7. Alarmed because of the large number of the enemy and the small size of the camp, he did not attempt to divide his forces.

24.—1. On account of the enemy's delay, and the large number of our men, he began to blockade the roads. 2. Perceiving the enemy's alarm, our men were eager to fight. 3. Although they keep themselves in the camp, we shall draw up the line of battle. 4. It is safer to place the auxiliaries in the centre. 5. They adopted this plan, attacked the centre, and gained the victory. 6. He thought they would place their packs in the centre of the line of march. 7. By attacking the enemy while on the march we shall gain the victory. 8. At daybreak he drew up the line of battle, exhorted his men, and waited to see what the enemy were planning.

25.—1. They fill up the trenches, hurl stones and weapons, and drive the defenders from the wall. 2. They bring back word that some are fighting stubbornly, others timidly. 3. Some go round the camp, others hurl weapons at the defenders, others bring up turf for mounds. 4. As Crassus trusted the auxiliaries he did not fortify the camp with the same care. 5. They brought back word that many were hurling stones and weapons, and that the defenders had been driven from the wall. 6. At another gate there was stubborn fighting.

26.—1. Leaving the cohorts as a guard for the camp, he pursued the enemy with all the cavalry. 2. He exhorted the cavalry to attack vigorously. 3. Surrounding the enemy, they left scarcely a quarter of them. 4. The cavalry, aroused by the hope of rewards, on hearing the shouts, began to pursue the enemy with renewed vigor. 5. Before the enemy could learn what had been done, our men had begun to surround the cavalry. 6. They could not be seen from the fortifications. 7. He pointed out what he wished done, that they might not be surrounded on all sides before getting a footing in the camp. 8. It is agreed that fifty thousand cavalry had assembled. 9. Despairing of safety, they betook themselves to the camp by longer routes.

27.—1. Sending hostages, they voluntarily surrendered to him. 2. A large part of Aquitania, trusting in their numbers, had neglected to send hostages. 3. This they did for the larger part of this winter. 4. Winter is near at hand.

28.—1. In the same summer they sent ambassadors to treat for peace. 2. He saw that they had betaken themselves to the marshes. 3. On reaching the marsh they proceeded to fortify the camp. 4. Although they are in arms and have not been conquered, yet he thinks he will quickly finish the war. 5. The Morini were the only ones who could not be conquered. 6. Our men, having followed them too far, were scattered. 7. Rushing out of the woods and marshes they made an attack on the camp. 8. When the summer was over, and he had begun to fortify the camp, ambassadors were sent from by far the largest nation of all Gaul.

29.—1. Turning the timber towards the woods, he built a rampart. 2. In order that the work might not be interrupted, he kept the soldiers under canvas. 3. They proceeded to burn the villages and lay waste all their fields. 4. After leading back the army to winter quarters, he cut down the woods on either side. 5. An attack was made on both sides, while the army was off its guard. 6. They placed the baggage and cattle in thicker forests. 7. That the enemy might not make any attack, the timber was heaped up as a rampart. 8. There followed a storm of such a character that an attack could not be made.

APPENDIX III.

EXERCISES BASED ON BOOK IV.

PART I.—EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION FROM LATIN AT SIGHT.

1.—1. Ejus belli haec fuit causa. Praedae (*of plunder*) causa ex Belgio (*Belgium*) transierunt, atque agros colere (*to till*) coeperunt (*began*). 3. Britanni (*the Britons*) frumenta non serunt (*they sow*), sed lacte et carne (=*pecore*) vivunt, pellibusque sunt vestiti (*clothed*). 4. Flumen transierunt atque reliquam partem hiemis se eorum copiis (*on their stores*) aluerunt. 5. Orgetorix qui apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus (*nobilis*=*noble*) fuit et ditissimus (*dives*=*rich*), M. Messala et M. Pisone consulibus, conjurationem fecit (*formed a conspiracy*). 6. Ingenti (*huge*) magnitudine corporum Germani sunt, et incredibili (*incredible*) exercitatione in armis.

2.—1. Oppida (*the towns*) pedibus aditum habent. 2. Aere (*bronze*) utuntur importato. 3. Cæsar ex castris equites educi (1. 4.)* jubet (*orders*), proelium equestre committit (*begins*). 4. Huic deo (*god*), ea quae bello ceperint, devovent (*they vow*). 5. Hoc flumen (1. 10.) uno omnino (*altogether*) loco pedibus transiri (1. 1.) potest (*can*). 6. Hoc in (*among*) turpissimis habent rebus. 7. Gallicis (*of the Gauls*) sunt moribus assuefacti.

3.—1. Civitatibus maxima laus est quam latissime circum (*about*) se solitudines (*wastes*) habere. 2. Usipetes, qui complures annos (1. 2.) Sueborum vim sustinuerunt, ad extremum (*at length*) tamen agris expulsi, ad Rhenum pervenerunt (*came*). 3. Ex (*of*) his omnibus longe (1. 3.) sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium (*Kent*) incolunt (1. 7.). 4. Pars hominum (*of the natives*)

---

* These figures indicate in what chapter and section the word *educi*, which is not found is this chapter, has previously occurred.

in agris remanebat (1. 5.), pars etiam (*also*) in castra (*to the camp*) ventitabat. 5. Haec civitas longe (1. 3.) amplissimam habet (2. 1.) auctoritatem (*influence*), quod omnes qui eo mari (1. 1.) utuntur (2. 2.) habent (*they hold*) vectigales.

4.—1. Ubi (*when*) Cæsar certior factus est quartam (*a fourth*) partem copiarum citra flumen reliquam (*left*) esse, omni cum equitatu progressus, ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum (*not yet*) flumen transierat. 2. Frumenti (1. 8.) inopia permotus (*influence*), omnibus ejus vici aedificiis incensis (*having been burned*), in provinciam (*the province*) reverti contendit (*he made haste*). 3. Cum ad Rhenum pervenissent, reliqui se in flumen praecipitaverunt (*threw*), atque ibi (*there*) vi fluminis oppressi perierunt (*perished*).

5.—1. Cæsar nondum (*not yet*) eorum consilia cognoverat. 2. Ejus rei quae causa (1. 2.) esset, quaesivit: nihil Sequani responderunt. 3. Cognita Gallorum infirmitate, hostibus (*to the enemy*) ad consilia capienda nihil spatii (*time*) dandum (*to be given*) existimavit. 4. Hac consuetudine cognita, nihil respondit. 5. His initis consiliis, mercatores interficiunt (4. 7.)

6.—1. Helvetii omnium rerum (5. 3.) inopia (4. 4.) adducti, legatos (*ambassadors*) ad Cæsarem miserant. 2. Nonnulli principes ex (5. 2.) ea civitate, familiaritate (*intimacy*) adducti, ad Cæsarem venerunt. 3. Maturius quam tempus (*season*) anni (4. 1.) postulabat, in hiberna (*winter quarters*) exercitum deduxit (*he led off*). 4. Cæsar, etsi (*although*) nondum (*not yet*) eorum consilia cognoverat, fore id quod accidit (*really happened*) suspicabatur. 5. Cæsar, etsi (*although*) a bello discedere detrimentosum (*disadvantageous*) esse existimabat, tamen ipse in Aeduos proficisci constituit senatumque (*senate*) omnem evocavit.

7.—1. Germani ab Helvetiis superati sunt, qui tamen (3. 4.) pares esse nostro (*our*) exercitui (6. 1.) non potuerunt. 2. Impulsi (*instigated*) a suis principibus (6. 5.) bellum populo Romano intulerant. 3. Factum est (*the result was*) ut minus (*less*) late vagarentur (6. 4.) et minus facile (*easily*) Germanis bellum inferre possent. 4. Cæsar postulavit (6. 3.) eos qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dederent (*that they should surrender.*)

8.—1. Remanere se apud eum velle (7. 4.) dixerunt (3. 2.). 2. Allobroges dispositis praesidiis (4. 3.) suos fines tuentur. 3. Hac oratione habita (*having been made*), omnes (6. 3.) auxilium a Cæsare petere coeperunt (7. 1.). 4. Undique (*from all*

sides) ad eum legationes (6. 3.) concurrunt (*flock*), gratiam (7. 4.) atque amicitiam petunt.

9.—1. Illa pars equitatus Usipetum et Tencterorum, quae praedandi frumentandique causa Mosam transierat, post fugam (*flight*) suorum se trans Rhenum receperat (2. 3.). 2. Tridui (4. 4.) mora interposita, equites revertentur. 3. Cicero respondit (8. 1.) si (8. 3.) legatos ad Cæsarem mittant, quae petierint impetraturos. 4. Reliquam (4. 7.) partem equitatus, quod (5. 1.) longius (*too far*) aberat (7. 2.), non arbitratur exspectandam.

10.—1. Interea (9. 1.) Commius cum omnibus equitibus (9. 3.) ad Alesiam pervenit, et colle (*hill*) occupato (8. 2.) non longius mille passibus a Cæsare consedit (*encamped*). 2. Ubi insulae appropinquavit, Cæsar cognovit (9. 3.) Gallos castra movisse propius (9. 1.) oppidum (5. 2.) atque cum expeditis (*the light armed men*), qui inter (*among*) equites (9. 3.) proeliari (2. 3.) consuevissent (6. 1.), insidiandi (*setting an ambush*) causa (9. 3.) profectum esse (6. 1.).

11.—1. Cæsar iis quos in castris (9. 1.) retinuerat (*detain*), discedendi (6. 3.) potestatem fecit. 2. Equitatus hostium procul (*at a distance*) visus est (*see*), qui agmen antecesserant. 3. Omnem equitatum qui agmen moraretur (*delay, v. deponent*) praemisit. 4. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur (7. 1.). 5. Hostium equitatus ad castra (9. 1.) accedit, proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit (*begin*). 6. Ubii ad eum legatos mittunt; petunt atque orant ne civitatem (3. 4.) patiatur (7. 4.) ab amicitia (8. 1.) populi Romani (7. 3.) deficere (*to revolt*).

12.—1. Omnes principes (11. 3.) ad eum in castra (*camp*) venerunt, ut de indutiis impetrarent (11. 2.). 2. Nostri in eos impetu facto, praecipites (*headlong*) hostes egerunt, magnoque (1. 3.) eorum numero interfecto nullam (8. 1.) ex essedis (*chariot*) desiliendi facultatem (*opportunity*) dederunt (8. 2.). 3. Ita (*thus*) hostes undique (*on all sides*) circumventos interficiunt, et ex hominum millibus triginta (*thirty*), tertia parte (*a third*) interfecta, reliquos perterritos in fugam conjiciunt. 4. Mandubracius, cujus pater (*father*) in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat, interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno, legatos ad Cæsarem mittit (11. 6.).

13.—1. Confirmant (*they declare*) sese neque legatos missuros (11. 6.) neque ullam (2. 1.) conditionem pacis accepturos. 2. Cum ad oppidum (5. 2.) accessisset (11. 6.), omnes majores natu pacem ab Romanis petierunt. 3. Cum (*although*) ultro in Galliam legatis missis (11. 6.) pacem a Cæsare petissent, bellum

sine (8. 2.) causa (1. 2.) intulerunt. 4. Cæsar iis quos in castris retinuerat, discedendi (12. 1.) potestatem fecit (11. 2.). 5. Cæsar ex castris equitatum educi, proelium committi jubet. 6. Nostri, quod signa (*standards*) subsequi non poterant, magnopere (*greatly*) perturbabantur (12. 1.). 7. Tantam (4. 3.) sibi his rebus in Gallia auctoritatem consecutus erat, ut undique (*from all sides*) ad eum legationes (C. 3.) concurrerent (*flock*). 8. Horum auctoritate adducti (6. 4.) legatos retinent.

14.—1. Reliquos equites (12. 1.) consectati, paucos (7. 2.) eorum qui ex fuga evaserant (*escape*), reliquerunt (*leave*). 2. Equites (12. 1.) in castra irrumpere conantur (*attempt*), nec (=*neque*) prius sunt visi (*see*) quam castris appropinquarent (*draw near*). 3. Illi celeriter per exploratores (4. 6.) adventu Cæsaris cognito (5. 2.) suas copias castris eduxerunt (13. 6.), omnemque aciem carris circumdederunt (*surround*). Eo (*lit., thereon*) mulieres imposuerunt (*place*). 4. Helvetii, cum omnibus suis carris secuti (*follow, v. deponent*), impedimenta in unum (13. 3.) locum contulerunt (*collect*).

15.—1. Clamore audito, hostes undique (*on all sides*) circumventi (12. 6.), desperatis omnibus rebus (13. 4.), fuga salutem petierunt (14. 2.). 2. Noctu (*by night*) ad unum omnes desperata salute (14. 2.), se interfecerunt. 3. Praestat (14. 2.) arma abjicere quam ab Gallis per cruciatum interfici. 4. Denique (*at length*) ex omni numero, qui fuit circiter (3. 2.) millium quadraginta (*forty*), vix (*scarcely*) octingenti (*eight hundred*), qui primo (*first*) clamore audito se ex oppido ejecerant, incolumes ad eum pervenerunt. 5. Pauci (7. 2.) ex tanto (4. 3.) numero se incolumes in castra recipiunt.

16.—1. Hac audita (15. 1.) pugna (13. 4.), ultimae nationes sese Crasso dediderunt, obsidesque ultro (13. 1.) miserunt. 2. Publium Crassum cum magno numero (15. 3.) equitatus in Aquitaniam proficisci (6. 1.) jubet (13. 6.), ne (*lest*) ex his nationibus auxilia (*auxiliaries*) in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nationes conjungantur. 3. Quibus rebus Cæsar commotus (*alarm*) maturandum (*make haste*) sibi existimavit, ne (*lest*) Suebi cum copiis (14. 2.) Ariovisti sese conjungerent. 4. Labienus Cæsarem per nuntios certiorem facit (5. 1.) quid (14. 1.) faciendum (*do*) existimet. Accelerat (*hastens*) Cæsar ut proelio intersit. 5. Tanta hujus belli ad barbaros (*barbarians*) opinio perlata est (*bear*), ut ab iis nationibus, quae trans Rhenum incolerent (1. 7.), mitterentur legati (12. 1) ad Cæsarem.

17.—Cæsar, postquam (*after*) ex Menapiis in Treveros venit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit (=*decrevit*); qua-

rum una (15. 3.) erat quod auxilia (*auxiliaries*) contra se Treveris miserant. His constitutis (13. 4.) rebus paulum (*a little*) supra eum locum (1. 7.) quo (*at which*) ante (12. 1.) exercitum traduxerat, facere pontem instituit. Nota (*well known*) atque instituta ratione magno militum studio (*zeal*) paucis diebus (7. 2.) opus efficitur (*complete*).

18.—1. Transeunt (17. 1.) Rhenum navibus (17. 1.) triginta (*thirty*) millibus passuum (11. 1.) infra (*below*) eum locum (1. 7.) ubi (*where*) pons erat perfectus (*build*), praesidiumque a Cæsare relictum. 2. Isdem (17. 5.) sublicis (17. 4.) pontem reficere (*rebuild*) coepit. Celeriter (14. 4.) effecto opere, legionibusque (*legion*) traductis, reliquas (14. 5.) copias (14. 2.) revocavit (*recall*). 3. Firmo in Treveris ad (*at*) pontem praesidio relicto, reliquas (14. 5.) copias (14. 2.) equitatumque (16. 2.) reducit (*lead back*). Ubii, qui ante (12. 1.) obsides dederant (*give*), purgandi sui causa (13. 5.) ad eum legatos mittunt (16. 5.).

19.—1. Ex captivis (*prisoners*) cognovit trans id flumen (17. 4.) omnes Nervios consedisse (*encamp*), adventumque ibi (*there*) Romanorum exspectare. 2. Titurius et Cotta legati (13. 4.) qui in Menapiorum fines legiones (*legion*) duxerant (14. 2.), omnibus eorum agris (15. 5.) vastatis (*lay waste*), frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod (16. 1.) Menapii se omnes in densissimas (*densus=thick*) silvas abdiderant (18. 4.) se ad Cæsarem receperunt. 3. Suebi omnes, cum omnibus suis sociorumque (*ally*) copiis (14. 2.), ad extremos (*remotest*) fines se receperant. 4. Cæsar per exploratores comperit Suebos sese in silvas recepisse.

20.—1. Cum (16. 3.) ab his quaereret (5. 2.) quae civitates (3. 1.) quantaeque in armis (14. 4.) essent, sic (*as follows*) reperiebat. 2. Volusenus, perspectis omnibus regionibus (*=locis*) quinto (*fifth*) die (19. 1.) ad Cæsarem revertitur (11. 4.). 4. His rebus gestis (*do*), cum (14. 3.) omnibus de causis (17. 1.) Cæsar pacatam esse (*subdue*) Galliam existimaret (17. 2.), inita (*lit., having been begun*) hieme in Illyricum profectus est, quod eas quoque (16. 1.) nationes adire, et regiones (*=loca*) cognoscere volebat (15. 5.). 4. Neque quisquam est qui se adisse ad eam silvam (18. 4.) dicat (15. 5.)

21.—1. Omnes ad portum (20. 4.) Itium convenire jubet, quo ex portu commodissimum (*best*) in Britanniam trajectum esse cognoverat. 2. Una cum his legatis Commius venit, quem Cæsar in Britanniam praemiserat. 3. Celeriter ad omnes Galliae civitates fama (*report*) perfertur. 4. De numero (15. 3.) eorum omnia ab Remis explorata erant, quod quantam (20. 4.) quisque

(5. 2.) multitudinem (8. 2.) ad id bellum pollicitus esset cognovissent. 5. Mandubracius, Cæsaris fidem secutus, ad eum in Galliam venerat.

22.—1. Interim (21. 5.) Trinobantes legatos ad Cæsarem mittunt (21. 7.), pollicenturque sese imperata facturos. 2. His rebus confectis (11. 3.) in Aeduos proficiscitur (21. 3.), civitatemque (21. 8.) recipit. Eo (21. 8.) legati ab Arvernis missi (21. 7.) quae imperaret se facturos pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum obsidum. 3. Quatuor legiones in Senones Parisiosque Labieno ducendas dedit; sex ipse (21. 3.) in Arvernos secundum flumen (17. 4.) duxit: equitatus partem (16. 2.) illi attribuit (*assign*), partem sibi reliquit (18. 2.). 4. Non tam (16. 1.) barbarus sum neque tam imperitus rerum (*affairs*), ut (*that*) non sciam (*know*) Aeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse (16. 5.)

23.—1. Secunda cum solvisset vigilia, prima luce (*at dawn, lit., first light*) terram (*land*) attigit, omnesque incolumes (15. 3.) naves perduxit (*brought over*). 2. Itaque (20. 4.) dies circiter viginti in eo loco commoratus (=*moratus*, 22. 1.), quod ventus navigationem (*sailing*) impediebat (*hinder*), tandem (*at last*) idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque conscendere naves jubet. 3. Quibus rebus adductus (6. 4.) Cæsar non exspectandum sibi statuit (16. 1.) dum in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent (15. 2.). 4. Cæsar idoneum locum nactus, legatis quid fieri velit ostendit; imprimis (*particularly*) monet, ut contineant (*restrain*) milites, ne (*lest*) spe (6. 4.) praedae (*plunder*) longius (*too far*) progrederentur.

24.—1. Impeditis hostibus propter ea, quae ferebant (*carry*), onera, nostri de navibus desiluerunt. 2. Hostes, notis omnibus vadis (*shoals*), incitatis equis, impeditos adoriebantur (*attack*). 3. Novo (*new*) genere pugnae perterritis nostris, hostes per medios (*the midst*) audacissime perruperunt (*broke through*). 4. Repulsi (*drive back*) ab equitatu, se in silvas abdiderunt (18. 4.), locum nacti (23. 6.) egregie (*well*) munitum (*fortified*), nostrosque ingredi (*enter, v. deponent*) prohibebant.

25.—1. Nova (*new*) atque inusitata specie permoti, legatos ad Cæsarem de pace (*peace*) miserunt. 2. Alii ab latere aperto in universos tela conjiciebant. 3. Reliqui se in castra recipiunt unde (*from which*) erant egressi. Ex quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer (*eagle bearer*), cum magna multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra (*within*) vallum (*rampart*) projecit, ipse pro (*before*) castris fortissime pugnans interficitur. 4. 'Vincite' (*conquer, carry one's point*), inquit, 'si ita (*so*) vultis,' Sabinus, et id (*that too*) clariore (=*majore*) voce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret (*hear*).

26.—L. Domitio, M. Claudio consulibus Cæsar legatis imperat uti quam plurimas possent hieme naves aedificarent (*build*). Earum modum formamque (*shape*) demonstrat (*explain*). Ad celeritatem onerandi (*load*) paulo facit humiliores (*low*) quam quibus (*those which*) in nostro mari uti consuevimus, ad onera ac multitudinem jumentorum transportandam paulo latiores (*wide*), quam quibus in reliquis utimur navibus. Ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas (*equip*) naves, ex Hispania (*Spain*) comportari jubet. Ipse in Illyricum proficiscitur quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae (*province*) vastari (*lay waste*) audiebat.

27.—His rebus gestis (*do*) Labieno in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum millibus duobus relicto, ut portus tueretur (*guard, v. deponent*), quaeque in Gallia gererentur cognosceret, ipse cum quinque legionibus et eodem numero equitum, quem in continente reliquerat, naves solvit, et eam partem insulae cepit (*reach*), qua (*where*) optimum esse egressum (*landing place*) superiore aestate cognoverat.

28.—His rebus constitutis, Cæsar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit naves, quae factae erant, tempestate rejectas (*drive back*) cursum tenere non potuisse, atque eodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquas paratas (*ready*) ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas (*equip*) invenit (*find*). Eodem equitatus totius (*all*) Galliae convenit numero millium quatuor, principesque ex omnibus civitatibus; ex quibus perpaucos obsidum loco (*as, lit., in the place*) secum ducere decreverat, quod cum ipse abesset motum (*uprising*) Galliae verebatur (*fear, v. deponent*).

29.—Cæsar exposito (*land*) exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto (*choose*), ubi ex captivis (*prisoners*) cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent (*encamp*), cohortibus (*cohort, company*) decem ad (*by*) mare relictis equitibus trecentis (*three hundred*), qui praesidio navibus essent, tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit. Noctu (*by night*) progressus millia passuum circiter duodecim hostium copias conspicatus est (*came in sight of*).

30. 31.—Postridie ejus diei mane milites equitesque misit ut eos, qui fugerent, persequerentur (*pursue*). His aliquantum itineris (*some distance*) progressis, equites a Q. Atrio ad Cæsarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent superiore nocte maxima coorta tempestate prope (*nearly*) omnes naves afflictas atque in litus ejectas esse (*cast*), quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent (*hold out*), neque nautae (*sailors*) gubernatoresque (*helmsmen*) vim tempestatis pati (*endure, v. deponent*) possent: itaque ex eo concursu (*collision*) navium magnum esse incommodum (*loss*) acceptum.

32.—1. His rebus cognitis Cæsar legiones equitatumque revocari (*recall*) atque itinere desistere jubet, ipse ad naves revertitur; eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis cognoverat, coram (*with his own eyes*) perspicit, sic (*so*) ut amissis circiter quadraginta (*forty*) navibus, reliquae tamen refici possent. 2. Equites hostium essedariique, imprudentibus (*unprepared*) nostris atque occupatis in munitione (*fortifying*) castrorum, subito se ex silvis ejecerunt, impetuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati (*station*), acriter pugnaverunt.

33.—Nostri acriter in eos impetu facto reppulerunt (*drive back*) neque finem (*end*) sequendi fecerunt, quoad equites, cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites (*headlong*) hostes egerunt, magnoque eorum numero interfecto neque consistendi neque ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Toto hoc in genere pugnae intellectum est nostros propter gravitatem (*weight*) armorum, minus aptos (*fitted*) ad hujus generis hostem, equites autem (*moreover*) magno cum periculo dimicare (*fight*), quod hostes ex essedis desilirent et pedibus dispari (*unequal*) proelio contenderent.

34.—His Cæsar imperat obsides quadraginta (*forty*), frumentumque exercitui. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides frumentumque miserunt. Ab his cognoscit non longe ex eo loco oppidum abesse, quo (*to which*) satis (*quite*) magnus hominum pecorisque (*cattle*) numerus convenerit. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus: hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt (*withstand*), seseque alia ex parte oppidi ejecerunt.

35. 36.—Cassivellaunus hoc proelio nuntiato, vastatis (*lay waste*) finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione (*falling away*) civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditione (*surrender*) mittit. Cæsar cum constituisset hiemare in continenti, neque multum (*much*) aestatis superesset (*remain*), obsides imperat. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit (*find*) refectas. Ac sic (*so*) accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret (*carry*), desideraretur (*lose*); at ex iis, quas Labienus faciendas curaverat, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae fere omnes rejicerentur (*drive back*).

37. 38.—1. Quas cum aliquamdiu (*for some time*) Cæsar frustra (*in vain*) exspectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur (*cut off*), quod aequinoctium suberat (*be near*), necessario angustius (*more closely than usual*) milites collocavit ac summa tranquillitate (*calm*) consecuta (*follow*), secunda cum solvisset vigilia, prima luce (*at dawn*) terram (*land*) attigit,

omnesque incolumes naves perduxit (*brought over*). 2. Quibus rebus cognitis Cæsar maturius sibi de bello cogitandum (*deliberate*) putavit. Itaque nondum hieme confecta, quatuor coactis legionibus in fines Nerviorum contendit et, priusquam illi aut convenire aut profugere (*flee*) possent, magno pecoris (*cattle*) atque hominum capto, atque ea praeda militibus concessa vastatisque agris, obsides sibi dare coegit.

Part. II.—Exercises in Re-translation into Latin.

1.—(§§ 1, 2.) 1. They had crossed in that year. 2. They had been harassed for several winters. 3. A large number of Germans crossed the rivers in the following year. (§§ 3.–7.) 4. All the other tribes were staying at home. 5. This canton is the largest, that the most warlike. 6. Several years after, they were led out of this place. 7. With a hundred thousand Germans he was making war. (§§ 8, 9, 10.) 8. On occount of their huge size they do none (lit. nothing) of those things. 9. The country was very cold. 10. The milk and corn make the Germans very warlike. 10. They used to bathe in the river.

2.—(§§ 1, 2.) 1. The merchants do not desire beasts of burden to be imported. 2. They used to use small and scrubby beasts. 3. They sell what they have taken to the Gauls. 4. The merchants have right-of-entry (*aditus*). (§§ 3.–6.) 5. They had not ventured to leap down. 6. They betook themselves to the cavalry. 7. He betook himself to them. 8. It used to be considered disgraceful. 9. He leaps down on foot (lit. to the feet) because the cavalry are approaching. 10. They think it is disgraceful to use imported horses.

3.—(§§ 1, 2, 3.) 1. On (*ex*) the other side, the country is unoccupied for six hundred paces. 2. The Suebi could not withstand the power of the state. 3. The same merchants used to come often to the Gauls themselves. 4. They think their state is large and flourishing. 5. It is the greatest possible glory to be more civilized than the Germans. (§ 4.) 6. This state is said to be insignificant and weak. 7. They cannot be driven out, because they are tributary to this state. 8. They are more civilized than the Germans themselves.

4.—(§§ 1, 2, 3.) 1. Terrified by so great a number, they station guards. 2. The Germans drove the Menapii from their lands. 3. They keep the Menapii from wandering. 4. They

had removed from both banks of the Rhine. (§§ 4.-7.) 5. They pretend to cross the river. 6. He was informed of their arrival. 7. Being unable to maintain themselves they had returned to the river. 8. The whole journey had been finished in three days. 9. Having crushed the Menapii, they advanced for the rest of this night. 10. As the Germans had crossed the river, he seized their ships and villages.

5.—1. Influenced by this report, he asked what plans they were adopting. 2. He compelled the Gauls to answer. 3. He asked what they had heard or learned. 4. He repents of the plans which he has adopted. 5. No answer should be given to those who yield to these rumors. 6. The merchants against their will were compelled to come from each town.

6.—1. Having sent embassies to the leading men, they determined to set out for the Rhine. 2. They were invited to come. 3. Having determined to wage war they sent embassies to several states. 4. Some wander farther than usual. 5. On learning this he thought he ought to summon the leading men and demand an army. 5. When everything which he had demanded had been prepared, they thought that embassies should be sent.

7.—(§§ 1, 2, 3.) 1. As ambassadors had not come from the Germans, he began to pick out cavalry. 2. Our ancestors have handed down this custom. 3. He had heard that the Roman people had made war on the Germans. 4. He began to attack the Germans from whom ambassadors had not come. (§§ 4, 5.) 5. We wish to be friends to the Romans. 6. They said that the Suebi alone had been driven from their lands. 7. The Suebi do not yield even to the immortal gods. 8. As they have come against their will, having been driven from home, he assigns them lands.

8.—1. He answered that he could not give any lands to those who were seeking aid. 2. There cannot be friendship between Cæsar and the Ubii. 3. They may remain in their own lands. 4. It seems best to ask aid of Cæsar. 5. They are complaining of the outrages of the Ubii, who have settled in lands not their own. 6. So great a multitude cannot remain without wrong.

9.—1. The ambassadors said they would send the cavalry some days after. 2. They thought that the camp had been moved nearer. 3. Having reported this to their friends they returned to him. 4. He said he would move the camp. 5. He learned that some horsemen had not returned, and that the Ambivariti were awaiting him. 6. They thought they could gain their request from Cæsar.

10.—1. The island used to be inhabited by the Batavi. 2. A river (*flumen*) which is called Mosa, is thought to rise in (*ex*) the Alps. 3. The Alps are inhabited by a fierce nation which lives on birds. 4. After forming the island, it receives a branch from the Vacalus. 5. Many barbarous nations inhabit a large part of the islands.

11.—(§§ 1, 2, 3.) 1. When the ambassadors were returning to Cæsar, the cavalry whom he had sent in advance were twelve miles distant. 2. Cæsar, meeting the leading men on the way, gave them three days' time to send ambassadors. 3. As he had not given them an opportunity of advancing, they begged him not to carry out these plans. (§§ 4, 5, 6.) 4. They sent ambassadors to say that the army was approaching nearer. 5. He thought they would not return the same day. 6. They said that as many as possible would assemble, and that as all the cavalry was approaching, he would gain his request.

12.—(§§ 1, 2, 3.) 1. As soon as the cavalry returned, the ambassadors left the enemy. 2. Our men have no fear, because not more than eight hundred horsemen have returned. 3. Having put the cavalry to flight, and thrown the rest into confusion, they return to Cæsar. (§§ 4, 5, 6.) 4. He did not cease until his brother was saved from all danger. 5. When he had rescued his brother, he brought aid to his grandfather. 6. While resisting bravely, he was surrounded by the cavalry, and received many wounds. 7. As soon as they could, they brought aid to Piso, whom our senate had called friend.

13.—(§§ 1, 2, 3.) 1. No time was given to the enemy for seeking peace. 2. After these ambassadors had been heard, he waited till they should adopt the plan. 3. He thought that the enemy had gained no prestige by these terms. 4. He perceived that, after accepting these terms, they were making war. (§§ 4, 5, 6.) 5. Cæsar is glad that the chief men and the ambassadors have been detained. 6. No time should be given for arranging these matters. 7. The cavalry, having followed up the enemy, had begun battle. 8. Cæsar, the next day, after leading out all the cavalry, ordered the battle to be begun.

14.—1. He began to draw up a triple line of battle. 2. The cavalry had been sent to defend the camp. 3. Terrified by the arrival of our cavalry he had sought safety in flight. 4. The forces, alarmed by all this, perceived that they could not cross the Rhine. 5. Taking arms they gave the enemy no time to draw up the line of battle. 6. With the rest of the women and children they fled to their friends.

15.—1. Seeing that a large number of our men had been killed, he threw away his arms. 2. Thirty thousand Germans had perished in that flight. 3. As they wished to depart, he said he would allow them their freedom. 4. Cæsar reached the river Rhine in safety. 5. They said that thirty military standards had been left. 6. Hearing the shouts of his men, and fearing the Gauls, he rushed out of the camp.

16.—1. The Germans had been very easily induced to cross the Rhine and make war on the Roman people. 2. Messengers were sent to promise vessels for crossing the Rhine. 3. After sending ambassadors and giving up hostages, they betook themselves to their friends. 4. As the Suebi had joined the Usipetes, he had, against his will, lent aid to these tribes. 5. Against Cæsar's will they had ventured to carry over the army. 6. He resolved that the war must be finished. 7. Perceiving that they were hard pressed by the Germans, they were alarmed. 8. They answered that they would prevent Cæsar from conveying his army across the Rhine. 9. They thought that they could not be safe without his consent. 10. He besought Cæsar to take part in the battle. 11. The Germans who had made war on Cæsar, were surrendered to him. 12. So great was Cæsar's reputation that the farthest tribes sent ambassadors and gave hostages.

17.—1. There was the greatest difficulty, for two reasons. 2. So great was the breadth of the river that there was the greatest difficulty in crossing. 3. Although he was crossing by boats, he decided to build a bridge. 4. For the same reason the trees did not injure the bridges. 5. He decided to join the boats together to lessen the force of the current.

18.—1. Cæsar began to lead the army across. 2. The army began to be led across. 3. For several days they were bringing in timber. 4. He ordered ambassadors to come to him from both states. 5. He ordered a garrison to be left at the bridge. 6. They began to conceal themselves in the woods. 7. Meanwhile, all the timber having been collected and the army led across, they began to prepare for flight.

19.—1. Cæsar learned that their wives and children had been placed in the woods, and that they were gathering to one place. 2. As the bridge had been torn down, Cæsar resolved to punish the Germans. 3. When the Ubii learned that all the buildings had been burned, and a bridge built, they betook themselves to the woods. 4. All can bear arms. 5. For ten days they had awaited his arrival. 6. He thought that everything, for which he had led the army across, had been accomplished. 7. The

Suebi, after learning this through scouts, had determined to burn all their villages and buildings. 8. Eight days in all had been spent in the districts which the Suebi held. 9. They betook themselves to their own territories.

20.—1. He found out that the traders did not visit these islands. 2. Almost all the harbors are suitable. 3. He found out to whom they had furnished auxiliaries. 4. He thought that the traders could find out how large the harbor was. 5. Although the harbors were not suitable, he set out for the island. 6. He knew that the winters were early. 7. All this will be of great service. 8. He found out that all the tribes had these customs.

21.—1. He instructs Volusenus to find out these things. 2. Ambassadors came from the states which he had conquered that summer. 3. Commius, who was faithful to Cæsar, had visited these states on the previous days. 4. They themselves, with all the fleet, assembled as quickly as possible. 5. Him he orders (*jubeo*) to visit the states. 6. He orders (*impero*) the traders to come to him. 7. Having given hostages they return home. 8. He urges Volusenus to leave the ship. 9. He reported what they had promised. 10. Commius had been made king.

22.—1. He ordered about eight ships of war and a large number of transports. 2. They promised to make ready the ships which he had required. 3. While they were collecting the ships, ambassadors came from the Morini. 4. The rest of the ships could not carry over the legion. 5. After the two legions had been taken over, he gave the rest to Rufus to lead against the Morini. 6. When the hostages had been brought, he promised to receive them under his protection. 7. He left a garrison of two legions. 8. He does not wish either to wage war, or to delay for the purpose of collecting cavalry. 9. In the previous year he had had an opportunity of taking over the legions. 10. This happened very opportunely.

23.—1. As the cavalry had advanced to the higher ground, he ordered the rest of the soldiers to follow them. 2. He ordered the anchors to be raised. 3. We cannot throw weapons from the ship to the shore. 4. Thinking the shore suitable, they landed. 5. On the signal being given, they embarked and followed him. 6. He waited until he found a suitable tide for sailing. 7. About the ninth hour of the day he found out what was being done. 8. On the ninth day he ordered the tribunes to set sail from the farther harbor.

24.—1. They kept our men from leaping down. 2. Sending the charioteers in advance, they hurled their weapons more boldly. 3. The soldiers, burdened by their arms, leaped down from the ship. 4. The locality was unknown to our men, who did not show the same zeal as the enemy. 5. They had to advance into the water. 6. On account of the great difficulty, the rest of the forces cannot follow up the cavalry. 7. They were wont to use horses in their battles. 8. The enemy, dismayed by the size of the vessels, could not hurl their weapons.

25.—1. The soldiers were ordered to leap down. 2. As the soldier was leaping down, Cæsar noticed that the enemy had halted. 3. On the ships of war being removed a short distance, the enemy began to retreat. 4. He urged the soldiers not to betray the eagles to the barbarians. 5. He cried with a loud voice that he was willing to do his duty. 6. On account of the unusual kind of vessels, the matter turned out most favorably for Cæsar. 7. "Leap down, Cæsar," he said, "unless you wish to incur disgrace." 8. Our soldiers exhorted one another not to hesitate on account of the appearance of the barbarians.

26.—1. On the vessels being filled, he ordered aid to be sent to those who were in difficulty. 2. Whenever the enemy made an attack, Cæsar would order our men to keep their ranks. 3. Both sides were unable to leave their ships. 4. Whomsoever they attacked, they put to flight. 5. Making an attack, they surrounded the enemy. 6. Having reached the island, the cavalry landed from the ship. 7. Having attacked the enemy, they fought fiercely. 8. This alone is lacking. 9. He had manned the ships of war with the cavalry.

27.—1. On their promising to send ambassadors, they were ordered to send Commius back. 2. He complained because, after promising to send for hostages, they had seized Commius. 3. Having seized Commius and put him in chains, they had made war. 4. They said that they had sent for part of the hostages. 5. As soon as the enemy had done what he required, he forgave their indiscretion. 6. Sending Commius, the Atrebatian, in advance, he ordered the ambassadors to be seized and put in chains. 7. As they have sought peace and given hostages, their imprudence will be forgiven. 8. They seized Commius as he was landing from the ship.

28.—1. So great a storm arose that the vessels could not set out. 2. Having taken the cavalry on board, they had set sail for the continent. 3. Some vessels had been filled with the waves, others had been carried back to the island. 4. When

they were taking the cavalry on board, a light breeze sprang up. 5. The camp was reached on the fourth day. 6. The camp is very near the upper harbor. 7. The storm was so great that they put out to sea.

29.—1. The ships of war were being filled with the tide. 2. After the ships had been repaired, the army was carried over. 3. The same winter several ships were lost. 4. On the same day he caused corn to be provided. 5. The ships which had not been drawn up, were being tossed about by the storm. 6. Other vessels were wanting. 7. For several days it happened that the tides were very high. 8. As corn has not been provided, a fact which is unknown to Cæsar, we ought not to winter in Gaul. 9. It is generally agreed that ropes, anchors and other tackling are lacking.

30.—1. As cavalry was lacking to Cæsar, the camp was smaller. 2. The best thing to do is to lead across the legion and renew the war. 3. They had learned that Cæsar had brought the legion over without cavalry. 4. He began to form a conspiracy for the purpose of renewing the war. 5. They are confident that, if the matter is drawn out till winter, Cæsar will not make war. 6. Withdrawing his men gradually from Britain, he began to make war. 7. Understanding that our men had been prevented from returning, they departed secretly after Cæsar's return.

31.—1. Although the rest of the ships had been repaired, he could not sail very satisfactorily. 2. Suspecting that they would fail to give hostages, he ordered the ships to be repaired. 3. As the ships have been seriously damaged, timber and bronze cannot be brought to the continent. 4. He ordered the soldiers to use the corn. 5. Twelve ships had been repaired with the utmost zeal. 6. Having learned Cæsar's plans, they suspected that the rest of the ships had been lost. 7. When hostages had been given, they were ordered to bring in corn. 8. No one will cross over from Britain for the purpose of renewing the war.

32.—1. While the two cohorts were arming themselves, the enemy suddenly attacked the cavalry. 2. Observing that the enemy had marched in that direction, he ordered the legions to surround them. 3. Those who had been sent to reap the grain reported that the enemy had suddenly attacked them and surrounded them with their cavalry. 4. A larger cloud of dust than is usual is visible in the direction in which the legion marched. 5. Suspecting that the cohorts would follow, the barbarians had been ordered to conceal themselves in the woods.

6. He suspected that part of the barbarians kept coming to the camp. 7. Being ordered to lay aside their arms and not to hurl any weapon, they were alarmed. 8. Adopting this plan, they had set out with him. 9. When those who remained in the camp told Cæsar that the ranks had been thrown into disorder, he ordered the cavalry to be sent.

33.—1. They are accustomed to leap down from their horses and fight on foot. 2. Hurling their weapons, they threw the ranks into confusion. 3. Leaping down from their chariots, they betook themselves to their friends. 4. Leaving the battle, they would place their chariots so that they might hurl their weapons. 5. So great was the din of the wheels that the very charioteers were thrown into confusion. 6. The charioteer betook himself in safety to the cavalry. 7. They are so hard pressed by the cavalry and infantry that they are gradually leaving the field.

34.—1. While they were collecting the cavalry, Cæsar kept his men in camp. 2. Having done this, he sent out messengers and pointed out how great was the number of the enemy. 3. As the time was unfavorable the legions were led back to the camp. 4. He thought the time was favorable for bringing aid. 5. The Romans having been driven out, they thought an opportunity was afforded (them) of lending aid to the enemy. 6. Our men were kept in the camp for several days by the storms. 7. After joining battle, while the cavalry was occupied, an opportunity for throwing the infantry into confusion was given.

35.—1. On the day before all the buildings had been burned. 2. Although the enemy were defeated, they nevertheless escaped danger. 3. After slaying several, they burned all the buildings. 4. He sees that the enemy cannot endure the attack of our legions. 5. The legions which he had brought over joined battle. 6. The cavalry, of whom mention has been made above, having defeated the enemy, had betaken themselves to Cæsar. 7. It happened that Commius had brought over several legions.

36.—1. On the ambassadors being sent, he demanded hostages. 2. At midnight he reached the harbor in safety. 3. The weather being suitable they set sail the same night. 4. He did not think the hostages should be brought to the same harbor. 5. Having found two transports, the ambassadors had reached the continent. 6. As all the ships had been carried down, the enemy sent ambassadors to Cæsar to treat for peace.

37.—1. After the soldiers had landed, the enemy threw away their arms. 2. After slaying a large number of the enemy, they

had hastened to the camp. 3. After they had defended themselves for four hours, and several had been slain, they laid down their arms. 4. He was slain while fighting bravely in sight of his friends, after receiving several wounds. 5. Having subdued the Morini, Cæsar set out for Britain. 6. He ordered aid to be sent to the three hundred cavalry who were resisting the enemy's attacks. 7. When about six thousand soldiers had been slain, the enemy's cavalry came in sight. 8. Influenced by these things, he ordered the Morini to be surrounded, if they were unwilling to set out. 9. Leaving all the cavalry in the camp, he ordered his men to form a square and fight bravely.

38.—1. Renewing the war they betook themselves to the marshes. 2. As the enemy had neglected to send hostages and had hidden themselves in the woods, he led back the legions into the country of the Morini. 3. In former years they used to use the marshes and woods as a place of refuge. 4. As the rest of the Belgians had renewed the war, the Morini, against whom Cæsar had sent two legions, concealed themselves in the marshes. 5. He had sent Cotta with two legions against the rest of the Belgians. 6. As these states had not sent hostages, he led the legion out of winter quarters. 7. In former years the senate had not decreed a twenty days' thanksgiving.